Pama-Nyungan morphosyntax:
Lineages of early description

Clara Stockigt

A thesis submitted for degree of
Doctor of Philosophy

Department of Linguistics
School of Humanities
University of Adelaide

November 2016
Declaration

I certify that this work contains no material which has been accepted for the award of any other
degree or diploma in my name in any university or other tertiary institution and, to the best of
my knowledge and belief, contains no material previously published or written by another
person, except where due reference has been made in the text. In addition, I certify that no part
of this work will, in the future, be used in a submission in my name for any other degree or
diploma in any university or other tertiary institution without the prior approval of the
University of Adelaide and where applicable, any partner institution responsible for the joint
award of this degree.

I acknowledge the support I have received for my research through the provision of an
Australian Government Research Training Program Scholarship.

I give consent to this copy of my thesis, when deposited in the University Library, being made
available for loan and photocopying, subject to the provisions of the Copyright Act 1968.

I also give permission for the digital version of my thesis to be made available on the web, via
the University's digital research repository, the Library Search and also through web search
engines, unless permission has been granted by the University to restrict access for a period of
time.

Clara Stockigt
Abstract

A substantial proportion of what is discoverable about the structure of the hundreds of Aboriginal languages that were spoken on the vast Australian continent before their post-colonial demise, is contained in nineteenth-century grammars. Many were written by fervent young missionaries who traversed the globe intent on describing the languages spoken by heathens, whom they hoped to convert to Christianity. Some of these documents, written before Australian academic institutions expressed any interest in Aboriginal languages, are the sole relics of languages spoken by the people who successfully occupied Australia.

This history of the early description of Australian Aboriginal languages traces a developing understanding and ability to describe Australian morphosyntax. The corpus of early grammatical descriptions written between 1834 and 1910 is identified in Chapter 1. Chapter 2 discusses the philological methodology of retrieving data from these grammars. Chapters 3-9 consider the grammars in roughly chronological order, commencing with those written in the earliest-established Australian colony of New South Wales: L.Threlkeld, 1834 (Chapter 3), and W.Günther, 1838 and 1840 (Chapter 4). Chapters 5-9 investigates the large body of grammars of languages spoken in South Australia: C.G.Teichelmann & C.W.Schürmann 1840 (Chapter 5), H.A.E.Meyer 1843 (Chapter 6), C.W.Schürmann 1844 and M.Moorhouse 1846 (Chapter 7), grammars of Diyari (Chapter 8,) and grammars of Arrernte (Chapter 9).

Analyses made by other corpus grammarians are discussed throughout these chapters, by way of comparison, notably: C.Symmons (1841), G.Taplin (1867;1872[1870];1874;1878), W.Ridley (1875[1866;1855a];1855b;1856b), H.Livingstone (1892), W.E.Roth (1897;1901), and R.H.Mathews’ analyses of some of the many languages he described. Some material is presented as appendices. Appendix 1 examines the context in which grammars of languages spoken in New South Wales and Queensland were written. G.Taplin’s (1867;1872[1870];1874;1878) grammars of Ngarrindjeri are examined more closely in Appendix 2.

By focussing on grammatical structures that challenged the classically-trained grammarians: the description of the case systems, of ergativity, and of bound pronouns, Chapters 3-9 of this historiographical investigation identify the provenance of analyses, and of descriptive techniques, thus identifying paths of intellectual descent. The extent to which missionary-grammarians, posted across far-flung regions of the country, were aware of each others’ materials has not previously been well understood.
Three schools of descriptive practice are shown to have developed in the pre-academic era. The earliest, instigated by L.E Threlkeld (1834) (Chapter 3), is found to have been less influential than previously assumed (Carey 2004:264-269). Two later descriptive schools are identified, one spawned by W.E.Roth’s grammar of Pitta-Pitta (1897), and the other by Teichelmann & Schürmann (1840) in the earliest grammar of a language spoken in South Australia. The strength and duration of the school which was inspired by Teichelmann & Schürmann and which was dominated by South Australian Lutheran missionaries is further demonstrated through examination of the description of processes of clause subordination (Chapter 10).

By studying the type of analyses characteristically generated when the European classical descriptive framework was applied to Australian grammatical structures, or the nature of the ‘looking glass’ through which Australian morpho-syntactic structures were observed, this thesis refines a philological methodology of extracting morphosyntactic data from antique grammatical records.
Acknowledgements

I firstly offer sincere thanks to my supervisors, Dr Rob Amery and Dr Ian Green, who have steered this investigation from a Masters thesis, specifically investigating T.G.H. Strehlow’s description of Arrernte, to this comparative investigation of all early grammatical descriptions of PN languages. Without Ian Green’s initial encouragement and judicious raising-of-the-bar this project would not have eventuated.

Having taught as an outstation teacher at Utopia Area School for three years in the early 1990s, my interest in Aboriginal languages has been sustained, while raising children close to Adelaide, by the archival nature of the research. As ‘capital of the bush’ Adelaide is home to particularly rich storehouses of primary documents relating to the early description of Australian languages: the University of Adelaide Barr Smith Library Special Collections, the Lutheran Archives, and the South Australian Museum. I am particularly grateful to Cheryl Hoskin of the Barr Smith Library Rare Books and Special Collections, with whom I worked in 2010 while recipient of the Bill Cowan Barr Smith Library fellowship. I thank the board of the Bill Cowan Barr Smith Library Fellowship for the generous assistance provided by this award. From the Lutheran archives, I thank Rachel Kuchel, Lyall Kupke and especially Dr Lois Zweck, for her infectious enthusiasm towards archival research. I thank Dr Philip Jones from the South Australian Museum.

I received valuable assistance from scholars associated with the linguistics department at the University of Adelaide: Dr Petter Naessan, Dr Maryanne Gale, Dr Peter Mickan, Dr Joshua Nash, Dr Mark Clendon and Professor Ghil’ad Zuckermann. Special thanks to Professor Mühlhäusler and the board of the Adelaide University Mobile Language Team for financial assistance with the transcription and translation of the otherwise impenetrable Koch manuscript (1868), and to Thomas Kruckemeyer for carrying out this work with rare skill. For assistance with German translation I am indebted to Dr James McElvenny, to Lee Kersten and to Gerhard Rudiger. Thanks also to John Strehlow for assistance clarifying points of Lutheran mission history. I am especially grateful to Dr David Wilkins and to Professor Peter Austin, who provided corrections and comments on chapters nine, ten and eleven. I thank my four children, Eva, Jacob, Luka and Isaac who have witnessed my gradual engrossment behind piles of books. They have grounded me. I thank friends within the community of Strathalbyn in which I live and work, especially Pauline Gibbs.

Lastly, and most deferentially, I thank Professor Peter Sutton for his quiet and unwavering faith in the project, and for his reading and comments on the first complete draft of the thesis.
Conventions and Abbreviations

Glossing Conventions

All glosses and transcriptions are those of the author, unless otherwise specified.

- morpheme boundary
, clause boundary
? indicates an undetermined morpheme
* precedes an ungrammatical sentence
( ) encloses an optional element
= separates components of a portmanteaux morpheme. Used only with forms marking categories of aspect and associated motion in Arrernte, following Henderson 2013
[ ] encloses a phrase.

Grammatical functions:

S subject of an intransitive verb
A subject of a transitive or ditransitive verb
O object of a transitive verb

Where the form of a nominal is discussed out of context of its clausal case-frame, and is ambiguous for one of two syntactic case functions, both functions are represented using a forward slash. For example, the 1dl Arrernte pronoun, ilerne is glossed 1dlS/A where it is either an intransitive or transitive subject. A form that is glossed S/O is either an intransitive subject or an object.

Cases:

NOM nominative
ACC accusative
ERG ergative
DAT dative
PURP purposive
CAUS causative
POSS possessive
GEN genitive
ABL ablative
INST instrumental
Cases for which nominals are unmarked are glossed in square brackets, rather than transcribed using a zero morpheme. Examine, for instance, the following Kaurna example:

Parnda-rlo ngatto wodli taie-ta.
“I will build the house with bricks”

(Teichelmann & Schürmann 1840:24)

Parnta-rlu ngathu wardli tayi-tha
limestone-INST 1sgERG house-[ACC] build-FUT

rather than:

Parnta-rlu ngathu wardli-Ø tayi-tha
limestone-INST 1sgERG house-ACC build-FUT

Pronouns:

sg    singular
dl    dual
pl    plural
nonsg non singular
HUM.pl human plural   (Clendon 2014 Barngarla)
F     future       (Blake 1979b Pitta-Pitta)
Verbs:

The systems of marking tense distinctions, and the degree to which these have been properly analysed vary across the languages discussed here. Only better-described varieties, like Mparntwe Arrernte (Wilkins 1989; Henderson 2013), are known to have tense systems that the past/present/future divide does not properly capture. For cross-linguistic ease of comparison the three tense system described in the original sources is generally maintained.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PRES</td>
<td>present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST</td>
<td>past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RPAST</td>
<td>remote past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUT</td>
<td>future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NONPAST</td>
<td>non-past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REFL</td>
<td>reflexive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RECIP</td>
<td>reciprocal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NMZR</td>
<td>nominaliser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INCH</td>
<td>inchoative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANTIP</td>
<td>antipassive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTR</td>
<td>detransitiviser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMP</td>
<td>imperative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COND</td>
<td>conditional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HYPO</td>
<td>hypothetical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PERM</td>
<td>permissive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REDUP</td>
<td>reduplication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ben</td>
<td>benefactive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tr</td>
<td>transitiviser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aux</td>
<td>auxiliary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ptcpl</td>
<td>participle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DO UPWARDS</td>
<td>a category of associated motion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DO DOWNWARDS</td>
<td>a category of associated motion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RETURN &amp; DO</td>
<td>a category of associated motion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONT&amp;MOT</td>
<td>continuous aspect while moving along</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Haviland 1979 Guugu-Yimidhirr)

(Austin 2013 Diyari)

(Austin 2013 Diyari)

(Austin 2013 Diyari)

(Wilkins 1989 Arrernte)

(Wilkins 1989 Arrernte)

(Wilkins 1989; Henderson 2013 Arrernte)

(Wilkins 1989; Henderson 2013 Arrernte)
Clause Subordination:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IMPERF.DS</td>
<td>imperfective– different subject</td>
<td>(Austin 2013 Diyari)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seqDS</td>
<td>sequential (perfective) - different subject</td>
<td>(Austin 2013 Diyari)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DS</td>
<td>different subject</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SS</td>
<td>same subject</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUB</td>
<td>subordinate</td>
<td>(Lissarrague 2006 Awabakal)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Constituents:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NP</td>
<td>noun phrase</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hd</td>
<td>head (of structure)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SREL</td>
<td>relative clause</td>
<td>(Wilkins 1989 Arrernte)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>consonant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>vowel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AVERS</td>
<td>aversive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INTER</td>
<td>interrogative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEM</td>
<td>demonstrative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indef</td>
<td>indefinite</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEG</td>
<td>negator</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DYADIC</td>
<td>kin-dyadic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EMPH</td>
<td>emphatic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>still</td>
<td>still</td>
<td>(Austin 2013 Diyari)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>addinf</td>
<td>additional information</td>
<td>(Austin 2013 Diyari)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>char</td>
<td>characteristically</td>
<td>(Austin 2013 Diyari)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vicin</td>
<td>vicinity</td>
<td>(Austin 2013 Diyari)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NM</td>
<td>number marker</td>
<td>(Austin 2013 Diyari)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>near</td>
<td>near</td>
<td>(Austin 2013 Diyari)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EP</td>
<td>epenthetic morpheme</td>
<td>(Clendon 2015 Barngarla)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Transcription conventions**

A capitalised ‘V’ indicates a vowel of unknown quality. A capitalised ‘N’ indicates a nasal at unknown articulatory place. A capitalised T indicates a stop at unknown articulatory place.
Differentiating early and modern material

A number of conventions have been employed to differentiate between original and contemporary linguistic material and analyses. Early notations of recorded speech in pre-phonemic orthographies are presented in **bold**. Transcriptions of the original source material into currently accepted orthography are presented in *italics*. The convention is upheld in in-text references, for example:

Flierl (1880) chose the verb *nganka-* “to make” as illustration. Note the absence of the velar nasal in Flierl’s representation *anka*.

The convention is also upheld in the presentation of illustrative data.

**Structure of the examples:**

Most examples show the source material and original translation followed by a phonemic representation, and a glossed interpretation. The original material and the source analysis are differentiated from the phonemic transcription and glossed interpretation using the conventions shown in the following Diyari example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kintella</th>
<th>kuballi</th>
<th>nandrai</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Der Knabe schlägt den Hund</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Kinthala** | **kupa-li** | **nandra-yi**

Dog-[ACC] | child-ERG | hit-PRES

“The child hits the dog”

Where:

The first line in **bold** gives the original material.

Line two gives the original translation.

The source material is then referenced. The reference is aligned to the right.

Everything below the reference is the current author’s transcription and interpretation, unless otherwise specified.

The first line under the reference in *italics* presents a phonemic transcription of the original data.

The second line under the reference glosses the structure. In some instances a phonemic representation and gloss of the original material is not given.

The last line (optional) retranslates the source material, either into English or more accurately. Sometimes the original author provided both free and interlinear-style translations. For example,

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ngate</th>
<th>nakk-ir</th>
<th>korne</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>“by me seeing has been a man”</td>
<td>“I have seen the man”</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ngati</th>
<th>nak-ir</th>
<th>ko:rnii</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1sgERG</td>
<td>see-PAST</td>
<td>man-[ACC]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Meyer 1843:33)
The glossing conventions adopted here are maintained throughout, even where quoting examples from a modern source holding a four case analysis (§1.2.2.1), or using different glossing conventions than those adopted here. In the following Diyari and Guugu-Yimidhirr examples, for instance, the source linguist is attributed with the interpretation and transcription even when their glossing conventions — shown here in faded text, and not otherwise included — have been altered to conform to those employed in this thesis.

`marna			 	 	ngurru-nganka-mayi,																	muntyu											wirri-yathi`

door.acc firm-cause.IMP-EMPH fly.nom enter-lest

door-[ACC] firm-cause.IMP-EMPH fly-[NOM] enter-AVERS

‘Close the door or the flies will come in’

(Austin 2013: 230[1981a])

`Yarrga-agya-mu-n	 	 guda	 	 gund-	y		 biiba-ngun`

Boy-GEN-mu-ERG dog+ABS hit-PAST father-ERG

Boy-POSS-mu-ERG dog-[ACC] hit-PAST father-ERG

“The boy’s father hit the dog”

(Haviland 1979:57)

**Differentiating modern and early terminology**

Linguistic terminology used with the frame of reference of the original source material is placed in single quotation marks. Linguistic terms implying currently accepted reference are not. Examine the following three examples:

The missionaries placed the ergative case, called ‘active’, in final paradigmatic position.

Schmidt’s first tentative usage of the term ‘ergative’ to name the ergative case …

Schürmann showed that the ergative ‘active nominative’ suffix –*ngu* also marked instrumental ‘ablative’ function.
## Table of Contents

### Chapter 1: ‘The Peculiar nature of the language’ .......................................................... 25

1.1 The corpus of early PN description ............................................................................. 32
1.1.1 The naming of languages .................................................................................... 36
1.1.2 Lutheran grammarians ....................................................................................... 37
1.1.3 Secondary source material ................................................................................. 39
1.2 The corpus languages ............................................................................................... 44
1.2.1 Linguistic structure ............................................................................................. 46
1.2.2 Case systems ....................................................................................................... 48
1.3 Outline of the thesis ................................................................................................... 52

### Chapter 2: Theoretical considerations ........................................................................ 56

2.1 Methodological limitations ...................................................................................... 56
2.2 The traditional grammatical framework .................................................................. 62
2.2.1 Traditional schema .............................................................................................. 64
2.3 Philological methodology ........................................................................................ 66
2.3.1 The description of unnecessary categories ......................................................... 67
2.3.2 The description of foreign PN structures ............................................................ 73
2.3.3 Difficulties in describing the case system ............................................................ 74
2.3.4 Appropriation of the traditional framework ......................................................... 76
2.4 Traditional descriptive models ............................................................................... 80
2.4.1 The word and paradigm descriptive model ......................................................... 83
2.4.2 Alternative descriptive models .......................................................................... 85
2.5 The nature of recorded varieties ............................................................................... 88
2.5.1 Mission Guugu-Yimidhirr .................................................................................. 89
2.5.2 Kneebone’s (2005b) account of mission Diyari .................................................. 92

### Chapter 3: Lancelot Threlkeld’s earliest analyses of an Australian language .......... 95

3.1 Historical overview ................................................................................................. 95
3.1.1 Threlkeld 1827 .................................................................................................... 97
3.1.2 Phono-semantic theory ...................................................................................... 99
3.1.3 Threlkeld’s influence on later PN grammarians .................................................. 101
3.2 Threlkeld (1834) ................................................................................................... 102
3.2.1 Subversion of the traditional framework ........................................................... 103
3.2.2 Case paradigms .................................................................................................. 106
3.2.3 Prepositions ....................................................................................................... 111
3.2.4 Declension classes ............................................................................................. 114
3.2.5 Pronouns ........................................................................................................... 117
3.2.6 Description of ergativity ..................................................................................... 127
3.3 Concluding remarks ............................................................................................... 131

### Chapter 4: Grammars of Wiradjuri ............................................................................ 133
Chapter 5: The first grammar of a South Australian language, Teichelmann & Schürmann (1840) .......................................................................................................................................................... 177

5.1 Historical context ........................................................................................................................................................................... 177
  5.1.1 The naming of Kaurna .................................................................................................................................................................. 182
  5.1.2 Training ......................................................................................................................................................................................... 183
  5.1.3 Field-work ...................................................................................................................................................................................... 183
5.2 Teichelmann & Schürmann’s grammar of Kaurna (1840) ............................................................................................................................ 186
  5.2.1 Teichelmann’s later linguistic work ............................................................................................................................................ 188
  5.2.2 Threlkeld’s influence ..................................................................................................................................................................... 189
5.3 The beginning of a new descriptive tradition ...................................................................................................................................... 190
  5.3.1 Case paradigms ............................................................................................................................................................................ 190
  5.3.2 Postfixa and postpositions ......................................................................................................................................................... 192
  5.3.3 Declension of ‘possessive or adjective pronouns’ ...................................................................................................................... 197
5.4 The description of ‘dative’ and ‘genitive’ functions ............................................................................................................................. 202
  5.4.1 The function of the forms labelled ‘dative’ .................................................................................................................................... 202
  5.4.2 The function of the ‘postfixa’ –inya ............................................................................................................................................. 206
  5.4.3 Dative and possessive marking on kinship terms ...................................................................................................................... 208
  5.4.4 Dative pronouns .......................................................................................................................................................................... 210
  5.4.5 The form of the pronoun to which peripheral case suffixes attach ...................................................................................... 211
5.5 Teichelmann & Schürmann’s description of syntactic cases ................................................................................................................. 213
  5.5.1 Split system of marking syntactic case and recognition of an ‘absolutive’ case ........................................................................ 213
  5.5.2 The ergative case ......................................................................................................................................................................... 215
  5.5.3 The use of the term ‘ablative’ ...................................................................................................................................................... 218
5.6 Concluding remarks ............................................................................................................................................................................. 221

Chapter 6: H.A.E. Meyer 1843, and passive interpretations of ergativity ................................................................. 222
Chapter 7: Later grammars of the Adelaide School ......................................................... 255

7.1 C. Schürmann .............................................................................................................. 255
  7.1.1 Schürmann’s grammar of Barngarla (1844a) .............................................................. 257
  7.1.2 Case suffixes or prepositions ..................................................................................... 260
  7.1.3 Description of pronouns ......................................................................................... 262
  7.1.4 Pronouns specifying kinship relations ..................................................................... 263
  7.1.5 The naming of the ergative case ............................................................................. 265
  7.1.6 Clarification of ergativity under the heading ‘The Verb’ ......................................... 265
  7.1.7 Concluding remark ................................................................................................ 267

7.2 M. Moorhouse ............................................................................................................ 268
  7.2.1 Moorhouse’s grammar of Ngayawang (1846) ............................................................ 271
  7.2.2 Case systems .......................................................................................................... 274
  7.2.3 System of marking syntactic case .......................................................................... 275
  7.2.4 Description of ergativity ......................................................................................... 279
  7.2.5 Concluding remark ................................................................................................ 280

7.3 Conclusion: The Adelaide School ............................................................................... 281

7.4 The description of bound pronouns ........................................................................... 282
  7.4.1 Günther (1838; 1840) ............................................................................................... 283
  7.4.2 Meyer (1843) .......................................................................................................... 285
  7.4.3 Teichelmann & Schürmann (1840) ......................................................................... 288
  7.4.4 Schürmann (1844a) ................................................................................................. 294
  7.4.5 Later understandings of bound pronouns ................................................................. 296

Chapter 8: Grammars of Diyari (1868-1899) ................................................................. 299

8.1 Two inland Lutheran South Australian missions ................................................... 299

8.2 Missionary grammars of Diyari ............................................................................... 303
  8.2.1 Neglect of Diyari grammars in histories of Australian linguistic research ........... 306

8.3 The Hermannsburg Mission Society missionaries at Bethesda .................................. 309
  8.3.1 Homann: the earliest phase of the HMS mission at Bethesda ................................ 310
  8.3.2 Koch: the second phase of HMS at Bethesda ......................................................... 311
  8.3.3 Schoknecht: the final phase of HMS missionary work at Bethesda ....................... 313
Chapter 10: The syntax of complex clauses .................................................................412

10.1 Introduction ............................................................................................................412
10.2 Apprehensional constructions .............................................................................413
10.2.1 Teichelmann & Schürmann’s ‘negative optative or preventative’ mood ..........414
10.2.2 The ‘denunciativ’ mood in Diyari .................................................................415
10.2.3 T.G.H. Strehlow’s description of apprehensional and purposive constructions (1944[1938]) .................................................................................................................416
10.3 ‘The conditional or potential mood of the verb’ ..............................................417
10.3.1 Teichelmann & Schürmann ............................................................................417
Table of Figures

Figure 1: The corpus of early grammatical descriptions of Pama-Nyungan languages ..........34
Figure 2: Secondary sources based on the corpus .................................................................41
Figure 3: Map showing location of languages described in the corpus, and lower-level PN subgroups in areas not shaded (from Bowern & Atkinson 2012:820). See key at Figure 3 ....44
Figure 4: Key to figure 3 .......................................................................................................45
Figure 5: The inventory of consonant phonemes common to many PN languages ..........47
Figure 6: The split in marking the syntactic cases in the languages treated in the corpus. ....50
Figure 7: The modern grammatical descriptions of the languages described by early grammarians in Australia ..........................................................................................................59
Figure 8: Kühner’s categories of pronoun in Classical Greek (1890:xxiii[1834-1835]).........64
Figure 9: Kennedy's declension of Latin relative pronouns (1879:140[1847]) ......................64
Figure 10: Kramer's 1931 copy of C.Strehlow's grammar of Western Arrernte (1931a[c.1907]) ........................................................................................................................................68
Figure 11: Kennedy’s paradigm of Latin comparative and superlative degrees of comparison of adjectives (1879:132[1847]) .........................................................................................69
Figure 12: Roth’s description of the superlative degree of adjectives, 1901:26 (Guugu-Yimidhirr) ........................................................................................................................................70
Figure 13: Roth’s illustration of passive constructions, 1901:20 (Guugu-Yimidhirr) ............78
Figure 14: Flierl’s discussion of reflexive and reciprocal verb morphology under the word-class heading ‘pronoun’, 1880:26 (Diyari) ..........................................................................................................79
Figure 15: Günther’s presentation of case suffixes as unattached morphemes, 1838:45 (Wiradjuri) ........................................................................................................................................81
Figure 16: Teichelmann & Schürmann’s presentation of case suffixes, 1840:5 (Kaurna) ....81
Figure 17: Homann’s use of the Word and Paradigm model. In Fraser 1892:43-44[1868] (Diyari) ........................................................................................................................................83
Figure 18: T.G.H.Strehlow’s use of the Word and Paradigm model, 1944:79[1938] (Western Arrernte) .................................................................................................................................85
Figure 19: T.G.H.Strehlow’s use of the Word and Paradigm model, 1944:84[1938] (Western Arrernte) ........................................................................................................................................85
Figure 20: Roth’s descriptive response to agglutinative morphology, 1897:8 (Pitta-Pitta) ....87
Figure 21: The absence of description of ergative morphology on nouns in ’s grammar of Guugu-Yimidhirr, 1901:16 .....................................................................................................................90
Figure 22: Generic noun classifiers in Diyari, Austin 2013:44[1981a] .................................93
Figure 23: Auxiliary verbs in Diyari, Austin 2013:92 ............................................................94
Figure 24: Threlkeld's deliberation about the orthographic system, 1834:vi ........................96
Figure 25: Threlkeld’s presentation of clauses illustrating case marking, 1827:10 (Awabakal) ........................................................................................................................................98
Figure 26: Threlkeld’s reference to ‘Berehbahn’, 1827:13 (Awabakal) ...............................98
Figure 60: Günther’s second Wiradjuri case paradigm, 1840:351
Figure 61: Günther’s presentations of the ergative case termed ‘nominative active’ 1838:49;1840:353
Figure 62: Hale’s Wiradjuri case paradigm 1846:487
Figure 63: Hale's Awabakal case paradigm 1846:486
Figure 64: Günther’s case paradigms of Wiradjuri singular pronouns 1838:15-16
Figure 65: Fraser’s (1892:68) presentation of Günther’s discussion of dual pronouns (1838:18-23)
Figure 66: Günther’s verb conjugations showing 1dl pronouns, 1838:77;1840:361
Figure 67: Forms of Wiradjuri dual pronouns given in different sources
Figure 68: Ridley’s paradigms of pronominal case, 1855a:7 (Gamilaraay)
Figure 69: Ridley’s later presentation of pronominal case, 1875:6-7 (Gamilaraay)
Figure 70: Ridley’s presentations of Turrubul pronouns (1866:62)
Figure 71: Ridley’s earliest paradigm of pronominal case, 1855b:74-75 (Gamilaraay)
Figure 72: Mathews’ pronominal case paradigm, 1903b:263-264 (Gamilaraay)
Figure 73: Threlkeld’s presentation of 1dl pronouns, 1834:23 (Awabakal)
Figure 74: Davies’ presentation of 1dl and 1pl pronouns in a grammar of Tahitian, 1851:9[1823]
Figure 75: Early records of pronouns showing an inclusive/exclusive distinction in Wiradjuri
Figure 76: Mathews 1903b:262 (Gamilaraay)
Figure 77: Ridley’s illustration of the possessive adjective preceding the head, 1875:15
Figure 78: Mathews 1904:287 (Wiradjuri)
Figure 79: Codrington’s presentation of nominative pronouns in Lifou, 1885:113
Figure 80: Hey’s presentation of nominative pronouns, 1903:12 (Nggerrikwidhi)
Figure 81: Mathews’ presentation of 1dl and 1pl nominative pronouns, 1907:325 (Western Arrernte)
Figure 82: Grey's map of Aboriginal dialects, 1845
Figure 83: Teichelmann & Schürmann’s case paradigm of a noun, 1840:5
Figure 84: Current analysis of inflections described by Teichelmann and Schürmann as marking nominal case
Figure 85: Teichelmann and Schürmann’s division of ‘postpositions’ into two classes, 1840:21
Figure 86: Analysis of nominal inflections listed by Teichelmann & Schürmann as ‘postfixa’
Figure 87: Analysis of nominal inflections listed by Teichelmann & Schürmann as ‘postpositions’
Figure 88: Analysis of additional 'postpositions' given by Teichelmann & Schürmann

18
Figure 89: Teichelmann & Schürmann’s ‘declension of possessive or adjective pronouns’, 1840:11-12 ................................................................. 199
Figure 90: Teichelmann & Schürmann’s pronominal case paradigm, 1840:7-8 ................. 200
Figure 91: Kempe’s declension of possessive pronouns, 1891:8 (Arrernte) ......................... 201
Figure 92: T.G.H. Strehlow’s declension of possessive pronouns, 1944:95[1938] (Arrernte) ........................................................................................................... 201
Figure 93: Roth’s account of clausal case marking on a possessive NP, 1897:7 (Pitta-Pitta) .... 202
Figure 94: Teichelmann & Schürmann’s case paradigm of nouns on two different nominal types, 1840:6 ................................................................................................................................. 203
Figure 95: Schürmann’s explanation of the function of a case suffix, 1844a:7 .......................... 206
Figure 96: Teichelmann’s annotated copy (1858a) of the grammar he published with Schürmann (1840) .............................................................................................. 206
Figure 97: Teichelmann & Schürmann’s explanation of the function of the case suffix –itya, 1840:22 .............................................................................. 206
Figure 98: The marking of the ‘genitive’ case on different nominal types in Kaurna ............... 208
Figure 99: Teichelmann & Schürmann’s account of the different marking of the ‘genitive’ case, 1840:6 ................................................................................................................................. 209
Figure 100: Teichelmann & Schürmann’s additional pronominal paradigms, 1840:8 .......... 211
Figure 101: Possible different alignment of nouns and pronouns marking dative and possessive functions in Kaurna ................................................................. 213
Figure 102: Teichelmann and Moorhouse’s later representation of case forms of Kaurna pronouns, 1841 ....................................................................................................................... 214
Figure 103: Teichelmann & Schürmann’s case paradigm of interrogative pronouns, 1840:9 ................................................................................................................................. 217
Figure 104: The mapping of various functions of the Latin ablative case onto PN case functions ................................................................................................................................. 220
Figure 105: Meyer’s translation into Ramindjeri of the English preposition ‘to’, 1843:13 .... 227
Figure 106: Meyer’s informal case paradigm of nouns, 1843:17-18 .................................... 228
Figure 107: Meyer’s pronominal case paradigm showing only the syntactic cases (and vocative), 1843:22-23 .............................................................................................................. 230
Figure 108: Reclaimed split in the marking of syntactic case in Ngarrindjeri ......................... 231
Figure 109: Meyer’s extended pronominal paradigm for first person pronouns, 1843:24 .... 231
Figure 110: Meyer’s case paradigm on terms denoting kin possession, 1843:35 ................. 233
Figure 111: C. Strehlow’s presentation of terms denoting kin possession in three languages, 1931a:50-51[c.1907] ................................................................................................................................. 234
Figure 112: Meyer’s reference to Threlkeld’s grammar (1834), 1843:40 ............................... 239
Figure 113: Symmons’ case paradigm of a noun, 1841:ix (Nyungar) .................................. 243
Figure 114: Symmons’ explanation of the ‘ablative’ case, 1841:ix (Nyungar) .................... 244
Figure 115: Symmons’ exemplification of ‘passive’ constructions, 1841:xx (Nyungar) ...... 245
Figure 116: Symmons’ paradigm of nominative first, second and third person pronouns, 1841:xii .................................................. 245
Figure 117: Taplin’s exemplification of ‘passive’ constructions, 1878:17 .................................................. 248
Figure 118: Contents page from F. Müller 1882 (p. ix), in which he translates grammars of Australian languages into German and provides some of his own synchronic interpretation. ................................................................................................................................................. 252
Figure 119: Schürmann’s comparative Barngarla and Kaurna vocabulary, 1844a:iv ............. 258
Figure 120: Schürmann’s explanation and exemplification of plural marking (and case) on the NP, 1844a:9-10 ....................................................................................................................... 258
Figure 121: Schürmann’s non-paradigmatic representation of locative and allative case on proper nouns, 1844a:6.......................................................................................................................... 260
Figure 122: Schürmann’s non-paradigmatic presentation of the function of the suffix marking ergative, instrumental, locative and causal case functions, 1844a:4-5 .............................................. 261
Figure 123: Schürmann’s singular and plural pronominal case paradigm, 1844a:11................. 263
Figure 124: Schürmann’s dual pronominal case paradigm, 1844a:11-12 ............................................. 264
Figure 125: Symmons’ presentation of pronouns specifying kinship, 1841:xiv-xv ...................... 265
Figure 126: Schürmann’s ‘neuter’ verb showing pronouns in one type of ‘nominative’ case, 1844a:17.......................................................................................................................... 267
Figure 127: Schürmann’s ‘active’ verb showing pronouns in another type of ‘nominative’ case, 1844a:20 .......................................................................................................................... 267
Figure 128: Bleek’s summary (1858:5) of Moorhouse’s report (1842) ................................................. 268
Figure 129: Moorhouse’s comparative pronominal paradigm, 1840 .................................................. 270
Figure 130: Moorhouse’s typological summary of Australian languages, 1846:vi ..................... 271
Figure 131: Moorhouse’s comparative pronominal paradigm, 1846:vi-vii ....................................... 272
Figure 132: Grey’s comparative pronominal paradigm, 1840 .......................................................... 272
Figure 133: Similar clauses given in Meyer (1843:15) and in Taplin’s reproduction of Moorhouse (1879a:33[1846:6]) .................................................................................................................. 274
Figure 134: The alignment of syntactic case marking on nominals in Kaurna, Barngarla and Ngayawang, as described in the early sources. .......................................................................................................................... 275
Figure 135: Moorhouse’s demonstration of the ergative marking on plural nouns, 1846:6...276
Figure 136: Moorhouse’s case paradigm on Meru ‘man’, 1846:3-4 ............................................... 277
Figure 137: Case forms and functions given by Moorhouse on nouns........................................... 278
Figure 138: Moorhouse’s case paradigm on Nguilpo ‘child’, 1846:4 .............................................. 278
Figure 139: Taplin’s rearrangement of Moorhouse’s Ngayawang case paradigm, 1879a:31[1846].......................................................................................................................... 279
Figure 140: Moorhouse’s 1sg pronominal case paradigm, 1846:10 .............................................. 280
Figure 141: Günther’s illustration of an ‘abbreviated’ pronoun used as a ‘postfix’, 1840:355 .................................................. 284
Figure 142: Meyer’s paradigm of bound pronouns in nominative, accusative and ergative cases (and vocative), 1843:23 .................................................................................................................. 287
Figure 143: Taplin’s earliest paradigm of Ngarrindjeri bound pronouns in nominative, accusative and ergative cases (and vocative), 1867:no pag.................................288
Figure 144: Spieseke’s presentation of bound pronouns marking number and person on the verb, 1878:57 (Wergaya) .................................................................290
Figure 145: Teichelmann & Schürmann’s presentation of bound pronouns as the ‘optative mood’ of the verb, 1840:18.................................................................290
Figure 146: Teichelmann & Schürmann’s presentation of bound pronouns as the ‘imperative mood’ of the verb, 1840:17.................................................................291
Figure 147: Bound pronouns in Kaurna........................................................................292
Figure 148: Schürmann’s presentation of bound pronouns, 1844a:22..........................295
Figure 149: Mathews’ exemplification of Djadjala bound pronouns in possessive case, 1902a:78........................................................................................................297
Figure 150: Capell’s description of bound pronouns in ergative and accusative cases in based on Mathews’ Gundungurra (1901a) grammar, 1937:68.................................297
Figure 151: Reuther’s declension of dual possessive pronouns 1894:21 .........................303
Figure 152: Koch’s description of possessive pronouns 1868:no pag.........................304
Figure 153: Taplin’s description of possessive pronouns, 1867:no pag. (Ngarrindjeri) ....305
Figure 154: Koch’s template of verbal morphology, 1868:no pag...............................306
Figure 155: Flierl’s template of verbal morphology, 1880:48........................................306
Figure 156: Table showing grammatical descriptions of Diyari produced during the HMI phase of mission activity at Bethesda.........................................................309
Figure 157: E.T.Vogelsang’s annotated copy of Fleirl & Meyer (1880)........................313
Figure 158: Pages from H.H.Vogelsang’s correspondence to A.W.Howitt showing two styles of writing 1880-1881 .................................................................316
Figure 159: The Diyari primer, 1870.............................................................................318
Figure 160: Sample text from The Diyari primer, Homann & Koch 1870:16 .............320
Figure 161: Sample of Schoknecht’s orthography, 1947:3[1872]..................................320
Figure 162: Sample of Koch’s orthography, 1868:no pag.........................................321
Figure 163: Sample of Schoknecht’s orthography, 1947:4[1872]..................................321
Figure 164: Koch’s declension of a male personal name, 1868:no pag......................322
Figure 165: Reuther’s declension of a male personal name, 1894:13..........................322
Figure 166: Neuendettelsau missionary-grammarians trained by Deinzer.................324
Figure 167: Languages of the Lake Eyre Basin (Anggarrgon 2008).........................326
Figure 168: Flierl’s comparative Diyari and Wangkangurru grammar 1880...............327
Figure 169: Flierl’s comparative vocabulary of four languages spoken close to the mission 1880...............................................................327
Figure 170: Planert’s two-dimensional representation of Australian phonology, 1907:551-552 ...........................................................................................................334
Figure 171: Lepsius’ representation of Kaurna, 1863:266...........................................334
Figure 172: Fraser’s grid of Australian consonants, 1892:8 ................................................... 334
Figure 173: Gatti’s map of Australian languages, 1834:no pag. ............................................ 336
Figure 174: Flierl’s Redeteile ‘parts of speech’, 1880:6 ............................................................ 337
Figure 175: Reuther’s Redeteile ‘parts of speech’, 1894:2 ..................................................... 337
Figure 176: Gatti’s case paradigm, 1930:58 ........................................................................... 340
Figure 177: Flierl’s explanation of different marking of arguments of transitive and intransitive verbs, 1880:32 ...................................................................................................... 342
Figure 178: Koch’s case paradigm of dual nouns, 1868 .......................................................... 343
Figure 179: Flierl’s case paradigm of singular nouns, 1880:10-11 ........................................ 343
Figure 180: Koch’s pronominal paradigm, 1868 ................................................................. 344
Figure 181: Flierl’s pronominal paradigm, 1880:18-19 ......................................................... 344
Figure 182: Planert’s case paradigm of Diyari interrogatives, 1908:689 .................................... 345
Figure 183: Planert’s case paradigm of Diyari personal pronouns, 1908:689 .......................... 346
Figure 184: Reuther’s Diyari case paradigm (1894:no pag.) showing the ergative case at the bottom of the paradigm, labelled ‘ablative’ ........................................................................... 347
Figure 185: Koch’s case paradigm of interrogatives, 1868:no pag. ........................................ 349
Figure 186: Flierl’s case paradigm of interrogatives, 1880:22-23 .......................................... 349
Figure 187: Ergative case marking on both constituents of a continuous NP in Diyari (Austin 2013:97[1981a]) ...................................................................................................................... 350
Figure 188: Kramer’s copy of C.Strehlow's comparative table of case forms 1931a:48-49 [c.1907] ................................................................................................................................... 351
Figure 189: The syntactic alignment of different nominal types in Diyari (from Austin 2013:52) ........................................................................................................................................... 352
Figure 190: Syncretism of Diyari cases on different types of noun (content informed by Austin 2013:53-55) .................................................................................................................. 352
Figure 191: Koch’s WP presentation of Diyari pronouns (1868). ............................................. 354
Figure 192: Koch’s noun case paradigm, 1868:no pag. .......................................................... 355
Figure 193: Reuther’s noun case paradigm, 1894:5-6 ............................................................. 357
Figure 194: Reuther’s case paradigm of a female personal noun, 1894:11 .................................. 361
Figure 195: Koch's Deklination der Eigenamen (Declension of proper nouns) (1868:no pag.) ........................................................................................................................................... 361
Figure 196: Planert’s first two classes of nominal declension in Diyari (1908:690) ................. 362
Figure 197: Reuther’s class of ‘postpositions’, which are ‘independent words' ......................... 363
Figure 198: Flierl’s (1880:52) list of ‘einsilbige Affixe’ (monosyllabic affixes) ......................... 364
Figure 199: W.Koch's description of the functional difference between the two 1nonsg pronouns ........................................................................................................................................... 367
Figure 200: Flierl’s first person pronominal paradigm, 1880:18-19 ......................................... 368
Figure 201: Koch’s description of the unmarked inalienably possessed NP, where the possessor is a noun, 1868:no pag. ........................................................................................................ 369
Figure 202: The unmarked inalienably possessed NP where the possessor is pronominal, Koch 1868:no pag. ..........................................................370
Figure 203: E.Kramer’s copy of C.Strehlow’s grammar (1931a [c.1907:36]) showing reference to ‘Th. Str.’ ..........................................................382
Figure 204: Title page from Gillen 1894 ..........................................................................................................................386
Figure 205: Mathews’ exemplification of verbal complexity, 1907b:334 .............................................................391
Figure 206: Analysis of Kempe’s first class of ‘preposition’ ..........................................................392
Figure 207: Analysis of Kempe’s second class of ‘preposition’ ..............................................................................................................393
Figure 208: Nominal inflections on nouns in Arrernte which have been described as marking case..........................................................394
Figure 209: Kempe’s case paradigm of singular nouns, 1891:3 ..........................................................394
Figure 210: Kempe’s explanation of ergativity, 1891:3 ..............................................................................................................395
Figure 211: E.Kramer’s copy of C.Strehlow’s comparative case paradigm of singular nouns in three languages, 1931a:50-51 [c.1907] ..............................................................................................................397
Figure 212: E.Kramer’s copy of C.Strehlow’s comparative case paradigm of dual pronouns in three languages, ..............................................................................................................397
Figure 213: Planert’s case paradigm showing the terms ‘absolutive’ and ‘ergative’, 1907a:555 ..............................................................................................................398
Figure 214: C.Strehlow’s later extended case paradigm of nouns, showing the term ‘ergative’, 1908:699-700 ..............................................................................................................399
Figure 215: Kempe’s case paradigm of singular nouns, 1891:3 ..............................................................................................................399
Figure 216: C.Strehlow’s comparative case paradigm of Arrernte and Luritja nouns, 1910:11 ..............................................................................................................400
Figure 217: Riedel’s case paradigm of nouns, 1931:104 [c.1923] ..........................................................................................400
Figure 218: The different alignment of the syntactic cases on types of nouns in Western Arrernte and Mparntwe Arrernte ..........................402
Figure 219: E.Kramer’s copy of C.Strehlow’s recognition of the sensitivity of accusative marking to animacy, 1931a:33 [c.1907] ..............................................................................................................403
Figure 220: Kempe’s description of the function of ‘genitive’, ‘dative’ and accusative cases, 1891:3 ..............................................................................................................408
Figure 221: The marking of dative and possessive functions in Western and Mparntwe Arrernte ..........................................................408
Figure 222: T.G.H.Strehlow’s declension of an inanimate object (1944:80[1938]) ..............................................................................................................409
Figure 223: Threlkeld’s presentation of –pa in a discussion of the subjunctive mood of the verb, 1834:70 ..............................................................................................................413
Figure 224: Austin 2013:221[1981a]) ..............................................................................................................420
Figure 225: Teichelmann’s annotated copy (1858a) of the grammar he published with Schürmann (1840) ..............................................................................................................423
Figure 226: Meyer’s illustration of demonstrative pronouns acting to form subordinate clauses, 1843:32 ..............................................................................................................425
Figure 227: Kempe’s description of clause subordination, 1891:11 ..............................................................................................................431
Figure 228 E.Kramer’s copy of C.Strehlow’s description of relative pronouns, 1931a [c.1907]:39-40..........................................................................................................................434

Figure 229 Copy of C.Strehlow’s analysis of Arrernte (1931b [c.1907]) made by an unknown typist (no page). .....................................................................................................................................435
Chapter 1:  
‘The Peculiar nature of the language’

When the Australian continent was colonised by the British in 1788, what is arguably a single family of languages (Bowern & Atkinson 2012) termed Pama-Nyungan, was spoken across a large proportion — ninety percent — of the landmass, from the islands off the tip of the continent’s northeastern extremity, Cape York Peninsula, down across the entire southern portion of the continent. The estimated 290 Pama-Nyungan (henceforth PN) languages and their dialects (ibid.,817) show a degree of grammatical similarity that stands in contrast to the linguistic diversity found in the remaining and comparatively much smaller areas in Australia’s north, northwest and Tasmania (Figure 3).2

This thesis assesses what was discovered about the morphology and syntax of Australian Aboriginal languages prior to the era of institutionalised academic investigation into Australian linguistic structure. By defining the body of historical grammatical records, and examining the nature of the intellectual network in which appreciation of PN morpho-syntactic structure evolved, this study traces the developing understanding and ability to describe Australian languages. The extent to which missionary-grammarians working in remote and diverse locations across the vast Australian continent had access to their predecessors’ descriptions, or alternatively, worked in intellectual isolation, has not previously been well understood.

The title of this chapter: “The peculiar nature of the language spoken” (Meyer 1843:vii; Kempe 1891:1) is drawn from two early grammars of the Australian Aboriginal languages by

---

1The status of Pama-Nyungan as a phylogenetic entity has been much debated by Australian linguists. The notion has been contested by Dixon who, while recognising the group typologically, believes that diffusion of features between languages that have existed side by side for exceptionally long periods of time renders the comparative linguistic method invalid for Australia (1980:226-227;225-226; 2002:xix;48;53). His claims have been widely refuted (Bowern 2006;2012; Evans & McConvell 1998; Koch 2014:40) and sometimes vehemently opposed. O’Grady and Hale (2004:69) wrote:

For decade after decade, Dixon … has persisted in the same wrong-headed assessment of the phylogenetic status of the large Pama-Nyungant group of Australian Aboriginal languages. His claim, which is extravagantly and spectacularly erroneous, is that it has no genetic significance in the wider Australian linguistic context. Moreover he denies that the Comparative Method can be applied to Australian languages.

This approach is so bizarrely faulted, and such an insult to the eminently successful practitioners of Comparative Method Linguistics in Australia, that it positively demands a decisive riposte.

---

2 The languages spoken in this smaller northerly region are referred to as non-Pama-Nyungan, a category defined by the features these languages do not share with Pama-Nyungan. The present day boundary between the Pama-Nyungan and non-Pama-Nyungan languages, although still subject to conjecture, was largely established by the American linguist Ken Hale (1961). Hale coined the term Pama-Nyungan, by compounding words meaning ‘man’ in the languages spoken in the recognised extremities of the Pama-Nyungan region; Pama ‘man’ in Cape York and Nyungar ‘man’ in the southwest of Western Australia. In employing this ‘man-man’ naming method Hale followed the practice employed by Schmidt when naming Australian linguistic subgroups (Koch 2004:20).
Lutheran missionaries. These authors, and their fellow early Australian grammarians, encountered languages with word and phrase structures that were beyond what was considered linguistically possible. Australian Aboriginal languages were commonly described as ‘peculiar’ (Threlkeld 1834:x; Meyer 1843:vii; Günther 1892:57[1838]; Brough Smyth 1878:lxii; Haeckel 1876:315[1868]).

Haspelmath (2001:1492) explains:

It was only towards the end of the 20th century, as more and more had become known about the grammatical properties of the languages of the rest of the world, that linguists realised how peculiar the core European languages are in some ways when seen in the world-wide context.

Eurocentric linguistic understanding, informed largely by knowledge of standard average European languages (Whorf 1941[1939]) (henceforth SAE) skewed early nineteenth-century perspectives of unfamiliar structures. When accounting for the distortion of Inuktitut syntactic structures in early grammatical descriptions, Nowak (1993) puts it metaphorically describing the language as having been viewed through a ‘looking glass’.

In appraising lineages of PN grammatical description, this historiographic investigation focuses particularly on aspects of morphology and syntax that the early grammarians perceived as peculiar. It is the description of these areas of grammar, in which an early grammarian was theoretically and descriptively out of his depth, that evince reliance on the work of predecessors. The description of case systems, of ergative forms and function, and of processes of clause subordination have been found to be fruitful areas of historiographical enquiry.

In seeking to “reconstruct the linguistic thought of earlier times” (McGregor 2008a:1), this examination of early morpho-syntactic description of PN languages is essentially an epistemological task. Although early wordlists, which were sometimes illustrated with sentence examples, contain much morpho-syntactic content, such material is excluded from this study, which confines itself to assessing the early analysis of Australian morphosyntax.

Interest in the historiography of Australian languages is a fairly recent phenomenon. Due to Australia’s relatively late colonisation, much missionary linguistic effort in the country postdates the era before 1850, upon which global missionary linguistic historiography has focussed (Zwartjes et al 2014:vii). In the introduction to the only edited volume dealing with the historiography of Australian languages, McGregor (2008a:2) writes:

rather little has been written on the historiography of Australian Aboriginal linguistics. One might say that the subject has barely been born, though it has at least been conceived.

While historiographical studies of Australian languages are becoming less rare (McGregor 2008b:122-123), few works investigate the development of morpho-syntactic description. As
both Newton (1987) and McGregor (2008:13) have pointed out, Australian linguistic histories have tended to be chronological overviews of existing materials. When they have ventured into the historiographic realm, the focus has largely remained on the developing understanding of phonology, and its orthographic manifestation (e.g., Austin 2008), rather than on the developing understanding of morphology and syntax. Newton’s (1987) own study of developing ideas about Australian Aboriginal languages before 1860 similarly compares early orthographies, but does not probe the nature of the early grammatical analyses.

A few works are unusual in illuminating how and why particular PN structures were misconstrued within developing understandings of morphosyntactic structure. They include Koch’s (2008) assessment of R.H.Mathews’ large body of grammatical material, and Blake’s (in press; 2015) discussions of the early linguistic work carried out in the southeast of the country. But even these works, and others like them (e.g., Simpson et al 2008; Wafer & Carey 2011), do not attempt to place the analysis made by individual grammarians, or groups of grammarians, within a broader picture of early PN description.

Within the near vacuum of Australian linguistic historiography, the influence of the earliest grammar of a PN language (Threlkeld 1834) on later work has been assumed (e.g., Carey 2004:264-269; Simpson et al 2008:91). Threlkeld’s published work is described (Carey 2004:269) as having been:

> essential in establishing a framework for the study of his fellow-missionary linguists including Watson and Günther at Wellington, and Meyer, Schürmann and Teichelmann in South Australia. He set a standard for other missionary work in the field which followed soon after.

But without properly comparing the terminology and descriptive practices that Threlkeld employed with later descriptions of Pama-Nyungan languages it is impossible to know which standards he may have set, who may have followed them, and which aspects of his description were, and were not, followed by later grammarians.

McGregor’s “history of the histories of Australian languages” (2008a:2-13) shows many Australian linguists agreeing that the 1930s was a watershed decade in Australian linguistic thought (O’Grady et al 1966; Capell 1970; 1972; Dixon 1980; Blake 1981; Dixon & Blake 1991). It was then that a wave of urgency to record fast disappearing linguistic and ethnological data from people and cultures generally considered to be doomed for extinction (Haeckel 1876:325[1868]; Harris 1994:28; Anderson & Perrin 2007:21) activated systematic recording of Australian languages by the country’s academic institutions. McGregor establishes three periods of Australian linguistic description, the first pre 1930, the second 1930-1960 and the third 1960-present (2008a:9-20). The pre-contemporary era of Australian linguistic description
(henceforth early description) considered in this thesis coincides roughly with McGregor’s first era. This thesis examines works written between 1834, the year missionary Threlkeld published the first PN grammar, and 1910, when C.Strehlow wrote a comparative Arrernte and Luritja grammar. Not a single new grammatical analysis of a PN language was written between 1910 and 1930. Coincidentally, the first works to appear in the 1930s were of the same, or closely related, languages recorded by C.Strehlow (1910). These are a grammar of Western Arrernte, written by T.G.H.Strehlow (1944[1938]), who was C.Strehlow’s son, and R.Trudinger’s grammar of Pitjantjatjara (1943), which was based, in part, on J.R.B.Love’s (1937) MS grammar of the language. The only other PN grammar known to have been produced during the same period is a first grammar of Wik-Mungkan by U.McConnel (1888-1957) written close to 1940 (Peter Sutton pers. comm.) based on fieldwork conducted between 1927 and 1934 (Sutton, in preparation).

While thoroughgoing linguistic investigation did not commence in Australia until the 1960s, when inaugural chairs of linguistics were established at Australian universities, some academic investigation of Australian languages commenced on the cusp of the first and second descriptive eras, within the discipline of anthropology at the University of Sydney, where A.R.Radcliffe-Brown had been appointed Australia’s first chair of the discipline in 1926, and a little later at the University of Adelaide, by a multi-disciplinary team that in 1930-1931 formed “a small language committee ... [which formulated] after much consideration, a working list of phonetic symbols applicable to the general study of central Australian languages” (Tindale 1935:261). The University of Adelaide language committee consisted of N.Tindale (1900-1993), C.Chewings (1859-1937) and J.A.FitzHerbert (1872–1970).

Fewer than ten percent of PN languages were grammatically described before 1930. European philologists commonly mentioned the scarcity of Australian linguistic material (e.g., H.C.von der Gabelentz 1861:489; Müller 1867:241;1882:2; G.von der Gabelentz 1891:403). The Austrian linguist and ethnologist W.Schmidt (1868-1954) (1946:941) described “a desolate lack of scientifically recorded materials for most Australian languages”. In review of Schmidt’s classification of Australian languages (1919b), the American anthropologist A.L.Kroeber (1921:226) observed that the international contribution to Australian linguistics stood in contrast to the apathy of linguistic researchers in Australia:

3 “De[r] trostlose[] Mangel an wissenschaftlich aufgenommem Material ... bei dem grössten Teil der ... australischen Sprachen” (Schmidt 1946:941).
It is remarkable that there does not exist a single first-class monograph or body of material on any one of
the native languages of this continent. This distressing fact should burn into the minds of all who profess
interest in learning and science. Perhaps the realisation that the first scholarly attempt to deal seriously
with these tongues was made in German by an Austrian priest will stir Australians into effort.

The commencement of the second descriptive era of linguistic research in Australia
(c.1930-1960) is characterised as having focussed “strong attention on structural and
typological features” (Wurm 1972:17). Its onset is demarcated by three typological studies: the
study of Australian languages made by the British linguist S.Ray (1858-1939) (1925), who had
previously written grammars of Paman languages (1893;1907), and the studies produced in
1937 by the Australian linguistic researchers A.Capell (1902-1986) and A.P.Elkin (1891-1979),
both of whom steered Australian linguistics towards the modern era (Figure 2). Ranging freely
over the early descriptions of Australian languages, these three works collated and synthesised
data presented in the primary sources examined in this thesis. They provide valuable insight
into the understanding of PN structure that was discoverable at the time.

The early descriptions of Australian morphology and syntax examined in this thesis initially
received little attention within the most recent era of grammatical description (1960-). Assessment of the value of the data contained in these antique records was understandably not
prioritised by linguists in the modern era, who concentrated on documenting languages from
the last generations of fluent speakers. The early grammars were most likely to be mentioned
in accounts of ‘earlier work on the language’ given in the introductions to modern grammars.
The brevity of summations like the following (Haviland 1979:35) assessment of Schwarz and
Poland’s (1900) and Roth’s (1901) descriptions of Guugu-Yimidhirr is not uncommon:

All this work [in early sources] suffered from a basic misunderstanding of the sound system of
the language … and from a heavy reliance on grammatical categories derived from the study of
European languages and decidedly inappropriate for an analysis of Guugu-Yimidhirr.

The grammatical description of dying Australian languages made during the last decades
of the twentieth century by linguists such as Haviland now brings a wealth of valuable insight
with which to assess the early grammars (§2.1).

Nevertheless, there has been a tendency within the third era of Australian linguistic
description to dismiss the body of work considered in this thesis as having been produced by
‘amateurs’ (e.g., Dixon 1980:15; Blake & Dixon 1991:4). The tendency to ignore, or to
downplay, the contribution that missionaries made to the understanding of Australian linguistic
structures sits within a general disregard of missionary linguistics, both within Australia (Carey
2004:260-261) and globally (McGregor 2008b:121).
Considering the training and preparation received by many of the early missionary-grammarians, it is difficult to conceive of an intended meaning of the term ‘amateur’ which is not overly anachronistic. Rev W.Ridley (Appendix 1§1.1), who published on Gamilaraay spoken in New South Wales between the 1850s and the 1870s, was trained at Kings College London, held an MA from the University of Sydney, and had learnt Gaelic. His first publication on Gamilaraay appeared in the London-based *Transactions of the Philological Society*. Ridley is no better described as ‘amateur’ than are some of the well-read ‘armchair’ philologists in Europe, such as S.Ray (Appendix 1§1.4) and H.C.von der Gabelentz (1807-1874), who similarly described Australian languages with no formal philological, or linguistic, training, but who are not usually described as amateurs.\(^4\) While it is perhaps true that some of the early grammars produced in Australia are not as professionally compiled as some of the primary descriptions produced outside the country by men of academic standing — Hale (1846), Ray & Haddon (1893) and Ray (1907) — the insightful and sometimes inaugural description of PN structures given in many of the Australian sources evince skilful analyses that are better described as ‘pioneering’ works written by ‘forerunners’ on a pre-theoretical descriptive frontier. Appropriating Elkin’s description of early anthropologists in Australia (1975:1), the early grammarians may have been amateurs, but they were not necessarily amateurish.

The historiography of Australian linguistics complements recent investigations of the development of anthropological understandings of Aboriginal people (Weit 2004; Kenny, 2013; Gardner & McConvell 2015). Regarding, the historical treatment of Threlkeld’s legacy, Roberts (2008:108) observes:

> Historians have made extensive use of the larger body of material, but have tended to gloss over [Threlkeld’s] linguistic works … their significance and their relevance have not been well understood by historians.

This observation that Threlkeld’s linguistic achievements have not received adequate historical attention equally applies to other early Australian grammarians considered in this thesis. It is, for instance, surprising that despite making detailed study of diaries, letters and anthropological work, the major biographical studies of the missionary-grammarian C.Strehlow (J.Strehlow 2011; Kenny 2013) and of his son T.G.H.Strehlow (McNally 1981; Hill 2002), do not enquire into the nature of their subjects’ grammatical analyses in order to properly probe their linguistic work for signs of influence and collaboration. While it is true that “there has been increasing fascination with the social and cultural evidence that missionary linguistics provides about interaction with indigenous peoples across the contact zone” (Wafer & Carey 2011:13), these

---

\(^4\) Ray’s first description of a PN language (1893) was written before he visited the region.
early grammatical descriptions warrant closer inter-disciplinary examination. Tracing philological influence through the comparative study of the early grammatical sources is of broad historical relevance.

Due to the high rate of linguistic extinction in Australia\(^5\), the historic record of PN morphosyntax is of increasing significance within a number of fields of philological enquiry. Grammars that stand as the sole record of a lost language have received considerable attention from within the language reclamation and revitalisation movement that has gained considerable momentum among Aboriginal descendants of speakers (Hobson \textit{et al} 2010). The revival of Kaurna (Amery 2016[2000]), for example, the language of the Adelaide plains, would have been impossible without the grammar produced by Lutheran missionaries Teichelmann and Schürmann (1840). Similarly, the reconstitution of Awabakal (Lissarrague 2006; Oppliger 1984) is based on Threlkeld (1827;1834;1850).

But beyond the revival context, the optimal reclamation of material from the early grammars is crucial in the reconstruction of the Australian pre-contact linguistic landscape. These documents play a role in the description of endangered languages as linguists are “forced to turn to work by these linguistically naïve recorders to augment their own inadequate corpora” (McGregor 2000:445). Philological investigation of these early materials continues to contribute to the understanding of Pama-Nyungan typology (e.g., Dixon 2002a) and to the ongoing internal classification of Pama-Nyungan languages (e.g., Bowern and Atkinson 2012). The documents considered in this thesis are precious and rare resources of increasing relevance. As such, they deserve careful and close scrutiny.

One might conceive of a fourth era of Australian linguistic studies, commencing towards the end of the twentieth century, with a focus on the description of language contact varieties (see Meakins 2014:365-366), and on the philological investigation of nineteenth century records.

---

\(^5\) Australia’s indigenous languages have suffered a high rate of extinction since colonisation. The second National Indigenous Languages Survey (NILS 2) puts the number of ‘strong’ Aboriginal languages that continue to be acquired by children in 2014 at 13, a decrease of five languages since the first NILS report in 2005 (Marmion \textit{et al} 2014:xii).
1.1 The corpus of early PN description

Figure 1 summarises the corpus of early PN grammatical description, which covers twenty-four languages. It shows that most early grammars of PN languages were made by missionaries. With the exception of the otherwise anomalous grammars by R.H. Mathews (§4.3), whose numerous works substantially enlarge the body of ‘non-missionary’ description, only about one quarter of the grammars in the corpus (henceforth corpus grammars) were not written by missionaries. Although missionaries produced a substantial proportion of the corpus, it is important to realise that their efforts were unusual. Australian missionaries tended not to investigate Aboriginal languages (Harris 1994:805). The more general distinterest in Aboriginal languages from missionaries sits within what missionary Thelkeld (1850:10) described as

almost sovereign contempt with which the Aboriginal language of New South Wales has been treated in this Colony, and the indifference shown toward the attempt to gain information on the subject, are not highly indicative of the love of science in this part of the globe, and for which it is difficult to account.

With exception again to Mathews, the grammars written by non-missionaries were either written outside the country (Ray & Haddon 1893; Ray 1907; Planert 1907, 1908; Gatti 1930), or by men appointed to the office of Protector of Aborigines (Symmons 1841; Moorhouse 1846; Roth 1901). While the duties of Protector extended to learning Aboriginal languages (Jones 1996:50; Blake, in press), grammatical study was made only by those who happened to possess the required aptitude and inclination.
Figure 1: The corpus of early grammatical descriptions of Pama-Nyungan languages.

Shaded works are those that were dependent on earlier missionary analysis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Language</th>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Published</th>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Author’s Vocation</th>
<th>Language written in</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wiradjuri</td>
<td>c.1835-1838</td>
<td>Lost MS</td>
<td>W. Watson (1798–1866)</td>
<td>Missionary, Church Mission Society</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>c. 1835</td>
<td>Lost MS</td>
<td>J.S.C. Handt (1783-1863)</td>
<td>Basel-trained, Church of England missionary</td>
<td>Unknown, probably German</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1838 &amp; 1840</td>
<td>MS</td>
<td>W.J. Günther (1806–1879)</td>
<td>Basel-trained, Church of England missionary</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1841</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>C. Symmons (1804–1887)</td>
<td>Sub-guardian of Natives, Swan River Colony (Perth)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barnarla</td>
<td>1844a††</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>C.W. Schürmann (1815–1893)</td>
<td>Missionary, Lutheran, Dresden Mission Institute</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ramindjeri</td>
<td>1843††</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>H.A.E. Meyer (1813–1862)</td>
<td>Missionary, Lutheran, Dresden Mission Institute</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ngarrindjeri</td>
<td>1867</td>
<td>MS</td>
<td>G.Taplin (1831–1879)</td>
<td>Missionary, Congregationalist</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1870, 1872, 1874, 1879</td>
<td>MS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1878, 1880</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ngayawang</td>
<td>1846</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>M. Moorhouse (1813–1876)</td>
<td>Protector of Aborigines, South Australia</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gamilaraay and Turrubul</td>
<td>1866</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>W.M. Ridley (1819–1878)</td>
<td>Missionary, Presbyterian</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gamilaraay</td>
<td>1856b</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1855a</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1875</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dyiari</td>
<td>1868*</td>
<td>MS</td>
<td>W.Koch (1848–1869)</td>
<td>Teacher at the Lutheran mission</td>
<td>German</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1880††</td>
<td>MS</td>
<td>J. Flierl (1858–1947)</td>
<td>Missionary, Lutheran, Neuendettelsau</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1908</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>W. Planert (1882–post 1940)</td>
<td>Student of Prof. Luschan, at the Royal Museum for Ethnology, Berlin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1930</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>G. Gatti (dates unknown)</td>
<td>Italian linguist</td>
<td>Italian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wangkangurru</td>
<td>1880††</td>
<td>MS</td>
<td>J.Flierl</td>
<td>See above</td>
<td>German</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Language</td>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Author's Vocation</td>
<td>Language written in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yandruwandha</td>
<td>1981[1901]††</td>
<td>MS</td>
<td>J.G.Reuther</td>
<td>See above</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ganai</td>
<td>1878</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>J. Bulmer (1833–1913)</td>
<td>Missionary, Church of England</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wergaya</td>
<td>1878</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>F.A Hagenauer (1829–1909)</td>
<td>Missionary, Moravian</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minjangbal</td>
<td>1892</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>H. Livingstone (dates unknown)</td>
<td>Missionary, Presbyterian</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western Arrernte</td>
<td>1891††</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>H. Kempe (1844–1928)</td>
<td>Missionary, Lutheran, Hermannsburg Mission Society</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1907</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>W. Planert</td>
<td>See above</td>
<td>German</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1910</td>
<td>MS</td>
<td>C.Strehlow (1871–1922)</td>
<td>Missionary, Lutheran, Neuendettelsau</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1931 [c.1907]††</td>
<td>MS</td>
<td>C.Strehlow</td>
<td>See above</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1931 [c.1923]††</td>
<td>MS</td>
<td>J. Riedel (1885–1961)</td>
<td>Missionary, Lutheran, Neuendettelsau</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1908††</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>C.Strehlow</td>
<td>See above</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luritja</td>
<td>1910</td>
<td>MS</td>
<td>C.Strehlow</td>
<td>See above</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pitta-Pitta</td>
<td>1897</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>W.E Roth (1861–1933)</td>
<td>Medical doctor</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kalaw Lagaw Ya,</td>
<td>1893†</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>S. Ray (1858–1939) &amp; A. Haddon (1855–1940)</td>
<td>Linguist (Ray), Cambridge biologist (Haddon)</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western Torres</td>
<td>1907†</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>S. Ray</td>
<td>Linguist, Cambridge Anthropological Expedition to the Torres Straits</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strats</td>
<td>1907†</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gadhaykenu</td>
<td>1907†</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nggerrikwidhi</td>
<td>1901</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>W.E Roth</td>
<td>Protector of Aborigines for the Northern District of Queensland</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1903</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>N. Hey (1862–1915)</td>
<td>Missionary, Moravian</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Grammars of some dozen Pama-Nyungan languages, predominantly from the southeast, by self-taught philologist and ethnologist, R.H.Mathews (1841-1918), published in numerous Australian and international journals (see Koch, 2008).

Figure 1: The corpus of early grammatical descriptions of Pama-Nyungan languages.

Shaded works are those that were dependent on earlier missionary analysis.

*This grammar is assigned to W.Koch, a teacher at the mission, on internal historical evidence (§8.4). The document does not attribute authorship.

**Earlier grammatical notes on Guugu-Yimidhirr written in German by Poland in a letter sent to Neuendettelsau (18/08/1889) (Haviland 1980:133) have, unfortunately, not been sourced for the purpose of this study.

† Grammars by Ray & Haddon (1893) and Ray (1907) are presented within an extensive classification of languages of the Torres Strait and thus differ from other work considered in the corpus by being written for historical and comparative purpose.

†† These grammars are of languages spoken in South Australia, which until 1911 included the Northern Territory and were made by Lutheran missionaries.
A relatively small number of early grammatical descriptions are excluded from the corpus on the grounds that they do not contain detailed enough description to warrant comparison with other sources. The criterion for inclusion is that a work contains a reasonably comprehensive description — for the era and relative to other grammars — of both nominal and verbal morphology. Notable exclusions include a description of Dharuk (1790-1791a) spoken in Sydney made by W.Dawes (1762-1836), C.Smith’s description of Bunganditj spoken in the southeast corner of South Australia (1880) — the material for which was supplied by Smith's son, Duncan Stewart —, J.Dawson’s descriptions of Jab-Wurrung and Peek-Whurrung spoken in western Victoria (1881) and W.Thomas’ analysis of Woiwurrung spoken in Melbourne (Brough Smyth 1878, vol. II:118-120). These works tend to be sketchy grammatical notes appended to larger vocabularies or ethnographic descriptions.

It should be noted, however, that Dawes’ grammatical notebook (1790-1791a) is remarkable within the history of Aboriginal language description, in having been written so soon after the colonisation of New South Wales and decades before any subsequent grammatical description is known to have occurred. While Dawes does attempt to conjugate numerous verbs, the work does not make any description of case morphology on nouns or on pronouns. Thus Threlkeld’s grammar of Awabakal (1834) is described in this thesis as the earliest Australian grammar.

Although T.G.H.Strehlow’s MA thesis, ‘An Aranda grammar’ (1938), published in Oceania as part of ‘Aranda Phonetics and Grammar’ (1944) sits outside the timeframe of this thesis (1834-1910), the work is difficult to ignore. T.G.H.Strehlow’s description of Arrernte, a language with a longer analytical history than any other Australian language (Green 2012:159) provides the rare opportunity to make a longitudinal study of the history of description of a single language. Arrernte is the only corpus language that continues to be acquired by children. There are seven grammars of Arrernte written by five different authors that predate T.G.H.Strehlow’s long and detailed analysis, including three by his father C.Strehlow (1931a[c.1907];1908;1910), the missionary at Hermannsburg mission where T.G.H.Strehlow grew up. Examination of the contents of Strehlow’s grammar shows that despite being written within the academic sphere, and sitting on the cusp of the ‘second era’ of Australian linguistic description, the work adheres to the traditional descriptive framework more closely than some previous missionary analyses. While it might be anticipated that grammars of the ‘second era’

---

6 Note here that the time depth of Diyari grammatical description, commenced by Lutherans (Koch 1868), is shorter than that of Arrernte only because Arrernte continues to be spoken and grammatically described throughout the modern descriptive era.
would consider innovative methods of accommodating indigenous language structure, Strehlow’s analysis shows that grammars are not always usefully stereotyped by chronological classification.

1.1.1 The naming of languages

The naming of Aboriginal languages and the way they are spelled is not straightforward or apolitical. The terminology employed in this thesis is chosen primarily for ease of reference. Many of the names used to refer to languages — Awabakal, Kaurna, Ngarrindjeri and Arrernte — are the product of post-colonial linguistic and anthropological investigation. They were not recorded in the early sources. The language Threlkeld described was first named ‘Awabakal’ by Fraser (1892:v), the term being derived from the name of Lake Macquarie Awaba marked with the associative suffix –kal. The language is nowadays also referred to as ‘Hunter River and Lake Macquarie language’ or ‘HRLM’ (Lissarrague 2006; Wafer & Carey 2011) (see Keary 2009:117). The title of Threlkeld’s earliest grammar: *Australian grammar comprehending the principles and natural rules of the language spoken by the Aborigines in the vicinity of Hunter’s River, Lake Macquarie, &c* (1834) is typical of many works in the corpus in identifying the language by the location in which it was spoken. Examine, for example, the titles of Threlkeld (1827;1850), Teichelmann & Schürmann (1840), Meyer (1843), Moorhouse (1846), Hagenauer (1878) and Kempe (1891). The mechanisms by which many language names — with all their variant spellings⁷ — came to be the accepted descriptors of languages, and of the people speaking them, can be difficult to retrieve from the historical record and remain generally not well understood. Sutton (1979:89) comments: “the question of what language names or labels actually refer to, and how they function in Aboriginal societies, has in general been neglected”. The processes by which the nomenclature has developed since colonisation and has been assumed by Aboriginal people, who now identify as owners of these newly named varieties, is of considerable interest. Sections 5.1.1 and 9.2.3 discuss the evolution of the terms ‘Kaurna’ and ‘Arrernte’ respectively.

While the thesis examines only Pama-Nyungan languages, the corpus languages may be referred to as ‘Australian’ rather than ‘Pama-Nyungan’ in order to better reflect the early grammarians’ point of view. Although the division of mainland Australian languages into two high level groups — ‘Sprachstämme’ — was recognised in very early philological publications (Bleek 1858;prelim. pag.; F.Müller 1867:241) and later by W.Schmidt (1919b) (see Koch 2014

---

⁷ See for instance, Austin (1993:8) for a list of the twenty-one spellings of the language name ‘Gamilaraay’, to which this investigation adds ‘Gammilurai’ (§4.1.1).
for a history of ideas about the internal relations of Australian languages), scarcely anything was known about non-Pama-Nyungan languages. The term ‘Pama-Nyungan’, and a grammatical distinction between languages in the far north and those featured in the corpus was meaningless to the early grammarians.

### 1.1.2 Lutheran grammarians

A large proportion of the missionary grammars were written by Lutherans. Lutheran missionaries made comparatively detailed grammatical descriptions of seven South Australian Aboriginal languages before the turn of the twentieth century: Kaurna, Ramindjeri, Barngarla, Diyari, Wangkangurru, Yandruwandha and Arrernte (Figure 1).8 The earliest wave of Lutheran description in South Australia (Chapters 5, 6, 7) has previously been recognised as belonging to a descriptive school termed ‘the Adelaide School’ (Simpson 1992:410).

The swiftness with which missions were established in the Colony of South Australia, after its founding in 1836, is atypical of the wider Australian experience.9 In 1838, the founding chairman of the South Australian Company, George Fife Angas (1789-1879), assisted the passage to the colony of graduates from the Evangelical-Lutheran Mission Society of Dresden to work among the Aboriginal population of the South Australian colony (Lockwood 2014:61-65). These Lutherans dominated the early grammatical description of South Australian languages — including those spoken within the present-day Northern Territory, which was not separated from South Australia until 1911.

While S.Ray described “the existing material for the study of Aboriginal languages” as “of a very unsatisfactory manner” (1925:2), he lists the South Australian Lutheran grammars among the “the best of the early grammars” (ibid.,2). The calibre of grammars produced in South Australia was also noted by Capell (1970:667).10

---

8 Koonibba, established in 1901, was the last Lutheran mission to Aboriginal people established in South Australia. Pastor C.A.Wiebusch who ministered at Koonibba from 1910 compiled a ‘Julbara’ (Wirangu) wordlist, and other vocabularies of Wirangu, Mirning and Kokatha were collected at the mission (Hoff 2004). No grammatical description appears to have been made at Koonibba.

9 The 1834 South Australian colonisation act was passed relatively late within British imperial history. Secretary of State to the Colonies, Lord Glenelg, was among a group of humanitarians who insisted in letters issued to the Colonisation Commission in 1836 that the welfare and rights to land of Aboriginal people in South Australia be formally protected by the Colonial Office (Reynolds 1987:94-102). Mission to Aboriginal people in South Australia was subsequently better considered and supported, albeit still inadequately, than in other states.

10 Capell incorrectly describes Teichelmann and Schürmann as Moravian and confuses the publication dates of Teichelmann and Schürmann’s and Schürmann’s grammars with one another (1970:668).
Carey (2004:258-259) writes:

Early missions to the Australian Aborigines ...were rarely successful whether success is measured in terms of conversions and baptisms, or the more common linguistic coin of wordlists, grammars and scripture translations. Only a handful of missionaries produced published or unpublished records of their linguistic work that necessarily proceeded prior to evangelisation.

Here she overlooks the veracity with which Lutheran missionaries described languages spoken in South Australia. Roberts (2008:110) similarly unwittingly extrapolates the sparseness of early grammatical description of languages spoken in the earliest settled colony of New South Wales to Australia more broadly. So too does Dixon (1980:12), who delineates a period of linguistic research in Australia running between the mid 1840s and mid 1870s on the ground that the period exhibits a scarcity of linguistic description with “just a little new material coming from the missionaries”. He might be forgiven for treating the unpublished Lutheran grammars of Diyari written in German during the 1860s and 1870s as such, but dismissing the handful of high quality, published, South Australian grammars written in the early 1840s, places his assessment within a broader trivialisation of missionary descriptions.

Recent treatments of the Lutherans’ grammatical legacy in Australia have rightly emphasised that it was a conviction that the ‘heathen’ would be better converted to Christianity in their mother tongue that necessitated the Lutherans’ acquisition and description of Aboriginal languages (Graetz 1988:9; Kenny 2013:87). The case is made with reference to Luther having given “the German people scriptures in their own language” (Graetz 1998:9; Hill 2002:523-527), and to the related conviction that conversion should occur through the free will provided by understanding the scriptures in one’s first languages (Kenny 2013:87). Lutheran mission activity has been characterised as resting in German philosophical traditions hailing from J. C. Herder (1744-1803), which asserted that understanding a people’s language provided a window into their Volksgeist that was necessary for successful conversion (Kenny 2013:99).

However, such accounts obscure the fact that the same conviction was held by other evangelical denominations, as well as by Catholics working with non-PN languages at Beagle Bay and in the Daly River. Lutheran missionaries did not hold a monopoly on the belief that the ‘heathen’ were best converted to Christianity in their mother tongue. They were certainly not “singular in their embracing of Indigenous language in the service of mission” (Kneebone 2005b:362). Protestant missionaries of differing denominations in Australia were expected to learn the indigenous language spoken by the people they wished to convert. Missionary Threlkeld (Chapter 3), for example, “shared a devout belief that the scriptures alone (sciptura sola) were sufficient for salvation” (Wafer & Carey 2011:116), and his linguistic achievements were made as part of an established tradition of London Mission Society Bible translation.
Missionary Watson (§4.1), of the Church Mission Society, who established the Wellington Valley Mission in 1832, was instructed to “learn the language and reduce it to writing” (Bridges 1978:297). Congregationalist missionary Taplin (Appendix 2§1.1) similarly wasted no time in advancing the grammatical descriptions of Ngarrindjeri, and Moravian missionaries in Australia (Appendix 1§1.2; Appendix 2§1.3.3) were trained and also expected to learn the local language (Edwards 2007:319). The importance of linguistic analysis in order to translate religious texts is not even an exclusively Christian mission philosophy (Ostler 2004:33).

Note here also that Queensland is the only state other than South Australia in which there were nineteenth century Lutheran missions: Zion Hill (Nundah) (1838–1848), Nerang Creek (1869-1879), Cape Bedford (Elim, Hopevale) (1886-1942), Bethesda (Queensland) (1886-1881), Bloomfield (1887-1901), and Mari Yamba (1887-1902). Yet Queensland’s Aboriginal languages were scarcely recorded before the twentieth century. Manuscript grammatical descriptions of Guugu-Yimidhirr written by Neuendettelsau missionaries Poland and Schwarz (1900) at Cape Bedford, the longest enduring Queensland mission, are the only surviving Lutheran analyses of a Queensland language.

At Protestant missions around the country grammars and vocabularies were collated in order to carry out two interrelated tasks essential to evangelism: the translation of religious texts, and the preparation of materials for use in vernacular literacy programmes.

The Lutherans’ work can be said to differ from that of missionaries from other denominations only in terms of the extent to which the Lutherans produced vernacular literacy materials, and in terms of their success in teaching young Diyari, Arrernte, and Guugu-Yimidhirr Christian converts to read and write in their own language.

1.1.3 Secondary source material

The nature of linguistic work carried out in Australia during the nineteenth century runs counter to the Zeitgeist of genealogical and typological linguistic classification. While similarities between words in Australia and those from around the world were observed by researchers in Australia (Grey 1845; Taplin 1879; Curr 1886-87; Fraser 1892) as part of what Capell (1970:667) described as an “endemic of origin hunting”, the early PN grammars written in the country were predominantly synchronic, non-comparative, non-classificatory works made predominantly by missionaries for largely evangelistic purposes.

Studies of comparative linguistics, historical linguistics and, to a lesser extent, of linguistic typology probed the central question of linguistic and human origins within the nineteenth
century preoccupation with speculative historicism. As scientific theories of evolution revolutionised mid-nineteenth century thinking, the focus of philologists concentrated on genealogical classification of languages in order to determine the origins of people (Di Gregorio 2002). The empirical, non-classificatory and synchronic grammatical research produced in Australia informed a body of historical and classificatory literature which was overwhelmingly produced outside the country. The primary sources produced by missionaries in Australia, describing individual languages, provided fodder for the philological study of ‘Language’ made overseas. There is, however, as pointed out by Newton (1987:365-366), a curious neglect of Australian Aboriginal languages in some of the comparative philological works produced in Europe during the second half of the nineteenth century, for example, Pott (1884-1890) and F. Max Müller (1861-1864).

Figure 2 shows the major secondary studies of Australian linguistic structure that were informed by the corpus grammars. Following are brief overviews of some secondary works referred to throughout the thesis.
### Early secondary materials

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author, year of publication</th>
<th>Based on the earlier grammars by:</th>
<th>Type of work</th>
<th>Language written in</th>
<th>Author’s vocation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H. Hale, 1846</td>
<td>Threlkeld, 1834; Watson, no date</td>
<td>Classificatory</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>Philologist on the United States Exploring Expedition 1838-1842</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W. Bleek, 1858, 1872</td>
<td>Extensively sourced material contained in Sir G. Grey’s library</td>
<td>1858, Discussion of Australian linguistic structure 1872, Classificatory</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>German linguist with expertise in African languages and curator of the library of Sir George Grey held in Cape Town, South Africa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. Müller, 1867</td>
<td>Threlkeld, 1834; Watson, no date, Teichelmann and Schürmann, 1840, Schürmann, 1844a; Meyer, 1843; Moorhouse, 1846</td>
<td>Linguistic report of the Voyage of the Austrian Frigate <em>Novara</em>. Discussion of Australian linguistic structure. Classificatory</td>
<td>German</td>
<td>Viennese professor of Oriental languages and later of Sanskrit, and member of the Imperial Academy of Science in Vienna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. Müller, 1882</td>
<td>Threlkeld, 1834; Watson, no date, Teichelmann and Schürmann, 1840, Symmons, 1841, Schürmann, 1844a; Meyer, 1843; Ridley, 1866</td>
<td>Classificatory. Contains an edited collection of previously published PN grammars given within a four volume classification of the world’s languages (1876-1888)</td>
<td>German</td>
<td>Viennese professor of Oriental languages and later of Sanskrit, and member of the Imperial Academy of Science in Vienna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J. Fraser, 1892: xi-lxiv</td>
<td>Threlkeld, 1834, Günther, 1840, Symmons, 1841, Taplin, 1879</td>
<td>Classificatory and typological. Contains an edited collection of PN grammars</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>Interested individual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W. Schmidt, 1919a, 1919b</td>
<td>Vast range of extensively sourced lexical and grammatical material</td>
<td>Classificatory</td>
<td>German</td>
<td>Eminent Viennese linguist, ethnologist and priest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. Ray, 1925</td>
<td>Most available material</td>
<td>Discussion of Australian linguistic structure</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>British comparative and descriptive linguist</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Later secondary material

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Based on the earlier grammars by:</th>
<th>Type of work</th>
<th>Language written in</th>
<th>Author’s vocation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A.P Elkin, 1937</td>
<td>Most available material</td>
<td>Discussion of Australian linguistic structure</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>Anglican clergyman, professor of anthropology at the University of Sydney</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capell, 1937</td>
<td>Most available material</td>
<td>Discussion of Australian linguistic structure</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>Anglican clergyman and professional Australian linguist</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Figure 2: Secondary sources based on the corpus*
As previously noted, the production of such material by the Australian academics Capell (1937) and Elkin (1937) heralded the arrival of a new descriptive era.

Fraser’s (1892) edited volume republished grammars from the primary corpus — Threlkeld (1834); Günther (1838;1840), Taplin (1872), and presented Livingstone’s grammar of Minjangbal (1892) for the first time. In introduction, Fraser also presented a classificatory study (pp.xi-lxiv), and a typological study of the phonology (pp.1-8) of Australian languages drawing from a range of primary material. Both studies are anomalous within the body of nineteenth century secondary literature in being written and published in Australia. Another notable anomaly is the material presented by Threlkeld (1850) comparing Awabakal with predominantly Polynesian languages.

1.1.3.1 Wilhelm Bleek (1858;1872)

In 1858, the German philologist W.H.I. Bleek (1827-1875), an authority on Khoisan languages, prepared a catalogue of the library of Sir George Grey (1812-1898), Governor of Cape Colony (1854-1861), held in Cape Town. As the Governor of South Australia (1841-1845) Grey had supported the publication of missionary grammars (§5.1), and as an explorer in Western Australia had himself published about Australian Aboriginal languages (1839). Upon Grey’s departure from Cape Town to take up the position Governor of New Zealand (1861-1868) — for the second time, the first being 1845-1853 — Bleek was appointed curator of Grey’s library, a position he held from 1862 until his death (di Gregorio 2002). The library contained a rarely comprehensive collection of linguistic material from around the world. Bleek’s catalogue (1858) presents the Australian material in Vol II Part I, with a short addenda in Part III of the same volume.

Bleek, had received a doctorate in linguistics from the University of Bonn and had spent time at the University of Berlin where he studied under K.R. Lepsius (1810-1884). Bleek collaborated intellectually with his cousin E. Haeckel, (1834-1919), professor of comparative anatomy at Jena University.

Grey’s continuing patronage allowed Bleek to pursue philological studies broadly (Gilmour 2006:170). Bleek later authored “On the position of Australian languages” (1872).

1.1.3.2 Friedrich Müller (1867;1882)

The most renowned early-classification of Australian languages was published in German (1919) by the Viennese linguist, anthropologist and Roman Catholic priest, Father Wilhelm Schmidt (1868-1954) (see Koch 2004:18-25). Much less well-known, but equally as informed
for their time, are the classifications made by another Viennese philologist, Friedrich Müller (1834-1898), who was professor of Sanskrit and comparative philology at Vienna University.

Note that Friedrich Müller is easily confused with the German born Oxford Professor of comparative philology, Friedrich Max Müller (1823-1900), generally referred to as Max Müller, who in 1854 (p.158) classified languages from the ‘Great Southern Continent’ within the southern branch of the putative Turanian family.

As a member of the Imperial Academy of Science in Vienna, F. Müller authored the linguistic (1867) and ethnographic (1868) reports of the Voyage of the Austrian Imperial ‘Novara’ Expedition. The frigate circumnavigated the world between 1857-1859 and docked in Sydney for a month in 1858. Müller did not, however, take part in the expedition or ever visit Australia (contra Newton 1987:367). Müller sourced his material from Bleek, with whom he corresponded. With twenty-six pages of the report devoted to the description of Australian languages (1867:241-66), this Viennese publication introduced European philologists to a large amount of information about Australian morpho-syntactic structure.

Between 1876 and 1888 F. Müller published Grundriss der Sprachwissenschaft (Outline of Linguistics) in four volumes, which presented grammars of over one hundred languages from around the world. The material is presented according to the race of the people speaking the languages. Müller, Bleek and Haeckel, theorised about the origin of language within biological evolutionary frameworks. Their ideas form a sub-school of comparative linguistics that was particularly well-developed in Germany (di Gregorio 2002). Müller classified and ranked races according to hair-type (1876:24) and on this matter he referred to Haeckel (1876:72-73). The Australian material is presented in vol. 2 (1882:1-98) “Der schlichthaarigen Rassen” (the smooth-haired races).

F. Müller’s works have been overlooked in histories of Australian linguistics, including Elkin (1937), Dixon (1980:8-17;2002), Koch (2004) and McGregor (2008a). His work has, however, been reviewed by Ray (1925:2) and by Newton (1987:366-367). F.Müller’s 1882 work is significant to this study because this re-publication and translation of Australian grammars into German (1882) reanalyses some of the data presented in the original.

In this way F.Müller’s work differs from the translation into German and publication of Australian grammatical material by the self-funded German ethnographer E.Eylmann (1860-1926) (1908). Eylmann visited the Hermannsburg mission for three months on his first inland Australian expedition of 1896-1898. He spent six weeks at Bethesda on his second expedition in 1900, and in the same year visited Point McLeay for eight days (Schröder 2011:193-194). In
1908 Eylmann republished much of Kempe’s (1891) Arrernte grammar (pp.84-92), Taplin’s (1872) Ngarrindjeri grammar (pp.92-93) and Reuther’s (1894;1899) Diyari grammar (pp.93-98).

1.2 The corpus languages

Figure 3 shows the location of the Australian languages that were grammatically described in the pre-contemporary descriptive era. It shows the lower level PN subgroups in which each language is classified (Bowern & Atkinson 2012:820). Figure 4 provides a key to the map and shows the higher-level PN subgroup in which each language is classified (Bowern & Atkinson 2012), as well as the source material for each language.

Figure 3: Map showing location of languages described in the corpus, and lower-level PN subgroups in areas not shaded (after Bowern & Atkinson 2012:820, used with permission of the authors). See key at Figure 4
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Language</th>
<th>Higher level PN subgroup*</th>
<th>Lower-level PN subgroup</th>
<th>Early source material</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Awabakal</td>
<td>South-eastern</td>
<td>Yuin-kuri</td>
<td>Threlkeld 1834, Hale 1846</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(HRLM language)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Wiradjuri</td>
<td>South-eastern</td>
<td>Central NSW</td>
<td>Watson no date (lost), Günther 1838, 1840, Hale 1846, Mathews 1904</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Kaurna</td>
<td>Central</td>
<td>Thura-Yura</td>
<td>Teichelmann &amp; Schürmann 1840</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Nyungar</td>
<td>Western</td>
<td>Nyungic</td>
<td>Symmons 1841</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Ngarrindjeri</td>
<td>South-eastern</td>
<td>Lower Murray</td>
<td>Meyer 1843, Taplin 1867, 1872[1870], 1880</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Barngarla</td>
<td>Central</td>
<td>Thura-Yura</td>
<td>Schürmann 1844a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Ngayawang</td>
<td>South-eastern</td>
<td>Lower Murray</td>
<td>Moorhouse 1846</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Gamilaraay</td>
<td>South-eastern</td>
<td>Central NSW</td>
<td>Ridley 1855a, 1855b, 1856b, 1866, 1875, Mathews 1903b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Turrubul</td>
<td>South-eastern</td>
<td>Durubalic</td>
<td>Ridley 1866</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Diyari</td>
<td>Central</td>
<td>Karnic</td>
<td>Koch 1868, Schoknecht 1872, Flierl 1880, Reuther 1899, Planert 1908, Gatti 1930</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Wergaya</td>
<td>South-eastern</td>
<td>Kulin</td>
<td>Hagenauer 1878, Mathews 1902 (Djadjala)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Ganai</td>
<td>South-eastern</td>
<td>Eastern Victoria</td>
<td>Bulmer 1878</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Western Arrernte</td>
<td>Central</td>
<td>Arandic</td>
<td>Kempe 1891, C.Strahlow no date c.1907, 1908, 1910, Mathews 1907b, Planert 1907, Riedel 1931 [c.1923], T.G.H.Strahlow 1944[1938]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Minjangbal</td>
<td>South-eastern</td>
<td>Bandjalangic</td>
<td>1892 Livingstone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. WTS</td>
<td>Northern</td>
<td>Paman</td>
<td>Ray and Haddon 1893, Ray 1907</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. Pitta Pitta</td>
<td>Central</td>
<td>Karnic</td>
<td>Roth 1897</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. Guugu-Yimidhir</td>
<td>Northern</td>
<td>Paman</td>
<td>Schwarz &amp; Poland 1900, Roth 1901, Ray 1907</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. Wangkangurru</td>
<td>Central</td>
<td>Karnic</td>
<td>Reuther 1901</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. Yandruwandha</td>
<td>Central</td>
<td>Karnic</td>
<td>Reuther 1901</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. Ngererrikwidhi</td>
<td>Northern</td>
<td>Paman</td>
<td>Hey 1903, Ray 1907</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. Yadhaykenu</td>
<td>Northern</td>
<td>Paman</td>
<td>Ray 1907</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. Luritja</td>
<td>Western</td>
<td>Wati</td>
<td>Mathews 1907, C.Strahlow 1910</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*According to Bowern & Atkinson 2012

*Figure 4: Key to figure 3*
Only twelve of the thirty-two currently recognised lower level PN subgroups (Bowern & Atkinson 2012:820) are sampled in the corpus. The four higher-level subgroups — Western, Northern, Southeastern and Central — (ibid., 837-838) are unevenly represented (Figures 3 & 4). Only two corpus languages belong to the Western group. There is a small cluster of descriptions of languages from the Northern group. The high proportion of Southeastern languages is partly attributable to that fact that these languages were spoken in the earliest-settled regions, and to the extensive work of R.H. Mathews (§4.3). None of these languages survive. The high proportion of languages from the Central group — all of which were spoken in South Australia, including areas now in the Northern Territory, annexed by South Australia from 1863 until 1911 — is entirely due to an active and prolonged Lutheran missionary effort administered from Adelaide and the Barossa Valley (§8.1).

1.2.1 Linguistic structure

The following brief overview of the structure of PN languages attends specifically to areas of the grammar treated in this thesis. See Dixon (1980;2002) and Koch & Nordlinger (2014) for broader overviews of PN structure, and grammars cited in Figure 7 for further description of individual languages.

1.2.1.1 Phonology

PN languages have fairly similar phonemic systems by cross-linguistic standards. Systems with three vowel phonemes are common, although some Arandic varieties are analysed as having only two (Breen 2004). Consonants typically show a limited number of manner contrasts but a more extensive set of place of articulation contrasts. Figure 5 shows a maximally contrastive inventory, although Arrernte and Diyari show additional distinctions, a series of pre-stopped and rounded consonants in Arrernte (Breen 2001), and a voicing distinction in Diyari restricted to apico-alveolar and retroflex stops in non word-initial positions (Austin 2013:13[1981a]). Guugu-Yimidhirr follows the pattern of many languages in the country’s eastern third in having no retroflex series.
Figure 5: The inventory of consonant phonemes common to many PN languages.

Phones shaded the same colour tended to be orthographically undifferentiated in the early sources.

Early orthographic treatments of Australian phonologies tended to over-represent vowel quality, while phonemic articulation contrasts of consonants tended to be under-represented. The filter of the European ear saw the orthographic collapse of coronal consonant phonemes, with the letters ‘t’, ‘n’, ‘l’ used generically to represent stops, nasal and laterals at all coronal articulatory places. The velar nasal was often also undifferentiated, or not represented word-initially. Palatal stops were more likely than other coronal consonants to be distinguished, and were represented as ‘ty’, ‘tj’ or ‘ch’. Rhotic phonemes were sometimes, but always inconsistently, distinguished. Assessments of individual grammarians’ orthographies, for example Koch’s (2008:183-186) study of the system employed by Mathews, point out exceptions to this general collapse of the system. Impressionistically, the phonemes least likely to be distinguished in the corpus grammars are the retroflex series and interdental nasals and laterals.

A comprehensive comparative study of the early representation of Australian phonology, another rich field of historiographical enquiry, remains to be done, although Newton (1987) makes a comparative study of orthographies before 1860.

1.2.1.2 Morphology

PN languages are synthetic, agglutinative and suffixing. Words can be multi-morphemic. Suffixes attach to the root or to the stem and tend to be mono-morphemic rather than portmanteau.

The languages share a similar range of derivational processes, exhibiting productive nominalising processes, processes, which form verbs from nouns, and processes which alter verb valency. T.G.H.Strehlow (1944:62[1938]) described such processes as “a grean (sic) [great] boon to the missionaries translating the New Testament into the native language.” Examine, for example, the following Arrernte term, which shows the inchoative suffix -Irre attached to a nominal root tyelke ‘flesh’ to derive a verb meaning ‘to become flesh’. The verb is then nominalised with the suffix -nty to derive a lexeme used to translate ‘incarnation’.
Verbs are morphologically complex, generally inflecting for tense, aspect, mood and a range of language specific and wider areal categories, such as the category of associated motion in Arrernte (Wilkins 1989:270; Koch 1984:23) (§9.3.2). Tense is marked word finally, although inflection for tense is sometimes followed by subordinating morphemes.

The degree to which the shape of inflectional suffixes is phonologically conditioned by the preceding stem varies between languages (Baker 2014). Guugu-Yimidhirr for example shows a high degree of allomorphy (Haviland 1979:43-47), while Arrernte, which historically has lost vowel-final distinctions (Breen 2001; Koch 1997), shows virtually none.

Nouns are not obligatorily marked for number, but in some instances may optionally be marked for dual and plural. Nouns that are unmarked for number have no specific or default number reference, and number is instead determined through context (Dixon 2002:77).

Nominals do not generally exhibit grammatical gender, with a relevant exception found in Minjangbal (Livingstone 1892; Crowley 1978) (Appendix 1§1.2).

1.2.2 Case systems

The Australian continent presents ”the richest large-scale concentration of inflectional case languages anywhere in the world” (Blake 2001:xv-xvi). Pama-Nyungan languages have sophisticated inflectional case systems that are entirely synthetic (ibid.,9) with case inventories that are large by world standards (Iggesen 2013).

1.2.2.1 Syntactic case

The core arguments of the verb — agent, subject, and object — are morphologically differentiated using split ergative systems (Blake 1977:6; Dixon 2002a:72) that are sensitive to an animacy hierarchy (Silverstein 1976). The conception of case taken in this paper assumes a universal distinction between agent (A), marked by ergative case, intransitive subject (S) in nominative case and the object (O) in accusative case. Pronouns often exhibit an accusative system (AS/O) in which the O is marked by an overt inflection, while the A and S remain unmarked. Nouns, however, generally exhibit an ergative system (A/SO) in which the subject

---

11 Wangkangurru nouns may also be marked for trial number (Hercus 1994:64).
and the object are both unmarked and the agent in ergative case is morphologically differentiated.

This thesis maintains a three-case analysis of syntactic case (Goddard 1982; Wilkins 1989; Nordlinger 2014:224-226) in which the nominative and the accusative cases are taken to remain underlyingly intact for classes of nouns on which they are identically marked. Correspondingly, the nominative and ergative cases are taken to exist even when these cases are identically marked.

The three-case analysis upholds the conception of case maintained by traditional grammar, in which case is seen as a substitution class in which different classes of nominals may be marked differently in the same syntactic environment (Baerman, Brown & Corbett 2002). Note that under this three-case analysis the reference of the term ‘nominative’ differs from its traditional usage in referring only to a nominal acting as the subject of an intransitive clause. The traditional usage of the term, developed to describe the entirely accusative systems of SAE languages, refers to the relation carried by a nominal functioning in the role of subject as well as agent.

Figure 6 show the idiosyncratic and sometimes complex splits of the languages under consideration. Guugu-Yimidhirr exhibits the canonical Australian ergative split. The situation in Diyari is shown at Figure 189. For languages such as Kaurna, Barngarla and Ngayawang, in which all nominal types show either ergative (A/SO) or undifferentiated (ASO) systems and thus have no overt accusative marking, a two case, ergative / absolutive analysis is sufficient. Core arguments are nevertheless consistently glossed as standing in ergative, nominative and accusative cases in all languages in this study.
### Figure 6: The split in marking the syntactic cases in the languages treated in the corpus.

### 1.2.2.2 Peripheral cases

In addition to the three ‘core’, ‘syntactic’ or ‘core clausal’ (Dixon 2002:132) cases, nominative, ergative and accusative, PN case systems commonly have dative, ablative, allative, locative, instrumental, genitive, and comitative cases (Blake 2001:158). It is important to bear in mind that some peripheral cases, especially the dative, have a syntactic function when marking “the adjunct of intransitive verbs or the complement of semi-transitive verbs” (Blake 1979a:330-331).

Dixon identifies fourteen *case functions* commonly carried by nominals in Australian languages (2002:132-143). These functions are always carried by a lesser number of *case forms*, usually between eight and ten, in any given language (2002:152). Because a greater number of case functions are usually carried by a smaller number of case markers, a single case inflection may carry a range of case functions. While there are strong, shared tendencies in the way that case functions group together to be marked by a single case form cross-linguistically, there are also regional and individual idiosyncrasies in the syncretism of case functions.

### 1.2.2.3 Pronouns

Sets of pronouns in singular, dual and plural number and in first, second and third person are common. In some languages sets of third person pronouns are replaced by sets of demonstratives (Ray 1925:5; Dixon 1980:276-277;2002:243).

Forms of pronouns marked for syntactic case are sometimes suppletive. Pronouns in peripheral cases are often marked by the suffix that attaches to nouns to mark the same function.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Awabakal</td>
<td>Common nouns</td>
<td>Pronouns, Proper nouns, Some nouns referring to people</td>
<td>Personal interrogative, Personal names</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaurna, Barngarla &amp; Ngayawang</td>
<td>Sg personal pronouns, All Sg nouns, Demonstratives, Interrogatives</td>
<td>All 2nd person pronouns, 1dl &amp; 1pl pronouns</td>
<td>1sg, 3sg, 3dl &amp; 3pl pronouns, Demonstratives, Interrogative pronouns</td>
<td>All non-singular nouns, Non singular pronouns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ngarrindjeri</td>
<td>Proper nouns</td>
<td></td>
<td>1sg, 3sg, 3dl &amp; 3pl pronouns, Demonstratives, Interrogative pronouns</td>
<td>Common nouns* (see Bannister 2004:24-27)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guugu-Yimidhirr</td>
<td>Nouns, Interrogatives</td>
<td></td>
<td>1sg pronouns, Higher animate nouns</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western Arrernte</td>
<td>Common nouns, Interrogatives</td>
<td></td>
<td>1sg pronouns, Higher animate nouns</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The case of the pronominal stem to which peripheral case inflection attaches varies between languages.

A number of languages examined in this thesis are among languages covering a continuous block of the continent’s southeast that have a set of bound personal pronouns, or pronominal enclitics (Dixon 2002:337-401) (§3.2.5.1 & §7.4).

1.2.2.4 Syntax

Clausal word order is generally free, although unmarked pragmatic word order tends to be AOV. Phrase-internal word order tends to be stricter. A NP may be continuous or non-continuous. The particular phrasal constituents on which case is marked is language specific. Case can be marked on the final constituent, as in Arrernte (Wilkins 1989:102; Henderson 2013:14), or on each constituent of a continuous NP, as in the following Pitta-Pitta clause. Note here that the adjective follows the noun.

1. Machoomba-lo wapa-lo pooriti-na pokara-na tichea
   “the kangaroo’s pup is eating all the grass”
   matyumpa-lu warrpa-lu ?-nha pukarra-nha thatyi-ya
   kangaroo-ERG young-ERG ?all-ACC grass-ACC eat-PRES

   (Roth 1897:12)

Complex sentence constructions vary between languages (Nordlinger 2014). Commonly, relative clause constructions are conveyed through the “adjoined relative clause” (Hale 1976) as in the following Ramindjeri example:

2. Ngāte nak-ir korne, yarn-….. ir an-ang – itye wataŋgrau
   “I saw the man, he spoke to me yesterday”
   “I saw the man, who spoke to me yesterday”

   (Meyer 1843:33)

Arrernte and Diyari are among an areal group of languages that exhibit a system of ‘switch reference’, in which subordinating suffixes attaching to a finite verb vary according to whether the subordinate verb has the same or a different subject from the main verb (Austin 1981b) (Chapter 10). Arrernte has fully embedded relative clauses (Wilkins 1989:414-423) (§10.5.1).
1.3 Outline of the thesis

Having established the corpus of early morpho-syntactic description of PN languages as a previously under-researched and valuable field of historiographic enquiry, Chapter 2 presents the philological methodology by which the grammars are investigated, and discusses challenges and opportunities presented by the data.

Chapters 3-9 examine the corpus grammars in roughly chronological order, although the presentation is also arranged according to the regions where descriptions were made, and by the pragmatics of considering particular morpho-syntactic features. Each of these chapters assesses the comparative strength of individual grammars, noting descriptive breakthroughs, where an author successfully accounted for a previously undescribed grammatical category, while accounting for the shortcomings of individual analyses. For each grammar the size of nominal case paradigms, the ordering of cases, the case names assigned to case functions, and the description of ergative function are observed. Some content is presented in appendices. The central arguments of the thesis are, however, contained in the main document. Brief biographical material is presented for most grammarians. More detailed material is available the cited sources.

Chapters 3-7 discuss grammars of languages of which there is no, or little, modern record. The discussion in these chapters frequently diverges to investigate the missionary-grammarians’ description of grammatical features of which there are different contemporary analyses, or of which the interpretation taken in this thesis differs from that currently reclaimed from the source material. The intention is to highlight the suppositions that have led analyses astray, as much as it to suggest a better interpretation of the source material. This type of investigation is made of Threlkeld’s presentation of compound pronouns (§3.2.5.2) and bound pronouns (§3.2.5.1) in Awabakal, of Teichelmann & Schürmann’s description of the dative case (§5.4) and of bound pronouns (§7.4.3) in Kaurna, and of Symmons’ description of ergativity in Nyungar (§6.4.1).

Chapter 3 investigates Threlkeld’s descriptive responses to the structure of Awabakal (1834), given in this first grammar of an Australian language, spoken in the earliest-settled colony of New South Wales. Since Threlkeld’s grammars have been described (Carey 2004:269) as “essential in establishing a framework” for later description, the assessment of his description of case marking on Awabakal nouns and pronouns and his response to the large Awabakal case systems, as well as his description of case allomorphy, establishes a baseline, from which later corpus grammars are measured.
Chapter 4 investigates Günther’s grammars of Wiradjuri (1838;1840), written at the Wellington Valley Mission, and also spoken in New South Wales, showing that similarities between Threlkeld’s grammar (1834) and Günther’s grammars (1838;1840), beyond those engendered by the inherited descriptive framework the authors shared, are few. By comparing Günther’s grammars with later descriptions of Wiradjuri (H.Hale 1846; R.H.Mathews 1904), the study helps establish the provenance of early works emanating from Wellington Valley Mission, and discusses reasons for discrepancies in the sources. The chapter concludes with a comparative assessment of the description of the non-singular first person inclusive/exclusive pronominal distinction in grammars of languages predominantly spoken in New South Wales.

Chapters 5-7 consider the earliest grammars of languages spoken in South Australia: Kaurna (1840), Ramindjeri (1843), Barngarla (1844a) and Ngayawang (1846), which were made by Lutheran missionaries, or written in the realm of their grammatical influence. While this body has previously been considered a descriptive school (Simpson 1992:410), this discussion shows that the works employed a range of divergent descriptive techniques when accounting for case systems. These strategies are compared with one another in order to demonstrate the influence that different aspects of these grammarians’ analyses exerted on later grammars.

Chapter 5 considers Teichelmann & Schürmann’s grammar of Kaurna (1840), spoken on the Adelaide Plains. This earliest grammar of a South Australian language is found to employ schemata that are substantially different from those used in earlier grammars of languages spoken in New South Wales. The discussion concentrates on the description of features that proved to be influential on later PN description.

Chapter 6 presents Meyer’s description of Ramindjeri (1843), spoken south of Adelaide, observing a new descriptive strategy for accommodating the case system. The chapter focuses on Meyer’s presentation of ergative NPs, which differs from that of most other early grammarians. The discussion then turns to Symmons’ grammar of Nyungar (1841), spoken in the Swan River Colony (Western Australia, Perth), which depicted ergativity in a manner similar to Meyer’s account. The chapter concludes with a discussion of passive interpretations of Australian ergativity by European philologists.

Chapter 7 presents Schürmann’s grammar of Barngarla (1844a), spoken on the Eyre Peninsula, examining the modifications to the descriptive practices employed in Schürmann’s second grammar of an Australian language. The chapter then presents Moorhouse’s grammar of Ngayawang (1846), the last, and least detailed grammar of the ‘Adelaide School’. The
chapter concludes with a comparison of the description of bound pronouns in multiple early sources.

Chapters 8 assesses the grammatical descriptions of Diyari, and other Karnic languages (1868-1901), which were predominantly written at the earliest Lutheran inland mission, Bethesda. The grammatical analysis is shown to have been strongly influenced by the earlier Lutheran description of South Australian languages.

Chapter 9 assesses the grammatical descriptions of Arrernte (1891-1910), which were predominantly written at the second Lutheran inland mission, Hermannsburg. The comparison of the missionary records of Arrernte with T.G.H.Strehlow’s (1944[1938]) Arrernte grammar shows that T.G.H.Strehlow’s work was written within a tradition of Lutheran description of PN languages that commenced a century earlier.

The accuracy of early records of Diyari are assessed in terms of Austin’s (2013[1981a]) analysis, and the early records of Arrernte in terms of Wilkins’ (1989) and Henderson’s (2013) analyses. The discussion examines improvements to the understanding and ability to describe the language by successive generations of missionaries, focusing particularly on the sensitivity of case marking to number, gender and animacy. This type of assessment, which is only made possible by the existence of good modern records, identifies the type of red-herrings and pitfalls that are likely to have led astray early grammarians of PN languages.

Both chapter 8 and chapter 9 attend closely to the provenance of analyses of the same language made by successive generations of missionaries at each mission. Chapter 8 presents the earliest grammar of Diyari (1868), a MS written by W.Koch, which has not previously been identified in the literature, and which was located during the course of this study. Chapter 9 presents MSS grammars written by C.Strehlow (1931a&b [c.1907];1910), which have not previously been critically examined.

Chapter 10 compares the description of processes of clause subordination in grammars of four languages spoken in South Australia, extending the aims and consolidating the findings of chapters 8 and 9.

The context in which the grammars of languages spoken in New South Wales and in Queensland were written is presented in Appendix 1. The appendix first discusses Ridley’s grammars of languages spoken in northern New South Wales and southern coastal Queensland (Appendix 1§1.1), predominantly Gamilaraay (1855-1875). It then investigates the grammar of Minjangbal (1892[c.1876-1886a; c.1876-1886b]) (Appendix 1§1.2) written by Rev Hugh Livingstone, for whom virtually no biographical information has been discovered. This section
establishes that materials held by Museum Victoria (Livingstone 1876-1886a; 1876-1886b) contain part of the MS Minjangbal grammar, which was later published by Fraser (Livingstone 1892). Both Ridley’s and Livingstone’s grammars are found to have had little influence on later works in the corpus, with possible exception of one tenuous link between Ridley (1875) and Roth (1897), regarding the presentation of peripheral cases.

Appendix 1 then investigates Roth’s grammar of Pitta-Pitta (1897) (§1.3.1), showing that relatively late in the pre-academic time frame of Australian linguistic study, Roth instigated a new set of descriptive practices that showed little or no influence from earlier grammarians. Roth’s novel descriptive template was subsequently implemented in later grammars of languages spoken in Queensland, including his own grammar of Guugu-Yimidhirr (1901), Hey’s description of Ngerrikwidhi (1903) (Appendix 1 §1.3.3), which Roth edited, and the MS grammar of Guugu-Yimidhirr written by Lutheran missionaries Poland & Schwarz (1900) (Appendix 1 §1.3.2).

Appendix 1 then describes the context in which Ray & Haddon (1893), and Ray (1907) (Appendix 1 §1.4), wrote grammars of Western Torres Strait (WTS) and languages spoken in far north Queensland.

Appendix 2 (§1.1) first presents the grammatical descriptions made by Congregationalist missionary G. Taplin (1867;1872;1878) of Ngarrindjeri, a language closely related to Ramindjeri, which had previously been described by Meyer (1843). Taplin’s earliest analysis is shown to have been strongly influenced by Meyer. Taplin constantly adapted his framework in order to make better representations of the language, and his last analysis (1878) shows fresh influences from grammars of the Adelaide School (Chapters 5&7). Appendix 2 (§1.2) then introduces the grammatical sketches of languages from southeast of the country that appeared in Brough Smyth (1878), which reproduce Taplin’s second to last case paradigm (1872). The appendix proceeds to discuss the evolution of case paradigms in which the earliest global usage of the term ‘ergative’ evolved (Taplin 1872) and investigates the Ngarrindjeri case functions, which the term ‘ergative’ was used to describe (§1.3).
Chapter 2:
Theoretical considerations

This chapter first classifies the corpus grammars according to the types of other documentation available for the languages they describe (§2.1). The early grammars of languages of which there is no other comprehensive grammatical record can be difficult to assess, while grammars of languages of which there is good modern record present opportunities to understand the early grammarians’ descriptive intent. The traditional grammatical framework, which was used in all the early sources, to different degrees and for different reasons, is then characterised (§2.2). The discussion focuses on the processes by which PN structures were overlooked and misrepresented, thereby expounding a philological methodology for retrieving morphosyntactic data from the early sources (§2.3).

The chapter concludes with a discussion of how the traditional word and paradigm descriptive model (Hockett 1954; Robins 1959) is ill-suited to the representation of PN agglutinative typology, and shows that some early grammarians innovated more appropriate models (§2.4).

2.1 Methodological limitations

It is not possible to assess each corpus language from an equally well-informed point of view, since the quality of morpho-syntactic description varies. For some languages there is reasonably good old and modern description, while the record of others survives only in skeletal sketches. Thus the corpus languages present different types of methodological challenges.

Without good modern description of a language described in the early sources, the assessment of the early grammatical description requires a degree of initial reclamation based on the same material. This can be problematic. It can be difficult to decide whether the absence of the description of a particular grammatical construction in an early source, which is known to be common in surrounding PN languages, reflects a true absence in the described language, or a gap in the data. The identical marking of inalienable and alienable possessed NPs (§8.6.9) in reclaimed Awabakal (Lissarrague, 2006:33) is one such instance.

PN languages commonly show a difference in the marking of alienable and inalienable possessive constructions (Dixon 2002:59). When the possessed nominal is implicit to the relationship between the two items within a possessive NP the dependent modifier remains unmarked. Thus, inalienable possessive constructions are marked through juxtaposition as in
the following Pitta-Pitta clause in which the ‘possessor’ mochoomba, ‘kangaroo’ is morphologically unmarked:

3. **Mochoomba** wapa
   a kangaroo’s pup

   **Matyumpa** warrpa
   Kangaroo-[NOM] pup-[NOM]

   (Roth 1897:8)

The juxtaposition of the inalienably possessed constructions contrasts with the morphological marking of an alienably possessed NPs. Given that Awabakal ceased to be spoken by speakers at a time when the unmarked inalienably possessed NP was undescribed in Australia, it is difficult to be sure whether Awabakal followed the common practice of marking an inalienably possessed NP through juxtaposition rather than morphological marking (Dixon 2002:59).

Further, it can be difficult to distinguish which elements of an early description relate to idiosyncratic structure and which might result from poor recording. Livingstone (1892:8) (Appendix 1§1.2), for example, gave *bula* as the numeral two in Minjangbal, but he did not describe morphological marking of dual number on nouns. Regarding pronouns, he stated: “MinyuG has no simple dual, although there are compound terms and phrases denoting number” (1892:6). Livingstone described the plural pronoun, suffixed with the dual morpheme *bula* as ‘dual compounds’. It might be tempting to assume that the description is an error, since Livingstone’s description does not conform to the PN norm. But in this instance, modern descriptions of nearby languages confirm Livingstone’s analysis (Sharpe 1992:15; Smythe in Crowley 1978:284). Crowley (1978:78) explains the unusual situation: “Note that the dual pronouns of most Australian languages are absent. What seems to have happened is that the earlier plural forms were lost and that the original duals were generalised to become plurals”.

That all early sources under-differentiated coronal consonant phonemes (Figure 5) hampers the reclamation of inflectional and derivational morphology from the early records. The extent of the difficulty is exemplified when considering the early description of languages, which have been described well in recent times. The missionaries’ orthography developed for Diyari for example, failed to distinguish apico-alveolar, apico-domal and lamino-dental nasals. Consequently, inflections marking the locative case –*nhi*, the dative/possessive case –*rni* and nominative case –*ni* on different nominal types were all represented as –*ni* (Figure 190). The complexity of the Diyari case system could not be reclaimed from the historical record.

Consider also the Western Arrernte suffix marking accusative case on animate nouns –*nhe*, and the suffix marking the allative case–*werne*. The difference between these forms was not heard in the earliest grammars (Kempe 1891; Mathews 1907b) and consequently the functions
marked by formally distinct suffixes were described as being marked by a single case with – na. This phonemic under-differentiation of interdental and retroflex nasals contributed to misrepresentations of the marking of allative, accusative and dative functions in the early descriptions of Arrernte (§9.3.6.2). That allative function is marked by a distinct case form in Western Arrernte would not be retrievable from the earliest sources alone.
Figure 7 tabulates the corpus languages according to the type of contemporary description available for that language.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Language</th>
<th>Modern source material based on:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Nggerrikwidhi</td>
<td>None, other than references in Dixon 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Ganai</td>
<td>Fesl 1985, Gardner 1996</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Awabakal</td>
<td>Oppliger 1984, Lissarrague 2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Wiradjuri</td>
<td>Rudder &amp; Grant 2001, 2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Barngarla</td>
<td>Clendon 2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ngayawang</td>
<td>Horgen 2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Nyungar</td>
<td>Douglas 1968</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gamilaraay</td>
<td>Austin 1993, Giacon 2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pitta Pitta</td>
<td>Blake &amp; Breen 1971, Blake 1979b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Yadhaykenu</td>
<td>Crowley 1981</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Wergaya</td>
<td>Hercus 1969</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Diyari</td>
<td>Austin 2013[1981a]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Wangkangurru</td>
<td>Hercus 1994</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Yandruwandha</td>
<td>Breen 2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Luritja</td>
<td>Hansen 1978</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Guugu-Yimidhirr</td>
<td>Haviland 1979</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Minjangbal</td>
<td>Smyth 1978[c.1949], Cunningham (Sharpe) 1969, Geytenbeek &amp; Geytenbeek 1971, Crowley 1978</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 7: The modern grammatical descriptions of the languages described by early grammarians in Australia

Of the languages that ceased to be spoken before being described in the modern descriptive era (categories 1&2), most have, to some degree, been reclaimed within language revival programmes (category 2). Hey’s (1903) grammar of Nggerrikwidhi appears to be a different variety from that recorded in the region in more recent time by Hale (1966) and Crowley (1981) (Appendix 1§1.3.3.1), and this grammar has received little modern scrutiny.

Contemporary understanding of languages in category 3 has been obtained both from early records and from elicitation from twentieth century speakers, who have retained different degrees of linguistic competency. For these languages it can be difficult to determine whether
discrepancies between early and contemporary records result from diachronic language change, or from descriptive misconstrual or oversight in the early sources. Bannister’s description of Ngarrindjeri (2004) examines language shift under pressure from English by comparing twentieth century speech with the structure recorded in the early sources, noting loss of case allomorphy, loss of morphological marking of dual on nouns, loss of dual pronouns, and loss of ergative marking. Douglas (1968) makes a synchronic study of ‘Neo-Nyungar’ spoken by 20th century speakers and does not attempt to reconstruct the variety described in the earliest grammatical record by Symmons (1841).

The source material on which a language has been reclaimed is seldom clearly documented, creating methodological difficulty for this study. For instance, the extent to which Grant & Rudder’s grammar of Wiradjuri (2014) is based on historic documents, or calquing from better-remembered neighbouring languages and the remembered speech of the community, is not clear.

At the other end of the spectrum are languages that have been described from fluent speakers in the modern era (category 4). One can be fairly certain that the structures recently described are the same as those encountered by nineteenth century grammarians. The contemporary analysis of these languages provides an ideal analytical platform from which to view the relative merit of an early grammar.

Modern grammars of some of the languages treated in this thesis are among the best and most informative materials written on PN languages. These are the grammars of Pitta-Pitta (Blake&Breen 1971; Blake 1979b), Guugu-Yimidhirr (Haviland 1979), Diyari (Austin 2013[1981a]), Yadhaykenu (Crowley 1981) Wangkangurru (Hercus 1994) and Arrernte (Wilkins 1989; Henderson 2013). These works drew on an eclectic range of theory in order to accommodate newly encountered linguistic structures during the last quarter of the twentieth century. All but the earliest (Blake&Breen 1971) are characterised by an approach emanating from the Australian National University school of Australian grammatical description (see Wilkins 1989:58-72), which produced works that “evolved in parallel to the evolution of theory and practice in linguistics” (ibid.,59), and have shaped the contemporary understanding of PN structures.

Comparative reading of these sophisticated modern grammars with early grammatical description of the same language provides training in the type of philological method required to interpret morphosyntactic data from the early sources. One becomes attuned to the particular mistakes or obscure representations that are likely to be made, and alerted to the possibility of their occurrence in languages that did not survive to be described in the modern era. Making
sense of an early grammar of a language for which there is good contemporary analysis is like cheating in a puzzle. It is not necessary to struggle to discover what exactly the early missionary-grammarians were attempting to describe because the structure is clearly explained in modern terminology and using currently accepted linguistic conventions. Reading old grammatical material while informed about the structure of the language from a contemporary record brings into sharp focus the particular limitations of language reconstitution based solely on old material.

Note that most comprehensive, contemporary descriptions of Arrernte (Henderson 2013; Wilkins 1989) are of different varieties to that recorded in the early sources at the mission. The less extensive MS grammars by Capell (1958) and Pfitzner & Schmaal (1991) are of the same Western Arandic variety. The assessment of the early description of Western Arrernte presents some of the same methodological difficulties as languages which ceased to be spoken before a contemporary record was made.

Making sense of the description of a language of which there is no modern description (categories 1 & 2) depends on consideration of material from three sources: the historical record, the surviving material of closely related and/or contiguous languages, and the contemporary understanding of other PN morphosyntax and its likely historical evolution. This philological method is described by Oppliger (1984:64):

> an analysis of Awabakal grammar is limited to one source … Comparative material from nearby languages … is however helpful as supportive evidence … Also commonly occurring Australian pronominal features sometimes suggest an analysis as well as lending support to certain hypotheses

The process is one of triangulation (Amery 2016:33;147), since it involves the weighing up of the relative value of three source of information, and some level of educated guesswork.

But this process of triangulation is dependent upon initially recognising the structures that are described in the early sources. Reclaiming morphosyntactic systems and structures from early sources, in which their description is obscured by an absence of appropriate frameworks, accepted terminology, and phonemic orthographies is not straightforward. The potential difficulty is epitomised in the three conflicting accounts of the pronominal system of marking syntactic case in Awabakal based on Threlkeld’s grammar (1834) (Oppliger 1984; Lissarrague 2006; Dixon 2002) (§3.2.5.1). While these divergent analyses probably result from a complex morpho-syntactic idiosyncrasy that is now irretrievable, attempting to account for the differences requires viewing the structure of Awabakal through the looking glass of Threlkeld’s nineteenth century expectations. This type of hermeneutic investigation of the source material pinpoints the processes by which morpho-syntactic data might be skewed when cast in an
inappropriate descriptive framework, and reveals the type of filters through which obscure explanations should be screened if the source material is to be accurately reclaimed. Rather than seeing the source material as a foundation upon which the triangular process of language reclamation rests, any philological methodology of language reclamation from historical sources must also articulate processes of extracting data from pre-contemporary grammars (§2.3).

A.P. Elkin, professor of anthropology at Sydney University in the 1930s, assessed the early grammatical description of Australian languages as generally inadequate. He did, however, perceive that careful scrutiny of early Australian grammars yielded valuable linguistic material, and described the process of retrieving material from the early sources as “careful sieving” (1937:9). Elkin’s process of ‘careful sieving’ has, however, remained un-theorised. By stripping back the veil of arcane terminology and inappropriate descriptive frameworks, and by recreating the author’s logic, the close and comparative study of the early grammars is sometimes “punctuated by the occasional sudden realisation of the point of a piece of writing, an understanding of what the writer is really on about” (McGregor 2008a:2).

### 2.2 The traditional grammatical framework

This section investigates the ways in which morpho-syntactic features were likely to be obscured when carried by the schemata of an ill-suited grammatical framework.

The traditional descriptive practices that missionary-grammarians tended to employ when describing PN languages evolved from the study of Greek, particularly the ancient writings of Dionysius Thrax (c.100BC [1986])) and subsequently of Latin, in the writings of Varro (c.100BC [Taylor & Varro 1996]) and Priscian (c.500AD [see Luhtala 2005]). As the system became codified and was applied to the description of other European languages, the grammatical categories conveyed within the schemata came to be seen as a-theoretical universal categories that required no introduction or clarification. Koch (2008:187), in an assessment of R.H.Mathews’ grammatical descriptions, described the traditional grammatical framework as having:
emerged from Greek and Roman grammarians [and which] was further developed in Western Europe during the Middle Ages, Renaissance and subsequent centuries, and inherited into nineteenth-century Britain … This is the system that underlay the pedagogy of not only Latin and Greek but also modern languages and English itself. Its basic framework can be seen most easily in nineteenth century textbooks of Latin and Greek that have been used into the twentieth century.

The term ‘traditional grammar’ is used here to invoke both the schemata and descriptive model of grammatical description that developed to best describe the structure and typology of classical European linguistic structure and type. It entails firstly the conventional arrangement of headings and subheadings in which the existence of certain structures was anticipated (§2.2.1), as well as the word and paradigm model of description (§2.4) that had developed to convey the fusional morphology of SAE languages.

Beyond the ubiquitous schoolboy Latin, which provided all early grammarians with some ready-made scaffold on which to hang nascent awareness of PN structures, the grammarians’ exposure to nineteenth century grammars of Latin, Greek and Hebrew varied according to their education and their training for mission. Lutheran missionary-grammarians were likely to have learnt Greek and Hebrew, which were seen as important source languages for translation of the Scriptures (Rathjen 1998:67-78; J.Strehlow 2011:332). The Lutheran seminary in Adelaide, for example, holds Grammatik des neutestamentlichen Sprachidioms als sichere Grundlage der neutestamentlichen Exegese (G.Winer 1844) (Grammar of the idiomatic speech of the New Testament as a sound basis for New Testament Exegesis), which belonged to missionary Schoknecht, who wrote a grammar of Diyari in 1872 (§ 8.3.3). Copies of other books held in their collection, including Ausführliches Lehrbuch der Hebräischen Sprache des Alten Bundes (H.Ewald 1844) (A detailed textbook of old Testament Hebrew), and Elementargrammatik der lateinischen Sprache (R.Kühner 1863[1841]) (An elementary grammar of Latin) were probably donated to the seminary upon the death of their owner. Kühner had earlier produced Ausführliche Grammatik der griechischen Sprache (1834-1835) (A detailed grammar of the Greek language) (Figure 8).

Later missionaries from a British background were likely to have studied works such as B.H.Kennedy’s grammars of Latin (1879) (Figure 9;Figure 11).

The content of works such as these penetrated the missionary-grammarians’ expectations about how a language should work, and equipped them with the tools to describe previously undescribed foreign Australian languages.
2.2.1 Traditional schema

In 1844, Schürmann perceived a tension between the premises underlying received descriptive linguistic schemata and the new linguistic structures he encountered. He advised (1844a V:vi) that the description of Australian languages required authors to:

\[
\text{divest their minds as much as possible of preconceived ideas, particularly of those grammatical forms which they may have acquired by the study of ancient or modern languages.}
\]

Schürmann and some other nineteenth century grammarians in Australia were aware that the description of Australian languages might be compromised by ‘categorical particularism’, defined by Haspelmath (2010:2) as “one of the major insights of structuralist linguistics of the 20th century (especially the first half) that languages are best described in their own terms … rather than in terms of a set of pre-established categories that are assumed to be universal”. The realisation that the study of language should be non-aprioristic is widely associated with Boas (1911:81) (Haspelmath 2010:4ff), but is traceable to the writings of W.Humboldt (1767-1835) (1827, quoted in Morpurgo-Davies 1975:105) who observed:

\[
\text{Normally we come to the study of an unknown language from the point of view of a known language, be it our mother tongue or Latin, we try to see the grammatical relationships of this language expressed in the new one…; to avoid this mistake we must study each language in its peculiarities.}
\]

Some early Australian description was similarly made with awareness that linguistic principles deduced from the study of classical languages did not have universal application.
Threlkeld (1834:x) was aware that the structural complexities he encountered could not adequately be described by the existing descriptive framework:

The arrangement of the grammar now adopted, is formed on the natural principles of the language, and not constrained to accord with any known grammar of the dead or living languages. The peculiarities of its structure being such, as to totally prevent the adaptation of any one as a model.

But even with this awareness, the early grammarians’ description of PN languages was hampered by the absence of appropriate frameworks and terminology to describe the foreign structures. With reference to Threlkeld’s grammar of Awabakal (1834), H.Hale appreciated the difficulty in framing a “mass of information which is entirely new” (1846:482) without appropriately developed descriptive tools:

It is not surprising that the novelty and strangeness of the principles on which the structure of the language was found to rest, should have rendered a clear arrangement, at first a matter of difficulty; and some degree of obscurity and intricacy in this respect have caused the work to be less appreciated than its merits deserved.

Investigation of the early analysis of PN languages shows that the missionary-grammarians’ ability to use the language sometimes outstripped their descriptive ability. Wafer & Carey (2011) assess the language used by Threlkeld in translation of scriptural texts by examining processes of clause subordination, concluding (p.132) that “Threlkeld’s command of the language was surprisingly good.” They observe, however, (p.114) that “Threlkeld’s handling of this cryptic feature of the language [i.e., processes of clause subordination with the clitic -pa] was surprisingly idiomatic, in spite of the fact that he was able to unravel only a small part of it in his grammatical analysis” (emphasis added)" (but see §10.1). The observation is also relevant to other PN grammarians who managed to engage deeply with the structure of the language. Teichelmann and Schürmann (1840:13), for example, described ‘observing’ subordinating structures in Kaurna, which they illustrated without attempting to provide any accompanying analysis (§10.4).

In other instances, some of the more astute early PN grammarians liberated aspects of their grammatical description from the stranglehold of the traditional grammatical framework, and innovated pre-theoretical descriptive solutions and invented new terminology and schemata to better convey foreign PN structures.
2.3 Philological methodology

By reimagining the authors’ logic when describing previously undescribed structures, this thesis articulates a philological methodology for optimally reclaiming the structure of the languages, which was the target of the early grammarians’ descriptive attempts.

Just as histories of Australian linguistic description have focussed on the developing understanding of phonology, existing studies treating the methodology of reclaiming Australian languages from historic sources, for example, Thieberger (1995), have tended to concentrate on phonological rather than morpho-syntactic content. The emphasis on phonology is partly due to the dearth of grammatical analysis in comparison with more easily collected vocabularies, a fact noted before the end of the nineteenth century (Fraser 1892:xvi).12 The necessary dependence of language reclamation on more commonly available wordlists has sidetracked the importance of the systematic study of the early representations of Pama-Nyungan morphosyntax. Koch’s treatment (2011b) of G. A. Robinson’s linguistic legacy demonstrates the kind of “philological methods … that need to be done by anyone engaged in the recovery of language material known only through old sources” (ibid.,141). While this work is rare in showing how morphological data can be extracted from early wordlists (ibid.,157), Koch nevertheless concentrates on the methodology of reclaiming phonology from pre-phonemic orthographies. Relatively little has been written about the method of retrieving morphological data from early documents.

Recognising the morpho-syntactic categories that are likely to be overlooked or disguised in the early sources requires awareness of the grammatical divergence between the language under investigation and the languages informing the inherited descriptive framework. When considering the nature of the looking glass through which PN structures were viewed, it is helpful to recognise two interrelated processes by which morphosyntactic categories are likely to be obscured when cast in the schemata of traditional grammar.13

The first occurs when categories that were not present in the target language were nevertheless described because they were a standard feature of the received traditional

---

12 The greater number of vocabularies are, however, unevenly distributed across Pama-Nyungan languages and consequently there is also unsatisfactory lexical records of many languages.

13 Historically it has been the grammatical traditions of Classical Greek and subsequently Latin into which the structures of other languages have been framed, although a tradition of Sanskrit description has similarly resulted in the imposition of an inappropriate grammatical traditional on the non-Indo-European languages from the Indian sub-continent. The problem was identified by R. Caldwell of the London Missionary Society in a grammar of Dravidian (1861:203).
framework. This results from the failure of a grammarian to “divest their minds as much as possible of preconceived ideas” (Schürmann 1844a V:vi), and consequently from the unnecessary and inappropriate specification of grammatical categories (§2.3.1).

The second process occurred when grammatical structures in the target language were overlooked because the traditional grammatical schema did not readily describe them. It occurred when authors failed to formulate the description around the ‘natural principles of the language’, as Threlkeld (1834:x) had advised (§2.3.2).

2.3.1 The description of unnecessary categories

Many of the categories of traditional grammar that are unnecessary when applied to PN languages are among those that establish SAE as a Sprachbund (Haspelmath 2001). Haspelmath describes twelve morpho-syntactic Europeanisms that are found in “the great majority of core European languages” but “are not found in the majority of the world’s languages” (ibid.,1493). Many are not common to PN morphosyntax,14 and four are pertinent to this examination of the early description of PN morphosyntax:

1. Both definite and indefinite article
2. The comparative marking of adjectives;
3. Passive constructions;15
4. Relative clauses signalled by relative pronouns.

The corpus grammarians’ treatment of these features tells much about the authors’ approach and perspective. The first three are discussed below and the description of ‘relative pronouns’ is discussed in Chapter 10.

The corpus grammars are standardly arranged under chapter-headings describing the wordclasses, or parts of speech that are functionally motivated in SAE language. These provided the “fundamental organisational principle of descriptions” (Koch 2008:187). In the more detailed grammars up to eleven parts of speech were given in roughly the following order: Articles, Nouns, Adjectives, Numerals, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Pre/post-positions, Particles, Conjunctions and Interjections (Figure 10). Functionally motivated classes of words in a modern grammar of a PN language are likely to include: nominal classes — common nouns, proper nouns, locational nouns, adjectives, pronouns, demonstratives, — verbs, adverbs, particles, conjunctions and interjections (Dixon 1980:271). Chapter headings detailing SAE

---

14 Some PN languages, including Diyari have a passive construction (Dixon 2002:530).
15 Haspelmath describes the passive construction formed with a participle as defining of the SAE Sprachbund, (2001:1496-1497). Passive constructions are reasonably common in the world’s languages (Siewierska 2013).
word-classes such as ‘articles’ and ‘postpositions’ given in many early PN are a particularly conspicuous instance of unnecessary specification.

Figure 10: Kramer’s 1931 copy of C. Strehlow’s grammar of Western Arrernte (1931a[c.1907])

The common inclusion of case forms termed ‘vocative’ in the early grammars similarly results primarily from a need to fill a slot in the traditional schema. In Latin the vocative form differs from the nominative in the singular of the second declension and is consequently included in case paradigms for structural reasons. Forms that are labelled ‘vocative’ in the early grammars and included in case paradigms do not mark a case relation, and vocative expressions are not considered to mark case in Australian languages (Blake 2001:8). In Arrernte the suffix –aye termed ‘vocative’ by the early grammarians (Figure 209) is a more general emphatic morpheme (Wilkins 1989:353). Similarly in Diyari, the missionaries’ vocative forms (Figure 164), described by Koch (1868:no pag.) as “carelessness of speech”,16 are currently analysed as a shouted speech phenomenon (Austin 2013:39).

Discussion of comparative and superlative adjectival degrees under the prescribed traditional heading ‘the comparison of adjectives’ (Figure 11) epitomizes the sway of traditional grammar over early Pama-Nyungan description.

16 “Nachlässigkeit des Sprechens” (Koch 1868:no pag.)
The existence of a particle in the SAE comparative construction: “X is bigger than Y” and the marking of the adjective for comparative and superlative (the ‘Gross, Grösser, am Grössten’ paradigm in German) (Haspelmath 2001:1499;1501-1502) stand in contrast to the constructions presented in many PN languages. The semantics of comparison and extreme are often conveyed lexically rather than through morphology:

4. nhandru nguyma-yi marla ngakunga
   3sgfERG  know-PRES more 1sgLOC
   “she knows more than me”

(Austin 2013:112[1981a])

Alternatively the semantics of comparison and extreme may be conveyed though the syntactic frame of juxtaposition (X big, Y little). The description of a morphological process was sometimes falsely specified in early descriptions of Australian languages.

In descriptions of Arrernte, for example, T.G.H.Strehlow (1944:86-87) — following C.Strehlow (1931[c.1907:28-30];1910:8), following Kempe (1891:7) — showed derivations of the adjective with the morpheme –alkura to denote the comparative and -indora to denote the superlative. Both are currently analysed as free-forms and not as suffixes in the Western Arrernte dictionary (Breen 2000). The first, alkwerre functions as a quantitative adjective, translated as ‘more’. The second, nthurre is listed by Wilkins (1989:587) as a word meaning true, proper, exact, real, which “in modifying adjectives means ’very’”. The structures are not formally equivalent with the –er and –est of English. All early authors expressed some awareness that the forms they represented as suffixes attached to the adjective were in fact just words meaning ‘more’ and ‘very’ but nevertheless represented their structure in order to conform to prescribed traditional schema. While an adjective in an Arrernte NP that is modified by alkwerre ‘more’ has a similar semantic function to the SAE morphological comparative construction, an adjective modified by nthurre is not correctly described as marking superlative degree.

Similarly, Lutheran missionaries Poland & Schwarz’s description of a morphological superlative in Guugu-Yimidhirr (1900:no pag.), repeated by Roth, (1901:26) (Appendix
1§1.3.2), represented the form kana as a superlative adjectival prefix. The form kana (ganaa) is currently listed as a particle meaning “alright”, “OK” (Haviland 1979:169). Constructions formed with ganaa are not functionally equivalent to the superlative category predicted by the traditional grammatical framework:

5. Nyundu ganaa? Ganaa
   2sgNOM OK  OK
   “how are you [=are you OK]? I’m fine [=OK]”
   (Haviland 1979:152)

6. Nyundu mayi budo-y ganaa, ngali dhada-a
   2sgNOM food-[ACC]  eat-PAST  OK  1dlNOM go-NONPAST
   “When you have eaten [enough?], then we’ll go”
   (Haviland 1979:152)

Yet Roth (1901:26) translated ganaa preceding the adjective meaning ‘weak’ as weakest (Figure 12). Haviland does not describe this construction. It appears that it was constructed as a morphological and semantic equivalent to the SAE superlative by either Roth or by Poland & Schwarz.

![Figure 12: Roth’s description of the superlative degree of adjectives, 1901:26 (Guugu-Yimidhirr)](image)

Based on Roth’s analysis of Guugu-Yimidhirr, the idea that some Australian languages have a morphological superlative later entered into mainstream Australian linguistic thought (Elkin 1937:165; Capell 1937:55).

In 1874, G.Taplin (Appendix 2§1.1) circulated a questionnaire in order to gather information about Aboriginal customs and languages. The material was published in *Manners, customs and Languages of the South Australian Aborigines gathered from Enquiries made by authority of South Australian Government, Edited by the late Rev. G.Taplin, of Point Macleay* (1879a). The nature of the questions Taplin formulated is revealing of his developing understandings of PN structure and of the type of issues that he perceived as important or in need of clarification. Fourteen of the questions he asked relate to language (1879a:6), six questions sought information about potentially unnecessary categories:17

---

17Several of Taplin’s respondents provided no answer to questions eliciting linguistic data. In answer to question 31, which requested information about nominal declension, Police-trooper Provis reported that ‘Ku-ka-tha’; “is altogether too crude and meagre to admit of these nice grammatical distinctions” (Provis in Taplin 1879a: 97).
30. Has the language any articles? If so, what are they? Are forms of the pronouns used as articles?
35. Is there any gender to pronouns?
38. How is the passive form of the verb constructed?
39. Is there any verb “to be,” or “to have” in the language?
40. Is the letter *s* used in the language, or *f, v, z* ?
41. What are the numerals? How high can a native count in their own language?

Grammatical gender,\(^{18}\) about which Taplin enquired, is another feature inherent to the
traditional descriptive framework but generally not applicable to the description of PN
languages. Since the term ‘gender’ is used within traditional grammar to describe both the
category held by nouns with which other word classes agree, as well as the lexical marking for
biological gender (e.g., Gildersleeve 1895:10-11; Ramshorn 1824:19-32), the category gender
is maintained in a body of early Pama-Nyungan grammars of languages with no system of
gender.

Some of the earliest grammarians working in South Australia were aware that these
categories were not pertinent to their analyses. Many of these features are among a list described
as absent in Australian languages by Schürmann (1846:250-251) (§7.1.1) and by Moorhouse
(1846) (§7.2.1). Yet they continued to be included in PN descriptions for the following century.

It is however important to consider that the classical grammatical rubric may also have been
the preferred vehicle to carry PN structures, for reasons that were not linguistic in nature, even
when a grammarian realised that it was not a good morphological fit. The traditional framework
may have been chosen for the utilitarian reason that it was the simplest and most easily
understood way to convey grammatical structure. Whether employed by missionaries in
unpublished MS grammars intended for circulation only within the mission, or by grammarians
writing for international publication in prestigious philological journals, the framework was the
only available framework that could render the material immediately accessible to a
linguistically trained reader. Such pedagogical motivation for engaging the traditional
framework has previously been suggested for the missionary grammatical analysis of
Polynesian languages:

\(^{18}\) The term ‘gender’ is used here to refer to both noun class systems and pronominal gender systems, which are
taken to exhibit grammatical gender on the grounds of agreement because “the control of anaphoric pronouns by
their antecedent (the girl … she) [is seen] as part of agreement” (Corbett 2013). Note that this usage differs from
that used by Dixon (2002: 452).
It is not ... certain that it always and only was ignorance and lack of insight into the grammatical structure of Polynesian languages that dictated the descriptive solutions of the missionary grammar. There are several indications that there were other and more pedagogical reasons behind their choices (Hovdhaugen 1993:109).

Further, it has been argued that when describing Awabakal, Threlkeld was motivated to show that the language was spoken by intelligent and sophisticated people (Roberts 2008). Many of the corpus grammarians stressed that the structure they described evinced intelligence on the part of the speakers (Teichelmann & Schürmann 1840:iv; Kempe 1891:24). Missionary-grammarians appear to have also sought to elevate the status of Aboriginal languages not only by drawing attention to grammatical structure but also by showing that the Aboriginal language was capable of being construed using the same terminology and framework as Classical Greek and Latin, the languages placed at the pinnacle of human potential linguistic achievement. When, for example, T.G.H. Strehlow — son of missionary C. Strehlow — introduced ‘the verb’ in a grammar of Arrernte (1944:106[1938]) he explained that “the tenses and moods given below all bear familiar and easily intelligible names not very much different from those borne by the moods and tenses in Latin and Greek.” This tendency has similarly been observed in colonial Africa (Gilmour, 2006).

The traditional grammatical framework also continued to be engaged even when the grammarians recognised that the inherited framework was inappropriately designed to capture the morpho-syntactic structure of the target language. Early grammarians continued to present traditional grammatical schema even when presenting evidence that the predicted categories did not apply to the described language. Schemata were sometimes presented as vacuous headings with an accompanying apologetic note that the feature had not been found. Grammarians commonly note the lack of grammatical gender in their introductions to the ‘substantive’ where the category ‘gender’ is conventionally given (Teichelmann and Schürmann 1840:4; Meyer 1843:10; Schürmann 1844a:3; Taplin 1880:7; Kempe 1891:2; Strehlow n.d:no pag.). Similarly under the heading ‘the article’ Symmons (1841:iii) and Roth (1897 5:1901:19) state that there is none.
2.3.2 The description of foreign PN structures

An array of ‘foreign’ PN features that the traditional grammatical framework could not readily deal with was described by the early grammarians. The description of categories that were not integral to the inherited descriptive framework required a grammarian to either extend himself beyond what was descriptively familiar or to borrow techniques innovated by previous grammarians. Early grammarians were most likely to look for guidance from their predecessors’ descriptions when venturing to describe structures that the traditional grammatical framework was powerless to convey. These areas of the grammar for which the early missionary-grammarians were theoretically and terminologically ill equipped provide particularly rich fields of historiographic study, evidencing lineages of descriptive practice. They include:

- The marking and function of the ergative case (throughout)
- The large case systems of Pama-Nyungan languages (throughout)
- Systems of bound pronouns (§3.2.5.1)
- The juxtaposition of constituents in inalienably possessed phrases (§8.6.9)
- The inclusive and exclusive pronominal distinction (§4.5 & 8.6.8)
- The morphological marking of clause subordination (Chapter 10)

Note here that Hebrew has both ‘separate’ pronouns and ‘pronominal suffixes’ (Gesenius & Kautzsch 1910:105-109). It might therefore be expected that grammarians of Australian languages who were familiar with the structure of Hebrew would be better placed to describe the bound pronouns of some Australian languages.

Five of the questions Taplin circulated (1879a:6) sought information about points of PN grammar for which the traditional framework is deficient:

11. What is the system of kinship in the tribe? Give names for following relationships.

A note to this item states: “It is also desirable to discover whether there is not a slight variation of the word according as it is borne or attributed to the speaker; for instance, a variation for my father, your father, his father, &c”.

31. What is the form of the declension of nouns? In the case of a word for “man,” how do they say “of a man,” “to a man,” “by a man” [as an agent], “by a man” [situated near a man], “from a man,” or “a man” objectively? (Parentheses original).

32. Is there a dual form of the noun — i.e., is there not only a word for man and men but a word for two men?

34. Is there an abbreviated form of the pronoun, for the sake of euphony, used in composition?

36. Has the verb any indicative mood? Or has the verb only a participle construction? Is the form in which the verb is used in the indicative the form in which the same word is used adjectivally? Give a specimen.

Thirty-five years after Threlkeld had written the first grammar of an Australian language (1834), these questions show that Taplin was aware that Australian languages were likely to exhibit pronominal morphology sensitive to kinship (Qu.11) (§6.2.3), systems of bound
pronouns (Qu.34) (§7.4), and that he was fairly well informed about the type of arguments that were likely to be morphologically marked, and about ergative morphology (Qu.31). See how ergative forms are elicited with the prepositional phrase: ‘by a man’, which Taplin anticipates will be different from the locative or comitative form elicited with the phrase ‘by a man [situated near a man]’.

The inclusion of these questions seeking information about foreign structures marks a change in perspective from both Moorhouse’s and Schürmann’s earlier typologies of Australian languages, which were essentially deficit models, listing features that the languages lacked.

Taplin’s elicitation of examples of verb participles in question 36 relates to a particular analysis of syntax given by missionary Meyer (1843) in Ramindjeri (§6.2.5), which Taplin subsequently assumed in descriptions of Ngarrindjeri (1867, 1872, 1878).

Note that dual number is not strictly a deficient category because it occurs in Homeric and Classical Greek and in Sanskrit and is reconstructed for Proto-Indo-European. It is described in all of the corpus grammars. Dual pronouns had been shown by Dawes (1790-1791b:30) and were described in Threlkeld’s earliest work (1827:4-8) (§3.1.1), which was published the same year as W. Humboldt’s treatise Über den Dualis (On the dual form) (GS Vol.6, S.4–30), which surveyed the occurrence of dual morphology in known languages. Threlkeld was familiar with the morphological marking of dual number on pronouns from his knowledge of Polynesian languages. In 1834 (p.viii) he described dual number as a regional feature: “[I]n this part of the hemisphere, all the languages in the South Seas in common with New South Wales, possess a dual number, and so essential is it to the languages, that conversation could not be carried on without this form of speech”.

2.3.3 Difficulties in describing the case system

Taplin’s method of seeking case forms in Question 31 of the circular he distributed in 1874 (1879a:6) highlights the difficulties associated with identifying and naming Australian case functions that are evident throughout the corpus.

Taplin does not seek the nominative form because it was known to be the unmarked root. Only the accusative and ergative forms are requested using traditional grammatical terminology, viz. ‘objectively’ and ‘as an agent’. For other cases Taplin seeks a form that translates an English prepositional phrase. The translation of PN inflected case forms with prepositional phrases in English, German, and sometimes Latin, is common to the corpus, and reflects the partially analytic case systems of SAE languages (Blake 2001:9).
Case forms marking functions carried synthetically in SAE languages were readily assigned case labels, whereas case forms marking functions carried analytically in SAE languages tended to be translated with prepositional phrases, and described as prepositions.

Both strategies depicted case forms in a way that was potentially ambiguous, and both were problematic in assuming an isomorphic correspondence of case functions between SAE and PN case systems. The methodological limitations of representing the function of PN case forms has serious consequences for the reclamation of case systems based on historical materials.

Many of Taplin’s prepositional phrases could have elicited more than one case suffix. The prepositional phrase ‘of a man’, for example, would have elicited either an NP marked for possessive case or for dative case in a language like Awabakal in which this range of functions is formally differentiated (see Figure 31).

\[
\text{kuri-kupa} \quad \text{or} \quad \text{kuri-ku} \\
\text{man-POSS} \quad \text{man-DAT} \\
\text{“of a man”} \quad \text{“of a man”}
\]

Further, Taplin’s prepositional phrases are likely to have elicited differently marked NPs depending on the predicking verb. For example, ‘to a man’ used with the verb ‘to give’ would have elicited an accusative NP in a language like Arrernte (Wilkins 1989:169; Henderson 2013:294) in which the second argument of this di-transitive verb stands in accusative case:

\[
\text{artwe-nhe} \\
\text{man-ACC} \\
\text{“to a man”}
\]

But ‘to a man’ used with a verb of motion may have elicited an allative form:

\[
\text{artwe-werne} \\
\text{man-ALL} \\
\text{“to a man”}
\]

In some languages, like Arrernte, the form marking allative function would have been dedicated to marking this function alone. In other languages (see Blake 1977:60) the allative form might also have been used to translate ‘at a man’, ‘for a man’ and ‘of a man’, if the allative case showed syncretism for locative, dative, and genitive functions respectively. Taplin’s prepositional phrases used with the same verb in different languages would also have elicited NPs marking the same role but standing in different cases. Used with the verb ‘to speak’, for example, ‘to a man’ would have been translated using a locative NP in Diyari (Austin 2013:131[1981a]), but a dative NP in Arrernte (Wilkins 1989:179).
The organisation of PN case systems varies between languages and consequently “[c]omparing cases across languages is problematic” (Blake 2001:155). The functional range marked by a suffix designating a particular case-label in one language may only partially overlap with the functional range of a suffix bearing the same label in a different language.

Another factor contributing to the difficulty in describing case is a lack of clarity about the primary function that should attract a certain case label. Traditional case labels cannot be accepted at face value (ibid.,155). This is true especially of the cases labelled ‘dative’ and ‘ablative’ ($§3.2.2 & §5.5.3$), both of which mark a diverse range of functions in Latin (Gildersleeve 1895:218-230;246-265; Blake 1994:157-162). That the particular function that early grammarians named ‘dative’ and ‘ablative’ differ had ramifications for the representations of Australian case systems.

2.3.4 Appropriation of the traditional framework

While maintaining the traditional grammatical framework, early grammarians employed techniques by which the traditional framework was subverted and used to construe foreign PN ‘peculiarities’. Section headings inherent to the traditional schema which accommodated Europeanisms that were not to be found in PN languages, provided vacant schema into which foreign structures, for which the traditional framework was deficient, could be conveyed. This occurred both when it was strikingly apparent that the two structures bore no formal equivalence, as well as when a grammarian was unaware that the described PN structure was not equivalent to SAE structure associated with the schema in which it was shown. In these ways the traditional framework was colonised by foreign structures.

For example, the allative case suffix tended to be under-specified in the corpus grammars because allative function is not marked by the morphological case systems of the languages in which the missionaries were trained. Diyari grammarians, however, exemplified allative case marking under the heading ‘correlative pronouns’, a morphological category inherent to the descriptive framework of Classical Greek (Figure 8) but unnecessary when applied to PN languages. Each Diyari grammarian (Koch 1868; Schoknecht 1947:8[1872]; Flierl 188:28; Reuther 1981:18[1899]) provided the following pair (7, 8) under the heading ‘indefinite correlative pronouns’. They showed the marking of allative and ablative case on the spatial location nominal yerla ‘elsewhere’. Spatial locational nominals are a small closed class of nouns which inflect only for allative – nhi and ablative – ndru cases and are unmarked in locative

---

19 Correlative pronouns or ‘correlative pronominal adverbs’ are sets that correspond with one another in both form and meaning, for instance, ‘whither?’ and ‘hither’, ‘whence?’ and ‘hence’.
case (Austin 2013:41;54-56[1981a]). There is, however, no suggestion in these early sources that the suffixes marking these cases were pronominal.

7. **Jerlauandru**
   irgend woher, von weit her [from anywhere, from far away]
   
   *yarla-wa-ntru*
   elsewhere-DIST-ABL
   “from anywhere”

   (Koch 1868:no pag.)

8. **Jerlauanni**
   irgend wohin von Entfernung [to anywhere distant]
   
   *yarla-wa-nhi*
   elsewhere-DIST-ALL
   “to anywhere”

   (Koch 1868:no pag.)

T.G.H.Strehlow’s (1944:189;203[1938]) grammar of Western Arrernte similarly showed allative case function within discussions of correlative pronouns.

Other instances include the construal of ergative morphology as marking passive constructions (§6.4), the depiction of bound or enclitic pronouns as verbal inflections for number and person (Mathews §7.4.3; Teichelmann & Schürmann 1840 §7.4.3; Spieseke 1878 §7.4.3), and the description of deictic forms as third person ‘neuter’ pronouns (Threlkeld 1834) (§3.2.1.1).

Foreign PN structures were slotted into the traditional grammatical framework under traditionally prescribed section headings when the PN structure was perceived to be *functionally rather than structurally* equivalent to the SAE structure traditionally described under that heading. For example, under the heading ‘passive verbs’, grammarians frequently noted that there were none, before going on to describe their perception of the way the European passive function is carried in PN languages. Grammarians commonly described active clauses with no overt subject as passive constructions. In the first grammar of Diyari, for example, Homann and Koch (1868:no pag.) stated:

> Passive verbs are missing in Diari”, before explaining that if one wanted to say; ‘my father was slain’, one would place *aperi nakani* ‘my father’ in accusative case and leave out the subject *tarnalia* “they”.

Similarly Roth (1901:20) presented a syntactically equivalent Guugu-Yimidhirr construction (Figure 13) as ‘passive’ within a discussion of verbs after stating: “There is no special form of the verb to express the Passive but it is rendered by the person passive being placed in the objective case, the individual whence the action proceeds being understood”. Threlkeld also showed a transitive clause with an elided agent as the ‘passive’ (1834:28), as did Symmons
(1841:xx), and Hale (1846:494). The constructions carry the same discourse function as European passives in de-emphasising the agent.

![Figure 13: Roth’s illustration of passive constructions, 1901:20 (Guugu-Yimidhirr)](image)

Another prominent instance where a foreign PN structure is presented as a prescribed traditional category by virtue only of its *functional* equivalence is found in the Lutheran missionaries’ exemplifications of reciprocal and reflexive verb morphology under the heading ‘reciprocal and reflexive pronouns’. Flierl (1880:26) (Figure 14), for example, gave the following Diyari reciprocal and reflexive constructions showing valency altering derivational verbal morphology under the heading ‘pronoun’:

9. **Ngani demateraia**
   Ich schneide mich

   nganhi dama-tharri-yi
   1sgNOM cut-REFL-PRES
   “I cut myself”

10. **Ngaianai antjama laia**
    Wir lieben einander.

   ngayani ngantya-mali
   1plEXCL love –RECIP
   “We love one another”

(Flierl 1880:26)
When describing ‘the article’, T.G.H. Strehlow (1944:57[1938]) wrote: “While there is no separate word in Aranda corresponding to the English ‘the’ the French ‘le’ or ‘la’ or the German ‘der’, ‘die’, ‘das’ the third personal pronoun (era) is very frequently put after the noun in an Aranda sentence, and then undergoes a change in meaning until its force is practically identical with that of the definite article in modern European languages.”

That grammarians described PN grammatical categories in sections of the traditional grammatical framework that accounted for SAE structures that were perceived to be functionally rather than structurally equivalent helps to account for the range of functionally diverse content that is given under the word-class heading pre/post-position in the early grammars. Many grammarians are unperturbed by the contradiction in describing what they represent as ‘affixes’ as the class of word, ‘preposition’. For example, as a note attached to his declension of Diyari nouns, Koch (1868:no pag.) wrote: “Additional mention must also be made of various adjuncts, so-called postpositions, being attached instead of the ending. However, we will deal with those separately as a particular class of words”.20 Structures that are included under the word class heading pre/postposition are those that are functionally equivalent to SAE prepositions regardless of the structure. As Roth (1897:13) explained: “prepositions, or what would correspond to them in our language, are signified in the Pitta-Pitta language by various suffixes … or by separate words [emphasis added]”.

20 Nachträglich sei noch bemerkt, daß verschiedene Anhängsel an Sustantive s.g. Postpositionen statt der Endung angehängt werden, welche wir jedoch für sich als besondere Wortklasse behandeln werden.
2.4 Traditional descriptive models

Blevins (2013:375), notes that the traditional word-based model of European grammatical description:

project[ed] morphological analysis primarily upwards from the word, and treat[ed] the association of words with paradigms or other sets of forms as the most fundamental morphological task.

The recognition of sub-word units — roots, stems, prefixes and suffixes — as well as accounts of word-internal morpheme constituent order were not part of the Greek or Latin grammatical tradition. The word and paradigm (henceforth WP) model of description (Hockett 1954; Robins 1959), which developed to best convey the fusional and synthetic typology of SAE languages, takes the word, and not the morpheme, as the minimal unit of analysis.

The WP model, which is implicit to the traditional framework, was widely applied to the description of PN languages because, like categories inherent to traditional grammar, it was the only available framework.

The WP model developed to accommodate the case systems of classical European languages in which the marking for case was frequently fused with the marking for number and gender. The model is able to simultaneously represent three grammatical categories within a single word. This paradigmatic presentation of words was suited to the fusional morphology of SAE languages where multiple categories might be carried by a single portmanteau morpheme.

Alternative descriptive models recognising word-internal constituents post-date the early description of Australian languages. Blevins (2013:383) describes A. Schleicher’s (1821-1868) analysis of wurzeln ‘roots’ and beziehungslauten ‘inflections’ – literally ‘relational sounds’, given in an 1859 description of Lithuanian as “almost entirely without precedent in the classical tradition [emphasis added]”. Note that it was in this work that Schleicher coined the term ‘morphology’ on a biological analogy (1859:35). The term ‘morpheme’ was not coined until 1895, by the Polish linguist J. Baudouin de Courtenay (1845-1929).

Inspection of the corpus grammars, however, shows that sub-word units were commonly recognised and represented by the earliest PN grammarians. Missionary grammarians in Australia, who were faced with the pre-theoretical challenge of describing the structure of agglutinative languages, combined the word and paradigm descriptive model with presentations of sub-word units prior to Schleicher’s publication. Suffixes were referred to as ‘signs’, ‘terminations’, ‘terminating syllables’, ‘affixes’, ‘postfixes’, and ‘particles’. In 1838, for example, Günther presented the ‘terminations of cases’ showing case inflections as sub-word units (Figure 15) over two decades before Schleicher’s publication (1859), and sixty years
before the term ‘morpheme’ was coined (1895). In 1840 Teichelmann and Schürmann presented “affixes or terminating syllables” (Figure 16), which like Günther’s earlier Wiradjuri grammar conveyed the functional load carried by word internal constituents by assigning case labels to them.

![Figure 15: Günther’s presentation of case suffixes as unattached morphemes, 1838:45 (Wiradjuri)](image1)

**Table of affixes.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ko (nna)</td>
<td></td>
<td>nni,</td>
<td></td>
<td>lo (rio, dlo)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.</td>
<td>la (cla, cla)</td>
<td>kò</td>
<td>nni</td>
<td>la (rin, cla)</td>
<td>nni</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

![Figure 16: Teichelmann & Schürmann’s presentation of case suffixes, 1840:5 (Kaurna)](image2)

In 1843 Meyer described bound pronouns in Ngarrindjeri in the following terms: “the inseparable [forms] are fragments of the separable pronouns, attached as affixes to other words” (1843:22).

The missionaries also stated rules explaining the attachment of inflectional morphology to the roots. Meyer (1843:11) wrote: “The relations expressed by the Latin and Greek cases are in this language expressed by particles added to the root”. Roth (1897:8) stated: “when the possessor is a person, -ng-ā is suffixed” and “the noun objective takes the suffix –nā in the present or past time, and –kō in future time”.

Similarly, London Mission Society missionary J. Davies (1722-1855) had earlier discussed ‘prefixing’ constituents and ‘adding particles’ to words in a grammar of Tahitian (1851:16[1823]). He did this despite also creating maximal word boundaries when representing a language in which the concept of the word is “notoriously difficult” (Hovdhaugen 1993:108).
The missionaries’ presentations of sub-word units and their discussion of the ways in which these attached to other word-internal constituents given in a-theoretical, synchronic, pedagogical grammatical descriptions is presumably the marginal type of work leading Blevins (2013:383) to qualify Schleicher’s widely-read, academically-based discovery as being ‘almost entirely’ without precedent.

It is possible that German missionaries who described PN pronominal suffixes — Günther (§7.4.1), Teichelmann and Schürmann (§7.4.3), and Meyer (§7.4.2) — did so by analogy with Hebrew. Gesenius’ account of suffixing pronominal morphology in Hebrew was first published in German in 1813 (p.158).

Further, Lutheran missionaries who trained at the Jänicke Mission Institute (§ 5.1.2) are likely to have been acquainted with methods of describing agglutinative morphology through reading the grammar of Tamil written by the Church Missionary Society missionary C.T.E Rhenius (1836) (§5.1.3). Tamil, like PN languages, is agglutinative and is largely suffixing. The language has its own classical tradition of grammatical description. Rhenius wrote (1836:i):

“[I]n constructing the chapters on Orthography and Etymology [morphology], I have followed more the order of the native Grammars, than that of the European languages, because I judged it expedient to introduce the student at once to the native manner of treating the subject; and to facilitate the study of native grammars. I have, however, everywhere noticed the difference between the Tamil and the European languages (1836:i).

Rhenius identified and described discrete word-internal units of meaning. Like grammarians in Australia, Rhenius discussed nominal declension (pp.44-49) in terms of ‘terminations’ attaching to the nominative form. He also discussed verb morphology in terms of ‘roots’ and ‘affixes’ (p.76).

Blevins (2013) accounts for the theoretical recognition by academic European philologists of models and terminology accommodating the description of agglutinative morphology. More research is required to trace the development of practices in the far-flung missionary fields and to establish how innovations that were made in response to the non-SAE structures were influenced by, and influenced, schools of non-SAE description.
2.4.1 The word and paradigm descriptive model

The application of the WP descriptive model to PN languages was reasonably well suited to the synthetic character of PN languages. The WP model of grammatical description anticipated that the nominal inflectional categories of case, number and gender and the verbal inflectional categories of tense, and agreement with the number of the subject would be carried within the word. The application of the WP descriptive model to PN structure resulted in an effective representation of an important range of Pama-Nyungan morpho-syntactic data. Missionary Homann’s Diyari pronominal paradigm, for example (Figure 17), shows person on the horizontal axis, case on the vertical axis and number through separate structurally identical paradigms. Homann also represented a fourth category, natural gender in the third person, as a separate division of the horizontal axis (1892[1868]:43-44).

![Figure 17: Homann’s use of the Word and Paradigm model. In Fraser 1892:43-44[1868] (Diyari)](image)

Like Homann, all the corpus grammarians used some sort of WP model to represent pronominal forms.

But unlike the synthetic and fusional morphology of SAE where the marking of gender, case and number is fused within single morphemes, PN nominal morphology is generally both synthetic and agglutinative. Individual grammatical categories carried within the word are generally inflected discretely. While the agglutinative structure of PN words made the earlier grammarians’ analytical task easier, because the shape of a morpheme was easily associated with the marking of a single function, the wholesale application of the WP model resulted in descriptions that were unnecessarily repetitive. P
2.4.1.1 ‘Declension’

Some early grammarians considered that the agglutinative marking of case and number of nouns did not constitute ‘declension’. The term ‘declension’ from the Latin *declinere* ‘to lean’ has its origin in a conception of the marking for ‘case’ — from the Latin *cadere* ‘to fall’, *casus* ‘falling’ — as falling away from the nominative.

Schürmann (1840:4) wrote: “there is no declension of substantives in the common sense of the word”, and Moorhouse (1846:5) stated:

> It is difficult to determine whether the terminations in the above examples strictly form declensions, or whether they might not be considered particles added to the roots, to indicate the relations expressed. I have preferred giving them as declensions as the terminating syllable of the root is always changed

Taplin (1880:8[1878]) expressed a similar concern. The idea, which was expressed solely by early South Australian grammarians, was later pursued at some length by Capell (1937:49-50;56), who described the Arrernte case paradigm he provided (p.50) as “not quite true declension, because the same suffixes are found in the dual and plural as well as in the singular”.

The application of the word and paradigm model to Pama-Nyungan agglutinative structure resulted in descriptions that, while reasonably accurate, are not always economical. This is less true of languages like Ngarrindjeri in which the ordering of number and case suffixes varies according to whether the case is syntactic or non-syntactic (Meyer 1843; Horgen 2004:101), or of languages like Diyari with complicated splits in the systems of marking syntactic case (Figure 190).

But the wholesale application of the WP descriptive model to a language like Arrernte, which has predictable agglutinative morphology, minimal nominal classes, and no morphophonemic variation between the stem and inflectional and derivational morphology resulted in superfluous paradigmatic description.

2.4.1.2 T.G.H.Strehlow’s use of the WP model

T.G.H.Strehlow’s grammar of Arrernte (1944[1938]) typifies how the rigorous application of the WP model results in uneconomical descriptions. The work is atypical of early Australian description in the extent to which it over-utilises the traditional WP model. This grammar sits in the second era of Australian description (McGregor 2008a:2-13), and might therefore be expected to utilise innovative methods of accommodating PN structures. Yet it adheres more closely than many corpus grammars to the traditional descriptive model.

In Arrernte, case is marked on the final constituent of a continuous NP. If the noun is followed by an adjective, or by a third person pronoun, the case of the NP is marked not on the
noun, but on these other NP-final constituents. Consequently, T.G.H. Strehlow presented full tables of declension for both indefinite nouns and definite nouns, i.e., those that are followed by a third person pronoun (Figure 18). He did this despite also having presented the case forms of third person pronouns in full tables of pronominal declension. He then (1944:78-86[1938]) went on to provide a full ‘declension of adjectives’ (Figure 19). A reasonably astute typist might have imagined a syntagmatic statement in order to eradicate this unnecessary repetition.

Figure 18: T.G.H. Strehlow’s use of the Word and Paradigm model, 1944:79[1938] (Western Arrernte)

Figure 19: T.G.H. Strehlow’s use of the Word and Paradigm model, 1944:84[1938] (Western Arrernte)

2.4.2 Alternative descriptive models

Most early PN grammarians, especially those who wrote detailed grammars and had learnt the language relatively well, blended two descriptive models when describing PN languages – the WP model, inherited from the classical description of fusional European languages, and a word-internal model befitting the agglutinative typology of the languages at hand. The presentation of case inflections independent of the stem to which they attach (Figure 15, Figure 16) and the labelling of these word-internal morphemes as markers of case was an efficient way of conveying that these forms always mark the same case irrespective of the number and gender of the nominal. Missionary grammarians in Australia innovated pre-theoretical common-sense strategies to better describe the agglutinative morphological structure.

Ancient constituency-based grammatical traditions are indigenous to the Indian subcontinent and culminated in Pāṇini’s fourth century BC description of Sanskrit (Blevins 2013:375). Blevins attributes the “extraordinary success of the Neogrammarian School” to the
“consolidation of … ‘external’ and ‘internal’ perspectives on word structure” (2103:382). He suggests that it was a knowledge of the descriptive tradition of Sanskrit that first brought syntagmatic description — statements about the relative ordering of sub-word constituents — to the neo-grammarians’ attention, writing (ibid., 382): “While the classical word-based model would continue to serve as the basis of Greek and Latin pedagogy from Priscian’s time until the present, the Western rediscovery of Sanskrit ensured that it did not remain unchallenged as a general model of linguistic description”. Further, Rocher (2006:748) describes how in the nineteenth century:

Sanskrit was first taught to Europeans … according to the tradition of rigorous analysis by Pāṇini and other Indian grammarians and phoneticians. The identification of the root as the smallest common denominator of derived forms, vocalic alternation, derivational and inflectional suffixes, substitution rules, zeroing … were the procedures according to which Europeans learned Sanskrit from pandits.

Syntagmatic analysis, which had been partially introduced to the European neogrammarians in the late 19th century through familiarisation with traditions of Sanskrit, was later developed in the work of Bloomfield (Blevins 2013:382-5). Alternative descriptive models, the Item and Process (henceforth IP) (Hockett 1954:128) and the Item and Arrangement (henceforth IA) models (Hockett 1954:114), differ from the WP model in not according centrality “to the word as a fundamental unit in the grammar as a whole and as the basic syntactic unit” (Robins 1959:118) The IP model developed in America in response to the structure of American Indian languages in the early decades of the twentieth century. In the 1940s a refined IA descriptive model emerged (Hockett 1954:112). Hockett (p.111) writes: “in this country [America] Boas (1911, pp.27f) established IP, and Sapir (1921, esp. Ch. 4) elaborated it [emphasis added]”.

Concurrent with neogrammarians’ theoretical responses to the descriptive requirements of Sanskrit, some nineteenth century grammarians in Australia not only recognised and represented sub-word units of meaning but also innovated pre-theoretical practical descriptive responses that described the relative ordering of word-internal constituents either in terms of process or arrangement, without of course using these terms. This descriptive response to agglutinative structure occurred before Boas and Sapir were active in American linguistics.

Examine, for example, W.E.Roth’s description of Pitta-Pitta (1897:8) in which he instigated a distinctive method of conveying the relative ordering of inflections for number and case on nominals that was more efficient than the traditional exposition of the forms in lengthy paradigms. Like Meyer (1843) and Schürmann (1844a) (§6.2.1 & 7.1.2), Roth chose not to construct a case paradigm for nouns in different number. Under a subsequent heading ‘number’,
Roth presented an intelligently arranged set of examples designed to clearly exemplify the relative ordering of inflection for case and number with the noun (Figure 20).

The clauses he gave illustrated in turn:

1. An NP unmarked for number standing in the unmarked nominative case
2. An NP inflected for plural number standing in the unmarked nominative case
3. An NP inflected for plural number subsequently inflected for ergative case
4. An NP inflected for plural number subsequently inflected for accusative case
5. An NP inflected for plural number and subsequently marked as being possessed by a third person (Blake 1979b:200), and then subsequently inflected for accusative case. This form is:

   11. umma-lo uttapuukka-pityiri - wara-na
       “a mother [is striking] her children”

   ngama-lu ngathapiyaka-pityiri-wara-nha
   mother-ERG offspring-PL-POSS-ACC
   “A mother (hits) her children”

Roth then stated an IA-type rule regarding the marking of dual number: “the dual is expressed by pa-koo-lā = “two,” which is used in exactly the same manner as pityiri [plural]” (1897:8). Such predictive syntagmatic statements about word internal constituents made in terms of either process or arrangement occur rarely in the corpus grammars, but they do occur.

Explicit demonstrations of, and statements about, word-internal productive constituency are theoretically in conflict with the word and paradigm descriptive model, which takes the word as the smallest analysable unit. The earliest descriptions of PN languages show that the drive to make better presentations of agglutinative morphology prompted new methods of linguistic analysis in Australia. Unlike the similar developments in America described by Hockett (1954:111) these developments in Australia did not impact on a theoretical model.

---

21The Pitta-Pitta word for 'mother' is ngamaRi according to Blake (1979b:234). The form ngathapiyaka which Roth translates as 'children' is recorded by Blake (1979b:235) as only being used by a man speaking of his offspring.

22 Contemporary discussion of the word and paradigm model has developed different senses of the idea of the word and has introduced the notion of the lexeme (Koch 1990, Aronoff 1994).
development of novel descriptive models, which were more appropriate to the description of agglutinative morphology.

2.5 The nature of recorded varieties

When assessing the authenticity of the historical record of PN languages, it is important to keep a number of factors in mind. First missionary-grammarians may have filled in the slots of grammatical paradigms with forms they had not actually heard, but which were anticipated through the identification of patterns. Missionary Günther (1840:350), for example, wrote: “It must be understood as a matter of course that these words are carried out into all the principal cases for the sake of example, though not every word may be used in every case”. Almost a century later T.G.H. Strehlow (1944:171[1938]) included forms in his verb paradigms which he described as “grammatically possible; but I cannot recollect for certain having heard them.”

It is also important to realise that the data provided in the descriptions may not always reflect ‘native speaker usage’. This is likely to be the case where a grammarian had not mastered the language. In other instances ‘native speaker usage’ may not have been the linguistic variety the missionary-grammarians aimed to describe.

Many missionaries began preaching in the vernacular very soon after their arrival at the mission at a time when their grasp of the language was at best minimal. Authors of grammars frequently stated that their understanding of the language was undeveloped, especially with regards to verb morphology (Threlkeld 1834:28; Teichelmann & Schürmann 1840:13; Schürmann 1844a:16). Dresdener missionary S.G. Klose (1802-1889), for example, described the Kaurna hymns sung at the Pirltawrdli School in 1843 as being “written in the first years and because of that still in a very imperfect language. Up to now time has not permitted a revision” (in Graetz 2002:27). Similarly, the publication of service books, containing translations of hymns, the catechism and bible stories written in the vernacular occurred at the very commencement of the missionaries’ linguistic studies at the Bethesda and Hermannsburg missions. The missionary-linguists’ first attempts to produce grammatically correct texts were thus frozen in the published print. It is probable that the language printed in these early mission publications was a ‘missionese’, i.e., a simplified variety of the Aboriginal language used by the missionaries that reflected their limited grasp of the language.

Indeed, Austin (2013:246-247[1981a]) assesses the language used to translate the New Testament into Diyari Testamenta Marra (1897) thirty years after the Lutherans started
investigating the structure of the language, as “clearly not typical of Diyari especially in the relative clause structure [showing] little attempt … to produce ‘natural’ Diyari [emphasis added]”. It is pertinent that Austin perceives that the missionaries did not try to produce natural Diyari. Chapter ten (§10.3.2;10.4.4) examines the processes of clause subordination recorded in the missionaries’ Diyari, which Austin identifies as different from native speaker usage.

The target variety of the Diyari grammars may have been a ‘missionese’ i.e., a simplified evangelistic linguistic variety used in scriptural translations, sermons, and possibly in the mission domain by Aboriginal people, rather than the language spoken away from the mission in a broad range of contexts. Missionary Siebert termed the variety used at the mission Küchen-Dieri (Kitchen Diyari) (quoted in Kneebone 2005b:372-373), and described how it was structurally simple compared with the variety used away from the mission (§8.5.2.3).

The nature of the variety recorded in the corpus grammars may be dependent upon the purpose for which a grammar was written. Pedagogical grammars written at missions solely for evangelistic purpose might be more likely to describe a ‘missionese’ than grammars written for publication and aimed at a philologically educated audience.

2.5.1 Mission Guugu-Yimidhirr

Evidence of linguistic varieties developed by missionaries is found in the grammars of Guugu-Yimidhirr written by Lutheran missionaries (Poland & Schwarz 1900) at Cape Bedford mission, and following them by Roth (1901) (Appendix 1§1.3). The ergative marking of NPs recorded in these grammars is dissimilar to the language recorded by Haviland (1979).

These early grammars of Guugu-Yimidhirr, along with Hey’s (1903) grammar of Ngererrikwidhi (Appendix 1§1.3.3), give the poorest account of ergative function and marking in the corpus. Despite the fact that Roth (1897) had previously described the unusual sensitivity of ergative morphology to verb tense in Pitta-Pitta on nouns (p.7) and on pronouns (p.10) (see Blake & Breen 1971:84-90) (Appendix 1§1.3.5.1), ergative morphology is not accounted for in Roth’s later grammar of Guugu-Yimidhirr (Figure 21) or in Poland & Schwarz’s (1900) MS grammar of the language. These grammars make no reference to the ergative marking of the agent of a transitive clause (Figure 21).
An exceptional complexity of ergative allomorphy (Haviland 1979:51) and optional ergative marking on intransitive subjects (ibid.,154-156) presented these early grammarians with a considerable descriptive challenge, and apparently also motivated the missionaries to invent a strategy that avoided the need to mark any noun as ergative. Haviland (1979:133) says that the missionaries “clearly never grasped basic grammatical structure.”

In all example sentences supplied in the early Guugu-Yimidhirr grammars, a noun acting in the role of agent is always followed by a third person pronoun, which shows accusative alignment (AS/O). Examine, for instance, examples 12 & 13. The final constituent of the ergative NP is in each clause a pronoun, which carries the case marking for the entire NP. In example 12, the noun gaangurru ‘kangaroo’ and adjective warrga ‘tall’ are both unmarked in ergative case, but are followed by the 3sg pronoun, which takes the same form in ergative and nominative cases. Similarly, in example 13 the possessed kin-term biibi-ngadhu ‘my father’ is unmarked in ergative case and is followed by the 3sg pronoun.

12. Ganguru warka nulu goda dabelbi
   “tall kangaroo was kicking the dog”
   gaangurru warrga nyulu gudaa dhabil-ʔdhi
   kangaroo-[ERG] tall-[ERG] 3sgERG tame-dog-[ACC] kick-PAST
   (Roth 1901:23)

13. Peba-ngato nulu kalka dirainggur-be uma
   father-my he the spear old man’s gives
   biibi-ngadhu nyulu galga dyiirraanhgurr-bi wu-maa
   father-1sgPOSS-[ERG] 3sgERG spear-[ACC] man-POSS give-PRES
   (Roth, 1901:29)

All example clauses in the early Guugu-Yimidhirr grammars showing an NP acting in the role of A have a pronoun as the final NP constituent.

Haviland (1979:102-5) describes how in Guugu-Yimidhirr case is marked optionally on each NP constituent but usually on the last constituent. Unlike the early grammarians he gives numerous examples, such as 14 & 15, in which a noun is overtly marked for ergative case:
Haviland (p.104) also describes how “if a referent of the noun phrase is an animate being, especially a human … it is normal for the whole NP to begin with an appropriate person pronoun [emphasis added].” His account of Guugu-Yimidhirr NP structure does not describe pronominal-final NPs. In natural Guugu-Yimidhirr an animate NP in ergative case is likely to have appeared with a third person pronoun, which would have preceded other NP constituents taking ergative case marking. It appears that the missionaries invented a variety in which a correctly marked case form of the ergative pronoun was placed in NP-final position, eliminating the necessity to mark the noun as overtly ergative.

Two other factors further suggest that the missionaries employed third person pronouns to avoid marking case on ergative nouns. The first relates to the structure of the example clauses supplied in the early grammars. Neither of the accusative NPs in Roth’s examples 12 and 13 guda ‘tame dog’ and galga dyiirraanhgurr-bi guda ‘old man’s spear’ appear with a personal pronoun. Yet Haviland (p.104) states: “Not all animate NPs are adjoined to a personal pronoun, but most animate NPs in A, S or O function are”. The early grammarians recorded third person pronouns in ergative NPs but not in animate accusative NPs, which Haviland says would occur in fluent native speaker usage.

The second factor indicates that Roth (1901) accurately recorded a variety that had developed at the mission in which non-pronominal constituents of ergative NPs did not receive ergative morphology. In Guugu-Yimidhirr the ergative case shows syncretism with the instrumental case (Haviland 1979:47). Although Roth did not account for ergative marking of nouns in the role of agent, he did record a range of ergative/instrumental allomorphy in Guugu-Yimidhirr (1901:30) (Appendix 1§1.3.5.2), which he exemplified as only occurring on NPs with instrumental function (Appendix 1 Figure 19). That Roth identified a list of suffixes that mark ergative/instrumental case functions in Guugu-Yimidhirr, but only exemplified this morphology in instrumental function, and made no mention of ergativity, suggests that the variety he recorded, either independently or by reproducing the missionaries’ data, was that used by the missionaries rather than fluent native speaker usage.
When assessing the early grammatical materials examined in this thesis, it is important to remain mindful that the target language of an early grammar might not necessarily have been the natural variety used away from the mission.

2.5.2 Kneebone’s (2005b) account of mission Diyari

Kneebone (2005b:28;36) argues that the phonologically altered, standardised and scripted variety of Diyari used by Lutheran missionaries and Diyari Christians at the Bethesda mission substantially influenced the structure of Diyari spoken away from the mission. She argues that the variety of language which was frozen in print, and which was used by the missionaries for proselytisation, and perhaps by a few score of literate Diyari Christians, became a prestige form, which out-lived other varieties. In support of her argument she seeks to identify features of the mission idiom that have been retained into the twentieth century language recorded by Austin (1981). She (2005b:72) writes:

The question must be asked as to the nature of the Diyari spoken retrieved by Austin in the 1970s and whether this language is in fact significantly influenced by mission written forms, vocabulary and grammatical organisation.

For reasons given below, it is my view that Kneebone’s argument overemphasises the importance of the mission in people’s lives and underestimates their ability to code switch as they moved between mission habitation and a semi-traditional lifestyle.

While Kneebone (2005b) views the demise of Diyari as consistent with the high rate of language loss in South Australia, one of the central tenets of her thesis (p.23) is that the path of Diyari to extinction, and its loss of sociolect diversity, were atypical of other languages. She (p:4) writes:

One of the major unintentional effects of the development of a mission idiom in the context of unwritten languages was the promotion of custodianship of the language, from tribal elders and traditional oral transmission to the mission as educator and authority on the standard written form of the language.

Kneebone draws attention to two grammatical features. The first concerns the semantic organisation of a vocabulary compiled by missionaries J.Flierl and C.A.Meyer (1883). Observing that the vocabulary is organised under a set of semantic head-words, which are similar to a small closed set of generic nouns described by Austin (2013:44[1981a]) (Figure 22), Kneebone (p.83) suggests that “it is quite possible that these generic terms were at least in part the product of the categories set in place by the earliest missionaries”. She observes that the following categories given by Flierl and Meyer (1843) — **anti** ‘food’, **paia** ‘birds’, **tjo tjo** ‘worms, reptiles’ and **pita** ‘woods and grasses’ — were later reported by Austin as **nganthi**, **paya**, **thutyu** and **pirta** respectively.
But the marking of a noun class through juxtaposition of a generic noun belonging to a small, closed word set with a specific noun belonging to a large open set of nominals is a widespread feature of Australian languages (Dixon 1980:102), and many of the semantic fields designated by the nine Diyari generic nouns listed by Austin are widespread in PN languages. Diyari’s northeasterly, and grammatically close neighbour Ngamani has a similar system (Austin pers. comm. 11/08/2013), and the missionaries did not teach or support this language. Wangkangurru (Hercus 1994:102) has the ‘prefixing noun’ ‘bird’ paya, which was used almost obligatorily when referring to birds that were ancestral beings, which presumably pre-date missionary influence. In Mparntwe Arrernte (Wilkins 1989:107), which came under no Lutheran missionary pressure, generic nouns denote similar semantic fields as those noted by Kneebone: merne ‘vegetable food’, kere animal food’, thipe ‘birds’, tjape ‘grubs’ arne ‘trees and bushes’, name ‘long grasses’ etc.

The second piece of evidence Kneebone gives to support her claim that the scripted missionary variety of Diyari survived at the expense of more natural forms is equally seriously flawed. Kneebone (p.72) suggests that in twentieth century Diyari “one would expect to find … the ‘overuse’ of auxiliary verbs, which accords nicely with the system of tense forming auxiliaries in German”. Without clarifying what an ‘over-use’ might look like, she suggests that the Diyari auxiliaries, which are described by Austin (2013:13;91-94[1981a]) as a set of six optional, non-lexical auxiliary verbs that interact with verb suffixes to express fine tense and modal distinctions (Figure 23), were used in Diyari through a some process of morpho-syntactic calquing from German.

---

23 können, müssen, wollen, mögen, dürfen and sollen.
However, Kneebone fails to notice that, while this auxiliary system is a “fairly unusual feature for an Australian language …[that] seems to have developed [from main verbs (Austin 2013:13)] fairly recently” (Austin 2013:70), the auxiliary verbal structure is an areal/genetic feature that predates any European contact in the Lake Eyre Basin. Indeed, some Diyari auxiliary verbs were recorded by S.Gason, an English speaking policeman at Lake Hope, as early as 1874 (Austin 2013:39), when one would expect Kneebone’s proposed process of calquing from German at the mission to be still underway. Similar auxiliary sets also occur in Ngamini (Austin pers. comm 11/08/2013), for which no calquing from German can be invoked. It is unlikely that the system of auxiliaries has diffused from Diyari to Ngamini subsequent to the development that Kneebone suggests.
Chapter 3:
Lancelot Threlkeld’s earliest analyses of an Australian language

This chapter discusses L.E. Threlkeld’s (1788-1859) grammar of Awabakal (1834), which gave the earliest account of both nominal and verbal morphology in an Australian language. After providing some historical context in which this inaugural Australian grammar was written, Threlkeld’s presentation of the case system, and his account of ergativity are investigated in detail, thus establishing a base-line to which later corpus grammars can be compared. Section 3.2.5 unravels Threlkeld’s description of bound pronouns and his description of compound pronouns, which were termed by the author ‘the conjoined dual case’, and which have both resulted in different contemporary reclamations of the systems that Threlkeld described.

3.1 Historical overview

Threlkeld, the son of a London brush-maker pursued a range of diverse occupations: tradesman, circus performer, actor and businessman, before commencing missionary training (Gunson 2016b). He trained at Gosport, a Congregationalist Missionary Seminary in Hampshire, which had been established by Rev. D. Bogue (1750-1925), founding member of the London Missionary Society (Champion 1939:291).

Newton (1987:165) details Threlkeld’s grammatical influences and names R. Lowth (1710-1787), whose influential and early pedagogical grammar of English (1762) first claimed that ‘preposition stranding’ was improper in English, the lexicographer S. Johnson (1709-1784), and Threlkeld’s tutor at the Gosport seminary, M. Wilks, “who taught him English grammar and provided a foundation for the study of other grammars”.

Prior to making successive descriptions of Awabakal, Threlkeld had spent six years at London Mission Society missions in Polynesia.

Threlkeld (1834:vi) was explicit about his choice to use the orthography which he was familiar with from working in Polynesia (Figure 24).
It is highly likely that Threlkeld had read the grammar of Tahitian written by fellow London Mission Society missionary J. Davies (1823), whose work “had the greatest prestige and influence of older Polynesian grammars and was the one to form the framework for most of the following missionary grammars” (Hovdhaugen 1993:109). Threlkeld was thus perhaps better prepared for an encounter with languages bearing little resemblance to SAE than were most early grammarians in Australia.

Although seemingly lacking the rigorous classical training of some of the later missionary-grammarians, Threlkeld demonstrated a broad linguistic knowledge, describing (1834:x) Awabakal as having “much of the Hebrew form in the conjugation, the dual of the Greek and the deponent of Latin”. He observed (1834:vi) that Australian ‘tongues’ were similar to Polynesian languages in marking dual number but were “more definite in the use of tenses”. In his reminiscences he recalled that the Australian language presented greater challenges than Polynesian languages, noting particularly the ‘conjoined dual case’ in Awabakal pronouns (§3.2.5.2), the number of declensions and conjugations of the verb (1974:42).

Threlkeld arrived in Sydney in 1824 on what was supposed to be a return voyage to England. By 1826, nearly four decades after the colonisation of New South Wales, he had established the colony’s first mission, on the eastern side of Lake Macquarie, north of Sydney, at a site called Reid’s Mistake or Bahtabah. After a dispute over mission expenditure in 1828, Threlkeld was dismissed by the London Mission Society, but pursued his linguistic studies while working as protector and court interpreter in collaboration with his Aboriginal friend and main linguistic informant Biraban (Johnny McGill) (c.1800-died before 1850). Mission work resumed the following year after land was granted on the western side of the lake at a site named ‘Ebenezer’24 (Gunson 2016b).

Threlkeld produced three works describing Awabakal morpho-syntactic structure, 1827 (§3.1.1); 1834 (§3.2) and 1850, of which the 1834 work is the most comprehensive, and is

---

24 Missions of the same name, ‘Ebenezer’ were later established, one by the Lutheran missionary Teichelmann close to Adelaide in 1843, and another by the Moravian missionaries Hagenauer and Spieseke in western Victoria in 1858.
treated in detail here. While the 1850 publication *A key to the structure of an Australian language* contains valuable “illustrative sentences” it does not present additional analysis of the language, other than elaborating on the phono-semantic theory, which was outlined in 1827 (§3.1.2). Written when Threlkeld (1850:3) described the language as “all but extinct”, there is something wistful about the 1850 publications, which includes (pp.5-7) “reminiscences of Birabān”.

In 1836 Threlkeld produced *An Australian spelling book in the language as spoken by the Aborigines*…. It is the first of four nineteenth-century primers printed in an Aboriginal language in order that an Aboriginal Christian congregation would be literate and able to access Christian teachings in their first language. The others are: Ridley’s Gamilaraay primer (1856a), Homann & Koch’s Diyari primer (1870) and Kempe’s primer in Arrernte (1880). A Wiradjuri primer, which remained unpublished, was also drafted at Wellington Valley by missionary Watson in 1835 (Bridges 1978:413). Thus a tradition of vernacular literacy at missions in New South Wales, instigated by the Presbyterian missionaries Threlkeld and Ridley, precedes the earliest publication of similar materials by Lutherans in South Australia (§9.4.1 & 10.1).

In 1873 Rev. W.Ridley (p.275) wrote that Threlkeld’s grammars, which were printed in a modest print-run (Newton 1987:169), were “now not to be purchased”. Like other PN grammars considered in the corpus, particularly Günther (1840) and Symmons (1841), Threlkeld’s linguistic works were rescued from obscurity through republication in Fraser (1892). Fraser presented a slightly edited version of Threlkeld’s 1834 work and a heavily edited and abbreviated version of the 1850 work. Threlkeld’s translations of Christian texts (see Newton 1987:170) were also first published in Fraser (1892).

### 3.1.1 Threlkeld 1827

Threlkeld’s earliest work “*Specimens of a dialect of the Aborigines of New South Wales, Being the First Attempt to Form Their Speech Into a Written Language*” (1827), was published within two years of the establishment of the mission at Bahtabah. Although Threlkeld stated in his introduction that “no speculative arrangement of grammar [was] attempted” (1827:iii), the work, which does not contain a vocabulary, is grammatical in nature. This thirty-page publication shows progress towards the grammatical analysis of Awabakal (1834).

The 1827 publication includes a table of nominative pronouns in singular, plural and then dual number (pp.4-8), providing up to thirteen example clauses for each. Following are hundreds of simple clauses selected “from upwards of fifteen hundred Sentences” (ibid.,iii), grouped either as ‘interrogative sentences’ and ‘imperative sentences’, and thoughtfully
arranged in order to illustrate specific constructions. Examine, for example, clauses showing the function of the interrogative minyaring ‘what?’ inflected with –pirang marking ablative case ‘from what?’, with –Tin marking causal case ‘on what account?’, and with –ku marking instrumental case ‘with what?’ (Lissarrague 2006:51) (Figure 25). They are given with a free and an interlinear-style translation, described by Threlkeld as “word for word, without regard to English arrangement or grammar, in order to shew the idiom of the aboriginal tongue” (ibid.,iii).

![Figure 25: Threlkeld’s presentation of clauses illustrating case marking, 1827:10 (Awabakal)](image)

Threlkeld’s relationship with Biraban was formed during this earliest phase of mission at Bahtabah as shown by the inclusion of his informant’s name in the 1827 publication, at this stage spelled ‘Berehbahn’ (Figure 26)

![Figure 26: Threlkeld’s reference to ‘Berehbahn’, 1827:13 (Awabakal)](image)

The work concludes with a two-page discussion of verbal morphology (pp.26-27). Here Threlkeld presented nineteen morphemes, called ‘signs’, which he showed unattached, and in isolation of, the verb stem. Each is then illustrated in a number of clauses (Figure 27). Threlkeld’s representation of meaningful sub-word units was made three decades before A. Schleicher’s theoretical discussion (1859) of wurzeln ‘roots’ and beziehungsstäuben ‘inflections’, described as “almost entirely without precedent in the classical tradition” (Blevins, 2013:383) (§2.4.2).
3.1.2 Phono-semantic theory

Threlkeld delineated word-internal constituents using hyphens. His perception of the word-internal units, which he isolated using hyphens, differs from the few later corpus grammarians who also used hyphens.

Threlkeld’s introduction to the initial section of his grammar dealing with phonology and orthography (1834:1) is naive compared with other corpus grammars. He wrote: “Words are composed of Syllables, and Syllables of Letters”. All later grammarians differentiate between a sound and an arbitrarily chosen abstract symbol used to represent that sound.

Threlkeld generally employed word-internal hyphens to mark syllable boundaries. His interlinear-style glosses tend to represent these as meaningful sub-word units. In 1827 discrete function tends to be overly assigned to individual syllables through an interlinear-style translation (examples 16&17). The following phrase, for example, was given in answer to the question: what is fish for?.

16. **Tah-ke-le-ko**
   eat-be-to-for
   “for to be eat”

   **Tjuki-li-ku**
   eat-NMZ-Prp
   “for eating”

   (Threlkeld 1827:11)
Bi-syllabic mono-morphemic sub-word units tend not to be glossed in Threlkeld’s interlinear-style translations.

Large passages from the 1850 publication (pp.19-30, 38-43) pursue a spurious phono-semantic theory, which Threlkeld had introduced in 1827 (pp.1-3), in which “every sound forms a root” (1850:90). Threlkeld (1850:9) set out to “demonstrate the correctness of the supposition” that:

every character which represents those sounds, become likewise a visible root, so that every letter which forms the Alphabet of the Language, is in reality a root, conveying an abstract idea of certain governing powers which are essential.

It is difficult to reconcile the overall strength of Threlkeld’s analysis with this aspect of his work, and these sections are omitted in Fraser’s 1892 republication of Threlkeld (1850). The passages have been politely disregarded by modern linguists, who have used Threlkeld’s analyses to reconstruct the structure of the language (Oppliger 1984:46; Lissarrague 2006). The idea was not pursued by subsequent grammarians.

The use of hyphens to mark word internal sub-units was not widely adopted by later grammarians. Those who segregated words into hyphenated sections, did so either as a pronunciation guide (e.g., Symmons 1841), or in recognition of meaningful word-internal units that were not necessarily monosyllabic and which approach a modern analysis of morpheme boundaries (e.g., Meyer 1843), or for both reasons (Roth 1897).

3.1.2.1 Appraisals of Threlkeld’s grammars

With the exception of the phono-semantic theory in which Threlkeld indulged, his grammatical analyses have been highly regarded in overviews of early Australian linguistic description (Ray 1925:2; Capell 1970:664; Wurm 1972:14; Newton 1987:165). Threlkeld’s descriptive accomplishment prompted Capell (1970:264) to describe Threlkeld’s work as having “reached an unusually high standard, especially in comparison with the deplorable work done in Australia for almost the next hundred years” (1970:664). Carey (2004:253) goes as far as to state that Threlkeld’s work was “the most accomplished linguistic investigation of any of the 250 Aboriginal languages of Australia undertaken prior to the twentieth century [emphasis added]”.

Without systematic comparative reading of the sources, the statement remains impressionistic. This thesis shows that inaugural investigations of some other PN languages, for example,
Meyer’s 1843 description of Ngarrindjeri, Kempe’s 1891 description of Arrernte, and Roth’s 1897 description of Pitta-Pitta are of comparable length, descriptive insight, and are as richly exemplified. They are no less accomplished than Threlkeld’s works.

3.1.3 Threlkeld’s influence on later PN grammarians

Threlkeld was himself aware that his inaugural grammar of an Australian language would aid later grammarians in Australia. In 1834 (p.vii) he stated: “when one dialect becomes known, it will assist materially in obtaining a speedier knowledge of any other that may be attempted, than had no such assistance been rendered”. In a letter to Schürmann (1842), who had sent Threlkeld a copy of the vocabulary he collected in Adelaide, Threlkeld wrote:

It is vexing that …[my linguistic work] should now be of no use excepting as a help to others engaged in similar pursuits, indeed that was one of the principle objects I had in view when composing it.

Newton (1987:169) describes how Threlkeld had a flair for self-promotion, and “selectively directed copies of his printed works into the private libraries of royalty and public institutions in Britain and elsewhere”. The potential influence of Threlkeld’s work was enabled by this dissemination, and his works were well-known to the earliest corpus grammarians. W.Watson and J.S.C.Handt, who established the Wellington Valley Mission in 1832 (Chapter 4) were given a preliminary copy of Threlkeld’s 1827 work while they were still in London, before it had even reached publication (Bridges 1978:410; Graetz 1988:12). Similarly, the earliest South Australian missionaries, Teichelmann and Schürmann were acquainted with Threlkeld’s grammar prior to leaving Europe in 1838 (§5.2.2). C.Strehlow’s German editor was conversant with Threlkeld’s grammar in the early twentieth century (§9.3.4). Ridley (Appendix 1§1.1) (1856a:293) was acquainted with Threlkeld’s grammar (1834), with whom Ridley said he had recently spent time. Ridley also pointed out that it was through his suggestion that Threlkeld undertook to send a copy of his 1850 publication to Dr. Hodgkin (1788-1866), to whom Ridley had sent his earliest produced description of Gamilaraay society and language (1856b).

Threlkeld’s grammar (1834) was referred to more frequently by other corpus grammarians than was any other early grammar of an Australian language.

Later corpus grammarians noted that they followed Threlkeld’s ‘method of spelling words’ (Günther 1840:338; Teichelmann & Schürmann 1840:v; Ridley 1856b:290), which they recognised as having also been used “by other missionaries experienced in the Polynesian languages” (Teichelmann & Schürmann 1840:v). Ridley (1866:3 [1855a]) later explained that his system of spelling was used “in accordance with the practice of those who have reduced to writing the Polynesian languages. Moorhouse (1846:vii) also indirectly referred to Threlkeld’s
spelling system in the same way, stating that the “orthography … recommended by the Royal Geographical Society, and in which most of the Polynesian and New Holland languages are recorded”.

Moorhouse (1846:vi) also referred to Threlkeld’s grammar in a comparison of Australian pronominal forms. Ridley (1855b:76), after confessing that he was uncertain about verbal morphology in Gamilaraay, presented Threlkeld’s analysis of the ‘Newcastle and Lake Macquarie dialect’, as illustration of the potential complexity of the Australian verb. Meyer (1843:40-41) referred particularly to parts of ‘Mr Threlkeld’s’ analysis of the verb (1834:68;127) (§6.2.5.1), and Threlkeld’s examples given by Meyer were subsequently republished H.C.von der Gabelentz (1861:489).

A number of remarks made by Threlkeld in the introduction to his grammar (1834:v-xii) are echoed in later works, for example, the hindrance that Aboriginal peoples’ ‘wandering habits’ posed to missionary activity and language acquisition (Threlkeld, 1834:xi; Meyer, 1843:v; Kempe 1891:1), the description of the linguistic structure as ‘peculiar’ (Threlkeld 1834:ix, Brough Smyth 1878:lxii, Kempe, 1891:1), and the self-effacing remark qualifying the completeness of the work (Threlkeld, 1834:ix, Meyer, 1843:v). While it is possible that these reiterations were independently motivated by shared frustrations, they also suggest the degree of primacy held by the work.

In assessing the extent to which Threlkeld’s grammar was “essential in establishing a framework for the study of his fellow-missionary linguists” (Carey 2004:269), later chapters of the thesis focus on the description of case, and also consider structures that were not described by Threlkeld but which were accounted for in later grammars, as well as theoretical and descriptive aspects of Threlkeld’s work, such as phono-semantic theory, which were not subsequently engaged to describe PN languages.

3.2 Threlkeld (1834)

Threlkeld’s major grammatical study was published in 1834. Its title “Australian Grammar Comprehending the Principles and Natural Rules of the Language …” is telling of the author’s perception of his achievement in not constraining the description within the existing classical paradigm. He later reiterated (1834:x) that the work was “formed on the natural principles of the language, and not constrained to accord with any known grammar of the dead or living
languages. The peculiarities of its structure being such, as to totally prevent the adaptation of any one as a model.”

In this work, Threlkeld refers to the wordlist by Isaac Scott Nind (1797–1868) (1831), medical surgeon at the King George Sound military garrison in Western Australia. It appears that this is the only previous Australian linguistic material of which Threlkeld was aware.

In comparison with most later corpus works, Threlkeld’s 1834 grammar (Chapter 1, part I:1-78) is relatively long and analytically comprehensive. The grammar is followed by a twenty-five page Awabakal to English vocabulary arranged alphabetically under sub-headings, some of which are semantic domains and others parts of speech (Chapter 1, part II:79-104). The final section of the publication, headed ‘Illustrations’ (Chapter 2:105-131), presents a vast array of data grouped in order to illustrate grammatical principles. This tripartite arrangement of a grammar, a vocabulary and a concluding section providing samples of text occurs frequently within the corpus (Günther 1838; Teichelmann and Schürmann 1840; F. Müller 1882; Roth 1901; Planert 1907) (Appendix 1§1.3).

3.2.1 Subversion of the traditional framework

Threlkeld subverted the traditional descriptive framework in order to convey the ‘peculiarities’ of Awabakal. Although content is given under the ten classical parts of speech (§2.3.1) and their subheadings, Threlkeld adapted the familiar structure for his own purpose. Rather than the heading ‘the article’, Threlkeld gave “of the substitute for the article [emphasis added]” (1834:9), without in fact describing any ‘substitute’ method of marking definiteness, but instead describing that a pronoun might be marked for the case and number of the noun.

Similarly, of comparatives and superlatives (1834:17) Threlkeld wrote: “The following are the methods used in comparison, there being no particles to express equality”. Unlike later corpus grammarians (Poland & Schwarz 1900; Roth 1901; T.G.H.Strehlow 1944[1938]) (§2.3.1), he did not intend to show that the comparative and superlative were morphologically marked. He gave a construction that he recognised as serving the same semantic purpose of the SAE inflectional marking of comparative degree.

   This is not so sweet as that
   kaykal-kuriyaN aNi yaNTi aNawa-kiluwa
   sweet-PRIV-[NOM] this-[NOM] thus that-SEMB

   (Threlkeld 1834:17)

   (Lissarrague 2006:62)
3.2.1.1 Third person ‘neuter’ pronouns

Awabakal is among the minority of PN languages that make a two-way gender distinction in third person singular pronouns. Like other early grammarians describing PN languages that morphologically mark gender in third person pronouns: Diyari, Pitta-Pitta, Minjangbal and Kalaw Lagaw Ya, Threlkeld easily described the distinction since third person pronouns in SAE language also mark gender. Threlkeld, however, also presented *neuter* third person pronouns, although no PN languages make a three-way third person pronominal gender distinction.

As with many PN languages, Awabakal has demonstratives that inflect for case (Dixon 2002:335). Threlkeld first presented a paradigm of ‘neuter’ third person pronouns showing case inflected forms of *ngali* translated as “this, present”. Following is a paradigm showing *ngala* “that, at hand”, and a paradigm showing *ngalawa*, “that, beside” (Figure 28). Note that Threlkeld’s ‘nominative 2’ forms in each paradigm are distinct deictic stems. The vacant schema of an anticipated third gender of pronouns provided a useful slot in which to describe three sets of Awabakal demonstratives (Lissarrague 2006:34-36).
Unlike in many PN languages, however, Awabakal demonstratives act as noun modifiers, and do not function as the head of a NP. Lissarrague (2006:34) explains that they “do not stand in the place of a singular third-person pronoun but may be used with that pronoun to emphasise who has done the action”.

Figure 28: Threlkeld’s presentation of ‘neuter’ third person pronouns, 1834:22
Threlkeld perceived that his ‘neuter’ 3sg pronouns were not functionally equivalent to SAE neuter pronouns. He understood that their grammatical number was indicated by a suffixing pronoun: “These pronouns are singular and plural according to the pronoun attached to them” (1834:22). He perceived (p.21) that the forms were “inexpressible in English in consequence of the locality of the person being included in the word used as a pronoun”, because he could not translate these bi-morphemic phrasal forms (19) with an equivalent English word for word translation. Instead gave the phrasal compounds a relative function: “this is he who”:

19.  

Ngali-noa
This is he who

ngali-nyuwa
this-[Erg]-3sgERG25
“this one”

His accompanying explanation that the forms were “so compound in their significance as to include the demonstrative and the relative” (ibid.,21) results only from the mapping of the syntax of the English translation on the described structure.

3.2.2 Case paradigms

The large case systems of Australian languages (Iggesen 2013) challenged early grammarians, who were equipped with a descriptive framework which accommodated the Latin case system with five morphologically marked cases: nominative, accusative, genitive, dative and ablative, or the Greek and German systems with four: nominative, accusative, genitive, dative.

Threlkeld (1834) extended the SAE case paradigm to include suffixes marking functions not carried by the SAE case systems (Figure 29). He gave between nine and eleven cases paradigmatically, depending on the class of nominal. Awabakal is currently described as inflecting for ten cases (Lissarrague 2006:26).

In contrast to Threlkeld’s enlarged paradigms, many other early grammarians maintained classically conservative five-case Latinate paradigms (§5.3.1).

25 Where ngali and ngali-ku can mark ergative case (Lissarrague 2006:35)
Threlkeld altered the basic schema of the traditional framework by employing a numbering system to name the additional cases. He gave two dative cases and four ablative cases.

According to Blake (1994:157-162), the cases that are present in the case system of a language adhere to a hierarchy of inclusion (Figure 30). Cases sitting higher on the hierarchy, i.e., to the left, are included in the case system before cases to the right. In small case systems the lowest ranked case on the hierarchy i.e. the case furthest to the right, assumes oblique or ‘elsewhere’ function.

\[
\text{nominative} \rightarrow \text{accusative} \rightarrow \text{genitive} \rightarrow \text{dative} \rightarrow \text{ablative}
\]

Figure 30: Hierarchy of inflectional cases (Blake 1994:159)

In languages with a four-case system it is the dative case that assumes the ‘elsewhere’ function. In the five-case system of Latin the ablative has the broadest oblique function. Threlkeld and other early PN grammarians thus anticipated that heterogeneous case function might be marked by suffixes labelled dative and ablative. By providing numbered ‘ablative’ and ‘dative’ cases, Threlkeld recognised that some of the functions traditionally termed ‘dative’ and ‘ablative’ were marked by different case forms in Awabakal. Figure 31 summarises the labels given to Awabakal case suffixes in different sources.

Threlkeld’s earliest nominal paradigms of a PN language are solid examples of a description responding to the data presented by the language rather than the demands of a prescribed descriptive framework.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form as shown by Threlkeld</th>
<th>Reconstruction Lissarrague 2006:26</th>
<th>Threlkeld (1834:14), Fraser (1892)</th>
<th>F. Müller (1882:7)</th>
<th>Lissarrague 2006</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ko-re ‘Man’</td>
<td>Kuri-Ø</td>
<td>nominative 1</td>
<td>nominativ</td>
<td>nominative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ko-re-ko</td>
<td>Kuri-ku</td>
<td>nominative 2</td>
<td>nominativ</td>
<td>ergative/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ko-re-ko-ba</td>
<td>Kuri -kupa</td>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>gentiv</td>
<td>genitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ko-re-ko</td>
<td>Kuri -ku</td>
<td>dative 1</td>
<td>dativ</td>
<td>dative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ko-re-ká-ko</td>
<td>Kuri -kaku</td>
<td>dative 2</td>
<td>adessiv</td>
<td>allative 1*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ko-re</td>
<td>Kuri -Ø</td>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>accusative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ko-re-tin</td>
<td>Kuri -Tin</td>
<td>ablative 1</td>
<td>ablativ</td>
<td>causal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ko-re- ká-bi-rung</td>
<td>Kuri -kapirang</td>
<td>ablative 2</td>
<td>abessiv</td>
<td>ablative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ko-re-ko-a</td>
<td>Kuri -kuwa</td>
<td>ablative 3</td>
<td>social</td>
<td>perlative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ko-re-ka-ba</td>
<td>Kuri -kapa</td>
<td>ablative 4</td>
<td>commorativ</td>
<td>locative</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure 31: The labels given to Awabakal case suffixes in different sources**

The suffix marking the ‘allative 2’ case (Lissarrague 2006:30) – ko-láng – kulang, expressing ‘motion towards’ was described by Threlkeld only as a preposition (

F. Müller (1882:7-8) rearranged the order, and altered Threlkeld’s case terminology, when re-publishing Threlkeld’s paradigms (Figure 32). Much of the terminology he used: ‘social’, ‘adessiv’, ‘abessiv’, and ‘commorativ’, is not found in other early grammars of PN language written in Australia, indicating the theoretical divide separating Australian practice and developing European linguistic thought.
3.2.2.1 The structure of pronouns in peripheral cases

Threlkeld declined singular, dual and plural Awabakal pronouns for each person in nine cases. He supplemented these paradigmatic presentations with syntagmatic statements. After providing a full paradigm for first-person inclusive dual pronouns (1834:23) (Figure 33), he (p.23) wrote: “It will be perceived that the particles form the accusative into the other cases”. Here he described how the peripheral case forms, i.e., his numbered ‘ablative’ cases, were built through attachment of case suffixes — termed ‘particles’ — to the accusative pronominal stem. This type of statement is not characteristically found in the description of the fusional structures of SAE language (§2.4) and represents an innovative descriptive response to agglutinative morphology. Threlkeld’s explanation that it was the accusative pronominal stem to which inflections for peripheral cases attached, was followed by Teichelmann & Schürmann (1840:8), who also attempted to account for similar pronominal structures in Kaurna (§5.4.5).
Threlkeld’s ability to conceive that suffixes marking peripheral case functions on pronouns were part of the morphological case system of Awabakal, is sophisticated in comparison to some later grammarians. Capell (1937:71), for example, followed most earlier accounts of pronouns in Arrernte (§9.3.3) in conceiving of suffixes marking functions that are not carried by the morphological case systems of SAE languages, as ‘pre/post-positions’. He wrote: “In some languages they [postpositions] may themselves require a case other than the nominative, just as in the Classical languages”. He gave this example in order to “show how a post-position may be used with a special case” (p.71):

“era, he;
ekura, of him;
ekura gata, with him”

Capell’s ekura gata ikwerekerte is the 3SG pronoun in proprietive case, with comitative function. In Arrernte the dative forms of the pronoun, here 3SGDAT ikwere, is the stem to which peripheral case suffix -kerte attaches. Note here that Teichelmann & Schürmann’s presentation of Kaurna pronouns in comitative case (Figure 100) as single words, for example,
3sgCOM padlaityangga, better represents the forms than Capell’s presentation of pronouns with similar function in Arrernte, made a century later.

### 3.2.3 Prepositions

Under the word-class heading ‘preposition’, Threlkeld (1834:77) listed case suffixes carrying functions that are outside the Latin case inventory and not associated with the case systems of SAE languages again (Figure 34), despite already including most case suffixes in the nominal case paradigms (1834:13-16) (Figure 29) The only suffixes which are reclaimed as case markers, but which are not included paradigmatically by Threlkeld and are only described by Threlkeld only as ‘prepositions’ are the comitative form –kaTuwa and the suffix –kulang marking ‘motion towards’, currently termed allative 2 (Lissarrague 2006:30).

![](image)

**Figure 34: Threlkeld’s listing of prepositions, 1834:77**

Observe here briefly, the note below the allomorphs of the ergative and instrumental cases (Figure 34), which according to Threlkeld are marked with the same forms on all nominal types, as they are in many Australian languages (Dixon 2002:135). Threlkeld (p.77) wrote: “Expressed in English only when instrumental by the particles with, by, for”. The comment indicates that Threlkeld was aware that these forms marked two distinct case functions. When marking instrumental function, he translated the form with an English prepositional phrase, while noting that such a translation was not appropriate for a nominal with the same shape when functioning as the agent of a transitive verb. The comment shows considerable insight, and a penetrating description of ergative and instrumental syncretism, in comparison with some later grammarians, notably Reuther (§8.6.3.4). Note that Threlkeld’s opinion differs from later missionary-grammarians, notably H.A.E.Meyer (§6.2.4), who translated nominals in ergative case as “by X”.

111
The discussion of inflectional case morphology under the word-class ‘preposition’ resulted from functional rather than structural analogy with SAE prepositions. PN case forms carrying functions that were carried by a prepositional phrase in SAE languages were commonly described as ‘prepositions’ in the corpus grammars. That some PN case morphology was discussed under the heading ‘case’ and other case morphology was discussed as ‘prepositions’ reflected the fact that SAE case systems are in part synthetic and are in part analytic.

Like other subsequent grammarians: Hale 1846:492, Roth 1901:27, Hey 1903:19, Taplin 1880:8, Meyer 1843:13-17, Threlkeld maintained the term ‘preposition’, as opposed to ‘postposition’ to describe PN suffixing case morphology.

Figure 35 shows the reclaimed function of the morphemes Threlkeld lists as ‘prepositions’. Of the fifteen forms Threlkeld presented as ‘prepositions’, ten mark case (Figure 31). Some forms are described as occurring only on pronouns and some only on nouns. The last three forms are translated as: “into”, “within” and “outside”. The presentation of such ‘locational qualifiers’ (Dixon 1980:282) as ‘prepositions’ is common to the corpus, occurring in descriptions of Kaurna (§5.3.2), Diyari (§8.6.7), and Arrernte (§9.3.3.1,) and has been previously observed in Mathews’ grammars (Koch 2008:204).

Different corpus grammarians classified morphology included under the heading ‘pre/post-positions’ in ways that are diagnostic of the descriptive school to which they belonged. Threlkeld’s treatment of case suffixes and locational qualifiers as ‘pre/post-positions’ differs from practices later initiated by Teichelmann and Schürmann (1840) (§5.3.2), and by Roth (Appendix 1§1.3.1).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prepositions given by Threlkeld (1834:77)</th>
<th>Translated by Threlkeld as:</th>
<th>Reclaimed form (Lissarrague 2006)</th>
<th>Function (Lissarrague 2006)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ba</td>
<td>of (pronouns)</td>
<td>-pa</td>
<td>Possessive suffix on pronouns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ko-ba</td>
<td>of (nouns)</td>
<td>-kupa</td>
<td>Possessive suffix on nouns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kul</td>
<td>part of</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bi-rang</td>
<td>of, out of, from</td>
<td>-pirang</td>
<td>Ablative case suffix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ko-láng</td>
<td>to, towards</td>
<td>-kulang</td>
<td>Allative 2 “Motion towards”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tin</td>
<td>from, on account of, for, because of, inconvenience of (nouns)</td>
<td>-Tin</td>
<td>Causative case suffix on nouns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kai</td>
<td>from, on account of, for, because of, inconvenience of (pronouns)</td>
<td>-kay</td>
<td>Causative case suffix on pronouns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ko, lo, o, ro, to</td>
<td>Particles, denoting agency or instrumentality</td>
<td>-ku, -lu, -u, -ru, -Tu</td>
<td>Ergative and Instrumental case suffix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ka-to-a</td>
<td>with</td>
<td>-kaTuwa</td>
<td>Comitative case suffix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ka</td>
<td>in (denotes time)</td>
<td>-ka</td>
<td>Locative case suffix (Variant)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ka ba</td>
<td>In, on, at</td>
<td>-kapa</td>
<td>Locative case suffix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mur-ra-ring</td>
<td>into</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mur-rung</td>
<td>within</td>
<td>marrang</td>
<td>Locational word, “within”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>war-rai</td>
<td>outside</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Figure 35: The reclaimed function of morphemes listed as prepositions by Threlkeld*
3.2.4 Declension classes

Like many PN languages, Awabakal case suffixes undergo morphophonemic alternation. The situation is reclaimed by Lissarrague (2006:26) (Figure 36).

\[
\begin{array}{ccccccc}
\text{Erg./Inst.} & \text{Perl.} & \text{Loc.} & \text{All.} & \text{Abl.} & \text{Caus.} \\
\text{Following a stem-final vowel or velar nasal} & -ku & -kuwa & -kapa & -kaku & -kapirang & -Tin \\
\text{Following a stem-final liquid} & -u & -awa & -apa & -aku & -apirang & -iN \\
\text{Following a stem-final palatal nasal or semi- vowel} & -tu & -tua & -tapa & -taku & -tapirang & -tiN \\
\text{Following a stem-final alveolar nasal} & -tu & -tua & -tapa & -taku & -tapirang & -tiN \\
\end{array}
\]

(Figure 36: Morphophonemic alternation to case suffixes in Awabakal (from Lissarrague 2006:26))

Awabakal case marking is sensitive to animacy distinctions for the syntactic cases marking A, S and O as well as for some of the peripheral cases. Compare for example, the different form of the genitive suffix on proper and common nouns in the following clauses. In example 20 the interrogative pronoun referring to a person is marked with the possessive suffix –ampa. In the second clause the interrogative pronoun referring to a thing is differently marked for the same function, with –kupa.

20. Ngan-umba unni wannai? \\
\(\text{ngan-ampa aNi waNay}\\n\) INTER-POSS this-[NOM] child-[NOM] \\
Whose child is this? Biriban’s, this child. \\
\(\text{Biriban-ampa unni wannai}\\n\) Pirapan-ampa aNi waNay \\
(transcription Lissarrague 2006:42)

21. Minnaring kopa unni? \\
\(\text{minyaring-kupa aNi}\\n\) INTER-POSS this-[NOM] \\
What does this belong to? \\
\(\text{transcription Lissarrague 2006:51}\)

Lissarrague reconstitutes a situation in which “pronouns, proper nouns and some nouns which refer to people use the nominative/accusative pattern and common nominals use the ergative/absolutive pattern. The personal interrogative/indefinite ngaN ‘who’ uses tripartite marking” (Lissarrague 2006:26) (Figure 37). However, she (ibid.,39) explains that there is “some discrepancy in the data with human nouns”. Elsewhere (p.42) Lissarrague describes how “proper nouns and human nouns are also marked for accusative case” with –Nang which also marks the tripartite personal interrogative as accusative.
Latin nominal morphology is conceived of as having five noun classes traditionally called declensions which each mark case differently. Threlkeld presented Awabakal as having “Seven Declensions of Nouns … declined according to their use and termination [emphasis added]” (1834:10). Two declension classes were motivated by different case marking on types of nominals and five by morphophonemic alternation. Threlkeld explained (1834:10):

When used for the name of an individual person, they are declined in the 1st declension, whatever may be the termination of the word; but when used as the name of a place they are declined in the 7th Declension.

Threlkeld’s presentation is especially skilful. He exemplified the sensitivity of Awabakal case marking to animacy using ‘Biraban’, the name of his Aboriginal friend and main linguistic informant. He explained that since his friend’s name also “means the bird called Eagle-hawk … it must be declined in the second declension” (Threlkeld 1834:13). Threlkeld juxtaposed the case marking for the noun ‘biraban’, used as proper noun (declension 1) and as a common noun (declension 2) (Figure 38). This presentation of nominal declensions allowed Threlkeld to show that the accusative case takes zero marking on common nouns and is marked with the suffix –(N)ang on proper nouns (Threlkeld 1834:10; Lissarrague 2013:42), and that possessive function is marked differently on common and proper nouns in Awabakal.

Threlkeld’s ability to convey the different marking of lower and higher animate nouns in Awabakal through the presentation of declension classes was effective in comparison with the ways in which many later grammarians dealt with the different markings for the same case function on different types of nouns. The practice was repeated only by Günther (1838;1840). The marking of case on different noun-types tended to confuse early grammarians.
After first describing (p.6) that the inflection for ergative case altered “perhaps merely to coalesce readily in pronunciation”, Threlkeld supported the remaining five declension classes by stating rules governing the form of ‘the particle of agency’, i.e., ergative inflection (p.11) (Figure 39). Rules 4 & 5 discuss how allomorphy was determined by word size, a feature which is common to PN languages (Baker 2014:152).

Not all of the detail regarding complex allomorphy, to which Threlkeld alludes, has been properly understood. The distinct case marking of place names, allomorphic sensitivity to word size and the exact nature of the animacy divide have not been reclaimed.
3.2.5 Pronouns

Threlkeld’s discussion of the inclusive/exclusive distinction is discussed in section 4.5.1, where it is compared with other descriptions of languages spoken in New South Wales.

3.2.5.1 Bound pronouns

Threlkeld (1834) was the earliest of a group of corpus grammarians ( Günther 1838;1840; Teichelmann & Schürmann 1840; Meyer 1843; Schürmann 1844a; Hale 1846; Ridley 1866;1875), who were presented with the additional descriptive challenge of having to account for bound pronouns. These grammarians described languages covering a continuous bloc of the southeast of the continent that exhibit sets of bound personal pronouns (Dixon 2002:337-401).

Note that no distinction is made here between suffixing and clitic forms (Dixon 2002:353). Pronouns of either type are here referred to as ‘bound pronouns’.

Bound pronouns generally mark the core syntactic arguments A, S and O and less frequently the dative case. Systems of bound pronouns differ between languages in terms of both function and syntactic constraint. It is probable that no two systems encountered by the early grammarians were identical, although with limited data it is hard to tell how similar the Gamilaraay system was to that of the related Central New South Wales language Wiradjuri, for
example, or the Barngarla system to the system in the related Thura-Yura language, Kaurna.  
The cases for which bound pronouns are marked, their positioning within the clause, the parts  
of speech to which they can attach, their status as either obligatory or optional, their ordering  
relative to one another, and the way in which the systems interrelate with the marking of other  
grammatical categories are language specific. Different types of systems resulted in different  
types of treatment in the corpus grammars, not because grammarians were aware of all the  
linguistic parameters, but because of the way particular systems drew their attention.  

Usually the bound form is a truncation of the free-form pronoun having lost initial C(V).  
In Kaurna for example, the 1sgERG free-form is *ngathu*, and its bound form counterpart is –  
*athu*. Awabakal is the only corpus language exhibiting bound pronouns in which most bound  
forms are not transparently related to that of a free-form pronoun.  

Some Awabakal free and bound pronouns are closely related to the free-form pronouns in  
the neighbouring language Gathang (Holmer 1966:61-63; Lissarrague 2010:62-72) (Figure 40).  
Gathang has no bound pronouns in core arguments (Dixon 2002:356), and free pronouns are  
accusatively aligned (AS/O). Some bound pronouns and some free-form pronouns in Awabakal  
have been borrowing of pronominal forms and possible merging of paradigms [between the two  
languages]”.  

Although Threlkeld represented the forms, which are reclaimed as bound pronouns, as free-  
standing words in pronominal paradigms, he did represent them as attached morphemes in the  
imperative mood of the verb (1834:51), a schema of the traditional framework in which bound  
pronouns were commonly illustrated in the corpus grammars (§7.4.3).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Free Pronouns</th>
<th>Bound Pronouns</th>
<th>Free pronouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1sgAS</td>
<td>ngatjuwa</td>
<td>-pang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1sgO</td>
<td>amuwang</td>
<td>-tja</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2sgAS</td>
<td>ngiNtuwa</td>
<td>-pi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2sgO</td>
<td>Ngiruwang</td>
<td>-piN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3sgAS.M</td>
<td>Nuuawa</td>
<td>-nyuwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3sgO.M</td>
<td>Ngikuwang</td>
<td>-nuN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3sgAS.F</td>
<td>puwaNTuwa</td>
<td>NO FORM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3sgO.F</td>
<td>puwaNuwaN</td>
<td>-NuwaN</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It is not clear whether all Awabakal bound pronouns followed the same accusatively aligned system of the free-form pronouns (AS/O), or that exactly the same ranges of case functions were carried by free and bound form pronouns. Awabakal is the only language considered in this thesis in which bound forms may not all have followed the system of marking syntactic case exhibited by free-form pronouns.

There are different views put forward by analysts as to what Threlkeld’s representation tells us about the syntactic alignment of bound pronouns in Awabakal (Oppliger 1984; Lissarrague 2006; Dixon 2002). It is possible that Threlkeld’s confusing representations of pronouns reflects a now irretrievable asymmetrical marking of the case function on free and bound pronouns in different number, person and gender.

All sources agree that there were no non-singular bound pronouns, and no 3sgF bound form.

Threlkeld is the only corpus grammarian who placed what appear to be free and bound pronouns in different positions of the same pronominal paradigm, i.e., some cases in the paradigm are shown to be carried by a free-form and others only by a bound form pronoun (Figure 41).
The form -tja, which is reclaimed as the bound 1sgACC pronoun is shown as the sole accusative form. The form amuwang, which Lissarrague reclaims as the free 1sgACC pronoun (2006:46) is shown by Threlkeld as marking a case called ‘dative 1’, translated “for X” and reclaimed as marking the dative case on nouns (Figure 31). Compare Lissarrague’s analysis of the forms amuwang and –tja in the following example (22) with the labels assigned to the same forms in Threlkeld’s paradigm (Figure 41):

22. Ammoung be
   Amuwang-pi
   1sgACC-2sgNOM
   “Speak to me.
   weah-lah.
   wiya-la.
   speak-IMP
   Weah-lah be teah
   wiya-la-pi-tja
   speak-IMP-2sgNOM-1sgACC
   Do tell me”

(Transcription Lissarrague 2006:46)

See also that the forms Lissarrague reclaims as 1sgA/S free pronoun ngatjuwa and 1sgA/S bound pronoun -pang (Figure 40) are shown in Threlkeld’s paradigm (Figure 41) as marking different cases. ngatjuwa is labelled ‘nominative 1’ (nominative) and placed in the first position, and pang is labelled ‘nominative 2’ (ergative) and placed in the second position.

It is not clear whether Threlkeld’s presentation of bound and free-forms in the same paradigm resulted from his failure to understand that there were two pronominal systems of
marking case — which may have been differently aligned from one another — or whether it reflected a situation in which free and bound forms were part of a single pronominal case system.

Threlkeld described the two variants of the 1sgNOM pronoun *ngatjuwa* and *pang* partly in terms of a distinction between bound and free-forms. He invented new terminology to describe this unfamiliar phenomenon. In his introduction to pronominal paradigms he described the free and bound ‘nominative’ forms, which are placed in the first two positions in the paradigm (Figure 42).

Free-forms were labelled ‘personal nominative’ — abbreviated ‘P.N.’ and described as the ‘primitive’ forms. They were said to be “used by themselves, in answer to the Interrogative or emphatically with the Verb”. Bound pronouns were labelled ‘verbal nominative’ — abbreviated ‘V.N.’ and were “never by themselves nor in answer to the Interrogatives”. Lissarrague’s interpretation (2006:39-46) (Figure 40), that both free and bound forms were ergatively aligned, assumes that Threlkeld’s distinction between ‘P.N.’ and V.N.’ related only to free and bound form distinction and not to a case distinction.

Threlkeld provided further explanation of the functions of the forms labelled P.N. and V.N. in notes included within the paradigm (Figure 41), explaining that the form labelled ‘P.N.’, i.e., a free-form pronoun, is given “in answer to the interrogative of personal agency”, and that the form labelled V.N., i.e., the bound form, is given “in answer to an interrogative of the act”. Here his explanation might be seen to be distinguishing the forms on the basis of case, the free-form standing in ergative case and the bound form standing in nominative case. This is Oppliger’s interpretation (1984:64-69). She describes a situation in which free-forms were ergatively aligned (A/SO) and bound forms accusatively aligned (AS/O).
In another section of the grammar Threlkeld used the term V.N. explicitly to refer to a case distinction. Of his ‘neuter’ 3sg pronouns, i.e., demonstrative forms (§3.2.1) he wrote: “they govern the verbal nominative pronoun and not the Nominative 1 [i.e., nominative case]” (1834:21). This juxtaposition of the term ‘V.N.’ with the ‘nominative 1’ (nominative) case, suggests that the term implied overt marking for ergative case. Threlkeld appears to be explaining that these demonstrative forms showed ergative or tripartite alignment, a situation recounted by Hale (1846:490-491) (see also Oppliger 1984:74-75).

Observe also (Figure 41) that the ‘V.N.’ forms are placed in the second paradigmatic position, where Threlkeld placed his ‘nominative 2’ (ergative) forms, and the ‘P.N.’ forms are placed in the first position, where Threlkeld placed nominative case forms (§3.2.6).

The earliest readings of Threlkeld (Hale 1846:488; F. Müller 1867:251) interpreted the difference between Threlkeld’s ‘personal nominative’ and ‘verbal nominative’ as relating to both a case distinction and a bound/free distinction. Müller (1867:251) described the Awabakal ‘nominativ subjectiv’ (ergative) pronoun (Figure 43) as only occurring “with verbs for example, tatan-pañ “I eat”.

Hale (1846:488) and Dixon (2002:351, 395) assert that the language had no free-form singular accusative pronouns (Figure 44).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular Pronouns</th>
<th>Non-Singular Pronouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S &amp; A</td>
<td>FREE &amp; BOUND FORMS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>ONLY BOUND FORMS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Figure 44: Dixon’s analysis of Awabakal free and bound form pronouns (2002:351)*

This conclusion rests upon the assumption that accusative function could only be marked by the bound accusative forms tia (1sgO), bin (2sgO) and bon (3sgmO), (AS/O) described by
Threlkeld as “the object of transitive verbs” (1834:20) and called ‘accusative’. Dixon’s analysis implies that the free-form pronouns, which are reclaimed as marking the accusative case (Oppliger 1984; Lissarrague 2006) — amuwang (1sgO), ngiruwang (2sgO) and ngikuwang (3sgmO) — mark a different case. Threlkeld assigned the label ‘dative 1’ (1834:19-22) to these forms.

The scenario proposed by Dixon is, however, unlikely. In example 22, it is possible to treat the 1sg free-form amuwang as dative, marking the addressee of the verb ‘to speak’ rather than as accusative (see for example, Wilkins 1989:179). But in the following clause, the free-form amuwang and the bound form tja appear to be marking the same accusative argument.

23. **Karai tia**
    - *Karay-tja*
    - Flesh-[ACC]-1sgACC
    - Give me flesh to eat.
    **nguwa**
    - *ngu-wa*
    - give-IMP
    **emmoung**
    - amuwang
    - 1sgACC
    **takilli ko**
    - *tjaki-li-ku*
    - eat-NMZR-PURP

    (Gloss and transcription, Lissarrague 2006:42)

An accusative argument frequently marks the second argument of a ditransitive verb ‘to give’ in PN languages (Blake 1977:35-36; Schebeck 1974:2; Wilkins 1989:169; Henderson 2013:294; Hercus 1999:75). Lissarrague (p.42) explains: “In a sentence with two objects, a pronoun with dative function is in accusative case”. This example suggests that Threlkeld failed to see that there were two formally distinct ways of marking the same case function.

Capell (1937:56) was of the view that Threlkeld’s paradigm represented a single pronominal system, rather than an inadvertent conflation of a bound system and a free system into a single paradigm. Writing in the early middle descriptive era, when understanding of systems of bound pronouns in PN languages remained largely undeveloped (§7.4) he took Threlkeld’s paradigms at face value believing that the case forms of Awabakal pronouns were highly irregular and described Awabakal as unusual among Australian languages in “subject[ing] the pronoun to a real declension” (see §2.4.1.1).

That Threlkeld’s discussion of bound pronouns in Awabakal is opaque and has confused contemporary reclamations is not surprising given the complexity this earliest Australian grammarian tackled. Threlkeld’s discussion of the bound pronouns would not have assisted later grammarians, and the terminology ‘personal nominative’ and ‘verbal nominative’ fell into disuse.
3.2.5.2 The ‘Conjoined dual case’

Threlkeld presented a partial paradigm of A + O pronominal sequences in Awabakal, which he termed the ‘conjoined dual case’ (Figure 45). The forms were given after presentation of the dual pronouns and before the plural.

The forms Threlkeld presented are compound pronouns, which he described (p.24) as “governed by the active transitive verbs”. Each compound pronoun comprises a constituent acting as the agent and a constituent acting as the object of the same clause, or as Elkin (1937:152) put it: “a combination of pronoun in the nominative and accusative cases”. For example:

```
24. Minnung bunnun ngiya biola?
    minyang wupa-NaN ngaya pN-luwa
    Interr:Abs do-Fut then 2sgAcc-3sgNomM
```

"What will he do to you?"

(Gloss and transcription, Lissarrague 2006:42)

The ordering of constituents relative to one another is determined by pronominal person, regardless of case. The order is 1 > 2 > 3. All constituents are singular. Lissarrague (2006:47-48) writes:

Compound pronouns follow verbs, conjunctions, negations, interrogative particles, interrogatives and even interjections. It is not understood when a conjoined form is used instead of the usual bound pronoun forms. It is not known if compound pronouns stand alone, or if they are phonetically attached to the word they follow …Threlkeld represents them as both a phonetic part of the preceding word and as elements that stand alone. Only the compounds which appear in the above paradigm [reproduced Figure 47] are permitted.

Lissarrague’s analysis of the forms (Figure 46) updates Threlkeld’s phonological representation and shows that the first constituent of the compound form is related to the Awabakal bound pronouns and the second constituent to the Awabakal free pronouns (Figure 40).
However, it is possible to speculate that the first constituent takes the form of the corresponding bound pronoun. In this scenario (Figure 47) the placement of the morpheme boundary differs from that suggested by Threlkeld and reproduced by Lissarrague (2006:47). Here the first constituent is an entire bound pronoun (column 4 Figure 47), rather than a form that “resembles the first syllable of bound forms” (Lissarrague 2006:47). The first constituent is either a 1sgA, a 2sgA or a 2sgO bound form.

The second constituent is the final phonological segment or segments of the free-form pronouns, 2sgO, 3sgfO, 3sgmO, 3sgfA or 3sgmA (column 6). Only one of these segments — 3sgfO –NuwaN — is the same form as the equivalent bound pronoun that occurs freely in other environments. Each other second-constituent bound form does not occur elsewhere.

Allowing for the reduction of clusters of nasals with unknown places of articulation, represented as ‘N’, across the boundary between the two constituents in the ‘I her’ form — which may result from a recording error —, as well as for the rounding of the final vowel in the second 2sgO constituent of the ‘I thee’ form, this analysis works reasonably well. Note, however, that the forms pi-Nang ‘thou him’ and pi-Lawa ‘he thee’ show phonological variation at the morpheme boundary (column 5), and cannot be fully accounted for by this alternative analysis.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 26. Compound pronouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Threlkeld (1834, p. 24)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1sgNom-2sgAcc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1sgNom-3sgAcc(F)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2sgNom-3sgAcc(M)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2sgNom-3sgAcc(F)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3sgNom(M)-2sgAcc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3sgNom(F)-2sgAcc**</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1sgNom resembles the first syllable of the bound form: =pang.  
3sgAcc(F) resembles the final two syllables of the free pronoun: puwaNuwaN.  
2sgNom is identical to the bound form: =pl.  
2sgAcc (the final variant form) is identical to the last two syllables which occur in two free pronouns, puwaNuwa (2sgNom) and puwaNTuwa (3sgNom Fem).  
*See example [42], Part 3, regarding the form of this pronoun.  
**Labeled by Threlkeld as 2nd person Nominative Feminine — 2nd person Accusative.

Figure 46: Lissarrague's analysis of compound pronouns (2006:47)
Structure of the analysis of the forms taken here

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Threlkeld 1834:24</th>
<th>Lissarrague 2006:47</th>
<th>Possible structure</th>
<th>1&lt;sup&gt;st&lt;/sup&gt; constituent Bound pronoun</th>
<th>Phonological changes required</th>
<th>2&lt;sup&gt;nd&lt;/sup&gt; constituent Last phonological segment(s) of free pronoun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ba-núng “I, thee”</td>
<td>Pa-Nung Pang-wang</td>
<td>pang-1sgA</td>
<td>Rounding of second vowel</td>
<td>Ngiru-wang 2sgO</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bá-nó-un “I her”</td>
<td>Pa-NuwaN Pang-NuwaN</td>
<td>pang 1sgA</td>
<td>Reduction of nasal + nasal cluster</td>
<td>puwa-NuwaN 3sgfO</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bi-núng “Thou, him”</td>
<td>Pi-nyung Pi-Nang</td>
<td>pi-2sgA</td>
<td>Unexplained additional nasal</td>
<td>Ngikuw-ang 3sgmO</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bi-nó-un “Thou her”</td>
<td>Pi-Nuwan Pi-Nuwan</td>
<td>pi-2sgA</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Puwa-NuwaN 3sgfO</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bi-ló-a “he, thee”</td>
<td>piN-luwa Pi-lawa</td>
<td>Pi(N)-2sgO</td>
<td>Unexplained lost nasal and additional lateral</td>
<td>Ngwu-awa 3sgmA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bín-tó-a “She, thee”</td>
<td>piN-tuwa piN-Tuwa</td>
<td>piN-2sgO</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>PuwaN-Tuwa 3sgfA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 47: Reclamation of compound A and O pronominal sequences described by Threlkeld as the ‘conjoined dual case’

The analysis offers an alternative to that given by Lissarrague (2006). See also Koch 2011a for an historical reconstruction of compound, free and bound pronouns in Awabakal and related languages. Note that the pronouns that are shown as either nominative or ergative in Figure 40 are shown here as agents here because these compounds always constitute both arguments of a transitive verb. Note that the form of compound pronouns proposed here (column 3) follows Lissarrague’s (2006:40-41) reclamation of the vowels in free-form pronouns.

Contrary to Lissarrague (2006:48), Threlkeld did not describe the forms in which the first constituent is a second person accusative bound pronoun “in the wrong order”. The translation into English of the two forms of which the first constituent is in accusative case, ‘He, thee’ and ‘She, thee’ (Figure 45) is correct. Threlkeld’s free translations do not use English word order to convey the case frame of the compound. These are not interlinear translations. That Threlkeld was aware that the first constituent of each form was an accusative second person pronoun is evident by his translation using ‘thee’ rather than ‘thou’.

Similar compound pronouns with “prefixing” singular bound-form pronouns are reclaimed for Wiradjuri (Grant & Rudder 2014:51-54), although these were not explicitly described in the early sources (Günther 1838;1840; Hale 1846). The structure is presumably said to exist in Wiradjuri on the basis of examination of early texts, although this is not clear.
3.2.6 Description of ergativity

This final section detailing Threlkeld’s analysis of Awabakal discusses his presentation and understanding of ergative morphology and function. This aspect of his analysis, like his presentations of the large case system, is especially important in establishing his influence on the schools of descriptive practice that subsequently developed in Australia.

Subsequent to Threlkeld’s earliest account of PN ergative morphology, the ergative case is well described by later PN grammarians, who would certainly have been better prepared to describe this ‘peculiar’ pattern of case-marking having read Threlkeld’s work. It is, however, difficult to know with certainty whether ergative systems of marking syntactic case would have been adequately described by later PN grammarians without the guidance provided by Threlkeld.

The ergative case is the only case outside the Latin inventory that is consistently included and named in early PN case paradigms and descriptions of case. The only exceptions are the early descriptions of Guugu-Yimidhirr (Schwarz & Poland 1900; Roth 1901) and Ngererrikwidhi (Hey 1903) (§2.5.1; Appendix 1§1.3.5). The important role that the ergative case plays in disambiguating the arguments predicated by the verb apparently forced the inclusion of ergative case forms in even the most conservative case paradigms.

3.2.6.1 Terminology and explanation of ergative function

By attempting to describe this new morphological phenomenon, Threlkeld experimented with a variety of terminological and descriptive techniques, some of which were followed by later grammarians. Figure 48 presents the terminology used to describe the ergative case in the corpus grammars, and in some later descriptions of Australian languages. It shows which of Threlkeld’s terms were, and were not, employed by later grammarians, as well as the terms commonly used by the other corpus grammarians, but which Threlkeld had not employed. Works that were written outside Australia are placed in bold. The table is referred to throughout the following chapters.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case Type</th>
<th>Author, date, language (variation), [additional information]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Active nominative | **Threlkeld 1834:7 Awabakal**  
Günther 1838:43, 1840:35 Wiradjuri (*nominative active*)  
Fraser — based on Günther —, 1892:57 Wiradjuri  
Schürmann 1844a:4 Barngarla  
Moorhouse 1846:3-4 Ngayawang  
**Bleek 1858:2 Australian languages**  
Active  
Teichelmann & Schürmann 1840:5-9 Kaurna  
Meyer 1843:38 Ngarrindjeri [in discussion of anti-passive]  
Koch 1868:no pag. Diyari (*Activ*)  
Homann 1879-86 Diyari (*Activus*)  
Schoknecht 1947:2[1872] Diyari  
Flierl 1880:10 Diyari (*Activ*)  
Subjective nominative | F. Müller 1867:247-250 Australian languages but predominantly Awabakal  
**Nominative 2** | **Threlkeld 1834:12 Awabakal**  
Ridley 1855b:74 Gamilaraay (2nd Nominative)  
Ridley 1866:5, (2nd Nominative)  
Ridley 1866:61 Turrubul  
Fraser — based on Threlkeld —1892:16 HRLM  
Fraser — based on Homann — 1892:43 Diyari  
T.G.H.Strehlow 1944:74 Arrernte  
**Agent (nominative)** | **Threlkeld 1834:6 Awabakal**  
Ridley 1855b:74 Gamilaraay (agent- given in brackets after 2nd Nominative)  
Livingston, in Fraser 1892:9 Minjangbal  
Mathews 1903b:261 Gamilaraay (*Nominative Agent*)  
F. Müller 1882:7, 20 NSW languages (*Agents*)  
Gatti 1930:21, 58 Diyari (*Nominativo agente*)  
Tindale 1938a Wanjibalku (*Agentive*)  
Capell 1937:50 Australian languages (Agent)  
Holmer 1966 Kattang, Thangatti (*Nominative agentive*)  
**Nominative transitive** | C.Strehlow 1931 [no date c.1907]:28 Arrernte  
J. Riedel 1931 [c.1923]:104 Arrernte  
C.Strehlow 1910:1 Arrernte and Luritja  
**Nominative** | Symmons 1841:xxi Nyungar [for pronouns]  
Fraser — based on Symmons —1892:52 Nyungar [for pronouns]  
Kempe 1891:3 Arrernte  
Roth 1897:7 Pitta-Pitta  
Ray 1907:272 Yadhaykenu  
**Instrumental** | F. Müller 1882:50, 66, 75 South Australian languages  
Ray 1897:127, 136 WTS  
**Active instrumental** | Ray 1907:19 WTS  
**Agent causative** | **Threlkeld 1834:10 Awabakal**  
Causative | Taplin 1867:no pag., 1880:9, 11 Ngarrindjeri [for nouns and pronouns]  
Taplin 1975[1870]:124-126, 1879b:124 Ngarrindjeri [pronouns only]  
R.H.Mathews 1907:324 Arrente and several languages  
J. M. Black 1920:83, 85, 91 Kaurna, Narungga, Kukarta respectively  
**Ablative** | Symmons 1841:ix [for nouns]  
Fraser — based on Symmons — 1892:49 Nyungar [for nouns]  
Meyer 1843:12. Ramindjeri [for nouns and pronouns]  
Moorhouse 1846:10-18 Ngayawang [for pronouns]  
Taplin 1975[1870]:123, 1879b:123-124 Ngarrindjeri  
Taplin 1880:13 Ngarrindjeri [for demonstrative pronouns]  
Fraser 1892:46 — based on Moorhouse — Ngayawang (*ablativo 6*)  
Fraser 1892:29 — based on Taplin, 1879b — Ngarrindjeri (*ablativo 1*)  
Hagenauer 1878:43 Wergaya  
Bulmer 1878:31 Kunai  
Reuther 1894:5 (*Ablativo*), 1891[1899]:3 [Diyari]  
Reuther 1981[1901]:31 Wangkangurru  
Reuther 1981 [c.1901]:57 Yandruwandha
Threlkeld’s inaugural account of Australian ergativity (1834) occurs reasonably early within European linguistic encounter with the twenty-five percent of the world’s languages exhibiting ergative structures. Scrutiny of the early presentation of PN ergative structures affords the opportunity to examine the nature of the relationship between linguistic theory and descriptive methodology in Australia and in Europe. The range of terminology Threlkeld experimented with suggests that he may have been acquainted with some existing descriptions of some ergative languages. Of the terms he employed, ‘active’ had previously been used to describe ergativity by A.Oihenart (1638;1656) and following him by W.Humboldt in descriptions of Basque (1801;1817) (see Lindner 2013:186, 198). The term ‘agent’ (*agens*) had been used in Oihenart’s seventeenth century descriptions of Basque as well as in an 1820 description of Hindi (see Lindner 2013:198).

Other terms which had previously been employed to describe the ergative case outside Australia, but which were not employed by Threlkeld include O.Fabricius’ (1791;1801) use of ‘*nomintivus transitivus*’ in Kalaallisut (see Lindner 2013:186;198), and the term ‘instrumental’ in description of Marathi (1805) and Hindi (1827) (see Lindner 2013:198).

Threlkeld’s grammars show that he had a sound understanding of ergative function and forms. Threlkeld conceived of the ergative case as a special type of nominative. In discussion under the word-class ‘substantives’, he differentiated “the two nominative cases” (1834:7) by explaining that “the first nominative is simply declarative wherein the subject is inactive; as, this is a bird … The second nominative is when the subject is an agent causative of action: as … in the bird eats” (1834:10). He also differentiated the two cases by explaining that the ergative has “the power of operating” (1834:6) while the nominative “merely declares the person, or thing or the quality” (ibid., 5).
Reflecting this conception of the ergative case as a special sort of nominative case, Threlkeld placed ergative case forms in second position after the nominative forms at the top of his case paradigms.

Of the many terms Threlkeld chose to name the case, all include the term ‘nominative’: ‘agent nominative’, ‘nominative 2’ and ‘active nominative’.

The term ‘agent nominative’ was only used in the introduction to case and not as a case label. In some nominal declensions, Threlkeld translated nominative forms as ‘a X’, and ergative forms as ‘the X is the agent who …’, or ‘The X is the agent spoken of’.

The ‘nominative 2’ was used in most case paradigms (Figure 38, Figure 41), where it contrasts with the ‘nominative 1’ (nominative case). But when presenting interrogative pronouns, the ergative case was labelled the ‘active nominative’ and opposed to the ‘simple nominative’ (1834:7) (Figure 49).

All of these terms were subsequently employed in the primary corpus, except the term ‘nominative 2’. It was, however, re-employed by Fraser in his edition of Threlkeld’s work (1892) and in Fraser’s presentation of missionary Homann’s Diyari pronominal paradigm (1892). The practice was resurrected by T.G.H. Strehlow (1944). Note that D. Trudinger (1943:207), and following him, N. Tindale (1963:3) reversed the order of ‘nominative’ cases, employing ‘nominative I’ for the ergative and ‘nominative II’ for the nominative case.

In the first case paradigm of a noun (Figure 38) and of a pronoun (Figure 41), Threlkeld provided further clarification of the different functions of the unmarked nominal in nominative case and that marked with the ergative suffix. He did this by stipulating the type of question that the different forms might be given in answer to. This particular way of clarifying the
functional difference between ergative and nominative cases, in terms of the type of interrogative each is given in answer to, became a characteristic feature of later grammars of languages in NSW, being utilised by Günther (1838) in description of Wiradjuri (§4.4.3), and by Ridley in his earliest description of Gamilaraay (1856b) (Appendix 1§1.1.4.1).

3.2.6.2 Split systems

Although Threlkeld adequately accounted for ergative functions and forms, it is important to observe that the ergative case is not conferred equivalent status to that of the accusative case, which is so entrenched in the classical paradigm. Threlkeld perceived that the overt marking of an agent brought about a split in the marking of the subject, but attributed no significance to the different marking of a subject and an object. Ergative case forms are, for example, omitted from paradigms of nominals showing accusative alignment (AS/O), in the dual pronouns (Figure 73). By contrast, Threlkeld’s case paradigms of nouns showing ergative alignment (A/OSO) do include the accusative case forms even when they are formally identical to the nominative. Examine, for example, the second declension (Figure 38) and the third declension (Figure 29). Rather than having theoretically assimilated the ergative case into the case system, Threlkeld sees it as a marked form of the nominative subject. Only nominals that are overtly marked for ergative case, taking a different shape from the nominative case forms, are described as ergative and included in Threlkeld’s case paradigms.

3.3 Concluding remarks

Threlkeld’s inaugural description of a PN language accounts for a remarkable range of foreign morpho-syntactic complexity, or as Hale (1846:482) put it: a “mass of information which is entirely new”: ergative morphology, compound pronouns, bound pronouns, a morphological case system with a large case inventory, as well as the inclusive/exclusive distinction on dual first person pronouns (§4.5.1). The work is substantially more detailed than many early PN grammars, with the exception of Meyer (1843), Kempe (1891) and Roth (1897).

It is difficult to measure the relative degree to which early grammarians successfully accounted for case allomorphy, resulting either from animacy and gender distinctions, or from morphophonemic alternation, because original complexities varied in ways, and to degrees, that are now not retrievable. Nevertheless, Threlkeld’s account of the sensitivity of case marking to animacy through the presentation of classes of nominal declension is an effective descriptive response in comparison with that given by later grammarians, including Teichelmann &
Schürmann (1840) (§5.4.1), Ridley (Appendix 1§1.1), and early grammarians of Arrernte (§9.3.5). A failure to pinpoint that different nominal types marked case differently confused descriptions of Kaurna and of Arrernte. In this regard, Threlkeld’s work was superior, but not influential.

Threlkeld tackled the description of new grammatical categories boldly. He invented terminology, for example, ‘verbal nominatives’ and ‘personal nominatives’, and introduced new schemata, such as the ‘conjoined dual case’. More than many other later grammarians he was prepared to abandon the traditional framework, presenting, for example, extended case paradigms, and *not* attempting to describe the morphological marking of comparative and superlative degrees of the adjective. As Hale (ibid.,482) pointed out, however, the “strangeness of the principles on which the structure of the language was found to rest …rendered a clear arrangement, at first a matter of difficulty.” Aspects of the analysis, for example, the description of bound pronouns, are difficult to decipher, and the grammar is not without error. That Threlkeld did not shy away from attempting to account for morphosyntactic complexities probably curbed the potential influence of his work. That he was not tempted to produce a more easily digestible, if regularised, description reflects the respect he had for the intelligence of Aboriginal people, and his desire to provide what he later (1850:4) described as:

[A] testimony against the contemptible notion entertained by too many, who flatter themselves that they are of a higher order of created beings than the aborigines of this land, whom they represent as “mere baboons, having no language but that in common with the brute!
Chapter 4:
Grammars of Wiradjuri

This chapter identifies the grammars of Wiradjuri written at the Wellington Valley Mission by W.Günther (1838;1840), and discusses the existence of earlier, but now lost, grammars written by previous missionaries. Günther’s analyses are compared to Threlkeld’s earlier work and are assessed in terms the similarity of the descriptive frameworks they employ, and their relative insight. Investigation of the comparative grammar of Wiradjuri and Awabakal written by H.Hale (1846) establishes the provenance of early works emanating from Wellington Valley Mission.

The chapter then presents a short overview of the large body of grammatical material written by R.H.Mathews, whose 1904 grammar of Wiradjuri is assessed in terms of other early Wiradjuri material. Some differences between Mathews’ analysis of Wiradjuri and the early missionary sources are found to be mirrored by the differences between the earliest description of Gamilaraay (Ridley 1875[1855a]) and Mathews’ analysis of that language. Possible instances of Mathews’ regularisation of grammatical material are identified. Mathews’ tendency to fit linguistic structure to his own rigid framework is borne out in the chapter’s concluding investigation of the inclusive/exclusive distinction in first person non-singular pronouns in early grammars of languages spoken in New South Wales, Awabakal, Wiradjuri and Gamilaraay, and in Arrernte.

4.1 Wellington Valley Mission (1832-1842)

The Wellington Valley Mission was established in 1832 by the Church Mission Society on the newly opened inland frontier on the western side of the Great Dividing Range in New South Wales (Bridges 1978:324). Wiradjuri, the language described at the mission, was spoken by several thousand people (Krzywieki 1934:317) and covered an area of central New South Wales that was large by PN standards. The mission endured for twelve years. Grammatical description of Wiradjuri was not published in Australia until fifty years after the missions’ closure, when the 1838 and 1840 analyses made by missionary J.W.Günther (1806-1879) appeared in Fraser (1892). Wiradjuri grammatical material emanating from the mission was, however, published in America by H.Hale (1846).

Extant original grammatical documentation is contained in two of missionary Günther’s notebooks held by the State Library of New South Wales. The grammars are dated 1838 and
A Lutheran, who initially trained at Basel Mission Institute in Switzerland, Günther received further training at the Church Missionary Society College in London and was ordained in the Anglican ministry in London in 1833. He arrived at the Wellington Valley Mission in 1837, five years after its establishment by W. Watson (1798–1866) and by Günther’s fellow Basel-trained, German-speaking missionary J.C.S. Handt (1783-1863). Considerable linguistic work had been undertaken at Wellington Valley prior to Günther’s arrival (Bridges 1978).

Watson had entered the Church Missionary Society in Yorkshire in 1829 after working as a teacher and a grocer. He had received little training at the time of his selection to establish a Church Missionary Society mission in Australia. He was quickly ordained as deacon by the Church of England in 1830 and as a priest in 1831 in order to secure his services as a missionary (Bridges 1978:256-263). By contrast, the training received by Günther and Handt at Basel “consisted of 40% theology, 22% linguistics and 38% “skills” which were often far from practical, e.g., calligraphy, anatomy and botany” (Allen 2011:45).

Watson arrived in New South Wales in 1832 and was met by Handt, who had arrived the previous year. While waiting for Watson, Handt commenced a “vocabulary of Wiradjuri from informant(s) who had spent time at the mission site” (Bridges 1978:292). By 1834, within less than two years of the mission’s establishment, Watson and Handt reported that they had prepared a vocabulary of 4000 ‘words’ and had translated the Apostles’ Creed, the Lord’s Prayer, the Ten Commandments, portions of Genesis and the Gospel of St Matthew (ibid.,12).

The relative contribution of Watson and Handt to these translations is not known, but given that Handt commenced learning Wiradjuri while waiting for Watson to arrive, is known to have produced his own grammar, and had had a more thorough linguistic training, it is probable that he contributed to the earliest analysis of Wiradjuri between 1832 and 1836. Handt was later involved with the description of Turrubul spoken around Moreton Bay where he worked with C. Eipper (1813-1894) (Appendix 1§1.1.2). In a letter written from Moreton Bay, Handt described to Günther at Wellington Valley the similarity between the 1sg and 2sg pronouns in Turrubul and Wiradjuri (Newton 1987:175).

Both Watson and Handt wrote independent Wiradjuri grammars, which have now been lost. How similar they were is not known (Bridges 1978:414-415). Fraser (1892:xii) claimed that Watson’s MS grammar was sold “as waste paper”, but Bridges (1978:799) asserts that it was sold “by his widowed wife to the NSW government in 1871 when the government collected
Aboriginal language materials for the British linguist Prof. Max Müller … [Mrs Watson] believed the grammar to be perfect”. The fate of Handt’s grammar is unknown.

Rev. W. Ridley, who later described Gamilaraay, spoken to the north of Wiradjuri (App.1 §1.1), did, however, hold copies of both Watson’s and Günther’s grammars and vocabularies, which he returned to the Colonial Secretary of New South Wales some time before 1873 (Ridley 1873:275-276). He described Watson’s work as being in two volumes, and stated that Watson had “entered on the work with the hope of making a much more comprehensive collection of words than he succeeded in getting”. Ridley (ibid.,276) also described how:

the amount of information furnished by Messrs. Watson and Günther concerning the grammatical structure of the language, especially the modifications of the verbs and pronouns, is remarkable. Mr Watson’s manuscript includes dialogues illustrative of the modes of thought and expression in use among the aborigines.

Missionary work at Wellington Valley was hampered by personal disagreement between the missionaries, initially between Watson and Handt, who left in 1836, and later between Watson and Günther. Watson was dismissed early in 1840 and left in October. The mission was closed in 1842 and Günther remained until the following year (Allen 2011:7-8).

There is conflicting evidence in the primary sources concerning the extent to which Günther’s acquisition of Wiradjuri was made independently of Watson’s (Bridges 1978:483-490). The bitterness between missionaries extended to a disagreement about the intellectual ownership of the grammatical analysis. Bridges (1978:485) writes:

After Watson’s expulsion from the station Günther reported that Watson had avoided assisting him to any extent, giving only very little help with the vocabulary, but that he had almost completed a grammar on his own. Watson, on the other hand claimed that he had lent Günther his manuscript grammar and that it was not returned for upwards of two years.

By comparing the descriptions of Wiradjuri contained in Günther’s notebooks (1838;1840), and that published in Hale (1846) this chapter establishes that Günther’s analysis of Wiradjuri did not replicate earlier missionaries’ works.

4.1.1 Günther’s notebooks

The notebook containing Günther’s earliest grammar (1838:5-89) (Figure 50) also contains translations of The Creed (pp.317-318), The Ten Commandments (pp.319-321) and The Lord’s Prayer (p.322) 26. It is not known whether these are replicas of or improvements on Handt and Watson’s lost translations. This notebook also contains short vocabulary of ‘Wanngaibuoan’

26 The pagination given for Günther’s MSS is that of the State Library of New South Wales.
(Wangaaybuwan) (pp.309-313), and a slightly longer vocabulary of ‘Gammilurai’ (Gamilaraay) (pp.229-306).

Figure 50: Title page of Günther’s first Wiradjuri grammar 1838:5

Note that this is the earliest, and previously unrecognised, written record of the language name Gamilaraay (see Austin 1993:8-10;2008:40). It is not known from whom Günther collected this material. Although the word for ‘no’, is given as kamil, which is diagnostic of the variety referred to as Gamilaraay, spoken to the north of Wiradjuri, not all of the entries are part of what is now identified as the corpus Gamilaraay vocabulary (Giacon 2015 pers. comm.). Soon after first encountering the language Ridley stated (1855b:73):

> The language I refer to is called by those who speak it “Kamilaroi … The languages are named generally after the negative adverb; thus, in Kamilaroi … kamil means ‘no’: in Wolaroi, wol is ‘no’: in Wailwun, wall is ‘no’ … From a lecture delivered in Melbourne, I see that the same plan of naming languages prevails in Victoria.

25. **Gaml-araay**
   
   No-COM
   
   “the language with the word ‘gamil’

As also noted by Ridley (1873:275), the etymology of the name ‘Wiradjuri’ is similarly formed, although the missionaries at Wellington Valley are not known to have observed this:

26. **Wirraay-dhurraay**
   
   No-COM
   
   “the language with the word ‘wirraay’

The notebook containing Günther’s later grammar (1840) (pp.337-379) (Figure 51) commences with a section titled: “Lecture on the Aborigines of Australia” (pp.4-139).
Following are *four separate* Wiradjuri vocabularies. The first and longest is dated 1837. The following two collections of ‘most essential words’ and a ‘supplementary’ vocabulary are all dated 1840. Interspersed between the vocabularies is a section headed ‘phrases in the optative, subjunctive’ (pp.308-309) and one describing demonstratives (p.310). There is also a translation of the first chapter of Genesis (pp.324-327), and a folded slip of paper upon which is written: “To be preserved / A comparison between Celtic and Aboriginal words”, which lists thirty-two Wiradjuri words “bearing affinity to the Celtic Language” (pp.312;314). This item is an early example of the “philological imagining” (Capell 1970:633) that pervades the lexical study of Australian languages in the nineteenth century. The work concludes with the grammar, titled: “An attempt of a Grammar of the Aboriginal Dialect Wirradurrei spoken in the Wellington District & of New Holland by James Günther 1840” (Figure 51).

![Figure 51: Title page of Günther second Wiradjuri grammar 1840:337](image)

Günther used multiple ampersands in the title of both grammars, after the location of the language, in order to convey ‘etc.’. Given the vast area in which Wiradjuri was spoken, it is probable that during twelve years of missionary activity, the missionaries were contacted by people speaking different regional varieties of the language. This fact may explain some of the variation in the early sources of some of the illustrated forms, especially in the description of pronouns (§4.4.5).

Günther’s 1838 and 1840 grammars are fairly similar, although the 1840 grammar contains additional sections called ‘syllabication’ (*sic*) and ‘accentuation’, but does not contain sections
describing the ‘formation of words’ or importantly, pronouns. The 1838 grammar declines personal pronouns, demonstratives, ‘relatives’, and interrogative pronouns. This entire section is absent in the 1840 grammar. In the earliest grammar the language name is given as ‘Wirradurri’, and in the latter as ‘Wirradhurrei’. Otherwise, the orthography used in each work is similar.

The works are, however, different analyses, rather than incomplete versions of the same work. The way in which nominal classes of declension are set up in each work differs, as does the labelling of cases in tables of nominal declensions.

The grammars contain some clausal exemplification of the structures they describe. Most textual material is, however, contained in a section following the vocabulary headed “Sentences or phrases of the Wiradurri dialect” (1838:249). Like other linguistic descriptions written soon after initial contact, this section provides rare insight into the intimate nature of Aboriginal contact with missionaries and Europeans:

   “Give me that child and I will give you plenty of compensation”
   (Transcription, gloss and translation, Grant & Rudder 2000:39)

4.1.2 Günther in Fraser (1892)

Günther’s MSS analyses were brought into the public arena through publication by Fraser (1892), who in his introduction to the publication of Günther’s Wiradjuri material wrote (p.56):
I consider myself fortunate in having secured a publication of the Grammar and Vocabulary of so important a tribe. The following manuscript … is especially reliable because of its author’s character and experience, and because, at the time, the tribe had not yet begun to decay, and its language was entire … The MSS. are the property of the late Mr. Günther’s son … who has lent them to me for this purpose. In editing them I have retained the author’s mode of spelling the native words, and have made only some slight alterations in the form of the matter of the Grammar and Vocabulary, with the view of securing greater symmetry throughout.

Günther’s 1840 grammar is written in black ink. Many pages are annotated in pencil. Comparison of the MS (1840) with Fraser (1892) shows that the notes made in pencil are Fraser’s ‘alterations in the form of the matter’ required to secure the ‘greater symmetry’ Fraser desired. The pencilled alterations to the ordering and naming of cases in Günther’s MS grammar (Figure 48) equate to that presented in Fraser’s publication (Figure 54). See also Figure 61.

Figure 53: Günther’s Wiradjuri case paradigm, 1840:347

Showing notes made by Fraser in preparation for his 1892-edited publication.

The numbers accord with those presented in 1892 (Figure 54)
Comparison of the two Günther MMS and Fraser (1892) shows that Fraser also had access to the 1838 grammar, although this work is not annotated. Fraser’s published work contains portions of analysis which were not included in 1840 but which were given in 1838, most notably the entire description of pronouns and the translations of the Lord’s Payer etc.

4.2 Hale’s comparative grammar of Wiradjuri and Awabakal (1846)

Horatio Hale (1817-1896), the American ethnologist and later mentor of Franz Boas, published a comparative grammar of two Australian languages in the *Reports of the United States Exploring Expedition* (1846). The work was made early in Hale’s career after graduation from Harvard (1833-1837), where he had studied Algonquian. An early exponent of the study of linguistics within ethnology, Hale was selected as the philologist on the United States Exploring Expedition (1838-1842), and subsequently authored Vol. VI of the expedition report, *Ethnology and Philology* (1846). The work detailed people and languages of Oceania, Australia, South America and northwest America, and included the Australian comparative grammar (pp.479-531).

Hale advocated that the examination of grammatical structure was equally important as lexical comparison in determining a relationship between languages, and hence people. In relation to the position of Australian languages he stated: “Besides the similarity of words … it was considered important to ascertain whether an equal degree of resemblance was apparent in the grammatical structure of the different languages. With this view it was thought best to select two dialects as widely separated as possible, and determine … their leading characteristics” (1846:481). The two languages he ‘selected’ — in reality, probably the only two he had good access to via established missions — were Awabakal and Wiradjuri. Hale visited New South Wales between November 1839 and March 1840, and stayed with missionary Threlkeld at Lake Macquarie mission and with missionary Watson at Wellington Valley (Wilkes 1845).
Hale referred to the language that Threlkeld had not named, but had identified by location, as ‘Kãmilarai’. His reasons for doing so are not clear.

Hale does not refer to the three Lutheran grammars of South Australian languages (Teichelmann & Schürmann 1840; Meyer 1843; Schürmann 1844a) or to Symmons’ description of Nyungar (1841) from Western Australia, which were all published in the years between the expedition’s visit to New South Wales and the publication of the Reports.

In the same year as the publication of the Expedition report, both Schürmann (1846:249) and Moorhouse (1846:vi) discussed grammatical structures that they believed indicated that Australian languages belonged to a single family (§7.1&7.2.1). These South Australians identified a greater number of shared features from a larger sample of languages than did Hale (1846:479), who himself stated that “his field of inquiry did not extend beyond the limits of New South Wales”.

The Wiradjuri and Awabakal linguistic material Hale presented is almost entirely based on the missionaries’ analyses. In recollection (1846:482) of his time at Wellington Valley, Hale recalls that Wiradjuri grammatical description was supplied to him by Watson, who:

“not only gave every assistance in obtaining a vocabulary from the natives, but did us the unexpected favour of drawing up an account of the most important peculiarities of the language, modelled as nearly as possible on Mr Threlkeld, for the purpose of comparison. This here is given with only a slight change of form”.

While it is not clear what process Hale implied when stating that Watson ‘drew up an account’ of the language, it is probable that it involved copying out existing grammatical material, in the way that later missionaries at Bethesda and Hermannsburg are known to have reproduced the existing analyses of Diyari and Arrernte (§8.2 & §9.3). It is possible that ‘Watson’s grammar’ reproduces analyses originating with Handt, who had left the mission four years before Hale’s arrival.

It is odd that Hale makes no mention of the German-speaking Basel-trained missionary Günther who was also at the mission in 1840. Günther had produced at least one MS grammar and vocabulary (1838) at the time of Hale’s visit. The oddity is probably explained by the coincidence of Hale’s visit with Watson’s dismissal in early 1840, when tension between the two missionaries was likely to have been most heightened.

Capell (1970:666) suggests Hale’s “guiding hand” is evident in the spelling system employed in Günther’s grammars, which he describes as “reasonably phonemic”. This, however, cannot be the case, since Günther’s 1838 grammar was completed well before Hale visited Australia, and because the orthography Günther used in the 1838 MS is not substantially
different from that employed in 1840. Note that although the spelling of the language name used in Günther’s MSS differs (Figure 50, Figure 51), Hale’s representation, ‘Wiradurei’ differs again.

Of the Awabakal material Hale (1846:482) stated: “The grammar … which follows is therefore entirely due to Mr Threlkeld, the only changes being in the orthography, the arrangement, and some of the nomenclature”. A small proportion of the analysis may, however, be Hale’s own. He (1848:482) also wrote that while at Lake Macquarie he “received [from Threlkeld] many useful explanations on the points not sufficiently elucidated in the grammar, together with free access to his unpublished notes, and the advantage of reference, on doubtful points to the natives”.

Hale presented the ‘Wiradurei’ and ‘Kāmilarai’ (Awabakal) material in adjacent columns giving equivalent structures for each language side by side (Figure 55). Hale described the format as favourable because “the points of resemblance and dissimilarity may be seized at once … [and because] the necessity of repeating many explanations is avoided” (Hale 1846:484).

The same format was later engaged by Flierl (1880) in a comparative grammar of Diyari and Wangkangurru (§8.5.1.1), and by C.Strehlow (1910) in a comparative grammar of Arrernte and Luritja (§9.2.2.3). Note that while Hale noted that the format allowed for an efficient presentation of points of grammatical similarity and dissimilarity, the later missionaries’ use of this method tended to assume that the structure of the two languages presented side-by-side would necessarily be equivalent. Nineteenth-century corpus grammarians tended to overestimate the structural homogeneity of Australian linguistic structures, in keeping with conclusions drawn by Grey (1845) (Figure 82), Moorhouse (1846:v-vi) and Ridley (1856b:293) (§7.2.1).
Hale (p.485) was the first to suggest that orthographic differentiation between voiced and unvoiced stops was superfluous, contra Koch (2011:154;2008:184) and Blake (in press), who attribute this discovery to Mathews’ works, made over half a century later. That Hale’s practice has remained historically unrecognised tells of the infancy of Australian linguistic historiography. Hale also used engma (ŋ) to represent the velar nasal, before Ridley (1855a) (Appendix 1§1.1), to whom Austin (2008:41) attributes the accolade. Note, however, that Dawes (1790-1791b:1ff.;1790-1791a) had used engma well before either of these nineteenth century grammarians.

Since the Wiradjuri material presented in Hale (1846) was produced specifically for Hale by missionary Watson, the comparison of the Günther MSS (1838;1840) with Hale (1846) shows the extent to which Günther’s grammars are a result of his own analysis. While both show some influence from Threlkeld (1834), Hale’s presentation of Wiradjuri is significantly different from either of the Günther MSS, suggesting that Günther and Watson made independent analyses of the language. The works differ from one another not only in the presentation of the material but also in terms of the data given to illustrate what appear to be the same structures.
4.3 R.H.Mathews

This section provides some background for R.H.Mathews (1841-1918), whose grammars of Wiradjuri (1904), and Gamilaraay (1903b), are discussed in this chapter. Like Wiradjuri, Gamilaraay was spoken over a vast area of New South Wales (Austin 1992:2-3). Both languages are currently classified within the same lower level PN subgroup, Central New South Wales (Bowern & Atkinson 2012) (§1.2), and were classified by Schmidt (1919a:103) (see Koch 2004:21) as belonging to the ‘Wiradyuri-Gamilaray group’.

Like Wiradjuri, Gamilaray was described by a missionary (Ridley 1875[1855a]) close to the time of first contact (Appendix 1 §1.1), and was described by Mathews early in the twentieth century.

Mathews’ grammatical descriptions have been previously assessed by Koch (2008). His large body of work (ibid.,211-216), while broad in scope, is narrow in depth. Mathews developed his own schema of Australian language description based on the traditional framework. His analysis of various PN languages, described as a bibliographer’s nightmare (ibid.,181), conforms to his developed framework with regularity.

Koch (2008:183) describes the formulaic nature of Mathews’ description of phonology: “Each article gives essentially the same information, except that the examples are always taken from the language under description”. The same is true too of his morpho-syntactic analyses. Elkin (1937:133) appraised Mathews’ linguistic work as “very superficial”, and Ray (1925:2) commented:

Mathews published short grammatical notes of a great many languages but singularly failed to appreciate the necessity of a detailed account of the suffixes … He gives usually only the number, gender and some cases of the noun, a brief account of the adjective, some forms of the pronouns (the interrogative and demonstrative often being without details) with the principal tenses of the verb and a few adverbs and prepositions.

Mathews’ grammars are predominantly of languages from the South East of the continent where he initially encountered Aboriginal groups in the 1870s while working as a surveyor and later magistrate in district courts (Thomas 2011).

Without underemphasising the importance of the record left by Mathews — a large number of Pama-Nyungan languages would otherwise be vastly less well understood without his Latinate tables of pronominal paradigms, nominal declensions and verb conjugations — his grammars portray PN languages as differing more in form than in structure. They are formulaic to the point of providing a single analysis for multiple languages. Mathews’ grammatical work on Gumbaynggir (1902;1910), for example, is described by Eades (1979:256) as “very similar
in organisation to his articles on many other N.S.W. languages”. Mathews’ lack of engagement with basic nuance of Gumbaynggir is indicated by the fact that “no mention is made of the split case system for nouns and pronouns … processes of nominalisation and verbalisation … the class of irregular verbs … or derived adverbs … There is no indication of complex sentence structures” (ibid.,257).

It is beyond the scope of this thesis to examine the extent to which Mathews’ analyses responded, or failed to respond, to the particular structures presented in each language he described. The works that are examined most closely are grammars of languages, which were also described by other early grammarians — Gamilaraay (1903b), Wiradjuri (1904) and Arrernte (1907). This sample provides the opportunity to assess Mathews’ analysis against early grammars of the same language.

### 4.4 Günther’s analysis of Wiradjuri

Günther’s grammatical descriptions of Wiradjuri (1838;1840), made towards the end of missionary engagement with Wiradjuri at Wellington Valley mission, were written with an air of descriptive confidence.

The grammars are organised around a reduced inventory of the classical parts of speech. Günther (1838:13) explained in his opening passage that the article was not relevant to the description, after which he wrote: “Postpositions are neither to be met with in this dialect, postfixes must serve for the purpose”, and explained that the functions carried by the article and by some conjunctions in familiar languages were conveyed by ‘postfixes’ in Wiradjuri. Günther did not discuss morphology under the word-class heading ‘pre/post-position’ or under ‘postfixes’.

While other early grammarians, for example, Meyer 1843 (§6.2.1) drew a parallel between the function of the word-class ‘pre/post-positions’ and ‘case terminations’, Günther’s analysis is radical in abandoning the word-class ‘pre/post-positions’ altogether. This particular remodelling of the traditional descriptive framework to better accommodate PN structure is atypical of the corpus grammars, but was later employed in grammars of languages spoken in New South Wales, by Ridley (1875[1866;1855a]) (Appendix 1§1.1.4), and subsequently by Livingstone (1892) (Appendix 1 §1.2.1). While Livingstone’s choice was well considered, the absence of this part of speech from Ridley’s grammars probably reflects the general sparseness of Ridley’s descriptions.
In other instances, Günther presented traditional schemata but stated that the category was not required to account for the structure of Wiradjuri. After providing a case paradigm for the ‘relative pronoun’, for example, Günther (1838:32) explained that the forms functioned only as interrogatives:

Relatives seem to be the same thing with the following Interrogatives. It does indeed not appear that Relatives are used except in as much as they are interrogatives.

Further, under the traditionally prescribed heading ‘comparison of adjectives’, Günther, like Threlkeld, did not attempt to force an analysis of the morphological marking of comparative and superlative degrees, but stated (1834:10):

Comparisons are formed in a very imperfect manner, or, rather, expressed very indistinctly, for there is strictly speaking no form of comparatives [illegible section crossed out] Thus to say, this is better than that, Ngínna marong, wirai ngínna; ‘This is good, not this’. Ngínna marrombang nanaing; ‘This very good, that also, or this is as good as that’.

Regarding the passive, Günther’s analysis is particularly astute. Initially (1840:366) he observed that the European passive is conveyed:

by putting the object [in] accusative and using the active form [of the verb], but the agent or instrument with whom or which the action suffered originates is not named.

That a transitive clause with an elided agent was functionally equivalent to the SAE passive construction was commonly proposed in the early sources (§2.3.4). However, he went on to state (p.366) that:

The form referred to is not in reality a Passive, but an Active sentence; only for the sake of laying more emphasis on the Verb or action done, the Noun or agent is … omitted.

The firmness with which Günther shows that the supposed passive forms are in fact not passive suggests that his statement was designed to correct an earlier analysis, either Watson’s grammar of Wiradjuri (no date), or Threlkeld’s grammar of Awabakal (1834:28).

Unlike Threlkeld, Günther did not provide interlinear-style glosses.

Günther (1838:57;1840:354) was the first PN grammarian to observe that nouns that are unmarked for number have no specific or default number reference, and number is instead determined through context (Dixon 2002:77). He wrote: “The plural … appears to be very rarely made use of, the singular form being often taken for plural signification”. Later grammarians who similarly observed that “the singular is used … where the context shows that the plural number is obviously required” (T.G.H.Strehlow 1944:77[1938]) include Roth (1901:16), Livingstone (1892:6), Schoknecht (1947:2[1872]), Reuther (1894:3) and Hey (1903:11).
Günther described inflection on nouns for plural number (1838:57;1840:354), but did not provide a paradigm. Nor did he state a syntagmatic rule regarding the relative ordering of inflections for plural number and case on nouns.

Neither Günther nor Hale (1846:485) described the morphological marking of dual number on nouns. Nor had Threlkeld in his earlier grammar of Awabakal. In this way, their analyses resemble Livingstone’s description of Minjangbal (1892) (Appendix 1§1.2), also spoken in New South Wales. The form *bula*, which commonly marks dual number in many languages (Dixon 2002:116-117), is shown in Günther’s second and third person dual pronouns (Figure 67), where it sometimes occurs before case inflection. It is possible that the absence of the description of this suffix marking dual number on nouns results from Günther’s analysis of the form as a lexeme only.

4.4.1 Morphophonology

Günther’s description of morphophonemic processes is sophisticated in comparison to other corpus grammars. Ray (1925:4) described Günther’s grammar as among only a few works which note “the phonetic changes when particles are affixed”. Ray’s assessment is presumably based on Günther in Fraser (1892:59), which is heavily edited and reads more succinctly than the original (1840:348). Nevertheless, Günther’s original description is in this regard remarkable.

Threlkeld (1834:11) had earlier provided a detailed account of how the shape of stem-final phonological segments affects the shape of the case suffix. He did so by presenting a series of rules accounting for variation in the ergative suffix (Figure 39). Günther accounted for the variant forms of suffixes marking the same cases on nouns (1840:348), and the same tenses on verbs (1840:359), in terms of phonological process. He (1840:359) wrote: “the letter ‘r’ is changed into its relative liquid ‘l’[,] and ‘n’ for the sake of euphony into ‘m’ (*vide* Assimilation)”. Thus euphony also demands that ‘a’ terminating the root be modified into the diph(th)ong (*sic*) ‘ai’”.

Attention to morphophonemic processes is not part of the older tradition of the description of classical European languages. It was not until the late eighteenth century, largely through the writings of M. Kruszewski (1851-1887) that linguistic theory developed to take account of morphophonology. In a history of morphophonemics, Kilbury (1976:13) writes:

> When Western scholars finally turned their attention to problems in the area of morphophonemics and morphonology, it was largely though the influence of these [i.e., Semitic and Sanskrit] non-western grammatical traditions.
Günther’s pre-theoretical discussion used terms such as ‘assimilation’, ‘euphony’ and ‘liquid’, in a way that is atypical of the corpus grammars. Of verbs Günther (1838:65) wrote:

Indeed there is only one original or fundamental conjugation which undergoes a little alteration according to the termination of the verb in the present tense. It depends principally on the penultimate vowel or syllable, perhaps more properly speaking it depends on the termination, the last letter of the radical part of the word.

Of nouns Günther (1840:344) wrote:

Properly speaking there is only one original or fundamental declension, but the assimilation of letters to which the language has a strong tendency causes in a few cases slight variation arguably to the last letter of the noun.

Günther nevertheless established five conjugation classes of verbs (1838:75) (Figure 56), and presented seven declension classes of nouns in 1838 (pp.50-56) and five classes in 1840 (pp.349-353), from which Fraser (1892:58) tabulated eight classes (Figure 57). Günther presented these verbal conjugation and nominal declension classes despite recognising, and being able to explain, that they were motivated by morphophonemic variation. In this way Günther accounted for morphophonology twice, once using terminology and explanations not found in classical description, and second by conveying the variation within the traditional schema. This type of double representation using both an innovative descriptive technique and a traditionally prescribed schema to account for the foreign structure is also evident in some grammarians’ presentation of cases marking functions outside the Latin inventory as both case suffixes and as prepositions (§3.2.3).

Mathews’ later description of Wiradjuri (1904) gave only a single declension class of nouns and a single conjugation class of verbs. While acknowledging the existence of morphophonemic processes, Mathews’ description (p.287) fails to provide any detail further than stating: “the agent suffix has euphonic changes according to the termination of the word it is attached to. This may be said of the suffixes in all the cases”. He does not mention morphophonemic variation of verb morphology. In this regard Günther’s grammar is a superior source.

There is another factor which may have motivated Günther and Threlkeld to supply nominal classes of declension, despite recognising that in most instances these were motivated by phonological alteration at the juncture of the ‘root’ and the ‘termination’. The provision of multiple declension classes may have been favoured in order to demonstrate the language’s sophistication. Related to the superiority of the Indo-European ‘flectional’ languages was the Humboldtian notion that the particular ways in which ‘sound-forms’ are shaped within words to express meanings demonstrated and contributed to the mental development of these languages’ speakers (see Losonsky 1999). T.G.H.Strehlow (1944:61[1938]), for example, held
the prejudice when stating that the “single-type declension” of the noun in Arrernte highlights the “primitive character of the native language”.

By way of comparison, Ridley’s (1855b;1856) grammars of Gamilaraay do not attempt to convey case allomorphy (see Austin 1993:62) by establishing classes of nominal declension or by stating morphophonemic rules.

According to Austin (ibid.,63) although Ridley “failed to notice that there are four allomorphs of the ergative affix …. [he]… used the other allomorphs of this case affix
correctly” when translating the Bible. By contrast, Giacon (2014:5) describes the style of language used in the Gamilaraay primer (1856b) as “extremely simplified … without ergative forms.” Although Giacon (2014:23-24) concludes that the lack of ergative marking in Ridley’s translations results from morphosyntactic simplification, it is important to note that Ridley (1875:5[1866;1855a]) explicitly describes ergative optionality in Gamilaraay, stating: “Often, however, the agent suffix is omitted, even before an active verb”.

Although Mathews did not describe allomorphy in Wiradjuri, he did in Gamilaraay (1903b:262-262), referring to the modification of case suffixes attaching to words with different endings as occurring “for the sake of euphony” (see Figure 78). Austin (1993:64-65), however, suggests his description of dative allomorphy “perhaps attempt[ed] to overgeneralise along the lines of allomorphy for the ergative’. Mathews’ tendency to regularise material is discussed further in this chapter.

4.4.2 Case

Figure 58 summarises the labels given to nominal case markers in the early grammars of Wiradjuri, and the English prepositional phrase by which forms were translated, and shows the case-labels assigned to forms in Grant & Rudder’s reclaimed grammar.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Forms (first declension, Fraser 1892:58)†</th>
<th>Günther 1838</th>
<th>Günther 1840</th>
<th>Fraser 1892</th>
<th>Form translated as:</th>
<th>Hale 1846</th>
<th>Form translated as:</th>
<th>Grant &amp; Rudder 2001, 2014</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unmarked</td>
<td>nominative declarative</td>
<td>nominative declarative</td>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>“X”</td>
<td>simple nominative</td>
<td>“X”</td>
<td>nominative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-du</td>
<td>nominative agentive</td>
<td>nominative agentive</td>
<td>nominative agent</td>
<td>“X does”</td>
<td>active nominative</td>
<td>“X does will”</td>
<td>ergative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-dhu</td>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>dative</td>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>“belonging to X”</td>
<td>genitive -guna -guba</td>
<td>“of X”</td>
<td>possessive purposive, allative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-gu</td>
<td>dative</td>
<td>dative</td>
<td>“to or for X”</td>
<td>dative 1</td>
<td>“for X”</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unmarked</td>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>“X”</td>
<td>“X”</td>
<td>accusative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-di</td>
<td>ablative 1</td>
<td>locomotive</td>
<td>locomotive</td>
<td>“from X”</td>
<td>ablative</td>
<td>“from, by, about, concerning X”</td>
<td>ablative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-dhi</td>
<td>ablative 2</td>
<td>conjunctive</td>
<td>conjunctive</td>
<td>“with X”</td>
<td>comitative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-durai</td>
<td>ablative 3</td>
<td>locative</td>
<td>locative</td>
<td>“in, on X”</td>
<td>dative 2</td>
<td>“to, towards X”</td>
<td>locative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-durada**</td>
<td>ablative 4</td>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>“being with X”</td>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-dhura-dhu</td>
<td>ablative 5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>“at X’s place”</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 58: Names given to case suffixes on nouns in different Wiradjuri sources

*Shows inflectional allomorph occurring on a stem ending in ‘a’ or ‘n’ (Grant & Rudder 2001:22-24)

**The fourth ablative case, later called ‘instrumentative’ and translated as ‘being with” occurs only in some of Günther’s paradigms

†In the earliest grammar Günther (1838:55) gave a distinct declension for the proper name ‘Badarai’.

Günther extended the classical case paradigm to accommodate the larger PN case inventory, generally giving nine cases. It is likely that in doing so, he was influenced by Threlkeld. Günther (1840:345) wrote:

The number of cases cannot easily be fixed, since almost every relation in which a noun may be placed, on account of the entire absence of prepositions, is signified by some postfix or other, hence cases must of necessity be numerous.

Günther followed Threlkeld’s method of naming additional cases in his earlier grammar (1838). Like Threlkeld’s case paradigms, Günther’s case paradigms of nouns (1838:49-56)
show up to four numbered ablative cases (Figure 59). He did not, however, show numbered dative cases. Günther’s choice to engage this numbering system was well considered. He (p.48) stated:

If we do not invent new names for the cases peculiar to this language but confine ourselves to the cases known to Latin or Greek scholars we must speak of a 1. 2nd & Ablative terms locative, instrumentative or [illegible] might be accepted as appellations for these new or uncommon cases.

![Figure 59: Günther’s first Wiradjuri case paradigm, 1838:54](image)

Günther’s more complete pronominal case paradigms also show multiple ablative cases, which are differentiated by letters (1838:15-17) (Figure 64).

In his later grammar, Günther abandoned Threlkeld’s numbering system, and his own lettering system for pronouns, and instead provided names for the extra cases (Figure 60). He (1840:346-347) wrote:

To give a distinct significance to the uncommon or peculiar cases of the noun and to avoid speaking of 1st 2nd [illegible] Ablative, new apelations [sic] have been adopted as far as practicable such as Locative (in, on, at) Locomotive (from whence) Conjunctive (with accompanying, conjointly) Instrumentative (with, through, by means of).
The case termed ‘ablative 1’ in 1838 is termed ‘locomotive’ in 1840. The ‘ablative 2’ is termed ‘conjunctive’. The ‘ablative 3’ is termed ‘locative’ and the ‘ablative 4’, ‘instrumentative’ (Figure 58). A minority of later corpus grammarians assigned names to cases that are extraneous to the Latin inventory (Meyer 1843; Taplin 1867;1872;1878; Hagenauer 1876; Bulmer 1876 and C.Strehlow 1908;1910). None of these, with the possible exception of C.Strehlow (§9.3.4), show an influence from Günther or Günther in Fraser. Günther’s innovative presentation of Wiradjuri case had little, if any, further influence.

4.4.3 Ergativity

Günther’s descriptions of ergativity show Threlkeld’s influence. Günther placed the ergative, ‘nominative active’, case in second position at the top of the paradigm after the nominative ‘nominative declarative’ case (Figure 61). He is the only corpus grammarian to label the nominative case the ‘nominative declarative’. Fraser later omitted this term from the 1892 Wiradjuri grammar based on Günther.
Note that Günther’s hand-written abbreviation of ‘nominative declarative’ to ‘n.d.’ in paradigms is difficult to differentiate from the abbreviation for ‘nominative active’ ‘n.a.’.

Other corpus grammarians who, like Günther, followed Threlkeld’s placement of ergative forms in second paradigmatic position, were Ridley (1875:6), Symmons (1841:xiii;1892:52), for pronouns but not for nouns, and Moorhouse (1846:2-3), for nouns but not for pronouns. Later corpus grammarians, commencing with Teichelmann & Schürmann (1840), presented ergative forms differently (§5.5.2).

Günther’s (1838:47) clarification of ergative function also followed Threlkeld’s posing of questions that the ergative and nominative forms would be given in answer to (§3.2.6.1) (Figure 38;Figure 41). Günther wrote:

Particularly strange appears the peculiarity that there are two Nominatives, the simple nominative or the nominative declarative corresponding to the question, ‘Who is it’ and the active nominative [used] when the person or thing is considered as an agent, answering to the question, ‘Who does it?’

**4.4.4 H.Hale’s analysis**

Threlkeld’s 1834 presentation of the case paradigm, showing ten cases and his naming of cases not included in the Latin inventory as separately numbered ‘ablatives’, was a practice followed by Hale (1846) when describing Awabakal. Importantly, the practice was not employed by Hale when describing Wiradjuri. By contrast, Hale’s presentation of Wiradjuri, which was based on Watson’s (no date) analysis, shows seven cases and includes a single ablative case and a second dative case (Figure 62). This difference shows that Watson’s presentation of Wiradjuri, upon which Hale’s grammar was based, was not the same as Günther’s.
In support of the supposition that differences between Hale’s and Günther’s analyses result from Hale’s replication of Watson’s Wiradjuri paradigms, rather than from his own rearrangement of the missionaries’ grammars, is the similarity between Hale’s ‘Kāmilarai’ (Awabakal) paradigm (1846:486) and Threlkeld’s (1834). Hale’s Awabakal paradigm follows Threlkeld (Figure 63) in providing multiple ‘ablatives’. Suffixes marking cases included in Günther’s paradigms (Figure 58) are shown as prepositions by Hale (1846:492). While Hale’s Awabakal analysis follows Threlkeld’s closely, his Wiradjuri analysis does not resemble Günther’s.

Thus, Günther’s presentation of Wiradjuri case differs from that given by earlier missionaries at Wellington Valley Mission.

4.4.5 Günther’s presentation of pronouns

Günther’s description of Wiradjuri pronouns (1838:15-25) is poorly organised in comparison with other sections of his grammars. The pages show numerous corrections and crossed-out sections (Figure 64).
The presentation of dual pronouns suggests a work in progress. Forms for 1dl.NOM.INCL, ngalli, translated as ‘thou and I’, and 1dl.NOM.EXCL, nginnngalligunna, translated as ‘he and I’ are both shown on otherwise blank pages (pp.20-21), onto which additional case forms were presumably intended to be entered at a later stage. Dual pronouns in second person (p.22) are given for only a limited number of cases - nominative, possessive and locative.

Fraser re-arranged Günther’s singular and plural pronominal case paradigms, after which he listed only the nominative dual forms (1892:68) given by Günther (1838:18-23) (Figure 65). He (1892:67) stated: “This portion of Mr. Günther’s manuscript is so imperfect that I cannot say that the cases of these pronouns are all correct”. In both the original and in Fraser’s reorganised Wiradjuri grammar dual pronouns are described after plural forms. Günther did not describe the marking of dual number on nouns.

Dual pronouns are:

- **Nom.**—(1) ngalli, ‘thou and I’; (2) ngiin-ngalligunna, ‘he and I’; (3) ngindubula, ‘you two’; (4) ngainbula, ‘they two’; (5) bulagual, ‘the other two’; (6) nginna bula, ‘those two’; (7) ngilla bula, ‘those two’; (8) ngalliguyunganga, ‘our two selves’.

Further discrepancies in Günther’s record of pronouns are found in the 1838 and 1840 tables of verb conjugation, where the dual inclusive and exclusive forms are different in each source (Figure 66).
The 1dlNOM.EXCL, ‘he and I’, forms given in this section of the grammars, *guin ngalli* (1838) and *ngalligu* (1840) differ again from the form shown in Günther’s pronominal paradigm (1838:21) *nginngalligunna* ‘he and I’. The shakiness of this area of the grammar contrasts with the general strength of this description. The data are set out in Figure 67. The record of forms marking a first person inclusive/exclusive distinction in early grammars of languages spoken in New South Wales is discussed further in section 4.5.

There are also inconsistencies in the reporting of case forms of dual free-form pronouns and the marking of the inclusive and exclusive distinction between Günther’s presentation and other early Wiradjuri sources (Hale 1846; Mathews 1904) (Figure 67).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Günther 1838; 1840</th>
<th>Hale 1846</th>
<th>Mathews 1904</th>
<th>Grant &amp; Rudder 2001</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1dl.AS inclusive</td>
<td>ngalli (1838:20;1840:361), nindu ngalli (1838:77)</td>
<td>ngalli (A)</td>
<td>ngulli</td>
<td>ngali</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>bali (S)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1dl.AS exclusive</td>
<td>nginngalligunna (1838:21), guin ngalli (1838:77), ngalligu (1840:361)</td>
<td>guin- Ngalli (A)</td>
<td>ngulliguna</td>
<td>ngaligunha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>guin- Bali (S)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1dl.O</td>
<td>ngaligin (INCL) guin-ngaligin (EXCL)</td>
<td>ngullinya guin- Ngalli (A)</td>
<td>ngullinyugga</td>
<td>nguligin (INCL) guwinyngali (EXCL)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1dl.POSS</td>
<td>ngaliginguna (INCL) guin-ngaliginguna (EXCL)</td>
<td>Ngaliginguna (INCL) guin-ngaliginguna (EXCL)</td>
<td>Nguliging guin-nguliginguna (INCL) guwinyngali (EXCL)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2dl.AS</td>
<td>ngindu bulla</td>
<td>ngindu bula (S)</td>
<td>Nginbulagal*</td>
<td>ngindhubula</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ngindu bulagu (A)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2dl.O</td>
<td>ngindu bulagu</td>
<td>nginyabula</td>
<td>nginyabula</td>
<td>ngindhubula</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2dl.POSS</td>
<td>ngindu bulaguna</td>
<td>nginu bulaguna</td>
<td>nginnubulalala</td>
<td>nginhubulagu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3dl.AS</td>
<td>ngain bulla</td>
<td>ngain-bula</td>
<td>ngagwainbula</td>
<td>nganybula</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3dl.O</td>
<td>ngannain bulla</td>
<td></td>
<td>ngunnainbula</td>
<td>ngnanybula</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3dl.POSS</td>
<td>ngagguwanbullahu</td>
<td>ngagwabulagu</td>
<td>ngaguwanybulalu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- This is probably a typological error. The form is probably ngindubula

Figure 67: Forms of Wiradjuri dual pronouns given in different sources

An oddity of Hale’s analysis, which differs both from Günther’s grammar and from the current reclamation of Wiradjuri (Grant & Rudder 2001;2014), is his presentation of 1dl and 2dl pronouns showing distinct marking for ergative, nominative and accusative cases (A/S/O). Hale did not provide a paradigm of 3dl pronouns. Other sources show that these pronouns were accusatively aligned (AS/O), like all other Wiradjuri pronouns shown in other sources, and like pronouns in the neighbouring languages Yuwaalaraay and Gamilaraay, which are formally similar to Wiradjuri (Giacon, 2014:127-131).

The 1dlERG ‘active nominative’ pronoun **gali** that Hale (1846:489) presented is that given in other sources as the ‘nominative’ form, i.e., marking nominative and ergative cases. The 1dl pronoun that Hale presented as marking the ‘simple nominative’, i.e., nominative case, **bali**, is
not given in other Wiradjuri sources. Note that this pronoun *bali* is the 1dl nominative/ergative pronoun in Awabakal (Lissarrague 2006:40).

The 2dl pronoun that Hale (1846:489) presented as marking the ‘simple nominative’, i.e., nominative case, *ŋindu bula* is that shown in other sources to mark the ‘nominative’ case, i.e., nominative and ergative cases. The 2dlERG ‘active nominative’ pronoun that Hale presented is his ‘simple nominative’ form suffixed with what appears to be the possessive/allative/purposive inflection –*gu* (Figure 58) *ŋindu bulagu*. Hale’s motivation for including these forms is not clear.

Mathews (1904:287) presented paradigms of free-form pronouns in *each* number for nominative, possessive and accusative cases.

A number of factors might explain why Günther was unable to provide full case paradigms of Wiradjuri pronouns, particularly those in dual number, and the forms marking the inclusive/exclusive distinction, and why there is discrepancy between the sources. First, it is possible that an original diversity of dialects spoken by people from disparate regions of the once vast Wiradjuri territory contributed to inconsistencies in the analyses.

The gaps in Günther’s pronominal paradigms may also be due to an original complexity in the system that was not analysed before it was lost. Although Günther’s analyses represent the culmination of eight years of missionary investigation into Wiradjuri, his grammars (1838;1840) were nevertheless constructed only a short time after first encountering the language in 1837.

Wiradjuri is reclaimed as having a set of compound pronouns (Grant & Rudder 2014:51-54), similar to those described by Threlkeld in Awabakal (§3.2.5.2). These are undescribed in all early sources and have presumably been reclaimed from textual material. The language is also reclaimed as having bound pronouns, which were largely undescribed in the early sources (§7.4). Free-form pronouns may have been difficult to elicit if they were used less frequently than the compound and bound pronouns, which Günther was not looking for.

In this way, Günther’s patchy record might truthfully reflect the situation he encountered. Later grammarians may have recorded a system that had altered, or alternatively, they may have filled in the gaps to present a complete paradigm.

### 4.4.5.1 Mathews’ description of pronouns in Gamilaraay (1903b)

It is interesting here to notice that Mathews’ (1903b) description of Gamilaraay pronouns is more complete than the fragmentary record left by Ridley (1855a), presenting a similar pattern
to the presentation of the Wiradjuri forms by Günther and Mathews. The earliest missionary records of Wiradjuri and Gamilaraay pronouns both present much less regular paradigms than do Mathews’ later records.

Ridley’s paradigms of pronominal case given in the MS (1855a) (Figure 68) and republished in 1866 and 1875 (Figure 69) are incomplete. No forms are assigned case labels but are instead translated using old English pronouns. Accusative forms are only shown for first and second person singular, although non-singular Gamilaraay first and second person pronouns are reclaimed as showing accusative alignment (AS/O) (Austin 1993:68). Dative/possessive forms are only shown for singular pronouns and for 1Pl. No third person dual forms are shown. Austin (1993:71) states: “the data … in Gamilaraay is extremely conflicting and may never be sorted out.” In these sources Ridley only recorded pronouns standing in the syntactic cases or in possessive/dative function.

Ridley’s paradigm of Turrubul pronouns is similarly sparse (Figure 70). Again there is no 3dl form. Possessive forms are only provided for first and second person singular pronouns (1866:62).
Curiously, Ridley’s earliest pronominal paradigm (1855b:74-75) is far more extensive (Figure 71). First person pronouns are shown in a range of peripheral cases, translated with English prepositional phrases. There are still no 3dl forms. Although there are fewer case forms in dual number, the ‘&c’ suggests that the marking of peripheral case was to be considered regular. The only third person pronouns are the nominative singular and plural forms. The difference between Ridley’s pronominal paradigms in different sources might may be due to Ridley having filled in the paradigm in the earliest publication for the sake of a complete description. There is limited correlation between these forms and those reclaimed by Austin (2013:69). The earlier sources probably reflect more accurately Ridley’s difficulty in eliciting and recording pronouns.
By contrast, Mathews (1903b:263-264) gave nominative, accusative and possessive forms for all numbers and (Figure 72).
That neither Günther nor Hale described the morphological marking of dual number on nouns, while Mathews’ later description of Wiradjuri (1904) did, may similarly result from Mathews’ regularisation of material in order to present a pleasingly complete analysis, a tendency previously observed of his method (Dixon 1980:15; Blake in press). The regularity presented by Mathews should be regarded as descriptively suspect. Note that Mathews’ mention of Günther’s grammatically nuanced description of Wiradjuri structure as consisting merely of “some grammatical rules” (1904:285) is less complimentary than was fair and is indicative of Mathews’ general tendency to overemphasise the significance of his own analyses.

4.4.6 Concluding remarks

Günther’s somewhat jumbled MS grammars of Wiradjuri (1838;1840) were probably the culmination of previous missionary investigation of Wiradjuri made at Wellington Valley Mission. The analysis rests on a sound knowledge of the language. Günther’s discussion of morphophonemic alternation in terms of process is exceptional within the corpus, and only Threlkeld’s analysis (1834) comes close to matching Günther’s account of case allomorphy.
Günther’s presentation of case, and his deliberation about whether to number or to name additional ‘ablative’ cases, shows unequivocal influence from Threlkeld, but also shows that Günther was prepared to innovate a new approach independently. While opting for his own innovative nomenclature in the later grammar (1840), his continued use of extended case paradigms, which are atypical of later grammars, followed Threlkeld’s plan.

Comparison of Günther’s MS grammars (1838;1840) with Hale’s grammar (1846) shows that Günther’s analysis differed from Watson’s now lost Wiradjuri grammar, which preceded it. That these earliest grammars of Wiradjuri, written shortly after Threlkeld’s analysis, differed not only from Threlkeld, but also from each other, further highlights the tendency shown by many corpus grammarians, to produce their own novel descriptive responses to PN structure, rather than to reproduce schemata used by their predecessors.

No other corpus grammar approaches the sophistication of Günther’s description of processes of morphophonemic variation. This suggests that the Basel Mission Institute, which trained missionaries to describe the structure of languages spoken at Protestant colonies around the world, was preparing missionaries for encounters with languages showing allomorphic variation before these structures were tackled by European linguistic theory. The terminology Günther employed to name cases in 1840 similarly suggests that the training he received at Basel was steeped in a theory of linguistic description that differed from that to which other early missionaries were exposed.

The potential trajectory of influence that grammatical analyses emanating from the Wellington Valley Mission had on later descriptions of PN languages was stifled by the fact that these works remained unpublished in Australia until 1892. The eventual publication of Günther’s material in Fraser (1892), may, however, have influenced C.Strehlow’s later Arrernte case paradigm (1908) (§9.2.2.2), which broke a long history of Lutheran descriptive practice. C.Strehlow’s German editor, M.von Leonhardi, was conversant with Günther’s descriptions (§9.3.4).

Günther’s earliest record of the language provides less complete paradigms than does the later grammar by Mathews. While the reasons for the discrepancies in the record, and the original systems(s) recorded at different stages of the language’s post-colonial collapse, will probably never be sorted out, there is evidence that Mathews’ record, upon which the language has in part been reclaimed (Grant & Rudder 2001;2014), was regularised (see also §7.4.1) . The following discussion of the description of inclusive and exclusive first person pronouns (§4.5) demonstrates Mathews’ inclination to regularise material.
4.5 The inclusive and exclusive pronominal distinction

Many PN languages make an inclusive/exclusive distinction in non-singular first person pronouns (Dixon 2002:68-69). The inclusive form is usually the stem upon which the exclusive form is built. As Ray (1925:5) explained: “exclusion may be indicated by an affix to the inclusive form.” The following section investigates the description of the inclusive/exclusive distinction in early grammars of different languages, suggesting that aspects of Threlkeld’s initial description (1834) were replicated in grammars of Wiradjuri (§4.5.2) and of Gamilarray (§4.5.3). It is suggested that discrepancies in the record of these pronouns in different sources of the same language result from R.H.Mathews’ regularisation of the paradigms.

4.5.1 Awabakal

Threlkeld showed the inclusive/exclusive distinction only on dual forms. The description of an inclusive/exclusive distinction on dual but not on plural pronouns is a peculiar feature of the earliest descriptions of other language spoken in New South Wales.

Dixon (2002:243-245), however, proposes that Awabakal made an inclusive and exclusive distinction on all non-singular first person pronouns. The material informing Dixon’s claim is not known.

Threlkeld’s dual pronominal paradigm (Figure 73) shows the base form bali as inclusive: “we two, thou and I”. The ‘exclusive’ dual pronoun, which is declined in subsequent paradigms, is shown as compound forms with bali as the first constituent and the third person singular masculine or feminine pronouns as the second constituent. Their structure is not characteristic of PN exclusive constructions (see Dixon 1980:333-335). The forms are not reclaimed by Lissarrague (2006:39). Capell (1956:50), who followed Threlkeld in showing the language as only making the distinction on dual first person pronouns, described the ‘exclusive’ Awabakal form as a ‘circumlocution’.
28. **Ba-li no-a**

“we two, he and I”  
*Pali-nyuwa*

1dlS-3sgM.S  
we two - he

(Threlkeld 1834:23)

29. **Ba-li Bo-un-to-a**

“we two, she and I”  
*Pali-puwaNTuwa*

1dlS-3sgF.S  
we two - she

(Threlkeld 1834:23)

---

**Figure 73: Threlkeld’s presentation of 1dl pronouns, 1834:23 (Awabakal)**

It is possible that Threlkeld forced the 1dlEXCL distinction into the language. His inspiration for doing so may have been Davies’ grammar of Tahitian (1851[1823]) (Figure 74). When introducing dual pronouns, Threlkeld (p.23) wrote: “The Dual number is common to all the Islands in the South Seas”. Compare the similarity of the translation of the 1dlINCL form as “thou and I” and the 1dlEXCL form “he and I” in paradigms from each language (Figure 74; Figure 73).
While the Tahitian paradigm presents dual and plural exclusive forms that are regularly formed through variation of the initial consonant of the inclusive form, the translation of mātou, the 1plEXCL form, as “we, three or more”, rather than “we, them and me” is odd. It is possible that this caused Threlkeld to only seek the distinction in dual number. Since Threlkeld’s choice of orthography is known to have been influenced by linguistic work in Polynesia (Figure 24), it is possible that his conception of grammar was also shaped by Polynesian structures.

![Figure 74: Davies’ presentation of 1dl and 1pl pronouns in a grammar of Tahitian, 1851:9(1823)](image)

### 4.5.2 Wiradjuri

There are different representations of the way in which Wiradjuri marked the inclusive/exclusive on non-singular first person pronouns in the historical sources. The original situation remains unclear. Only the later sources show the distinction on 1pl pronouns, and two different methods of marking the distinction on 1dl pronouns are illustrated (Figure 75).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source</th>
<th>IDLINCL</th>
<th>IDLEXCL</th>
<th>IPL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Günther (1838) with pronouns</td>
<td>ngalli</td>
<td>ngiangalligunna</td>
<td>ngianni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Günther (1838) within verbs</td>
<td>nindu ngalli</td>
<td>guin ngalli</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Günther in Fraser (1892:67-68)</td>
<td>ngalli</td>
<td>ngéan-ngalligunna</td>
<td>Géanni*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hale (1846:489)</td>
<td>njali (A)</td>
<td>guin-njali</td>
<td>njiani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mathews (1904:287)</td>
<td>ngulli</td>
<td>ngean-ngeaniguna</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ray (1925:5)</td>
<td>ngalli</td>
<td>ngeani</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rudder and Grant (2001:29-38)</td>
<td>ngali(-li)</td>
<td>ngeani-guna</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure 75: Early records of pronouns showing an inclusive/exclusive distinction in Wiradjuri**

- The form given in Fraser is “Géanni”. Fraser has regularised the orthography in the paradigm to conform to his conventions of representing the velar nasal by means of an upper case letter ‘G’ with a dot placed inside it, or a lower case letter ‘g’ with a dot placed above it.

The method recorded by Mathews (1904), and reclaimed for the language (Rudder and Grant (2001:32-33) is that described by Ray (1925:5), who illustrates the Australian linguistic process using examples taken from the early descriptions of Diyari and in Wiradjuri on both dual and plural pronouns.

Since Mathews is the only early source to give an exclusive plural as well as dual forms, and since Ray’s forms are the same as those given by Mathews (Figure 75), it is clear that Ray used Mathews’ description to inform his summary. Only Mathews and Ray show the exclusive suffix –gunha on the dual.

A second method of making the same semantic distinction was recorded by Hale (1846:489) but only for dual pronouns. He described the marking of exclusivity on the dual pronouns in the following terms:

To express “he and I”, the pronoun guin [guwiiny 3sgNOM] he, is prefixed, without change, to all the forms of bali [1dlINCL.S]; as, guin-bali, he and I; act.nom. guin- gali : acc …

The complex phrasal construction Hale appears to describe has since been recognised in other Australian languages and is termed the inclusive construction (Goddard 1985:100-102; Wilkins 1989:408-411), or the inclusory construction (Singer 2001). Goddard (1985:100) describes how in Yankunytjatjara:

The construction consists of (i) one or more names or non-first person pronouns (ii) followed by a non-singular pronoun subsuming the preceding elements in number (iii) all agreeing in case … The semantic effect … is to present the referents of the non-final words as included within the group designated by the final non-singular elements”
The only way in which the “he and I” pronouns given by Hale do not meet Goddard’s definition of pronominal inclusion is Hale’s description of the unaltered case of the first constituent. It is possible that this reflects an incorrect extrapolation of the data.

In Hale’s form the first pronoun “he” is a subset of the second pronoun “we two”.

30. guwiiny ngali,
3sgNOM 1dlNOM
“s/he and I” (literally, s/he we two)

The referent of the second constituent is “understood to be the ‘remainder’” (Wilkins 1989:409), or what is in excess of that which is referred to by the first constituent. The semantic effect of using a third person pronoun as the initial constituent is to mark inclusivity of the first constituent within the second. Confusingly, Goddard’s ‘inclusive construction’ has the same semantic effect as ‘exclusive’ pronouns.

Günther, in his fleeting reference to the dual pronouns (§4.4.5), showed the 1dlincl form as ngali and 1dlexcl as ngean-ngaligunha. He provided no additional commentary about the fact that the language distinguished between forms translated as ‘thou and I’ and ‘he and I’ in the pronominal system.

Curiously, Günther’s 1.dl.excl form, Ngéan-ngalligunna, which is not given by any other grammarian, appears to show both suffixation with the exclusive marker –gunha that was shown by Mathews and Ray, and which is reclaimed for the language, as well as the prefixing process described by Hale. Except that the form of 3sgNOM prefix is the bound form.

31. Ngéan-ngalligunna
Ngiin-ngali-gunha
3sgNOM - 1dlNOM – EXCL

Both Günther and Hale’s descriptions of how this distinction was marked in Wiradjuri evince processes that have not been reclaimed for the language.

4.5.3 Gamilaraay

Like Threlkeld and Günther, Ridley (1855a:7;1855b:74-75;1875:7, see Appendix 1 §1.1) also recorded the distinction only on dual pronouns in Gamilaraay. It is possible that the inclusive/exclusive distinction in plural pronouns was not elicited by early missionaries in New South Wales because, informed by Threlkeld’s work, they did not anticipate the existence of the form in the plural. Both Ridley and Günther’s descriptions of ergativity show a definite influence from Threlkeld (Appendix 1§1.1.4 & §4.4.3). It is also possible that the distinction was not present on 1pl forms.
The forms given by Ridley were:

- **ngulle** we two, thou and I
- **ngullina** we two, he and I

Austin (1993:68) observes that the exclusive affix –*na* “would be cognate with the exclusive pronominal affix in Ngiyambaa … given by Donaldson (1980:123)”, indicating that Ridley’s record was probably accurate.

The earliest record of the distinction on plural pronouns in Gamilaraay dates to Mathews (1904), as it does also for Wiradjuri. In both languages Mathews recorded the distinction on plural pronouns when missionary-grammarians two generations earlier had not (see Austin 1993:68). Mathews was fond of stating that he was the first grammarian to report inclusive and exclusive pronominal structures. In his Gamilaraay grammar (1903b:259) he pointed out that Ridley had not described the distinction in plural pronouns. In his grammar of Wiradjuri (1904:4-5) he stated: “Separate forms for "we two,," and "he and I," were observed by Rev. James Guenther among the pronouns of the Wiradyuri natives at Wellington, but as he does not mention anything of the kind in the plural, we may conclude that he did not observe it”. Mathews’ descriptions of the forms in Arrernte (§4.5.4) are revealing of a desire to regularise this aspect of the language in order to accommodate his own schemata.

The dual exclusive forms Mathews provided in Gamilaraay differed from those given by Ridley, just as his record of the distinction on dual pronouns in Wiradjuri differed from Günther’s. It is possible that the discrepancy in forms resulted from differences in the linguistic varieties of Gamilaraay and Wiradjuri recorded in the sources, especially considering that both these languages were originally spoken over a large area by many speakers (Krzywieki 1934:317).

The forms given by Mathews were:

- **ngulli** 1dlincl
- **ngullinguru** 1dlexcl
- **ngeane** 1plincl
- **ngeanyel** 1plexcl

The structure of Mathews’ 1pl exclusive form remains unclear. Austin (1993:67) observes that Mathews’ 1dlexcl form is a combination of 1dl **ngulli** and the form Mathews recorded as 3sg **nguru**, although note that this differs from Ridley’s 3sg form **ngerma** (Figure 68). Austin suggests that the form “was probably fabricated by an informant in response to Mathews [sic] persistent enquiries”. Observe that the structure of the pronoun ‘we two/(s)he’ is the same as
reported by Threlkeld (1834:23) (Examples 28 & 29). Perhaps both grammarians forced the same distinction.

Note here that the comparison of Mathews’ (1903b) description of word ordering in Gamilaraay with other sources, also suggests that Mathews regularised linguistic structures in order to accommodate his own schemata. Austin (1993:55) recorded that Gamilaraay adjectives precede the noun they qualify and are not usually inflected for case. He suggests that Mathews’ was incorrect when describing and exemplifying NPs in which the adjective follows the noun and both constituents are marked for case (Figure 76). Ridley had not described the relative ordering or the marking of case on NP constituents, but in the final section of his grammar headed ‘syntax’ he illustrated possessive pronouns used adjectively preceding the head noun (Figure 77). The relative ordering of adjectives and nouns differs between PN languages (Dixon 1980:274). Mathews’ earlier grammar of the Yuin-Kuric language ‘Gundungurra’ (Gandangara) (1901b:144) recorded adjective following the noun. It seems that the observation was subsequently repeated indiscriminately by Mathews and became a feature of his descriptive template. That the point is made again so similarly in Mathews’ grammar of Wiradjuri (1904) (Figure 78) suggests that Mathews’ descriptions need to be assessed cautiously.

Andjectives follow the nouns they qualify, and take the same inflections for number and case.

Nominative.—Murrya burul, a man large. Inuura dhunggur, a woman lame.
Nominative agent.—Murriva buruuru kzinga buvuwila, the big man is beating the child.
Genitive.—Murriga burulu burraa, the big man’s boomerang. Inuru dhungguru bynuu, the lame woman’s yamstick.
Instrumental.—When an instrument is the remote object of the verb, it requires a suffix, as, Murrvida burulu burrunda buivrewe, the big man is throwing a boomerang. In such an instance the first suffix is often omitted.
Dative.—Murrilda burula dhaiauwunuga, come to the big man.
Ablative.—Murrildhi burula yavununga, go away from the big man.
In assessing Mathews’ description of this the non-singular exclusive/inclusive pronominal distinction Koch (2008:196) writes:

Most [of the] languages [described by Mathews] show a distinction between Inclusive and Exclusive among the non-Singular numbers of the First Person. Although this is a feature not found in European languages, and therefore not discussed in Traditional Grammar, Mathews knew of it from descriptions of other languages in the Pacific.

Koch (ibid.,196) quotes Mathews (1902b:101) as stating: “This peculiarity has been observed in the dialects of many of the islands of Polynesia, Melanesia and Micronesia”. Mathews, who was the earliest mainland Australian grammarian to use the terms ‘inclusive’ and ‘exclusive’ to describe the distinction may have been influenced by an 1885 grammar of Melanesian written by R.H.Codrington (1830-1922). Unlike J.Davies’ representation of inclusive and exclusive dual and plural first person pronouns in Tahitian ([1823]1851:9) (Figure 74), which had probably first inspired Threlkeld to describe the distinction on dual pronouns in Awabakal, Codrington employed the terms ‘inclusive’ and ‘exclusive’ to name the distinction in grammars of Mota (1877:11) and Lifou (1885:113) (Figure 79), stating (pp.118-119): “This very useful and effective way of speaking … perhaps requires to be used before its excellence is fully understood”. He had previously done so in a grammar of Mota (1877:11).
The terms had, however, also previously been used by Bleek (1872:90), who placed a question mark next to them when describing Australian pronouns, as well as by Ray & Haddon in a description of Western Torres Strait (1897:125) made before Ray had visited the region (Appendix 1 §1.4.1).

The terminology and style of presentation was subsequently used in N.Hey’s grammar of Nggerrikwidhi (1903:12) (Appendix 1§1.3.5) (Figure 80). Note that the distinction had not been recorded in earlier grammars of languages spoken in Queensland, including Roth’s (1901) description of Guugu-Yimidhrr (Appendix 1§1.3.2) although the distinction is recorded in that language by Haviland (1979:66).

Note here that W.Koch’s grammar of Diyari (1868) written in German (§8.6.8) is the first Australian grammar to describe the inclusive/exclusive distinction in both dual and plural number. The distinction is described using the terms Einschluß and Ausschluß rather than the Latinate Inklusiv and Exclusiv.

Thus the distinction may have entered into the description of Australian languages from distinct sources, those emanating from earlier missionary descriptions of Polynesian languages (Davies 1823; Codrington 1885) or from Bleek (1872), and also as what appear to have been a descriptive innovation in Diyari independent of earlier influence (Koch 1868).
4.5.4 Arrernte

The description of the inclusive/exclusive distinction was part of Mathews’ template of Australian description. His pronominal paradigms of Arrernte (1907) (Figure 81) most clearly evince his tendency to find forms to fit into his schema, which he assumed accommodated all Australian languages appropriately.

![Figure 81: Mathews’ presentation of 1st and 1st inclusive pronouns, 1907:325 (Western Arrernte)](image)

The distinction had not been described in missionary Kempe’s detailed grammar of Arrernte (1891), nor has it since been shown in any of the numerous descriptions of Arrernte pronouns spanning a century. Mathews wrote (p.325):

The ‘inclusive’ form of the pronouns in the Aranda language has never been published by any other author. I was also the first to report the double “we” in the languages in the southeastern districts of South Australia.

In 1905, Mathews wrote to the staff at the Hermannsburg mission explaining that he felt:

quite sure that your blacks have the ‘we exclusive’, although Mr Kempe appears to have overlooked it … you will be able to get all the information about these “inclusive” and “exclusive” forms in a few hours from any native

Like the structure of the exclusive pronouns in Wiradjuri recorded by Hale (1846) (Example 30), Mathews documents the inclusive construction (Goddard 1985:100-102) in Western Arrernte. The structure of Mathews’ inclusive forms are:

1dl incl

32. **Ngilina:**
   - *Nge* - *ilerne*  
   - lit. you (sg) - we two “you and me”

1pl incl

33. **Nganuna:**
   - *Nge* - *anwerne*  
   - lit. you (sg) you (pl) “you and us”
The forms presented in Mathews’ pronominal paradigms are described by Wilkins (1989:123) as:

“just examples of the regular complex phrasal construction known as the pronominal inclusive construction. They are composed of ‘2sgS/A’ followed by either ilderne ‘1dlS/A’ or anwerne ‘2plS/A’”.

C.Strehlow (1906) supplied Mathews with these phrasal constructions. Strehlow was, however, acquainted with the structure Mathews sought through his knowledge of Diyari. He was well aware that Arrernte did not mark the distinction in the same way. In a comparative examination of Diyari, Ramindjeri and Arrernte (1931b:no pag. [c.1907]) (§9.2.2.1) Strehlow noted that Diyari differed from Arrernte in marking an inclusive/exclusive distinction on non-singular pronouns. He described the function of the relevant Diyari forms:

a double dual: ngalli means ‘we both’, that is, I and the person to whom I speak. Ngaldra, on the other hand means ‘we both’, excluding the person to whom I speak. Double plural forms can also be found in the language, ngaiani and ngaiana; the first is used partially and the latter universally (we all). 28

Strehlow described the structure of the four forms he supplied to Mathews in the following terms:

“The 1st Pers. Dualis we incl .[“ngalina”] is … a combination of nga (thou) and lina = jinga = I, it means: “Thou and I”

Although Strehlow realised that the form was compound, his analysis is incorrect. He fails to appreciate that the referent of the first constituent is subsumed by the referents of the second constituent. Mishearing, or somehow reinterpreting, ilderne 1dlS/A as ayenge 1sgS, Strehlow incorrectly analyses his 1dlincl ngilina as:

34. Nge – jinga
   Nge-ayenge
   2sgS/A- 1sgS
   you – I
   “you and me”

Strehlow’s analysis of the plural form nganuna, although identically flawed, does not require him to reinterpret the form of the second constituent, since translation of the second constituent nwerne 1pl with the English pronoun “we” does not distinguish between dual and plural number. The phrase can be correctly translated as “you and us” using Strehlow’s incorrectly applied logic. Mathews’ did not include Strehlow’s analysis of the phrase in his publication, but presented the terms as single pronouns.

28 “Ferner, hat die Dieri-Sprache einen doppelten Dual: ngalli heisst wir beide d.h. ich und die Person, zu der ich rede, ngaldra dagegen bedeutet wir beide, mir Ausschluss der andern Person, zu der ich rede. Auch einen doppelten Plural-Form findet sich in dieser Sprache, ngaiani und ngaiana, ersteres ist partiell, letzteres universal gebraucht (‘wir alle’).” (C.Strehlow 1931b:no pag. [c.1907]).
Although later missionary grammars of Arrernte did not persist in presenting inclusive and exclusive pronouns in the language (C. Strehlow 1931a [c.1907]; 1910), Mathews’ presentation of ‘inclusive’ and ‘exclusive’ pronouns in Arrernte led W. Schmidt (1919a:49) to the belief that in Arrernte the exclusive pronoun is the stem form of the inclusive. Capell (1939:59) set the record straight stating that in “Aranda … the distinction is not made”.
Chapter 5:
The first grammar of a South Australian language, Teichelmann & Schürmann (1840)

This chapter discusses the grammar of Kaurna, the language of the Adelaide Plains, written by the Lutheran missionaries C.G. Teichelmann and C.W. Schürmann (1840). The size of Teichelmann & Schürmann’s case paradigms and the way in which cases are named is shown to be entirely different from the methods employed by Threlkeld (Chapter 3) and by Günther (Chapter 4). Teichelmann & Schürmann’s description of ergativity (§5.5.2), as well as a number of other descriptive practices (§5.3), influenced later grammars of a South Australian languages, many of which were written by Lutheran missionaries (Chapters 6-10).

The chapter concludes with a detailed discussion of Teichelmann & Schürmann’s description of ‘dative’ and ‘genitive’ case functions (§5.4). The factors that led to the misrepresentation of these functions in Kaurna also confused the early analyses of Arrernte (§9.3.6).

5.1 Historical context

The earliest grammars of South Australian languages were written by men who were ordained and sent to Australia by the Evangelisch-Lutherischen Missions-Gesellschaft zu Dresden (Evangelical Lutheran Mission Society of Dresden, henceforth DMS). These ‘Dresdener’ grammars are of languages spoken in the earliest-settled coastal districts of the South Australian colony and were made in the decade after the Colony of South Australia was established (1836). They are: a grammar of Kaurna spoken on the Adelaide Plains (Teichelmann and Schürmann 1840) (§5.2), a grammar of Ramindjeri, a variety of Ngarrindjeri, spoken on the south coast of the Fleurieu Peninsula at Encounter Bay (Meyer 1843) (Chapter 6), and a grammar of Barngarla spoken on the Eyre Peninsula (Schürmann 1844a) (Chapter 7). These three ‘Dresdener’ grammars were all published in English in Adelaide. Teichelmann and Schürmann (1840:viii) acknowledged M. Moorhouse (1813-1876) as having revised their work, since “English … [was] not the vernacular tongue of the authors”, and Meyer acknowledged ‘Mr Lindsay’, whose identity is uncertain, as having assisted him with the English translation (1843:vi). Original German manuscript grammars do not survive.

Together with a grammar of Ngayawang spoken upstream from Ngarrindjeri on the Murray River written by M. Moorhouse (1846) (§7.2) (map) and a brief five-page grammar of Kaurna
written by Moorhouse and Teichelmann (1841), the three Dresdener grammars form the only currently recognised sub-school of Australian linguistic description. These works have been termed “the Adelaide School of language researchers” by Simpson (1992:410) (see also Simpson et al 2008:123-126).

This body of work has been assessed positively in comparison with other early grammatical source materials (Ray 1925:2; Capell 1970:667), although it is important to recognise that Moorhouse’s grammar (1846), written within the intellectual sphere of the Dresdener missionaries’ grammars is not of the same calibre as the other works.

With the exception of Meyer (1843), these grammars are shorter and less detailed than Threlkeld’s earlier published work (1834). As the Dresdener grammarians pointed out (Teichelmann and Schürmann 1840:v; Meyer 1843:v) their grammars were written shortly after first hearing the language: “Eighteen months is but a short period for the study of an unwritten language, where no means of instruction exist, and where all information must be gleaned from casual and trivial conversation” (Teichelmann & Schürmann 1840:v). Threlkeld had by comparison studied the language for nine years before producing his largest grammatical description (1834). His 1827 work (§3.1.1), written within roughly the same short two-year time frame as the Dresdener grammars, is by comparison much less substantial.

Each of the grammars produced by the three Dresdener missionaries was followed by an ethnographic publication describing the ‘manners and customs’ of the people speaking the language (Teichelmann 1841a; Schürmann 1846; Meyer 1846). A climate of optimism characterised the relation between Aboriginal and European relations in the very early period of South Australian colonisation. In the introduction to their grammar (1840:v) Teichelmann and Schürmann explained that although postponing the publication would have allowed “greater maturity, and certainty of statements”, they were advised by colonial authorities to publish quickly for “the good which might arise from it to the natives”. Dixon (1980:12) has previously observed a correlation between the degree linguistic and ethnographic investigation into Australian Aboriginal people and the climate of intercultural relations.

The prompt publication of grammars and ethnographic descriptions by the Dresdeners contrasts with the relatively slow publication of material at later South Australian Lutheran missions, as well as with the type of materials that were first published. None of the missionary grammars of Diyari written over a period of three decades by Lutheran missionaries at Bethesda were published until decades after the closure of the mission in 1915 (§8.2.1), and the first grammar of Arrernte, written by Lutheran missionary Kempe (1891) (§9.1.1) was published fourteen years after he co-established the Hermannsburg mission.
At both of these later inland Lutheran missions the first published mission material was a primer (Homann & Koch 1870; Kempe 1880), which included translations of religious texts into the vernacular for use in mission schools. The same is also true of Ridley’s missionary effort among the Gamilaraay (Ridley 1856a) (Appendix 1§1.1.1).

Schürmann attempted but struggled to translate the Ten Commandments and the Lord’s Prayer into Barngarla (Rathjen 1998:78-81). Teichelmann and Schürmann translated the Commandments (Amery 2016:111), six hymns, a school prayer, and Biblical truths (ibid.,78) into Kaurna, and Meyer translated prayers, the Commandments, and some hymns into Ramindjeri (Gale 2011:75). None of the Dresdeners’ translations were published, and the Barngarla and Ramindjeri MSS have not been located.

The support of Sir G.Grey, the Governor of South Australia (1841-1845) underwrites much of the material published by the ‘Adelaide school’. Grammars by Schürmann (1844a v:iii), Meyer (1843:iv) and Moorhouse (1846:v) are dedicated to Grey, who took an interest in Indigenous languages throughout his career: first as an explorer in the northwest of Australia (1837) and in the southwest of Australia (1839), then while Magistrate at King George Sound (1839-1840), and later as Governor of South Australia (1841-1845), New Zealand (1845-1853 and 1861-1868), and of Cape Colony, South Africa (1854-1861). Grey published *Vocabulary of the dialects spoken by the Aboriginal Races of South-Western Australia* (1839). Grey later published a map of Australian languages (1845) in the Royal Geographical Society Journal (Figure 82). Grey’s map, which showed five Australian ‘dialects’ spoken across the southern portion of the continent, was informed by his own enquiry into the languages of Western Australian and by the work of the Lutheran missionaries in South Australia (1840;1843;1844a) and by the reports of M.Moorhouse (§7.2).
The initial goodwill towards Aboriginal people in the colony of South Australia, which saw the prompt publication of Dresdener’s linguistic and ethnographic work, soon soured and was replaced by a degree of hostility. European anxiety over the perception of Aboriginal moral indecency and their unwillingness to adopt a work ethic caused social tension (Scrimgeour 2007:94-95). Teichelmann (1841b) wrote to the German philologist H.C.von der Gabelentz, whom he had met at the time of his ordination in Altenburg:

this collection [of words] was published because we and our friends believed that it would make intercourse between the Aborigines and the Europeans easier. There does not seem to be very much interest in that, though, since a large number of the English would just like to hang or shoot all the Aborigines, rather than having them in the country. That is the old way of the English in their colonies.

Each of the Dresdener missions: Teichelmann & Schürmann’s at Pirltawardli (1839-1848), Meyer’s at Encounter Bay (1840-1848), and Schürmann’s at Port Lincoln (1840-1845), was short-lived. Each operated in poverty. With little and uncertain financial support from colonial authorities, or from Dresden, the enterprises strove to be economically self-sufficient. Missionaries struggled to feed and clothe themselves, let alone provide for the populations they had difficulty attracting permanently to the missions. The missionaries became despondent, as their linguistic efforts seemed increasingly futile: “those who speak our language are scattered all over the country and will probably not return within the coming months, if ever” (Teichelmann diary 10/11/1844).
As at the later Lutheran missions (§8.4.1) the Dresdener missionaries focussed their evangelical efforts on the children (Gale 2011:22), perceiving the adults to be beyond redemption. Although note that Teichelmann took a different position and persisted in working with adults (Lockwood 2007:12). Yet, not a single Aboriginal person was baptised at any of the four Dresdener missions before the Lutheran mission in South Australia was closed in 1848 in an atmosphere of disappointment and exhaustion.

Their failures and successes have been the subject of much recent study (Amery 2004;2014;2016; Scrimgeour 2007; Gale 2011; Lockwood 2007;2014). Although the Dresdener’s failed to baptise a single Aboriginal person before the missions’ closures, the primacy of their work within Kaurna and Barngarla language reclamation programmes and within the revitalisation of Ngarrindjeri is a measure of their success.

A number of factors have been identified as contributing to the early closure of the Dresdener missions. Meyer believed that linguistic diversity and the ‘wandering habit’ of Aboriginal people contributed to the closure and he perceived these factors as impediments to further mission work in South Australia (Zweck 2012:43-45). But these factors were also experienced at later Lutheran missions that endured for decades. The Dresdeners encountered a specific range of difficulties resulting from the proximity of each of the missions to heavily settled districts, which was contrary to the missionaries’ desire to work among people who were removed from the influence of European vices. The site of the mission at Encounter Bay, for example, was chosen by Colonial authorities against Meyer’s wish (Lockwood 2007:16). By contrast missionaries at later inland missions worked in the prototypical mission context as an elite racial minority in political control of an indigenous majority who had little opportunity to contact other Europeans.29

Further, the establishment of the earliest South Australian mission in Adelaide, the Colony’s capital to where surrounding groups of Aboriginal people soon flocked, resulted in the outnumbering of the original Kaurna inhabitants by other Aboriginal people who traditionally may not have visited that territory regularly or for extended stays (see Moorhouse’s report, in Foster 1990:59-60). The marginalisation of the Kaurna in Adelaide is illustrated by the alteration of Teichelmann’s terminology used to refer to their language. Initially he referred simply to ‘the language’ (die Sprache) but by 1844 he discussed ‘our language’ (unsere

29 In 1844, the Aboriginal population in Adelaide fluctuated from 300 to 500 people (Governor Grey’s estimate, Scimgeour 2006:151). In the same year, the first South Australian Colonial census estimated the European population in Adelaide to be ten thousand.
Sprache), reflecting the increasing numbers of speakers of other Aboriginal languages in Adelaide. By August 1845 he refers to ‘any who speak our branch of language’ (eine unseres Sprachstamms sprechen) (Teichelmann diary 24/08/1845).

5.1.1 The naming of Kaurna

The first record of the term ‘Kaurna’ to refer to a group of people appears in Woods The Native Tribes of South Australia (1879) in W. Wyatt’s vocabulary of the “Adelaide and Encounter Bay Tribes” (1879:180). Under the heading “Names of Tribes” (p.180) appears two entries:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kaurna</th>
<th>Encounter Bay Bob’s</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Meeyuna</td>
<td>Onkaparinga Jack’s</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Here the term ‘Meeyuna’ refers to the people from Adelaide who are associated with Onkaparinga Jack (Mullawirraburka, King John), and the term ‘Kaurna’ refers to the name of people from Encounter Bay. Both words mean ‘men, people’.

Korn(e), is recorded as the translation for ‘man’ by Meyer at Encounter Bay (1843:12) and Meyu is given as ‘man’ by Teichelmann and Schürmann (1840V:23).

The next use of the term ‘Kaurna’ with reference to the people from South Australia was given in a key accompanying a map drawn by Charles Richards (no dates) in 1892 (see Knapman 2011:18-19). The label ‘Ka Orna’ (item 194) is assigned to the area near Encounter Bay. Richards assigns the label ‘Mei Orna’ (item 192) to the area around Adelaide. The caption Richards gave to the map reads: “Map showing the location of 208 Tribes, with their correct names – gathered during three years constant travel among them (over the whole area represented) and from available data”. It is likely that Wyatt (1879) was Richards’ available source data, although in 1891 there were still some speakers of the language, and Richards may have sourced his material independently (see Gara 1990:78-80). Richards does not conform to any earlier spelling conventions in naming any of the tribes on the map.

The next known recorded usages of the term ‘Kaurna’ are also given on maps. In these sources the the term is used to refer to the people from Adelaide, rather than Encounter Bay. A.W.Howitt (1904:opp.p.44) placed the name across an area of land just north of Adelaide, extending towards the Murray River. He used the term ‘Narrinyeri’ to refer to the area east of the Murray River, along the coast. Carl Strehlow (1907-1920 vol.2 1910), following Howitt, gave ‘Kaúrna’ and ‘Nàrrinjèri’ in the same locations.
That Howitt’s and Strehlow’s maps follow Wyatt’s spelling (Woods 1879:180) indicates that this was the source of the term. It seems that Howitt (1904) misinterpreted Wyatt when choosing a name by which to refer to the Adelaide language. There is no evidence that the term Kaurna meaning ‘man’ in a neighbouring language was used to refer to the people and language of the Adelaide plains exonymically. Note that W.Schmidt’s 1919 map refers to the same group as the ‘Meyu-Sprachen’ (1919:41-42). The use of the term referring to the people and language of the Adelaide Plain became entrenched after the authoritative mapping of tribal boundaries and their ‘proper names’ made by N.Tindale (1974:213) (Amery 2016:4). However, Tindale used the term as early as 1926 (Amery 1998 Appendix B:8). It seems probable that Tindale followed Howitt (1904) and/or Strehlow (1910), both of whom he listed as sources.

5.1.2 Training

The Dresden missionaries were initially trained at Germany’s first mission school, the Jänickesche Missionsschule in Berlin (Jänicke Mission Institute) in preparation for missionary work in India. The institute had been established by J.Jänicke (1748-1827) in 1800. Here Teichelmann, Schürmann and Meyer received a scholarly education that focused on the study of theology and foreign languages. They studied Latin, English, Greek and Hebrew (Schürmann 1838, in Schurmann 1987:256). Schürmann had also studied some Chinese.

Jänicke trained missionaries to work for larger non-denominational mission societies in Basel, Rotterdam and London. Teichelmann and Schürmann were initially offered mission work with the Church of England in India. Refusing to be ordained in the Church of England (Schürmann 1838, in Schurmann 1987:256), Teichelmann and Schürmann declined the offer to work in India and in 1836 became the first students of the Dresden Mission Institute (henceforth DMI), which had been specifically established to allow Teichelmann and Schürmann to complete their training. Here they received further training in English, Hebrew, Greek and the exegetic exposition of the Biblical text. Teichelmann and Schürmann were ordained as Lutheran missionaries in Altenburg in 1838, and under the patronage of George Fife Angas (1789-1879) were sent to Adelaide.

5.1.3 Field-work

The Dresdeners were explicitly instructed to “take on a teacher and study the grammar, as well as meet the people in order to grasp the spoken language in their day-to-day life”30 (Rheinwald 1840:681). In reality the productive relationships formed between missionaries and Aboriginal

30 Einen Lehrer annehmen und die Grammatik studieren, als auch unter den Volk gehen werden, um den mündlichen Ausdruck aus Leben aufzufassen (Rheinwald 1840:681).
people were likely to have been initiated by Aboriginal people choosing to engage in an interchange of cultural ideas and practices with the Europeans. Teichelmann and Schürmann worked closely with Mullawirraburka (‘King John’, ‘Onkaparinga Jack’), Kadlitpinna (‘Captain Jack’), and Ityamaitpina (‘King Rodney”).

Both Teichelmann and Meyer are known to have experienced some frustration in the unwillingness of Aboriginal people to engage in the type of ‘fieldwork’ with which the missionaries persisted. Meyer engaged in a style of enquiry that made Ramindjeri people uncomfortable and resulted in them avoiding contact with him (Gale 2011:66-74).

Teichelmann attributed an early inability to discuss important religious matters as resulting from the language being “withheld” (zurückhalten) by its speakers (diary 09/01/1840). The vehemence with which Teichelmann tended to believe that conversion would necessarily follow their ability to preach in the vernacular is well illustrated in the following diary entry (19/01/1840): “when we have their language in our power, the lord will through his Word perform signs and wonders on these natives however low they have sunk”. Such was the strength of Teichelmann’s pietistic conviction that he attributed the resistance to Christian conversion entirely to his own inadequate mastery of the language (diary 31/12/1843).

Schürmann’s Adelaide diary entry 13/09/1839 titled “Fünf Tage mit den Eingeborenen im Busch” (Five days with the natives out bush) evinces a less overtly zealous method of fieldwork. It is a rare instance illustrating the means by which the missionaries learnt grammatical structures, Schürmann wrote:

What I promised myself from this journey has been more than confirmed: a closer acquaintance with the life and the language of the natives. My progress in the language consists not only in a number of new words but also in the consolidation and more fluent use of what I already knew. In particular, the discovery of a modus conjunctivus which is formed by attaching the little syllable ma to the stem of the verb, and is used very regularly (Translation Lois Zweck).

As a reminder of the ontological divide between the scholarly European missionary-grammarians and the illiterate hunter-gatherer people whom they sought to understand, consider the astonishment expressed by missionaries upon discovering that there was no Indigenous grammatical tradition.

Meyer (1843:v) described his Australian informants as “incapable of answering or even comprehending, grammatical questions”. Similarly, Congregationalist missionary G.Taplin (Appendix 2§1.1) later lamented: “enquiries are useless when addressed to minds upon whom the idea of grammar has never dawned” (1880:6) and Lutheran missionary Kempe (1891:4) (§9.1.1) expressed the same frustration, and appeared almost exasperated that the ‘natives’
could not explain the difference between Arandic past tense suffixes -ke and –kele (1891:1). Teichelmann wrote:

“We have had to collect the language from the mouth of a people who do not have the faintest idea of the grammar and etymology embodied in their language, and who are even not capable of giving us a minimum of lessons, but for whom every question about their language seems to present an insoluble puzzle. ... Let me give the following example to illustrate their [Aboriginal people’s] behaviour when we want to learn something from them: If we ask about the first person pronoun, they answer in the second person, and when we ask about the second person, they answer in the first. If we ask about the meaning of a word, they add either a noun or an adjective to it and produce an expression with a narrower meaning. Or they give us an example that describes a situation in their lives, in which the word that we asked for appears. Or they say: ‘There is only one word for that,’ or ‘yes, that’s what it’s called,’ and then they repeat the word”. (Teichelmann to H.C.von der Gabelentz, 6/1/1841, translated J. McElvenny)

Teichelmann and Schürmann (1840:v) did, however, describe a “natural inability [emphasis added]” to answer grammatical questions. The average German peasant would not have been very different.

It is possible that such comments were published to raise awareness among an international audience that missionaries in Australia were presented with this specific difficulty that was additional to that experienced in mission fields where there existed some indigenous grammatical tradition utilised by missionaries. In 1836 C.T.E.Rhenius had published a grammar of Tamil, in which he described using the existing tradition of grammatical description for the language (1836:i ) (§2.4). Rhenius had also been trained for missionary work in India by J.Jänicke in Berlin before 1814. It is likely that the Dresdener missionaries read this grammar. Schürmann is known to have studied ‘dictionaries’ of Tamil and Malay while in Australia (Rathjen 1998:67).
5.2 Teichelmann & Schürmann’s grammar of Kaurna (1840)

Teichelmann (1807-1888) and Schürmann (1815-1893) arrived in South Australia in 1838, two years after the colony’s official settlement. In collaboration with the Kaurna people they established a settlement and a garden on the north bank of the Torrens River, downstream from the city of Adelaide, at a site named ‘the native location’ or ‘Pirltawardli’ (possum house). Within two years of arriving in Adelaide, Teichelmann and Schürmann had published a twenty-four-page grammar of the language of the Adelaide plains, later referred to as Kaurna. The grammar appeared as the first component in a one hundred and eight-page book, which also included a Kaurna to English vocabulary “of 1816 head entries, a phraseology of 141 entries, two short passages illustrating dialect differences and five short song lines” (Amery 2016:87). The grammar was the second published account of an Australian language, preceded only by Threlkeld (1834) and the unpublished grammars of Wiradjuri (Watson no date; Handt no date; Günther 1838;1840).

In their introduction (1840:vii-viii) Teichelmann and Schürmann situated the work within existing knowledge of Australian languages and their known relatedness to one another. They offered their work as confirmation that “all Australian languages are derived from one root”, a fact that, as the authors pointed out, had been suggested by Threlkeld (1834:10) and by Grey (1839;1841;365-366). The contextualisation of the material within existing research is a feature of works of the Adelaide school, which stands in contrast to the later Lutheran descriptions of Diyari. The few features that were seen as indicating common ancestry were reiterated by Schürmann (1846) (§7.1) and by Moorhouse (1846) (§ 7.2.1).

Teichelmann and Schürmann were content to express uncertainty about some of the structures they encountered and to exemplify complex structures that they were unable to provide an account of. This trait is shared with some other more detailed, longer analyses (e.g., Kempe 1891) (§9.1.1). As Amery (2016:106) points out: “there are indications that Teichelmann and Schürmann tried as best as they could to base their analysis entirely on what they actually heard.” After the initial presentation of nominal case paradigms in three numbers (1840:5-6), the authors stated that they are unable to account for morphophonemic variation in the shape of the inflection for ergative/instrumental ‘active or ablative’ case, and of inflection for dual and plural number: “as yet, no fixed rule can be given for those letters by which the dual termination is joined to the root” (ibid.,5). Importantly they exemplified the variation. This

31 Note that the pagination begins again in the vocabulary. Pages cited here are in the initial grammatical section of the work, unless shown as 1840V, which designates pages in the vocabulary.
stance differs from the certainty with which some grammarians with less grammatical insight, and here R.H.Mathews comes to mind (§4.3), presented their material as authoritative.

Nevertheless, there is also evidence that Teichelmann and Schürmann did engage in the ‘filling-in’ of paradigms, for the sake of regularising the description, as Günther had admitted to doing (1840:350). The amendments Teichelmann later made to the published case paradigms (1858a) (§5.2.1), suggest that the original analysis (1840) had been regularised.

The grammar does not include reference to the word-class ‘article’, not even to state that it does not exist. Perhaps alerted to the needlessness of the category through reading Threlkeld’s description “of the substitute for the article [emphasis added]” (1834:9), the absence of this grammatical category signals that the authors intended to compose their description in response to the structure of the language. Yet, like all other early grammarians this grammar adopts aspects of the traditional descriptive framework, which while facilitating the description, were not motivated or appropriate to the morphosyntactic structure.

The grammatical component of the work commences with a description of ‘nouns’ divided into three categories: ‘substantives’, ‘adjectives’ and ‘pronouns’. The traditional division between substantives and adjectives, which the missionaries did not describe as functionally motivated, is maintained. They (p.4) stated: “declension of substantives also applies to adjectives”.

Substantives and adjectives are each divided into three classes: ‘primitive’, i.e., underived nominal roots, ‘derivative’ i.e., mostly nouns derived from verbs, and ‘compound forms’. Each is illustrated with a dozen or so examples showing a range of derivational and inflectional morphology, some of which is not overtly presented elsewhere in the grammar. Derivational application of the privative suffix –tina, for example, is shown under the heading ‘derivative adjectives’: “yangarutanna, unmarried, from yangarra wife” (ibid.,6):

35. yangarutanna
    yangarra-tina
    wife-PRIV

Under the heading ‘derivative nouns’ the process through which words for items of European clothing were formed from existing lexicon is illustrated. Newly formed words for European items of clothing were commonly included by early grammarians in discussions of derivational morphemes (e.g., Meyer 1843:19). Teichelmann & Schürmann (p.4) gave: Mukartiana ‘hat’ formed from mukarta ‘head’ suffixed with what may be inflection for allative case –ana (Amery & Simpson 2013:122;175):

36. mukartiana
    mukarti-ana
They also gave (p.4) **turtiana** ‘jacket’ formed through the same process from **turti** ‘upper arm’.

Although the inclusion of distinct categories of ‘substantives’ and ‘adjectives’ provided schemata in which the missionaries could illustrate a wealth of morphological processes, it is not clear that the processes shown as occurring on nouns and on adjectives are distinct or that the missionaries perceived a syntactic motivation for maintaining a distinction between the two classes of word. The ‘derivative adjective’ **yangarutanna**, for instance, is most probably a noun referring to a man who is not married.

In the year of the publication of the Kaurna grammar, Schürmann commenced work with Barngarla people on the Eyre Peninsula, and two additional DMI graduates arrived in South Australia. S. G. Klose assumed responsibility for teaching the Kaurna school children at Pirltawardli, although Teichelmann continued to teach religious education in Kaurna. H.A.E. Meyer was sent to establish a new mission at Encounter Bay on the southeastern tip of the Fleurieu Peninsula.

In 1844 a government school in which English was the sole language of instruction was opened in Adelaide to cater for the increasing populations of Aboriginal people from the Riverland. In 1845, Pirltawardli was amalgamated with the government school and in 1846 Klose’s contract was terminated from Adelaide and from Dresden.

### 5.2.1 Teichelmann’s later linguistic work

While Schürmann may have been the more affable of the two earliest Dresdener missionaries (Kneebone 2005a), Teichelmann was the most linguistically active, if not astute, of the pair. Of the six Kaurna hymns which Klose sent to Dresden in 1843 (reprinted in Graetz 2002:27-30), the two translated by Schürmann are by far the shortest, having two and three verses each. The remaining four hymns translated by Teichelmann are up to seven verses in length.

In the same year in which Teichelmann produced his thirteen-page ethnographic description of ‘The South Australian Aborigines’ (1841) he co-authored a much more substantial “Report on the Aborigines of South Australia” with Moorhouse (1841) (in Foster 1990:38).

During the early 1840s Teichelmann collected specimens for the Nature Research Society of the Osterlande and in 1841 commenced correspondence with H.C.von der Gabelentz to whom he sent a Kaurna vocabulary and grammar. Gabelentz also had a copy of Meyer’s
grammar, from which he quoted (§6.4.3.1). It is not known if this had also been supplied by Teichelmann, or whether Meyer corresponded independently with Gabelentz.

After the closure of the Lutheran missions in South Australia in 1848, Teichelmann continued to refine his analysis of Kaurna. In the face of the demise of the Kaurna, and while ministering to German settlers in the Bremer Valley, Teichelmann continued to revise his Kaurna linguistic data. At the request of Sir George Grey, then Governor of Cape Colony, South Africa, Teichelmann produced MSS analyses of Kaurna, which he sent to Cape Town, where they remain held by The South African Public Library. They were catalogued by Bleek (1858:40). The ‘Dictionary of the Adelaide Dialect’ (1857) was described by Bleek (1858:40) as containing 2400 ‘words’ for which “the meanings are given much fuller and illustrated more copiously than in the [1840] Vocabulary”. More recently the MS has been assessed as “provid[ing] an additional source of grammatical data, entries are given with some comment on morpho-syntactic structure and often with illustrative sentences (Simpson 1992:411-12).”

Teichelmann also sent Bleek a three-page description of the verb, which he completed in 1858(1858b). Bleek (1858:40) observed that the work “treats the formation of seven different kinds of verbs”.

In the same year Teichelmann’s own copy of the 1840 Kaurna grammar was also sent to Cape Town (1858a). Bleek (1858:40) described this copy as having notes that “extend over the whole grammatical part”. The annotations are of exceptional interest to tracing Teichelmann’s developing understanding of Kaurna structure. However, note that since this MS remained completely unknown in Australia, it was Teichelmann’s very early analysis (1840) that came to be most influential on later PN descriptions. Teichelmann’s alterations and additional comments concentrate on some of the analytically challenging morpho-syntactic structures that are examined in detail in this thesis: processes of clause subordination (§10.4), and the naming and presentation of the range of dative and possessive case functions (§5.4).

5.2.2 Threlkeld’s influence

Prior to arriving in Adelaide, Teichelmann and Schürmann were acquainted with PN structure through copying by hand a MS version of Threlkeld’s grammar(s) (presumably 1834), while in London (Rathjen 1998:68), and later by studying a copy of the 1834 publication which they had been lent en route to Australia in 1838 by fellow passenger Governor Gawler (Amery 2016:65). Teichelmann and Schürmann’s work was to some degree influenced by Threlkeld’s grammar. They stated that they followed the system of spelling “adopted by Rev. Mr. Threlkeld … and other missionaries experienced in the Polynesian languages” (1840:v). Their division of the
document into three sections: grammar, vocabulary and phraseology may also follow Threlkeld’s tripartite arrangement.

That the Lutheran missionaries did not, however, simply copy Threlkeld’s format is well recognised (Amery 2016:87). Teichelmann and Schürmann did not provide interlinear-style translation of clauses, nor use hyphens to mark the boundaries of word-internal syllables or sub-word meaningful units as Threlkeld had done. Other than sharing structural similarities that are indicative only of commonly inherited influences, Teichelmann & Schürmann’s grammar (1840) shows a high degree of independent response to PN morphosyntax. In comparison to the way in which some later corpus grammarians borrowed previously developed descriptive templates, Threlkeld’s influence on Teichelmann and Schürmann’s analysis was marginal.

5.3 The beginning of a new descriptive tradition

Teichelmann and Schürmann’s earliest grammar of a South Australian language had a major descriptive impact on later grammars written by Lutherans and other grammarians in South Australia.

Comparison of later grammars of Diyari (Chapter 9) and Arrernte (Chapter 10) with Teichelmann and Schürmann’s presentation of case (§5.3.1), ergativity (§5.5.2), postpositions (§5.3.2), the declension of possessive pronouns (§5.3.3), and the division of verbs into ‘transitive’ and ‘intransitive’ classes (§7.1.6) shows that “the Adelaide School of language researchers” (Simpson 1992:410) generated a larger and more enduring school of descriptive practice than has previously been recognised. The description of the syntax of complex clauses (Chapter 10) consolidates this finding.

5.3.1 Case paradigms

Unlike the paradigms of nominal case given by Threlkeld (1834) and Günther (1838;1840), which extend the classical paradigms so as to embrace the larger systems of morphological case in PN (§3.2.2 & §4.4.2), Teichelmann & Schürmann (1840) presented conservative five-place case Latin paradigms (Figure 83). Only case forms that were translated into SAE languages using a case inflected word, rather than a prepositional phrase, were included in the paradigm, and in the discussion of nominal case. While it is not clear that the case system of Kaurna was as large as that documented by Threlkeld, Teichelmann and Schürmann’s presentation of case marks a radical departure from earlier PN descriptions.
Figure 83: Teichelmann & Schürmann’s case paradigm of a noun, 1840:5

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th><strong>Sing.</strong></th>
<th><strong>Dual.</strong></th>
<th><strong>Plur.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td>Tinyara, <em>a (or the)</em> boy, youth</td>
<td>tinyarurla, <em>two boys</em></td>
<td>tinyaranna, <em>boys</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>tinyarurlakko</td>
<td>tinyarannakko</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
<td>Tinyaranna,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
<td>Tinyaranni,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
<td><em>Tinyarurlo</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*the same as the Nom.*

That Teichelmann & Schürmann presented a paradigm that was so radically different from Threlkeld’s, with which they were well acquainted, shows that they approached the description of Australian languages with confidence in their descriptive ability, and did not feel the need to replicate the descriptions from the Colony of New South Wales.

Similarly small Latinate paradigms were commonly given in PN grammars by subsequent Lutheran grammarians: Koch (1868), Schoknecht (1947[1872]), Flierl (1880), Reuther (1894;1899), Kempe (1891), C.Strehlow (1931[a.c.1907]) and by T.G.H.Strehlow (1944[1938]) (Figure 18). Symmons (1841) (Figure 113) is the only non-Lutheran to produce such a paradigm.

But Teichelmann and Schürmann were the only grammarians of the Adelaide school to present such a conservative paradigm. Meyer (1843) (§6.2.1) Schürmann (1844a) (§7.1.2) and Moorhouse (1846) (§7.2.2) each presented case systems differently. Teichelmann and Schürmann’s inaugural description of case in a South Australian language (1840) was independently influential on later Lutheran works.

Teichelmann and Schürmann’s paradigms of nominal case only include suffixes that they perceived to carry the same or a comparable function to those carried by one of the Latin cases. The notable exception is the inclusion of the ergative case, which attracted a case label despite marking a function that is not carried by SAE case systems. Current analysis of the suffixes described as case inflections are shown in Figure 84:
The form and function of nominal inflections marking cases in Kaurna with functions that are not associated with SAE case systems, but which are instead carried by prepositional phrases, were listed towards the end of the grammar under the heading ‘postpositions’. These include inflections now analysed as marking purposive, ablative, allative, locative, comitative and perlative cases. These case inflections also tend to be illustrated inadvertently in other sections of the grammar where they are not overtly described.

Note here that Threlkeld had not shown inflections for case as separate units unattached to a nominal stem, as did Teichelmann & Schürmann (Figure 16), and Günther in MS grammars of Wiradjuri (1838;1840) (Figure 15). There is no indication that Teichelmann and Schürmann had seen copies of the MS Wiradjuri grammars. Teichelmann & Schürmann may have innovated this type of description in response to the agglutinative structure of the language, without influence from other grammarians. It is also possible, however, that this style of presentation, which is not a feature of the traditional description of classical European languages, was suggested to the Dresdener through reading Rhenius’ grammar of Tamil (1836).

### 5.3.2 Postfixa and postpositions

Teichelmann and Schürmann differentiated two classes of postposition on structural grounds. Their innovation was subsequently employed by later grammarians of Diyari (§8.6.7) and of Arrernte (§9.3.3.1), and in Taplin’s last grammar of Ngarrindjeri (1878:8).

The treatment of the word-class ‘pre/post-positions’ by the corpus grammarians is, like the representation of case-systems broadly, diagnostic of schools of descriptive practice. It is Roth’s
(1897:vi) unconventional division of ‘prepositions’ into the four categories: ‘motion’; ‘rest’; ‘purpose, reason and means’ and ‘time’ (Appendix 1§1.3.1) that, in part, establishes Roth’s previously unrecognised influence on the grammars of Guugu-Yimidhirr written by Neuendettelsau-trained Lutheran missionaries Poland & Schwarz (1900).

Making sense of Teichelmann and Schürmann’s rationale for the division (Figure 85) is difficult, and one gets the impression that this section would have read better in the authors’ first language. Postpositions are listed as being of two types, confusingly termed ‘postfixa’ (pp.21-22) and ‘postpositions’ (pp.22-23). Entries presented under each type were given because they are seen to serve the same grammatical and semantic functions as SAE prepositions. The first class was described as ‘affixes’ and the second class as ‘words’.

Figure 85: Teichelmann and Schürmann’s division of ‘postpositions’ into two classes, 1840:21

Items belonging to the first class of affixes, termed ‘postfixa’ (Figure 86) were described as ‘particles affixed to the words’. The class ‘Postfixa’ included case inflections mostly marking local case functions, which translated into a SAE language using a prepositional phrase.
Figure 86: Analysis of nominal inflections listed by Teichelmann & Schürmann as ‘postfixa’

*The analysis taken in this paper of the suffix –iya differs from Amery & Simpson (2013:122). Rather than analysing the suffix –iya as marking allative function towards an animate being as well as purposive function, the suffix is said here to mark the dative case (§5.4.1).

** Note that the form –ila, described by Teichelmann & Schürmann as a ‘postfixa’ was re-analysed by F. Müller (1882:97) as the localsuffix which was listed among a group of other case suffixes in other Australian languages.

† In reclaimed Kaurna the orthographic representation of the locative suffixes on placenames has been maintained as –ngga and –illa because these representations are fixed in accepted spellings of many placenames. Compare for instance the name of the suburb Noarlunga with Nurlungga and *Nurlungka ‘on the bend’.

Items belonging to the second class were termed ‘postpositions’ (Figure 87) and were described as a class of noun to which postfixa can attach. Here Teichelmann and Schürmann included nouns inflected with their ‘postfixa’. Many are the locational words inflected for locative case common to Australian languages (Dixon 2002:68). Some are nouns derived from body parts in locative case. The reason for the inclusion of other items in this category remains unclear. Some translations remain semantically opaque. Each is translated by the missionaries as having either spatial or causal function.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Original translation</th>
<th>Analysis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wattingga</td>
<td>In the midst of, between, on account of</td>
<td>warti-ngka middle-LOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wattewattingga</td>
<td>On account of</td>
<td>warti-warti-ngka middle-REDUP-LOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wattedrukkungga</td>
<td>In the midst of, the centre, amongst</td>
<td>warti-trruku-ngka (^{32}) middle-centre-LOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wirrawirrangga</td>
<td>On account of</td>
<td>wirra-wirra-ngka forest-LOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>worngangga</td>
<td>Before, in front of</td>
<td>warnka-ngka omentum-LOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tangkangga</td>
<td>In the entrails’ within</td>
<td>tangka-ngka liver-LOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trukkungga</td>
<td>In the centre, amidst</td>
<td>trruku-ngka centre-LOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ngurrungga</td>
<td>In the back, behind</td>
<td>ngurru-ngka back-LOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>marrangga</td>
<td>In or on the hand, alongside, with (accompanying)</td>
<td>mara-ngka hand-LOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>martungga</td>
<td>In the smell or taste, for, instead, in place of</td>
<td>martu-ngka taste-LOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>martuity [sic]</td>
<td>For the smell or taste, in [sic] behalf, on account of</td>
<td>martu-itya taste-PURP*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mikangga</td>
<td>In the eye, before, in the presence of</td>
<td>mika-ngka ?eye-LOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minkaara</td>
<td>Along the eye, before, in the presence of</td>
<td>miina-(k)-arra eye-PERL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 87: Analysis of nominal inflections listed by Teichelmann & Schürmann as ‘postpositions’

An additional list of four ‘postpositions’ was given (Figure 88). These were seen to differ because they “cannot be derived from a noun” (p.22). Two are locational words: ngundarta, “behind” and parnatta “on this side”. Two are probably nominal inflections, possibly marking case, which have been analysed by the authors as words.

\(^{32}\) The form of ‘centre’ shown here and below in Figure 87 follows Amery & Simpson (2013). It is, however, possible that the onset is CVC, rather than CC. In favour of the CC onset analysis is the form of the locative
**Figure 88: Analysis of additional 'postpositions' given by Teichelmann & Schürmann**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>birra</th>
<th>on account of, about, for</th>
<th>case suffix –pira AFTER*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ngundarta</td>
<td>behind</td>
<td>nguntarta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pulyo</td>
<td>without</td>
<td>case suffix – privative**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parnatta</td>
<td>on this side</td>
<td>parnata</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* This form is glossed AFTER, following Wilkins’ (1989:210) analysis of the Arrernte case suffix –iperre, -ipenhe

** Two other suffixes are described with privative function: -tina and -marraka. The difference is unclear.

Teichelmann & Schürmann (1840:21) likened the attachment of their ‘postfixa’ to their ‘postpositions’ to the structure of Hebrew. While the explanation of postpositions and postfixa (Figure 85) remains slightly opaque, it is likely that the perceived similarity between Kaurna and Hebrew relates to placement of the postpositions marked with a postfix after the head noun that they qualify, as, for example in the following NP:

37. **Worli** worngangga
    Before, in front of the house
    (Teichelmann 1857)
    warli warnka-ngka
    house omentum-LOC
    “In front of the house”

In Hebrew and in Kaurna adjectives follow the noun they qualify, differing from SAE languages. The adjective in Hebrew agrees with the noun in gender, number and definiteness, Hebrew having lost grammatical case. Teichelmann and Schürmann may also have intimated the construct-state (Gesenius & Kautzsch 1910:247) in which the possessed noun *nomen rectum* follows the head it qualifies *nomen regens* and the relationship is marked by alteration to stress patterns and vowel quality of the first constituent. In constructions in which there are two dependent nouns, for example, “the sons of David and his daughters” (ibid.,414), or where a second genitive noun qualifies the *nomen regens*, for example “the hill of my holiness” or “my holy hill” (Weingreen 1954:50), the second *nomen rectum* is morphologically marked with a suffix to agree with the head *nomen regens*. Note that Teichelmann and Schürmann (p.21) stated: “as *sometimes* in the Hebrew languages [emphasis added]”, suggesting that it was to this less frequently occurring construction that they referred.

The division of ‘postpositions’ into two structurally distinct classes was adopted by later generations of Lutheran missionaries, but was not employed by other grammarians of the Adelaide school. Teichelmann and Schürmann’s schema was subsequently employed by

allomorph –ngka, which attaches to roots with two syllables (ibid.,117-118). The form may be trisyllabic in structure, but phonetically two syllables.
missionary-grammarians describing Diyari (1868-1899) (§8.6.7), and by Kempe (1891) and T.G.H. Strelohw (1944[1938]) in a description of Arrernte (§9.3.3.1). The schema was also employed by Taplin (1878:8), but only in his final analysis of Ngarrindjeri (Appendix 2§1.1.3)

5.3.3 Declension of ‘possessive or adjective pronouns’

In some PN languages the marking of ‘phrasal’ or ‘adnominal’ case, e.g., possessive or proprietive functions (Dixon 1976:9;2002:141), occurs directly before clausal case marking resulting in double case marking on a single word (see Austin 1995). Examine the following Awabakal clause (38) from Romans 8:14, in which both constituents of the possessive NP standing in the ergative case — ‘God’s spirit’ — are marked with different ergative allomorphs.33 The phrase-final noun in possessive case Eloi-kupa ‘God’s’ receives ergative marking:

38. Yantin barun yemmam-an Marai-to Eloi-kupa-ku
“God’s spirit leads them all”

Yantin paraN ?-N Maraye -tju Eloi-kupa-ku
All 3plACC lead-pres spirit-ERG God-poss-ERG

(Threlkeld 1834)

Nouns marked as possessive receive double case marking in languages in which clausal case is either marked on each constituent of the NP, or is marked on the last constituent where the possessive noun follows the head its qualifies. In Kaurna, case can be marked on each constituent of a discontinuous NP (Amery & Simpson 2013:115;132), and possessive pronouns can be marked for the clausal case.

Teichelmann & Schürmann accounted for this phenomenon by presenting a paradigm of ‘possessive or adjective pronouns’ (1840:11-12) (Figure 89). Their innovation was to have an enduring influence on some later grammars of PN languages. The paradigm declines possessive pronouns for two cases termed ‘genitive’ and ‘dative. There are no example clauses given in the corpus of possessive pronouns marked for these cases, but the form labelled ‘2sgGEN’ ninkuitya (39) might translate as ‘for/to/towards your X”, since the suffix -itya marked both dative and allative function (§5.4.2).

39. ninkuitya ninku-itya
[2sgPOSS]-DAT/ALL

It is odd that the missionaries did not present an ergative case form of the possessive pronouns, labelled ‘active’ in the paradigm, since such ergative forms are exemplified in the corpus. For

33 See Lissarrague (2006:26).
example, in answer to the question “Whose child gave it to you?” (44), is the 1sgPOSS pronouns marked for ergative case:

40. Ngaityurlo

\( \text{ngaityu-rlu} \)
\( \text{1sgPOSS-ERG} \)

(Teichelmann & Schürmann 1840:12)

As Moorhouse (1846:14) later explained about his declension of Ngayawang ‘pronominal adjectives’, i.e. possessive pronouns, they “are formed from the genitive of the personal pronouns”. The pronoun termed ‘genitive’ in the table of personal pronouns, i.e., a pronoun in possessive case, is the zero-marked form which is termed ‘nominative’ in paradigms of ‘possessive or adjective pronouns’. See that in Teichelmann & Schürmann’s presentation of Kaurna the 1sgGEN form in the declension of personal pronouns Ngaityo (Figure 90) is the 1sgNOM form in the declension of ‘possessive or adjective pronouns’ (Figure 89).

Dual and plural forms of ‘nominative possessive pronouns’ in each number and person are shown as regularly formed from the singular with the suffixes –rla and –rna, which mark the dual and plural respectively on other nominals in Kaurna (Amery & Simpson 2013:123). The function of these forms is not clear. It is probable that they resulted from the filling in of the paradigm. No later works that presented paradigms of possessive pronouns in each person and number show an additional axis marking number. Some later grammarians, for example, Koch and Reuther in Diyari, and Taplin in Ngarrindjeri (§8.2), did, however, confuse the number reference of the possessive pronoun, and incorrectly translated the forms with the number reference referring to the head noun. Reuther, for example (Figure 151), translated the nominative form of 1dlPOSS as “my two” instead of “belonging to us two”. It is possible that Teichelmann & Schürmann were also somewhat confused.

This declension of possessive pronouns marked for clausal case reflects the importance of the word as the unit of analysis in the traditional descriptive framework. A modern representation would discuss the case marking of the noun-phrase.
POSSESSIVE OR ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

First person singular, Ngāl—I:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Dual.</th>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. Ngālī,</td>
<td>ngālīrī,</td>
<td>ngālīrūna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. Ngālīrūna,</td>
<td>ngālīrūlako,</td>
<td>ngālīrūliya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. Ngālīrīmi,</td>
<td>ngālīrīlanni</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Second person singular, Niña—thou:

| Nom. Nina, | ninkuru,    | ninkurna    |
| Gen. Nina, rūna, | ninkurīrī, | ninkurīn    |
| Dat. Nina, | ninkurna,   |

Third person singular, Pa—he, she, it:

| Nom. Pām, or pāmuko, | pānukurna, | pānukurīna |
| Gen. Pānukurūna, | | pānukurīn |
| Dat. Pānukurūni, |

First person dual, Ngādē—we two:

| Nom. Ngādēko, | ngādēkurūla, | ngādēkurna |
| Gen. Ngādēkurūna, | | ngādēkurīn |
| Dat. Ngādēkurūni, |

Second person dual, Niwā—you two:

| Nom. Niwādēko, | niwādēkurūla, | niwādēkurna |
| Gen. Niwādēkurūna, | | niwādēkurīn |
| Dat. Niwādēkurūni, |

Third person dual, Pūm—they two:

| Nom. Pūmako, | pūmako, | pūmako |
| Gen. Pūmako, | pūmako | pūmako |
| Dat. Pūmako, |

First person plural, Ngādē—we:

| Nom. Ngādēko, | ngādēkurūla, | ngādēkurna |
| Gen. Ngādēkurūna, | | ngādēkurīn |
| Dat. Ngādēkurūni, |

Second person plural, Na—you:

| Nom. Naako, | naka, | naka |
| Gen. Naako, | naka, | naka |
| Dat. Naako, |

Third person plural, Parūs—they:

| Nom. Parūsako, | parūsako, | parūsako |
| Gen. Parūsako, | parūsako, | parūsako |
| Dat. Parūsako, |
Personal Pronouns.

First Person:

| Nom. Ngai, 1 | Dual. ngadli, we two, ngadlu, we
| Gen. Ngaityo, of me, ngadliko, of us two, ngadluko, of us
| Dat. Ngaimenti, to me, ngadlimmi, to us two, ngadlunni, to us
| Acc. Ngai, me, ngadli, us two, ngadlu, us

Agent: (I, the)

Second Person:

| Nom. Ninna, thou, niwa, you two, na, you
| Gen. Ninko, of thee, niwadluko, of you two, nasko, of you
| Dat. Ninnanni, to thee, niwanni, to you two, nanni, to you
| Acc. Ninna, thee, niwa, you two, na, you

Agent: (thou, the)

Third Person:

| Nom. Pa, he, she, or it, purla, they two, parna, they
| Gen. Parnu or Parnuku, of him, purlako, of them two, parna, of them
| Dat. Panni or Padu, to him, purlanni, to them two, parnanni, to them
| Acc. Pa, him, purla, them two, parna, them

Agent: (he, she, it)

Figure 90: Teichelmann & Schürmann's pronominal case paradigm, 1840:7-8

Teichelmann & Schürmann’s method of accounting for the additional clausal case marking of a pronoun in possessive case became a feature of early South Australian description, being employed by Meyer (1843:25); Moorhouse (1846:14-18); Taplin (1867:no pag.;1880:12), but not by Schürmann (1844a). The earliest grammars of Diyari (§8.3) state that the declension of possessive pronouns is regular and follows that of the noun (W.Koch 1868:no pag.; Schoknecht 1947:[1872]; Flierl 1880:18-20). Reuther (1894;1899) (Figure 151), however, included full case paradigms of Diyari possessive pronouns, and Homann (in Fraser 1892:44) stated: “The possessive pronouns, which are the personal pronouns of the genitive case, are declined like substantives”, and presented first person singular Diyari forms. Case paradigms of possessive pronouns appear in later South Australian Lutheran descriptions of Arrernte, in Kempe (1891:8) (Figure 91), C Strehlow (1931a [c.1907]:68-71;1910:14-16), and in T.G.H.Strehlow (1944:95-96) (Figure 92), extending Teichelmann & Schürmann’s influence into the twentieth century.
The declensions of possessive pronouns had not been presented by Threlkeld. Paradigms of possessive pronouns are not shown in any grammars of languages spoken in New South Wales.

Other grammarians who described double case marking include Mathews, who liked to point out that he was the first to report this grammatical feature (Koch 2008:181), and Roth (1897:7). Roth’s description of “secondary possessives” formed from “personal pronouns possessive” (Figure 93) was, like other aspects of his description of Pitta-Pitta, innovated independently, and differs from all earlier corpus grammars (Appendix 1§1.3).
The remainder of this chapter investigates Teichelmann & Schürmann’s description of the marking of dative, possessive and allative case functions in Kaurna, and aspects of Schürmann’s description of the same functional range in the related Thura-Yura language Barngarla (1844a). The section highlights that the presentation of material in the source grammars cannot be taken at face value. Reclamation of these case systems requires understanding the descriptive perspective from which early grammarians viewed the languages. By reconstructing the missionaries’ logic in assigning the label ‘dative’ to suffixes marking certain functions, this section shows how the case system has been misconstrued due to the Eurocentric perspective of the authors, and offers an analysis that differs from that currently reclaimed (Amery & Simpson 2013:121; Clendon 2014:44).

Understanding how the Dresdener missionaries’ analysis was confused by the mapping of SAE case systems on PN case systems is relevant to this historiographical study, because the early descriptions of dative function in Arrernte (Kempe 1891; Mathews 1907) (§9.3.6.2) were misconstrued for the same reasons.

Given the nature of the data, reclamation of the original situation is necessarily speculative, especially since it is impossible to know whether anomalies result simply from dialect diversity, which Teichelmann and Schürmann themselves perceived as an obstacle to definitive analysis of the language (1840:vi-vii).

5.4.1 The function of the forms labelled ‘dative’

The reclamation of Kaurna (Amery & Simpson 2013:121) and of Barngarla (Clendon 2014:44) follows Teichelmann & Schürmann (1840:6) and Schürmann (1844a:7) in assigning the term ‘dative’ to the suffix –nni, -ni.
Teichelmann and Schürmann described –nni as the ‘affix’ marking the ‘dative’ case on nouns (Figure 16, Figure 94). The form of pronouns that they called dative are the nominative forms suffixed with –nni (Figure 90).

Example 1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Dual.</th>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>Tinyara, a (or the)</td>
<td>tinyarurla, two boys</td>
<td>tinyaramanna, boys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>Tinyarunna,</td>
<td>tinyarurlakko,</td>
<td>tinyaramnakko</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>Tinyaranni,</td>
<td>tinyarurlanni,</td>
<td>tinyaramannni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(the same as the Nom.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Act.</td>
<td>Tinayarurlo</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abd.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 94: Teichelmann & Schürmann’s case paradigm of nouns on two different nominal types, 1840:6

Schürmann (1844a:7) similarly assigned the label ‘dative’ to the formally related suffix –Vnni, in Barngarla, although somewhat tentatively: “this suffix may perhaps denote the dative case”. He also describes the suffix as being of “an entreating nature” (Figure 95) and gave the following examples:

41. Ngai inni Ngai inni nungkuka pappi
    “to me, to me give (it) father”
    (Schürmann 1844a:7)
    Ngayi-ni ngayi-ni nhunggu-ga, babi-[NOM]
    1sg.? 1sg.? give-IMP, father!
    “give to me, to me father”

42. Innanni nungkukka, innanni
    “Give it to this person, to this”
    (Schürmann 1844a:7)
    Inha-ni nhunggug-ga inha-ni
    this-? give-IMP this-?
A digital search of the Kaurna corpus (1840;1857) for clauses containing nouns or pronouns that Teichelmann and Schürmann call ‘dative’, show them occurring only as the third recipient argument of the verb yungku- “to give”. There is no evidence of the Kaurna suffix –ni marking any other dative-type functions other than the recipient argument of the verb ‘to give’.

43. Ngaityo wakwakurlo ngalinni yungki
   “My child gave it to me”
   (Teichelmann & Schürmann 1857)

   ngaityu      wakwaku -rlu      ngai-ni     yungk-i
   1sgPOSS   child-ERG            1sg-?     give-PAST

44. Ngangko wakwakurlo niinanni yungki
   “Whose child gave it to you?”
   (Teichelmann & Schürmann 1840:12)

   Ngangku       wakwaku -rlu   ninna-ni     yungk-i
   INTER.POSS   child-ERG      2sg-?     give-PAST

Importantly, the accusative pronouns are also shown as marking the recipient argument of the verb yungku- “to give”.

45. wondakka ngatto ninna paru yungko yungkota
   I shall give you immediately meat
   (Teichelmann 1857)

   Wantaka          ngathu         ninna         pardu             yungkuyungku-tha
   Immediately   1sgERG       2sgACC    meat-[ACC]   give-REDUP-FUT

46. paintya ngaii ngaiyeri lilo yungkungki,
   this my father will give to me
   (Teichelmann 1857)

   paintya     ngayi             ngaiyari-   yungku-ngki
   side       1sgACC       my father-ERG    give-PERM

Similarly in Barngarla, the indirect object of the ditransitive verb “to give” can also be marked as accusative:

47. padlo ngai mai kutta nungkunnarru
   he did not give me food
   (Schürmann 1844a)

   padlu         ngayi         mayi           guda  nhunggu-na-ru
   3sgERG   1sgACC   food-[ACC]   not     give-PAST-3sgERG
The prototypical dative argument, after which the case is named — from Latin dō (‘to give’) + -īvus — is the indirect object of the verb ‘to give’. In some PN languages this function is marked by the accusative suffix (Blake 1977:35-36; Schebeck 1974:2; Wilkins 1989:169; Henderson 2013:294; Hercus 1999:75).

Hercus (1999:73) describes the loss of an original three-way distinction in the marking of syntactic case on 1sg pronouns in Thura-Yura languages. Thura-Yura 1sg pronouns have lost the distinction between S and O forms whereby the old accusative 1sg pronoun nganha has been replaced by the 1sg nominative form ngayi. In Wirangu the S and O distinction has also been neutralised, except that in this language the accusative form has replaced the old nominative form. Hercus describes how the nineteenth century records show the process was incomplete and that the old nominative form was occasionally still heard in the twentieth century.

It is possible that –ni in the Barngarla clauses (41&42) (Figure 95), which Schürmann described as having an emphatic ‘entreating nature’, is an old accusative marker that has been retained on the indirect objects, where it highlights the role of recipient. Overt accusative marking, has disappeared, but has been preserved on the recipient argument of ditransitive verbs. The indirect object of “to give” is marked with a remnant accusative marker.

Note here that T.G.H.Strehlow (1944:85[1938]) described a situation in Western Arrernte in which the recipient argument of the verb nthe- ‘to give’ is more likely to take overt accusative marking than are animate direct object arguments, which are optionally unmarked in accusative case (§9.3.6).

Because the prototypically dative function that attracts the label ‘dative’ is marked like a direct object with an accusative suffix, Teichelmann and Schürmann labelled the forms ‘dative’.

Teichelmann, however, later amended the earlier depiction of the suffix –ni as marking the dative case in Kaurna. In the brief sketch grammar of Kaurna, given in a government report by Teichelmann and Moorhouse (1841:49-53) (Figure 102), the pronouns that had been termed ‘dative’ in 1840 ending in –nni (pp.7-8) (Figure 90) are not included.

Further, the most significant alteration to the analysis of Kaurna that Teichelmann (1858a) sent to Grey is the crossing-out of the dative forms in all paradigms (Figure 96). Teichelmann wrote: “There is no dative case in these languages, because the verbs do not require one” (1858a:5).
5.4.2 The function of the ‘postfixa’ -itya

Teichelmann and Schürmann did not describe -itya as marking nominal case, but rather discussed the form as a ‘postfix’ (1840:22). Here they described and exemplified three functions of -itya: ‘direction to a person’, ‘purpose or intention’, and ‘inclination or longing’ (Figure 97).

The suffix -itya is reclaimed as marking the purposive case and the allative case when motion is towards a person (Amery & Simpson 2013:122). It attaches to the interrogative ngana ‘what?’ to mean ‘what for?’/‘why?’, marking purposive function:

48. Ninna ngannaitya yellarra yakko pepaitya budni
   “why do you not come to school today” (Teichelmann 1857)
   niina ngena-itya yalarra yaku pepa-itya pudni
   2sgNOM INTER-PURP today NOT paper-? come-PAST

It marks allative case (49), when the motion is to a person. The allative inflection on other nouns is -(k)ana (Amery & Simpson 2013:122; Teichelmann & Schürmann 1840:21).
However, note that the suffix appears to mark allative function on ‘pepa’, from the English ‘paper’ in example 48. This may represent an incorrect usage. The question is likely to have been constructed by the missionaries.

The suffix is reclaimed as marking the goal of intransitive verbs, including ‘to hunt’ (Dixon 2002:134) (50):

50. *Parna*  *wartu-itya*  *padni-nthi*
   ‘They are going for wombat.’
   (Amery & Simpson 2013:122)

3plNOM wombat-DAT go-PRES

As Teichelmann and Schürmann pointed out (1840:22), the suffix also marks ‘inclination and longing’, or the focus of mental or physical states, as in the following clause:

51. *barnguttitya*  *ngaii*  *tangkarnendi*
   ‘I have an appetite for potatoes’
   (Teichelmann 1857)

*parnguta-itya*  *ngai*  *tangka-rni-nthi*
potato-DAT 1sgNOM liver-INCH-PRES

The majority of Australian languages have a single suffix that marks this range of dative and purposive functions (Dixon 2002:134). The suffix marking this range is commonly labelled ‘dative’ in descriptions of PN languages (Blake 1977:35-43; Wilkins 1989:179-184; Dixon 2002:134-136), even when the suffix does not mark the third argument of a di-transitive verb ‘to give’.

The suffix -*itya* has not been reclaimed by Amery & Simpson (2013) as marking the dative case on nouns in Kaurna because the term ‘dative’ has been reserved for the suffix –*ni*. Maintaining the traditional application of the term ‘dative’ to Kaurna and Barngarla yields an analysis in which the suffix that is termed ‘dative’ –*ni* only and optionally marks the third argument of the verb ‘to give’. Given that there is an alternative, plausible explanation of the marking of indirect objects with –*ni* and while recognising that functional frame of reference of any case label is always language specific, the case label ‘dative’ is better reserved for the suffix –*itya*. The suffix marks a broad range of functions commonly termed ‘dative’ in PN languages, and which does not include the third argument of the verb ‘to give’.
There is also some evidence that the suffix –itya also marked possession on nouns with plural reference. Note that the ‘genitive’ plural form of ngangg ‘female’ (Figure 94) is shown as marked with either –itya or –ku. See also the following example:

52. Meyuitja alya i’aintya
   “perhaps they are the men’s”
   (Teichelmann 1857)
   mey-itya-alya iya-ntya
   man-POSS-perhaps this –EMPH

5.4.3 Dative and possessive marking on kinship terms

There is evidence that the marking of dative and possessive functions was different on kinship terms and other types of nouns. See that the complement of an intransitive verb of mental state in the following example, which is a kin term, is not marked by –itya, but by –ku.

53. Kundo punggorendaii ngaityo yungakko
   “I am concerned about, or long for my elder brother”
   (Teichelmann 1857)
   Kuntu pungku-rrri-nth-ai ngaityu yunga-ku
   chest hit-REF-PRES-1sgNOM 1sgPOSS older brother-DAT
   I am concerned about my older brother

The missionaries gave case paradigms on two types of nouns (Figure 94). The first illustrated case marking on the common noun tinyara “boy”. The second illustrated case marking on the possessed kinship term ngaityaii ngaityayi “my mother” in the singular, and on the common noun ngangk ngangg “female” in the dual and plural for each case. The singular ‘genitive’ form of ngangg “female” is also shown. All nominals are marked identically for each case except the ‘genitive’. Teichelmann & Schürmann used the term ‘genitive’ to denote both the marking of phrasal possession and a range of clausal case functions. The available data is presented in Figure 98.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Tinyara “boy”</th>
<th>Ngaityaii “my Mother”</th>
<th>Ngangk ‘female’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sg</td>
<td>dl</td>
<td>pl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘genitive’</td>
<td>-rna</td>
<td>–ku</td>
<td>–ku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sg</td>
<td>dl</td>
<td>pl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>–ku</td>
<td>–ku</td>
<td>–ku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>–ku</td>
<td>–ku</td>
<td>–ku –itya</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 98: The marking of the ‘genitive’ case on different nominal types in Kaurna

The common noun tinyara “boy” is marked as ‘genitive’ with –rna in singular number and with –ku in non-singular. The common noun ngangg “female” is similarly marked as genitive, except that either -ku or –itya is shown in the plural (See also example 52). The singular term ngaityayi “my mother” is marked as ‘genitive’ with –ku. Next to this form, by way of
comparison, is placed the singular ‘genitive’ form of ngangg ‘female’, nganngkinna “of the female”.

The complexity of the way in which the suffixes –itya, -rna and -ku marked ‘genitive’ function on different nominal types, and in different number, has not been retrieved (Amery & Simpson 2013:139). There are simply not enough example clauses to formulate hypotheses with certainty. The missionaries themselves stated:

3.—The termination nna of the genitive singular, and itya of the genitive plural, occur together with ko; how, or in what instances which to apply, remains a matter of further inquiry.

Figure 99: Teichelmann & Schürmann’s account of the different marking of the ‘genitive’ case, 1840:6

More can, however, be drawn from the source data than has currently been recovered.

The difference between the following Kaurna pair, which might appear to mark the same function on the same nominal type with an inexplicably different form (see Amery & Simpson 2013:139), is explained by the fact that kinship terms are marked in possessive function differently from common nouns. The second element of the name Kadli-itpi denotes kinship:

Kadlitpi-ko palti ‘Kadlitpinna’s song’

Mullawirraburka-rna palti ‘Mullawirraburka’s song’

‘Kadlitpinna’ is derived from kadli-itpina ‘dingo - father of’, i.e., the name given to someone who is the father of a child named ‘dingo’. The form is marked with –na “which is dropped when a case marker … is added” (Amery & Simpson 2013:18). The suffix –na may be the same as the Diyari suffix –nha, which marks male personal names in nominative and accusative cases (Austin 2013:53[1981a]). In possessive function, Kadli-itpi is marked like ngaityaii “my Mother”, with –ku.

54. kadli-itpi-ku palti
    dingo-father of-POSS song

The name also appears in ergative case:

55. Kadlitpidlo ngurlo
    Kadli-itpi-dlu ngurlo
    dingo-father of-ERG DEM.ERG

The name Murlawirrapurka, a proper noun but not derived from a kinship term is marked for possessive function like tinyara “boy” with –ma.

Teichelmann and Schürmann were unaware that kinship terms and common nouns were likely to mark case differently in Australian languages. Although they presented distinct
paradigms for *tinyara* “boy” and *ngaitaiai* “my Mother” (Figure 94), and contrasted the marking ‘gentive’ marking on the singular nouns *ngaitaiai* “my Mother” and *nganng* “the female”, they do not clearly state that the marking of ‘genitive’ case was sensitive to kinship terms. In 1843 their colleague Meyer (§6.2.3) was able to explicitly describe how kinship possessives marked case differently from other nouns in Ramindjeri.

Threlkeld (Figure 38) had established declension classes showing the different marking of possessive function in Awabakal on common and proper nouns. He is likely to have been alerted to the distinction by the different marking of case on proper nouns and common nouns in Latin.

### 5.4.4 Dative pronouns

Teichelmann and Schürmann gave two sets of pronouns marking the dative, possessive, and allative functional range.

The first, called here ‘Set 1’, was presented in the pronominal case paradigms and termed ‘genitive’ by the missionaries (Figure 90). Teichelmann & Moorhouse (1841:49-53) (Figure 102) called this set both ‘genitive’ and ‘dative’. With exception of the 1sg form, the last phonological segment of Set 1 pronoun is –*ku*, which commonly marks a range of purposive, dative, genitive and allative functions in Australian languages (Dixon 2002:166-167).

These pronouns are exemplified marking possession and the complement of some intransitive verbs of mental state and the beneficiary where this is not the third argument of ‘to give’. They are glossed here as ‘dative’.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>56.</th>
<th>Ninko</th>
<th>ngaii</th>
<th>katpi-katpi-re-ndi</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“I am waiting upon you”</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ninku</td>
<td>ngai</td>
<td>katpi-katpi-rri-nthi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2sgDAT</td>
<td>1sgNOM</td>
<td>wait-REDUP-REC-PRES</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Another set of pronouns, called here ‘Set 2’, was presented in a supplementary paradigm (Figure 100). The last phonological segment of this set is –*itya*. Although the suffix –*itya* was described as a postfix by the missionaries and was not discussed as a case, it appears that the frequency of the occurrence of pronouns marked with –*itya* — -*aitya* in the singular and –*litya* in the non-singular — compelled the missionaries to present the forms in an additional discrete paradigm directly after the Latinate pronominal paradigm (1840:8). This additional paradigm (Figure 100) presents pronouns inflected with the ‘postfixa’ *itya* and *ityangga*. The forms are reclaimed by Amery & Simpson (2013:122) as standing in the dative and comitative cases respectively. Forms from the set ending in –*aitya* (sg) and –*litya* (non-sg) are glossed here ‘purposive’ or ‘allative’.
The set 2 pronouns ending in -itya, marking purposive and allative functions would probably have been included in Teichelmann & Schürmann’s initial paradigm (Figure 90) if they had not ‘used up’ the label ‘dative’ by erroneously assigning the term to forms ending in –ni.

5.4.5 The form of the pronoun to which peripheral case suffixes attach.

The assumption that the recipient argument of a di-transitive verb must necessarily stand in dative case not only resulted in the exclusion from the main Latinate paradigm of the purposive/allative set 2 pronouns ending in –itya, but also in a false analysis of the structure of pronouns in peripheral cases.

Of these two additional paradigms of pronouns marking purposive/allative and comitative cases (Figure 100) Teichelmann and Schürmann (1840:8) stated: “To the active case of each person and number, the terminations itya and ityangga may be added”.

Threlkeld (1834:23) had described how in Awabakal it is the accusative pronoun that forms the stem to which inflections for peripheral cases attach, stating: “It will be perceived that the particles form the accusative into the other cases” (§3.2.2.1). It is possible that, influenced by Threlkeld, Teichelmann and Schürmann looked for evidence of a similar pattern in the Adelaide paradigms. Of the pronominal forms included in their paradigms, it was the ‘active’ ergative form that appeared to be the pronominal base for peripheral case attachment.

The singular forms of the pronouns given in the additional paradigms (Figure 100) show the suffixes -aitya and –aitya-ngka attached to the ergative ‘active’ pronoun (Figure 90) with the loss of the stem-final o. All non-singular forms of pronouns in these additional paradigms, except 2dl, show the suffixes -litya and –litya-ngka attached to the form that is undifferentiated in syntactic case (ASO). The 2dl forms show the stop lateral cluster of the 2dl genitive form.

It is in fact, the set of purposive/allative pronouns ending in –aitya in the singular and – litya in the non-singular (Set 2, Figure 100) that form the stem of pronouns in peripheral cases.
Amery & Simpson (2013:137) present a comitative set of pronouns which show –ngka attached to a dative/allative stem. These were presented by Teichelmann & Schürmann (Figure 90).

Amery & Simpson (ibid.,137) also present an ablative set of pronouns which show -nungku attached to dative/allative stems. For instance, 1sgABL ngathaitya-nungku, and 1dlABL ngadlilitya-nungku. This ablative suffix was presented by Teichelmann & Schürmann as the ‘postfix’ –(u)nungko, (a)nungko (Figure 86).

The formation of peripheral forms of pronouns on a stem that marks a dative range of functions, while not typical (Dixon 2002:317), is not uncommon, occurring, for instance, in Arrernte (Wilkins 1989:124). That Teichelmann and Schürmann did not see this is attributable to the fact that the pronouns ending in –aitya (sg) and –litya (non-sg) had already been deemed to be peripheral to the main set of pronouns (Figure 90) marking cases included in the Latinate paradigms.

5.4.5.1 Concluding comment

With limited data, it is difficult to reclaim the marking of the range of possessive and dative functions on different nominal types in Kaurna, and it is clear that Teichelmann & Schürmann struggled in this area of their analysis. The data suggest the split in the marking of possession and a range of dative and possessive functions was aligned differently on nouns than it was on pronouns and kin terms. The scenario postulated in Figure 101 might approximate the original situation. The marking of a beneficiary remains unclear.
Nouns marked possession with the suffix –rna, although some non-singular nouns with -itya (52).

Nouns marked all ‘dative’ functions and the allative case with the suffix –itya.

Set 2 pronouns (Figure 100), ending in –itya, marked purposive and allative functions.

Set 1 pronouns (Figure 90), all of which end in –ku except 1sg, marked the complement of the type of intransitive verbs that take dative complement and possessive function.

Kinship terms patterned like Set 1 pronouns, marking possession and dative complements with –ku.

Figure 101: Possible different alignment of nouns and pronouns marking dative and possessive functions in Kaurna.

This interpretation of the missionaries’ description of genitive and dative functions in Kaurna and in Barngarla (§5.4) paints a slightly different picture than that currently reclaimed for the languages (Amery & Simpson 2013; Clendon 2014). While it is impossible to know how representative the retrievable data is, or to arrive upon an analysis which captures with certainty a synchronic picture of the marking of oblique case functions, and of possession, in what was probably a rapidly changing system in the decade after colonisation, homing in on aspects of morphosyntax, which led the missionaries’ analysis astray, is nevertheless an instructive exercise in the methodology of retrieving data from pre-modern sources.

5.5 Teichelmann & Schürmann’s description of syntactic cases

5.5.1 Split system of marking syntactic case and recognition of an ‘absolutive’ case

Teichelmann and Schürmann’s description of Kaurna, and Schürmann’s description of Barngarla (Chapter 7) present all singular nominals as showing ergative alignment (A/SO) and all non-singular nominals as undifferentiated for the syntactic cases (ASO). Of ergative nouns, Teichelmann and Schürmann wrote: “for dual and plural of this case no termination is known”
Non-singular nouns are undifferentiated in the syntactic cases (ASO). Accusative forms are identical with the nominative on all nominal-types.

Like other early Australian grammarians, Teichelmann and Schürmann maintained a three case analysis for nominals with an ergative system (A/SO) and included the accusative case in all paradigms. Its inclusion stands in contrast to the frequent omission of the ergative case from paradigms of nominals showing accusative alignment (AS/O) (Figure 73; Figure 139).

In some paradigms, however, rather than filling in the accusative forms, Teichelmann & Schürmann stated ‘same as the nominative’ (Figure 90). Further, when declining ‘possessive or adjective pronouns’ (1840:11-12), they wrote: “the accusative forms have been omitted because they are like the nominative”. In this way Teichelmann and Schürmann’s presentation approaches an analysis of an ‘absolutive’ case.

In an important rearrangement of the pronominal case paradigm in response to the ergatively aligned system, Teichelmann and Moorhouse (1841:49-53) placed nominative and accusative pronouns in a single position at the top of the paradigm (Figure 102). It is presumably this aspect of the grammar that Amery (2016:108) describes as being “set out with greater clarity”.

![Figure 102: Teichelmann and Moorhouse’s later representation of case forms of Kaurna pronouns, 1841](in Foster 1990:49).

Note the typographical error in 1NOM, shown elsewhere as ‘ngaii’

In one sense this paradigm might be seen simply as a rearrangement motivated by a more economical presentation of identically marked forms, in which the two cases remain

---

34 Reclamation of Kaurna (Amery & Simpson 2013:136) has rectified this seemingly unfeasible system by offering distinctly marked ergative forms, marked with –rlu, in all numbers. The situation, which is not supported in the source material, has been proposed in order to overcome potential ambiguities.
theoretically intact. Nevertheless, the presentation realizes a necessary step towards a two case analysis of ergatively aligned languages, which treats the roles of S and O as a single case, in the same way that grammars of accusatively aligned SAE languages treat the roles of A and S as the ‘nominative’.

The absolutive case is otherwise only suggested in early descriptions of PN languages made in Germany. The absolutive case was described and labelled as such in the paradigms presented in Planert’s grammars of Arrernte (1907a) and of Diyari (1908) (§8.6.3.2). An absolutive case was suggested in F.Müller’s re-presentation (1882:19) of Threlkeld’s Awabakal case paradigms (1834:13-16) (Figure 32). F.Müller altered the ordering of cases in the case paradigms of nominals showing ergative alignment. The accusative case is taken out of one of its traditional position in the paradigm and placed at the top of the paradigm, bracketed with the identical nominative form termed ‘nominative subject’. There are two traditional orderings of case. The first being nom > voc > acc > gen > dat (> abl). The second being nom > gen > dat > (abl >) acc > voc.

5.5.2 The ergative case

Teichelmann and Schürmann’s grammar is atypical of the corpus grammars in not describing the function of overtly marked ergative nominals in the body of the text. The only explanation is given as the note stating “the agent” in the pronominal paradigms (Figure 90).

Unlike Threlkeld (1834), Günther (1838;1840), and all later grammarians of languages spoken in New South Wales (Ridley 1866;1875; Livingstone 1892) who placed ergative case forms in second position alongside the nominative case at the top of case paradigms, Teichelmann & Schürmann consistently placed ergative nominals in last position, (Figure 83; Figure 94; Figure 103).

By placing the ergative case in last position, Teichelmann and Schürmann instigated a descriptive practice that was not influenced by Threlkeld, and which was to become subsequently influential.

Teichelmann and Schürmann placed ergative forms in last paradigmatic position, the traditional position of the ablative case in Latinate paradigms, because the ergative inflection usually took the same shape as the inflection marking Kaurna case functions that are marked by the Latin ablative.

While later grammarians placed ergative case forms at the bottom of case paradigms, separated from the nominative case by other cases, all who did were influenced by Teichelmann & Schürmann’s paradigm. The placement of the ergative case in the position of the Latin
ablative appears to have been *innovated* only once in Australia, by these two missionaries, and then was followed by later grammarians. Teichelmann & Schürmann’s placement of ergative case forms in this unusual position had three trajectories of influence.

Symmons’ (1841) grammar of Nyungar (§6.3), spoken on the southwest coast of Western Australia, which was written the following year, placed ergative forms, termed ‘ablative’, at the bottom of Latinate paradigms. Symmons’ work had no further influence. The second was instigated by fellow Dresdener missionary Meyer, whose placement of the ergative case in this position, and *reinterpretation* of the term ‘ablative’ became subsequently influential on later grammarians from the southeast (Appendix 2§1.3). Teichelmann and Schürmann’s placement of the ergative case also influenced the early grammars of Diyari, including Planert’s published Diyari grammar in German (1908) (§8.6.3.1).

In paradigms of nouns, Teichelmann & Schürmann gave the labels ‘active’ *and* ‘ablative’ to the ergative form (Figure 83; Figure 94), while in pronominal paradigms the ergative form is termed simply ‘active’ (Figure 90). It is not known what German term Teichelmann or Schürmann gave to the ergative case.

In Kaurna, ergative and instrumental case functions appear to have been identically marked on all types of nominals except interrogative pronouns. The missionaries’ interrogative paradigm (Figure 103) shows how the missionaries used the terms ‘active’ and ‘ablative’ to refer to distinct functions. The term ‘active’ is used to label the ergative form, and the term ‘ablative’ is used to label the instrumental form. Distinct ‘active’ and ‘ablative’ case forms of the interrogative pronoun are placed side by side at the bottom of the case paradigm (Figure 103).  

---

35 Dixon (2002:328) assesses Kaurna as among a minority of PN languages in having a single form for both ‘who?’ and ‘what?’. Teichelmann & Schürmann, however, provide clauses suggesting that the language had distinct forms for these interrogatives (see Amery & Simpson 2013:141-148).
INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

Nganna—who, or what;

Sing.  
Nom. Nganna,  
Gen. Ngango,  
Dat. Nganna,  
Acc. (the same as the Nom.)

Dual.  
ngandourla,  
ngandoulakko,  
ngandourla,

Pfur.  
ngandoonna  
ngandoannako  
ngandoonna

Abl. Ngango

Figure 103: Teichelmann & Schürmann’s case paradigm of interrogative pronouns, 1840:9

Syncretism between ergative and instrumental cases on some nominal types is widespread in PN languages, as is the marking of this functional range with a single suffix on all nominal types (Dixon 2002:135).

Note here that despite the fact that ergative and instrumental functions are commonly marked with the same form in Australia, the term ‘instrumental’ is not used to label the ergative case in early PN languages written in the country. In these grammars the term is used to refer to peripheral case function, but only rarely (§9.3.4). The term ‘instrumental’ was, however, used to describe the ergative case in grammars written outside Australia. Müller (1882) renamed the ergative case ‘instrumental’ in grammars of South Australian languages. G. von der Gabelentz (1891) used the term ‘Activo-instrumentalis’ to name the ergative case and Ray employed the terms ‘instrumental’ (1897) and ‘active instrumental’ (1907).

The missionaries demonstrated their understanding that interrogatives showed distinct marking for these two case functions when stating: “the active or ablative case has here two forms” (1840:9-10). They juxtaposed the following clauses in order to clarify the different function of the interrogative ngando nganthu labelled ‘active’ and the interrogative ngannarlo ngana-rlu labelled ‘ablative’:

57.  
Ngando aityo  
mudlinna  
metti   
Who has taken away my implements? 

Nganthu-aityu  
mudli-rna  
mitti  
INTER.ERG-1sgDAT  
implement-[ACC]-pl  
steal-[PAST]  

(After Teichelmann & Schürmann 1840:10)

36 A later era of PN description sees the engagement of the term ‘operative’ to name the case marking both ergative and instrumental functions. (Smythe 1949; Hercus 1969; Blake & Breen 1971). In 1956, Arthur Capell wrote (pp.63-64): The term ‘operative’, first suggested to me by Dr.C.M.Churchward some ten years ago, is preferable to the “agentive” because it covers more neatly two different usages of the suffix – the first to express the instrument by which an act is performed and the second the person who performs it. Note that Churchward was a missionary and a linguist, who wrote grammars of Tongan, Fijian and Rotuman. His communication with Smythe marks another Oceanic influence on Australian descriptive practice.

37 The form of ergative interrogative pronoun shown here and in example 57 follows that given by Amery & Simpson (2013:141). The expected form according to reconstruction of Proto-PN (Koch 2014:62) is ngantu.
“who has taken away the implements on me”\textsuperscript{38}

58. Ninna ngannarlo minkarni
By what have you been wounded?  

\textit{(Teichelmann & Schürmann 1840:10)}

Niina ngana-rlu minka-rni
2sgACC INTER-INST wound-INCH-[PAST]

In other paradigms Teichelmann & Schürmann engaged the term ‘active’ in order to capture a form’s ergative function and employed the term ‘ablative’ to capture its instrumental function, recognising that the two functions were marked by the same form on nouns.

That pronouns are labelled only ‘active’ reflects the fact that they are likely to function as agents but unlikely to function as instruments.

Teichelmann & Schürmann’s use of the term ‘active’ to name the ergative case in Australia was new to the description of PN languages, although Threlkeld had used ‘active nominative’ when describing interrogative pronouns, and Günther had labelled all ergative forms ‘active nominative’. The term ‘active’ was later used by H.A.E.Meyer (1843) — but only in discussion of antipassive construction (§6.2.5) —, and in most grammars of Diyari (Koch & Homann 1868; Schoknecht 1947[1872]; Flierl 1880) (§8.6). It is the terms ‘active’ and ‘active nominative’ that have the widest currency in the earliest decades of PN description (Figure 48).

\textbf{5.5.3 The use of the term ‘ablative’}

The case labelled ‘ablative’ in traditional grammars of Latin is a conflation of three historically distinct cases: the ablative, the locative and the instrumental (Blake 1994:7) and assumes a broad range of oblique functions (§3.2.2). The functions that the early grammarians termed ‘ablative’ differ in the corpus grammars.

Teichelmann and Schürmann assigned the term ‘ablative’ to a different range of case functions than did the grammarians who preceded them (Threlkeld 1834; Günther 1838;1840) and many grammarians who came after them (e.g., Kempe 1891). They did not assign the term ‘ablative’ to the suffix marking motion-away, even though this ‘ablative of separation’ function is in traditional practice primarily associated with the case termed ‘ablative’. It is the function for which the case is named — from the Latin ablātīv-us, “to carry away” (OED, 1933 vol. I:22). In Kaurna this function is marked by the suffixes –nangku, and –ityanungku which the missionaries described as ‘postfixa’ (§5.3.2).\textsuperscript{39} Teichelmann and Schürmann were motivated to

\textsuperscript{38} See §7.4.3 for further discussion of this clause.

\textsuperscript{39} The functional difference between the ablatives is reclaimed as depending on whether the marked nominal is a place or a person (Amery & Simpson 2013:122).
assign the case label ‘ablative’ to a different range of functions by the distinctive syncretism in the marking of case functions in Kaurna.

Teichelmann & Schürmann (1840:24) explained the range of functions that they labelled ‘ablative’ stating:

“the ablative case, which has the same termination as the active case, is put not only where the medium of an action is an instrument, but also in cases where merely shall be expressed by what means something is to be performed; as, Parndarlo ngatto wodli taieta – I shall build a house with bricks”

59. Parnda-rlo ngatto wodli taie-ta.
“I will build the house with bricks” (Teichelmann & Schürmann 1840:24)

Parnta-rlu ngathu wardli tayi-tha
limestone-INST 1sgERG house-[ACC] build-FUT

In Kaurna, the instrumental suffix, which was termed ‘ablative’ by the missionaries and which takes the same shape as the ergative suffix on all nominal types except interrogatives, marks two functions of the Latin ablative. It marks the Latin ablative-of-means (Gildersleeve 1895:257-259), or the weapon or instrument used to carry out the verb action, which is the primary function of the instrumental case in PN languages (Dixon 2002:135). The same suffix also marks the Latin ablative-of-material (Gildersleeve 1895:254-255), or the material out of which something is made. This syncretism between Latin ablative-of-means and the Latin ablative-of-material (Figure 104) which occurs in some PN languages, but is not typical (Dixon 2002:136) gave Teichelmann and Schürmann reason to assign the term ‘ablative’ to the suffix that marked a different range of functions from the Latin ablative of origin.

Later grammarians, Symmons (1841), Meyer (1843) and Reuther (1894) employed the term ‘ablative’ to describe the ergative case. It is not always entirely clear whether in doing so they were invoking another function of the Latin ablative: the-ablative-of-personal-agent (Gildersleeve 1895:272), which marks the agent by whom the action of a passive verb is performed, or had simply failed to appreciate that Teichelmann & Schürmann had used the terms ‘ablative’ and ‘active’ with distinct reference.

Because the term ‘ablative’ had been ‘used up’ to describe instrumental function, Teichelmann & Schürmann did not include the suffixes –nangku, and –ityanungku which mark the function of ‘motion away from’ a place and a person in their description of the case system. Nor do later Lutheran grammars of Diyari, which Teichelmann & Schürmann’s grammar influenced. The description of ablative form and function in grammars of these languages occurs only in a discussion of ‘postpositions’ (§8.6.4). In this, these works differ from the other early descriptions of PN languages.
Table showing the mapping of various functions of the Latin ablative case onto PN case functions in some early grammars of Australian languages.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Ablative of personal agent i.e., the agent of a passive construction “by X”</th>
<th>Ablative of means or instrument ‘made with X’</th>
<th>Ablative of material ‘made from X’</th>
<th>Ablative of separation “from X”</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pama-Nyungan</td>
<td>Agent of a transitive verb</td>
<td>Instrument used to carry out verb action</td>
<td>Material out of which something is made</td>
<td>Motion from a place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teichelmann &amp; Schürmann Kaurna (1840)</td>
<td>active</td>
<td>ablative</td>
<td></td>
<td>’postfixa’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meyer (1843)</td>
<td>ablativ</td>
<td>uncertain and variable</td>
<td>See Appendix 2§1.1.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symmons 1841 Nyungar</td>
<td>ablative</td>
<td>uncertain</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Koch Schoknecht, Flierl Diyari (1868-1880)</td>
<td>active</td>
<td>ablative</td>
<td>postposition</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reuther Diyari (1899)</td>
<td>ablative</td>
<td>postposition</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Threlkeld Awabakal (1834)</td>
<td>nominative 2</td>
<td>ablative 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Günther 1838 Wiradjuri</td>
<td>nominative agentive</td>
<td>ablative 4</td>
<td>uncertain</td>
<td>ablative 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Günther 1840 Wiradjuri</td>
<td>nominative agentive</td>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>uncertain</td>
<td>locomotive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kempe Arrernte (1891)</td>
<td>nominative postposition</td>
<td>ablative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Figure 104: The mapping of various functions of the Latin ablative case onto PN case functions in some early grammars of Australian languages*
5.6 Concluding remarks

Teichelmann & Schürmann’s grammar of Kaurna provides a detailed morphosyntactic analysis in comparison with other grammars in the corpus. It is similar in length to Symmons’ grammar of Nyungar, which appeared the following year (1841) (§6.36.4.1), but contains less detail than do the published grammars that immediately preceded it (Threlkeld 1834, Chapter 3) and followed it (Meyer 1843, Chapter 6). The presentation of paradigms of possessive pronouns (§5.3.3) demonstrates that Teichelmann and Schürmann had engaged deeply in the structure of the language in a relatively short space of time, as do the missionaries’ recognition of irregularities in the way that bound pronouns marked imperative verbs (§7.4.3), and their inclusion of processes of marking dependent clauses (Chapter 10).

This earliest South Australian grammar of the language of the Adelaide Plains (1840) had a decisive and extended influence on subsequent grammars of languages spoken in South Australia, and indirectly elsewhere in the country. Teichelmann & Schürmann’s descriptive influence is shown in following chapters to have persisted beyond the previously recognised ‘Adelaide School’ (Simpson 1992:410). Echoes of their descriptive responses to the case system (§5.3.1), the treatment of ‘postpositions’ (§5.3.2), the marking of clausal case on pronouns (§5.3.3), and ergative case (§5.5.2) are found throughout the South Australian Lutheran sub-corpus, as well as in grammars written by Congregationalist missionary G.Taplin (Appendix 2 §1.1). Importantly, Teichelmann & Schürmann’s description of these areas of grammar differs from that given by Threlkeld in 1834, whose influence on Teichelmann & Schürmann’s analysis was minimal.
Chapter 6:

H.A.E.Meyer 1843, and passive interpretations of ergativity

This chapter investigates the long and detailed grammar of Ramindjeri written by Lutheran missionary H.A.E.Meyer. Despite being acquainted with Teichelmann and Schürmann during his training at the Dresden Mission Institute in Germany, and working collaboratively with Schürmann in Australia, Meyer’s description of case (1843), given in this second published grammar of a South Australian language, is very different than that given by his Lutheran colleagues Teichelmann and Schürmann (1840). That said, Meyer’s placement of the ergative case in the case paradigm, which subsequently influenced Taplin’s grammars (Appendix 2§1.1) of the related language Ngarrindjeri, was guided Teichelmann & Schürmann’s innovative design.

Meyer’s presentation of ergative nominals differs from all other early accounts, except C.Symmons’ (1841) description of ergativity in Nyungar spoken in Western Australia (§6.3). Meyer’s account of ergativity, which is atypical of the corpus, was read widely by European philologists, and informed the earliest typological accounts of ergativity in Europe (§6.4.3).

6.1 Historical context

After being trained for three years at the Jänicke Mission Institute (1833-1836), H.A.E.Meyer (1813-1862) commenced training at the DMI in 1837, a year later than Teichelmann & Schürmann. Unlike Teichelmann, Schürmann and Klose, Meyer was partially trained at the University of Erlangen where he learnt Tamil in preparation for missionary work in India. At Erlangen, Meyer was taught by F.Rückert (1788-1866), Professor of Oriental languages and a renowned poet41 (Lockwood 2014:74).

Meyer travelled to Australia, rather than to India, in order to work with Schürmann, with whom he had formed a close friendship. The pair expected to work collaboratively at a new mission station at Encounter Bay. Schürmann was, however, appointed by Governor Gawler as deputy Protector of Aborigines at Port Lincoln, but accompanied Meyer on his first journey to

40 Klose appears to have been less linguistically capable and was presumably trained at the DMI as a missionary school-teacher, rather than as a preacher (see Lockwood 2014:4). Klose taught at the Pirltawardli school from 1840 until its closure in 1845.

41 This is not Pastor Johann Wilhelm Rückert, who had trained the missionaries at the Jänicke Mission Institute.
Encounter Bay south of Adelaide in 1840, and visited Meyer on at least three subsequent occasions (Gale 2011:65). Schürmann had commenced learning the language from that region and compiled a comparative ‘Adelaide/Encounter Bay’ wordlist with the assistance of Tammuruwe Nankanere (‘Encounter Bay Bob’), a Ramindjeri man visiting Adelaide (Amery 2016:68).\textsuperscript{42} Bob later became Meyer’s main informant at Encounter Bay. Grammarians of the Adelaide School may have been the first grammarians in Australia to elicit data about a second Aboriginal language using knowledge and material of a known language from bilingual Aboriginal speakers.

Meyer’s initial introduction to Ramindjeri, a dialect of Ngarrindjeri, sometimes referred to as ‘Yaraldi’ (Dixon 2002; McDonald 2002; Horgen 2004), was thus supplied by Schürmann’s wordlist. Meyer quickly concluded that the languages were structurally dissimilar (Gale, 2011:65-66). Indeed, although geographically proximate the Thura-Yura languages, described by Teichelmann & Schürmann (1840) and Schürmann (1844a), are separated from the Lower Murray language Ngarrindjeri by a major cultural and linguistic divide that runs along the watershed of the Mount Lofty Ranges (Dixon 2002:670).

In 1840 Meyer settled at Encounter Bay and commenced ministering to Aboriginal people in the Lower Murray region. He was an astute linguistic observer. In 1841, he described having communicated with a member of the Milmajerar people, whose territory was to the east of the Murray mouth, and about whom little was known. Governor Gawler was at the time keen to establish peaceful relations with these people after the reprisal hanging of two Aboriginal men in 1840 in retribution for the murder of survivors of the shipwreck Maria. Meyer (10/03/1841, quoted Gale 2011:68) realised that cross-linguistic comprehension did not necessarily indicate linguistic similarity:

\begin{quote}
The most peculiar thing is that I was understood by the Milmajerar man and that he answered me comprehensively. We were not able to discover whether he understands two languages or whether they share the one and the same language.
\end{quote}

By 1841, Meyer reported that he had completed the outlines of a grammar (Gale 2011:68) and had translated the commandments and hymns into Ngarrindjeri. The work was completed and ready for publication early in 1843, only 2 years and 4 months after Meyer first heard the language.

In the year that the grammar was published, Governor Grey withdrew financial support for the mission at Encounter Bay, after which Meyer himself leased government land nearby at the

\textsuperscript{42} It is suggested elsewhere that Schürmann’s Ramindjeri informant went by the name ‘Jannuruwe’, who is described as “a Kaurna man who knew the Encounter Bay language” (Lockwood 2007:14). The names appear to be different transcriptions of the same form from a MS.
mouth of the Inman River and attempted to establish an ultimately unsuccessful agricultural settlement (Lockwood 2007:15). During 1847 Schürmann worked with Meyer at Encounter Bay. In 1848 the mission settlement, school and farm were abandoned, and Meyer left to work as a Pastor at Bethany and Hoffnungsthal in the Barossa Valley.

Unlike Kaurna and Barngarla, described by Meyer’s fellow Dresdener colleagues, a variety of the language described by Meyer continued to be described after the closure of the mission. The ways in which G.Taplin’s analyses of Ngarrindjeri (1867, 1872, 1880) were guided by Meyer’s initial analysis, and by other grammars of the Adelaide School are examined in Appendix 2§1.1.3.

6.2 Meyer’s grammar of Ramindjeri (Ngarrindjeri) (1843)

Meyer’s grammar of Ramindjeri is the longest (42 pages) and most detailed of the works produced by the Adelaide School, and appeared with a vocabulary of some 1750 entries (Gale 2011:64). The work contains rich ethnographic content, including examples such as 60, in which the Aboriginal voice is in first person. Like other works in the corpus, Meyer’s grammar now provides rare insight into Aboriginal experience of early colonial contact.

60. Ngate pant-ir porle, balb-ëmb-itye
   By me (a) bringing forth has been child, white was it
   “I brought forward a child and it was white: or, My child was white when it was born”
   (Meyer 1843:36)

   Ngati pant-ir po:rli palp-emb-itji
   1sgERG bear -PAST child-[ACC] white-RPAST-3sgNOM

Meyer’s analysis was reiterated by Lutheran missionary C.Strehlow (1931a&b[c.1907]) in a comparative grammatical study of three languages. Strehlow referred to the language Meyer described as ‘die Encounter Bay Sprache’ (the Encounter Bay languages). Although Lutheran missionary Kempe (1891) (§9.1.1) did not refer specifically to Meyer, it is clear that he had also read Meyer’s work. Compare the similarity of this comment made, by Meyer (1843:vii) in his introduction to his Ramindjeri grammar,

I submit these sheets …with the hope that … they will be interesting to the philosopher and philologist, as exhibiting the peculiar structure of a language spoken by a people very generally considered the lowest in the scale of civilisation.

with this statement given by Kempe (1891:1) in first grammar of Arrernte:

The pages are submitted in the hope that they will prove interesting to the philologist, as exhibiting the peculiar structure of the language spoken by a people generally considered among the lowest in the scale of mankind, and will contribute a little towards perpetuating the knowledge of a language of one of the Australian tribes of natives before their probable entire extinction at a not very remote period.

224
Meyer’s grammar was also referred to more frequently by nineteenth-century European philologists than were any other corpus grammars (§6.4.3).

6.2.1 Case system

Meyer did not present an initial formal case paradigm for nouns. After the customary introduction to ‘substantives’ [nouns](1843:10-11), which dealt first with gender: “there is no difference of form on account of gender”, and then with number: “the dual is formed by adding the termination “engk” … the plural … by adding “ar” and rejecting the terminating vowel …”, Meyer treated case, the third category prescribed for substantives, under the traditional framework. He wrote: “The relations expressed by the Latin and Greek cases are in this language expressed by particles added to the root in the following manner”. There follows an eight-page listing of thirty-three ‘particles’ (pp.10-17).

Although Meyer did ultimately present an informal nominal paradigm (Figure 106), he pursued a different descriptive tradition that was subsequently used by Schürmann (1844a) (§7.1.1), Livingstone (1892) (Appendix 1§1.2.1), and Roth (1897) ( Appendix 1§1.3). These grammarians broke from the tradition of presenting the morphology of nouns in paradigms. Instead they chose what they presumably perceived was a preferable method of presenting case. Livingstone (Appendix 1§1.2), whose analysis of Minjangbal benefited from the decades of research subsequent to the Adelaide School, justified his abandonment of the traditional descriptive framework in terms of the agglutinative nature of the morphology (p.3):

> It is well known that the Australian dialects are agglutinative, everything in the nature of inflection being obtained by suffixes … so that if I give an account of its suffixes, that is nearly equivalent to giving an exposition of its grammar.

Unlike Teichelmann & Schürmann (1840) and Threlkeld (1834), but like Günther (1838;1840), Meyer did not provide the word-class heading ‘pre/postposition’ towards the end of the grammar. Instead he discussed the full range of nominal inflectional morphology, called ‘particles’, under the heading: “Of substantives and their cases, and of prepositions” (1843:10). This break from the traditional grammatical framework was later employed by Schürmann (1844a) and by Livingstone (1892:9-11). It allowed a grammarian to avoid having to decide whether a nominal suffix should be described as marking case or not. Formal criteria for identifying whether or not a nominal suffix marks case — like the ability for the inflected nominal to relativise (see Wilkins 1989:157-159) — were developed in a descriptive era much later than that considered here.
Meyer listed his ‘particles’ (pp.10-17) first under headings naming the classical European cases, and second as European prepositions. While the division still reflected whether the case form translated into a SAE language as either a case inflected word, or a prepositional phrase, this presentation, which did not divide the description of case into distinct sections of the grammar, better conveyed that these ‘particles’ were part of a single system.

This section of Meyer’s grammar suggests a direct influence from Threlkeld that is not present in Teichelmann & Schürmann (1840). In a preamble to the main section of the grammar headed ‘etymology’, Threlkeld (1834:5-7) had discussed the importance of ‘particles’. While the term had been used by Teichelmann and Schürmann, they predominantly discussed ‘terminations’ or ‘affixes’ (1840:3). The similarity between Meyer’s and Threlkeld’s discussions relates not only to the choice of terminology, but also to the approach to the description of case. The inclusion of this initial section headed ‘etymology’ in Threlkeld’s grammar is curious. He presented material here that is also presented paradigmatically in the main, much longer body of the grammar. It is as if Threlkeld experimented with an alternative, less formal presentation of describing the function of ‘particles’.

Such an arrangement afforded the flexibility of showing that a single function might be differently marked on different types of nominals. An emphasis on the description of function rather than form allowed Threlkeld, for example, to explain that higher-animate nouns in accusative case were overtly marked, while common nouns took the same unmarked form as the nominative, a pattern commonly found in PN languages (Blake 1977:14) and accounted for by Silverstein (1976) in terms of an animacy hierarchy. Threlkeld (p 6-7) stated:

names of persons have the terminating particle –nung … Threkeld-nung … other common substantives … are placed before the active verb without change from the simple nominative, nor can any error arise, because when used as an agent, the sign of that case would be attached.

Later grammarians of Western Arrernte (Kempe 1891; Mathews 1907), which has a similar split in the marking of syntactic case of higher-animate nouns (Figure 218), failed to appreciate this different marking of the same function on different nominal types. They presented an account of the case system only through traditional paradigms.

Meyer listed English prepositions and then discussed how the same function was marked on different nominal types in Ramindjeri. The preposition ‘to’ (p.13), for example, was exemplified with nouns marked for allative case with the forms -ungai and -angk: “I will go to the river”. Meyer explained that the two forms “may not be used for one another, but no rule can at present be given for their correct application, except that –ungai may never be used with
pronomens." The preposition ‘to’ was then listed again in order to exemplify allative marking on place names (Figure 105)

Figure 105: Meyer’s translation into Ramindjeri of the English preposition ‘to’, 1843:13

Meyer clarified the meaning of many ‘particles’ by giving both English and Latin prepositions. The use of both Latin and English reduced the ambiguity of assigning function to nominal inflections with translation of prepositional phrases (§2.3.3). For example, Meyer translated the ‘particles’ -ambe and angk as the preposition “for”: The first is additionally equated to the Latin pro indicating ‘instead of’, the second is described as “indicating the end or motive of an action” (1843:17).

At the conclusion of this long discussion Meyer presented an informal paradigm that captured the detail of the discussion (Figure 106). The absence of case-labels, except ‘nominative’, ‘accusative’ and ‘vocative’, and the inclusion of multiple functions for some suffixes, is very different from earlier grammarians’ presentation of case. Note that although other suffixes are not assigned case labels, their ordering roughly follows the traditional paradigm, genitive > dative > ablative. The ergative suffix –il, translated with the preposition ‘by’, is placed in the position of the Latin ablative.
When a language is reclaimed for revitalisation purposes from limited, or conflicting source data, it is sometimes necessary to make informed but arbitrary decisions in order that the language might again be viable in some capacity. Those decisions are not always well documented. The degree to which authors of reclaimed grammars, or learners’ guides, detail their decision making processes depends in part on the purpose of the publication, and the audience for whom it is written. Clendon’s (2014) reconstructed grammar of Barngarla based on Schürmann (1844a) attends in detail to the processes of inference from the early source and from surrounding languages. Authors of material written primarily for a linguistically uneducated audience — for instance, Gale et al (2010) Ngarrindjeri learners’ guide — tend not to document decisions as transparently.

The certainty with which a case suffix can be said to mark a particular range of case functions in a reclaimed grammar depends not only on the skill of the early grammarian, but also on the level of complexity he encountered. Meyer’s grammar suggests a system of marking
case on different types of nominals that may have been more complicated than that encountered by other corpus grammarians, and which is now not easily reclaimed. The reclamation of the ‘Ngarrindjeri’ case system is further complicated by conflicting data from different varieties, recorded at different intervals after contact (Figure 7). The way in which different nominal types formally delineated the marking of several non-syntactic cases is not clear. One comprehensive attempt (Horgen 2004:95) does not account for the different marking of the dative/allative or the associative/ablative/causal functional continuums on different nominal types. Horgen writes (p.95):

A number of forms are given for the Yaraldi locative, allative and ablative. In Meyer (1843:12-18) and Taplin (1880:8), a number of “prepositions” are given, in addition to case markers. These have not been incorporated.

It is here important to observe that the Diyari case system (§8.6) could not have been retrieved from the record left by nineteenth century missionaries. The isomorphic patternning of case function on different nominal types in Diyari would have been lost if that language had not survived to be recorded in the modern era.

6.2.2 Case paradigms of pronouns

Although Meyer, and his colleague Schürmann, did not present formal case paradigms for nouns, they did so for pronouns.

Meyer initially presented paradigms of the syntactic cases for first, second and third person on three numbers. Ergative case forms were placed in third paradigmatic position after the nominative and accusative cases. Ergative forms were labelled ‘ablative’ (Figure 107).
Meyer’s choice of the term ‘ablative’ as the descriptor of the ergative case was not conventional practice at the time (*contra* Lindner 2014:190). In choosing the label ‘ablative’ to name ergative pronouns Meyer may have intentionally invoked the ‘ablative-of-personal-agent’, rather than the ‘ablative-of-means-of-instrument’ invoked by Teichelmann & Schürmann to name instrumental function (Figure 104). Alternatively, Meyer may have, at least initially, been confused about how the earlier Dresdener missionaries had used the terms ‘active’ to name ergative function and ‘ablative’ to name instrumental function, and the type of nominals in Kaurna and in Ramindjeri that marked this functional range uniformly or distinctly.

Meyer was probably motivated to provide a pronominal paradigm for the syntactic cases because he needed to record the unpredictable marking of pronouns in different numbers in ergative and nominative cases. The traditional Word and Paradigm representation best recorded the sensitivity to number of the marking of syntactic case on pronouns.

The Ngarrindjeri split on nominals (Figure 108) has been reclaimed by Bannister (2004) from Meyer’s record of Ramindjeri (1843), Taplin’s analyses of the language spoken at the mission (1872 and 1880), and from 20th century recordings.
Meyer then presented a full case paradigm for first person pronouns (Figure 109). Unlike Teichelmann & Schürmann (1840) he extended the case paradigm beyond the classical five-case paradigm. Threlkeld (1834) and Günther (1838) had previously presented enlarged paradigms. There is no evidence that Meyer had seen Günther’s MSS. Unlike Threlkeld, Meyer assigned case labels to the additional forms.

The syntactic cases are again placed in the first three positions, labelled ‘nominative’, ‘accusative’ and ‘ablative’. This repositioning of the ‘ablative’ (ergative) and accusative cases out of their traditional fourth and last position in the traditional paradigm (nom>gen>dat>acc>abl), as well as Meyer’s initial presentation of these three cases alone (Figure 107), suggests that Meyer conceived that these cases were functionally distinct from the peripheral cases.

Since the term ‘ablative’ had been ‘used up’ to describe the ergative case, Meyer invented a new label to name the suffix marking the ‘ablative of separation’, which in many other early
grammars is termed ‘ablative’ (Figure 104). Meyer named the pronoun marking this function using the English preposition ‘From’, and translated it as ‘from X’.

He named the pronoun marked with the suffix, –angk, ‘dative’, and translated it as ‘to X’. The suffix is reclaimed as marking the allative and locative cases on pronouns and common nouns (Gale et al 2010:22;53) but dative on kin terms (ibid.,24).

The pronoun marked with the suffix, –ambe, was named ‘For’, and translated as ‘for X’. The range of dative functions that this suffix marked on different nominal types is uncertain.

6.2.3 Kin possession

Meyer (p.34) also provided case paradigms for a nominal subclass, termed ‘pronominal substantives’ (Figure 110), and which he described as:

probably contracted forms of compound words, but for which the etymology cannot, for the most part, be at present traced. They are all, as far as hitherto known, words expressing relationship of consanguinity.

Here he described how possessive marking on kin relationship terms differed from that on other noun types, a phenomenon found in some other Australian languages (Dixon 2002:396).

Importantly Meyer (p.34) recognised that case marking differed on this nominal subclass, stating: “They differ from substantives in the formation of the cases”. He supplied separate declension tables. He also listed additional terms (p.36), which he did not decline: his/her father, my brother, his/her brother, my sister, thy sister, his/her sister.
Note that in these paradigms of ‘pronominal substantives’, the ergative forms termed ‘ablative’ are placed towards the bottom of the paradigm in the traditional position of the Latin ablative. That this occurs here and in the paradigm of substantives (Figure 106), but not in the paradigm of pronouns (Figure 107), may reflect a syncretism of the ergative case with other functions of the Latin ablative, which did not occur on pronouns.

More than half a century later, C. Strehlow (1931a:50-51[c.1907]) (§9.2.2.1), the last early Lutheran missionary-grammarian, recognised that Meyer’s ‘pronominal substantives’ had the same function as a parallel set in Arrernte and in Diyari. He presented the terms meaning ‘my father’ in the three languages and used Meyer’s terminology ‘pronominal-substantive’ to name the nominal subclass (Figure 111).
In the Aranda as well as in the Dieri and Encounter Bay language there is a particular type of noun, which one can define as a pronominal substantive, since they consist of substantives, which are inseparably combined with pronouns, poss[essive] or dem[onstrative], with the latter best being rendered in German as - ‘one’s own’. For example, *katiltja* (my own father). 43

Figure 111: C. Strehlow’s presentation of terms denoting kin possession in three languages, 1931a:50-51[c.1907]

The inseparable possessive pronouns Strehlow described in Arrernte are currently referred to as ‘pronominal kin suffixes’ (Wilkins 1989:133-135; see also Henderson 2013:260). The Diyari forms Strehlow referred to were first tabulated by Reuther (1894:10) but were not recorded by Austin (2013:56[1981a]).

By analogy with circumstances surrounding Reuther’s description of the function of relative pronouns in clause subordination (§10.4.4), Reuther’s record of the distinct case marking on kinship terms (1894:12), which had *not* been recorded by earlier Diyari grammarians, nor reported by Austin (2013:56[1981a]), but *had* been described by Meyer (1843:34) as ‘Pronominal substantives’, and reiterated by C. Strehlow (1931a[c.1907]:50-51) (Figure 111) should perhaps be treated with a degree of circumspection. It is, however, also possible that an awareness of these kinship terms in another language motivated Reuther to elicit the Diyari forms, which may have fallen into disuse by the time of Austin’s recording.

6.2.4 Meyer’s description of ergativity

Meyer’s description of the ergative case differs from that made by all other early grammarians, except Symmons (1841) (§6.4.1). While it is possible that Symmons may have influenced Meyer, there is no other evidence suggesting that Meyer, or any other grammarian, was aware of Symmons’ 1841 description of Nyungar, spoken in southwest Western Australia. It is more likely that Meyer (1843) and Symmons (1841) were independently prompted to make similar

---

analyses, having both been influenced by Teichelmann & Schürmann’s (1840) presentation of case and of ergativity.

Meyer (1843:38) described ergative forms as having “the force of Latin ablatives”, and the ergative suffix (p.61) as “corresponding to the ablative case in Latin, by”. Here Meyer implied the ‘ablative of personal agent’, which in Latin marks the agent by whom the action of a passive verb is performed. Meyer glosses a NP in ergative case with the English preposition ‘by’ in translations of forms supplied in paradigms, as well as consistently in interlinear translation and sometimes in free translation of clauses (4). His use of the preposition ‘by’ to translate the ergative NP in a transitive clause, which is rendered in English passive voice, is atypical of the corpus grammars, being otherwise employed only by Symmons (1841).

61. Ngate nakk-ir korne
   “by me seeing has been a man”
   “I have seen the man”

   ngati nak-ir ko:nri
   1sgERG see-PAST man-[ACC]

(Meyer 1843:33)

62. Ngand-im memp-ing
   “by whom have you been beaten”

   ngand-im memp-ing
   INTER.ERG-2sgACC hit-PAST

(Meyer 1843:33)

6.2.5 The anti-passive

The convoluted syntax of Meyer’s interlinear and free translations of AOV clauses (61, 62) probably arose from the need to account for the existence in Ngarrindjeri of a valency decreasing syntactic process, which occurs in some but not all PN languages (Dixon 2002a:206-207), and which has been termed ‘antipassive’ (Silverstein 1972) by analogy with European passive constructions.

Meyer’s discussion of the “Duplex form of the Verb” (1843:38-42) accounted for the antipassive construction (Terrill 1997; Dixon 2002:206:2004:146-152), which is thought not to have been subsequently described in another Australian language for over a century.

It is likely that this section of Meyer’s grammar was written in collaboration with his friend Schürmann. Schürmann visited Meyer at Encounter Bay on at least four occasions before departing for Port Lincoln (Gale, 2011:65). At least one of these is likely to have been in 1842, before Meyer had completed his grammar, and when Schürmann was in Adelaide working as an interpreter in the court. In this section Meyer used the term ‘active nominative’ to name the ergative case. Elsewhere in the grammar he referred to the ergative case only as the ‘ablative’. 
The term ‘active nominative’ was used to name the ergative case by Schürmann (1844a:4) the following year: “nga forms what has been termed by other writers upon the idiom of Australia, the active nominative case”.

Meyer also presented the material in this section using the first person plural pronoun: “We thus arrive at the conclusion … [emphasis added]” (1843:38); “It is our view … [emphasis added]” (p.40). While this may have been the authorial ‘we’, used by Meyer in 1846[1879:185], this and the terminology used to describe ergativity, nevertheless suggest that Schürmann was somehow involved in the careful discussion of the “Duplex form of the Verb”.
The antipassive process involves alteration to verb transitivity through a detransitivising morpheme, occurring before the tense suffix, which places the agent into the unmarked nominative case and the object into peripheral case function. In Ngarrindjeri the object is demoted to a peripheral case that shows syncretism with the ergative. The antipassive counterpart of:

63. Korn-il lakk-in māme
   Ko:rni lak-un ma:mi
   Man-ERG spear-PRES fish-[ACC]
   “The man spears the fish”.

is

64. Korne laggel-in mām-il
   Ko:rni lak-el-in ma:m-il
   Man-[NOM] spear-ANTIP-PRES fish-INST44
   “The man spears the fish”.

Meyer (p.38) realised that the pair of clauses Error! Reference source not found. & Error! Reference source not found. both meant: “The man spears the fish”. His interpretation of the antipassive construction (Error! Reference source not found.) is good, which he translates with a comitative reading (p.39) as “the man is spearing with or at the fish” (65).

65. Korne lagg-el-in mām-il
   Man spearing fish-with
   “the man is spearing with or at the fish”.

   (Meyer 1843:39)

It is his interpretation (66) of the straightforward AVO construction (Error! Reference source not found.) that upsets the analysis.

66. Korn-il lakk-in māme
   Man by spear fish
   “by the man is spearing the fish” / “there is a spearing the fish by the man”

   (Meyer 1843:39)

Unlike most other corpus grammarians, Meyer presented an overtly marked ergative noun in interlinear English translation as a prepositional phrase: ‘by X’. Most other early grammarians could imagine that an NP with overt ergative case marking, which had no equivalent SAE translation, could be translated using a noun in unmarked nominative case, rather than a

---

44 The function of the suffix –il marking the oblique argument in these anti-passive constructions is not clear. It is glossed here as instrumental, in part by analogy with the neighbouring Lower Murray language Ngayawang in which both instrumental and ergative functions are marked with the seemingly related suffix –al (Horgen 2004:95;209). The marking of instrumental function in Ngarrindjeri is not well understood. Based on Meyer (1843) and Taplin (1880) instrumental function has been reclaimed by Horgen (2004:105-106) as being marked with the forms -angk or -ung(g)-ay on singular nouns, which show syncretism with the allative case, but with the form - ung-engg-ul on dual nouns, which shows syncretism with the locative case. The marking of instrumental function on plural nouns has not been reclaimed.
prepositional phrase. This interlinear translation of the ergative NP as ‘by X’ subsequently forced the interlinear translation of the verb into a participle form, so that in addition to describing the ergative case as the Latin ablative, Meyer supposed that the verb was used as “the name of the action, the gerund, or verbal substantive” (p.39) (see also Simpson et al 2008:102-104).

Symmons (1841) (§6.4.1) is the only other corpus grammarian to have also translated an ergative NP as 'by X’, and to have described the verb used in the same transitive clause as a ‘participle’.

Meyer’s resultant interlinear gloss of the underived AVO structure, “man by spearing fish” was said to be equivalent to the English: “by the man is spearing the fish” and “there is a spearing the fish by the man” (p.39). The convoluted syntax of Meyer’s English translations of this simple transitive clause were later rendered in German in the earliest philological literature theorising about ergativity (§6.4.3).

6.2.5.1 Meyer’s reference to Threlkeld (1834)

Meyer believed that his view of the antipassivisation process in Ramindjeri was supported by Threlkeld’s illustrative Awabakal material. After stating (p.4): “Whether our explanation be, or be not, regarded as theoretically correct, these distinctions will at least serve the useful purpose of showing when it is proper to use the forms ngape and korne, and when ngate and korn-il” … our view of the case is supported by the analogy with the New South Wales dialect [Awabakal], and the opinion of Mr Threlkeld” (Figure 112).
Such presentation of another grammarian’s material in order to substantiate an analysis is atypical of the corpus. The only other grammarians who reproduce material given in another corpus grammar are Ridley (1855b:76), who, struggling to analyse the Gamilaraay verb, presented Threlkeld’s analysis, and C. Strehlow (1931[c.1907]).

Meyer notes that the ‘participle’ of the verb and the alteration to the case of the interrogative, is similar in the following examples given by Threlkeld.

67. **Nganto wiyan?**  
   “Who speaks?” (Threlkeld 1834:127)  
   NgaN-Tu wiya-n  
   INTER-ERG speak-pres

68. **Ngan unnung wiyellin yong**  
   Who there talking out there (Threlkeld 1834:127)  
   NgaN aNang wiya-li-N yung  
   INTER.NOM thatNOM speak-DTR-PRES there

Counter to Meyer’s (1843:41) suggestion that Threlkeld had “not noticed” these features, it is probable that Threlkeld did notice that the first of these interrogative pronouns stood in the ‘active nominative’ (ergative) case and the second in the ‘simple nominative’ (nominative), and that the alteration was associated with the shape of the verb. Threlkeld’s case paradigm of

---

45 The gloss of the morpheme –li as detransitivising differs from the assessment made by Lissarrague (2006:79), who shows the morpheme in the same construction as marking continuous aspect. Oppliger (1984:117) names the morpheme ‘continuative derivational’. It is possible that the language had two formally distinct morphemes; one marking continuative aspect and the other with derivational application, which remain phonemically undifferentiated in the modern interpretation (see for example, Threlkeld 1834:48).
interrogative pronouns (pp.7-8) shows ngan-to as the active nominative and translates ngan as ‘who?’.

Following Meyer, these same Awabakal clauses were again republished by H.C.von der Gabelentz (1861:489) in a discussion of ergative function (§6.4.3.1).

**6.2.6 Concluding remarks**

This second published description of a South Australian language is descriptively innovative. Rather than implementing the traditional paradigmatic presentation used by his fellow Dresden-trained colleagues Teichelmann and Schürmann (1840), Meyer’s presentation of case (§6.2.1), and his conception of the syntactic case frame of transitive verbs (§6.2.4) differs from that of his Lutheran predecessors. While neither of these aspects of Meyer’s grammar were subsequently as influential on the Lutheran sub-corpus as were the schemata employed by Teichelmann & Schürmann, Meyer’s paradigm influenced G.Taplin (Appendix 2§1.1), who commenced description of Ngarrindjeri two decades after the closure of Meyer’s Encounter Bay mission. Meyer’s influence on Taplin’s paradigms resulted in the genesis of the term ‘ergative’, although not referring to the syntactic case (Appendix 2§1.3).

Meyer’s listing of ‘particles’, and his description of their function, may show a direct influence from Threlkeld that is not present in Teichelmann and Schürmann (1840). Other aspects of Meyer’s description that resemble Threlkeld’s work, but which are not shared with Teichelmann & Schürmann, include the use of hyphens to mark the meaningful word-internal units, and the inclusion of interlinear-style translations.

Although the format of Meyer’s grammar differs from Teichelmann & Schürmann’s (1840), there is nevertheless the sense that his analysis of certain PN structures was made with the benefit of an accumulated understanding gained within the Adelaide School. While Meyer’s pronominal case paradigms differed from all preceding PN representations of case, the placement of the ergative case forms towards the bottom of the paradigm shows Teichelmann & Schürmann’s influence. Meyer’s description of kin-possession (§6.2.3) is sophisticated compared with Teichelmann and Schürmann’s description (Figure 94), which only alludes to the distinct marking of possession on kin terms. The clarity of Meyer’s presentation of bound pronouns (§7.4.2) is similarly an improvement on Teichelmann & Schürmann’s burying of the forms in inappropriate traditional schema that were seen to be functionally equivalent. Meyer’s discussion of processes of clause subordination (§10.4.2) was unmistakably guided by his Lutheran predecessors.
6.3 Symmons 1841

The earliest grammar of a language spoken in Western Australia (1841) was written by C.A.J. Symmons (1804–1887), twelve years after the establishment of the Swan River Colony (1829) (Western Australia, capital renamed Perth in 1832). It is the only early grammar of a language spoken in Western Australia, other than R.H. Mathews’ (1910) short publication on the same language, based on Symmons.

Symmons, who came from an interesting family of Welsh clergymen, scientists and politicians,46 arrived in the Western Australian colony in 1839 to take up an appointment as the Protector of Aborigines in 1840. He combined the position with the duties of magistrate until 1873. The grammar of Nyungar was printed in the *Perth Gazette and Western Australian Journal* (1841) and in the *Western Australian Almanac* in 1842. It was later republished by Fraser (1892), who noted (p.48): “This short sketch of the Grammar of the language of Western Australia is the only one that I can find anywhere”.

Symmons (1841:i) acknowledged that the material for his grammar was “furnished by the Native Interpreter”, F.F. Armstrong (c.1813-1897). Armstrong arrived in the colony in 1829 as a teenager and befriended members of the local population and learnt their languages. In a manner similar to Thomas Petrie’s acquisition of Turrubul (Appendix 1 §1.1.2), D. Stewart’s (1833-1913) acquisition of Bunganditj (Smith 1880), and I. Dawson’s (1843-1929) acquisition of Tjapwurrung (Blake, in press), Armstrong learnt Nyungar mixing freely with the Aboriginal children.

Armstrong became superintendent of the Native Institution (1834-1838), and the Wesleyan Native School (1840-1845) was initially established in his home. In addition to informing Symmons’ article (1841), Armstrong wrote a piece describing Aboriginal society in the *Perth Gazette and Western Australian Journal* (1836). A ‘Perth’ wordlist published in Curr (1886 vol.I:334-335) was probably also collected by F.F. Armstrong. That it is attributed to C.F. Armstrong is likely to be a misprint.

There is some evidence that Symmons’ analysis was written in collaboration with the then Governor of Western Australia J. Hutt (1795-1880) (Ferguson 1951:305). It is not known

---

46 C.A.J. Symmons’ uncle, Rev. C. Symmons (1749-1826) was a well known poet and scholar, who obtained a Bachelor of Divinity at Cambridge University (1786). His brother-in-law, Sir Anthony Carlisle (1767-1840) was a fellow of the Royal Society, Surgeon to King George IV, curator of the Hunterian Museum, and the likely author of the gothic novel *The Horrors of Oakendale Abbey* (1797). His father J. Symmons (the third) (1745–1831) was a scientist, barrister and collector of books, art and botanical specimens, and a founding member of the Royal Society (Conole 2013).
whether Symmons or Hutt had access to the two PN grammars existing at the time (Threlkeld 1834; Teichelmann & Schürmann 1840).

Symmons’ grammar evinces a sound understanding of the language, making the earliest description of pronominal sensitivity to kinship (pp.xiv-xv) (§7.1.4) and describing what appears to have been an unusual and complicated pattern of ergative marking (§6.4.1). Symmons’ work has received virtually no attention within the discipline of linguistics, and a biographical sketch of Symmons (Conole, no date) does not provide any appreciation of the significance of his grammatical analysis, describing his grammar as an “aboriginal language dictionary”.

### 6.4 Passive interpretations of ergative constructions

Some corpus grammarians, including R.H.Mathews in some of his earlier grammars, interpreted AOV clauses, with overtly marked agents as passive constructions. Grammarians who did this usually assigned the label ‘ablative’ to the ergative case. Koch (2008:193) reproduces the following sections from two of the scores of Mathews’ grammars. He points out that while Mathews’ logic is topsy-turvy, he used the term ‘ablative’ to name the agent of a transitive clause, because “the Ablative Case in Latin is used to express the agent of a passive clause” (§5.5.3):

“The sense of the ablative is often obtained by means of the accusative case, thus, instead of saying, ‘The man was bitten by a snake,’ a native says, a snake bit the man” (Thurrawal, Mathews 1901b:133)

“The sense of the ablative is often obtained by means of the objective: ‘Wuddungurr-a koongara buddhal—the dog the opossum bit; that is, the opossum was bitten by the dog” (Thoorga, Mathews 1902:53)

Moorhouse (1846:24) (§7.2), however, also argued that an AOV clause was equivalent to the SAE passive construction, although he did not label the ergative case ‘ablative’. He wrote: “The English passive voice is not expressed by the inflection of the verb, but by the application of the active nominative case”, and that “[t]he existence of an active nominative supersedes the necessity of having a form for the passive voice”:

69. Purnangunnanna laplapnanna ngape mukkarna
   ‘Large knife me did wound’ Or its equivalent “With a large knife I was wounded
   (Moorhouse 1841:24)

   Purnangu-nnanna laplap-nanna ngape mukkar-narna
   Large-ERG knife-ERG 1sgACC wound-?
   “The large knife wounded me”
6.4.1 Symmons 1841

Symmons named the ergative case in Nyungar ‘ablative’ and placed forms marked with the ergative suffix –al,\(^{47}\) in the last position of conservative Latinate case paradigms (1841) (Figure 113). It is probable that in doing so, he was influenced by Teichelmann & Schürmann (1840).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. Ya-go, a woman</td>
<td>N. Ya-go-mán, women'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. Ya-go-ák, of a woman</td>
<td>G. Ya-go-mán-ák, of women'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. Ya-gol (or) Ya-go-ål, to a woman</td>
<td>D. Ya-go mán-ål, to women</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. Ya-go-in, a woman</td>
<td>A. Ya-go-thán-in, women</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. Ya-go-ål, with or by means of a woman</td>
<td>A. Ya-go-mán-ål, with or by means of women</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 113: Symmons’ case paradigm of a noun, 1841:ix (Nyungar)

Like Meyer (1843), Symmons (1841) translated ergative NPs as ‘by X’. He consistently translated transitive clauses with an overtly marked agent, an object and a verb, which appears to show no derivational morphology, (70, 71) as English passive constructions (Figure 114). Like Meyer, he also described the transitive verb in a clause with an overtly marked agent as a ‘participle’.

70. **Bud-jor** Ya-go-ål **bi-an-a-ga**
   The ground was dug by the woman

   **Bud-jor** Ya-ggo-ål **biana-ga**
   Ground-[ACC] woman-[ERG] dig-PAST
   “The woman dug the ground”

71. **Ngan-ya** wau-gál-ål **bak-kan-a-ga**
   I was bitten by the snake

   **Nganya** waugál-ål **bakkana-ga**
   1sgACC snake-[ERG] bite-PAST
   The snake bit me

---

\(^{47}\) Douglas (1968:63-64), however, describes the ergative suffix as –il, and describes -al as an alternative to –ak marking instrumental function.
While Meyer (1843) had not interpreted transitive clauses as passive constructions, Symmons did. Example 70 was given twice. First (p.x) in order to demonstrate 'the use of the ablative', i.e., ergative case, marked with -ål on the stem Yag-go 'woman', and second (p.xxii) to illustrate passive constructions.

Symmons’ description of ergativity in Nyungar is the most opaque of the early PN sources. There are different modern accounts of the marking of the ergative case in Nyungar. Thieberger (2004:54-55) describes the language as non-ergative, showing accusative alignment on all nominal types, with agents and subjects both marked with the suffix –il/-al. Blake (1977:65) gives the ergative/locative/instrumental/dative suffix on nouns as –ak. Douglas (1968:64) gives it as –il in Neo-Nyungar, and Dixon (2002:313) states that the ergative suffix on nouns was –al, and shows 1sg and 2nonsg pronouns as tripartite (A/S/O). It is not clear to what extent Symmons’ description has spawned these different interpretations.

The situation Symmons described was clearly complicated and remains to be properly understood. While it is beyond the scope of this study to attempt to reconstruct the system that Symmons described, a couple of points are worth noting. First that Symmons’ discussion probably has more to offer a reconstruction of the system of marking syntactic case in Nyungar than has currently been drawn from his early grammar. The second, related point is that early interpretations of transitive clauses as passive constructions resulted in the burying of the exemplification of ergative constructions in sections of the grammar that conceal them from philologically ill-equipped modern readers.

In a two-page discussion (pp.xix-xxi), Symmons described two methods of forming passive constructions. He first explained (p.xix) that the passive could be conveyed by “an elliptical or defective form of the sentence” (Figure 115). Such transitive constructions with an elided agent were commonly described as passive in early PN grammars (§2.3.1).
secondly, the Passive form of the verb may be indicated by the use of Ngan-ya, Nginn-ni, and other pronouns, or a Substantive in connection with the Past participles and the Ablative case of the instrument of action, or the cause of suffering.

Here Symmons appears to stipulate that the ‘passive form of the verb’ occurs:

1. when the agent argument is in ‘ablative’ (ergative) case (which also marked instrumental function), i.e., “the Ablative case of the instrument of action, or the cause of suffering”. Here he refers to the ablative-of-personal-agent, the same function of the Latin ‘ablative’ that Meyer had perceived as equivalent to the function of the ergative case in PN language (Figure 104). Symmons’ ‘passive form of the verb’ relates to an underived verb in OAV clauses like those given above (70; 71).

2. with a verb in the past tense, i.e., “in connection with the Past participles”.

3. when the object argument is restricted to particular nominals, and here he noted 1sgACC and 2sgACC pronouns (which may have had the same shape as 1sgNOM and 2sgNOM depending on verb tense).

Symmons’ pronominal paradigm (Figure 116) gave one form of ‘nominative’ pronoun for each person and number except 1sg and 2sg, where two alternate forms are shown.

Of the two 1sg ‘nominative’ forms, and the two 2sg ‘nominative’ forms, Symmons (p.xiii) explained that the forms ngad-jo ngatju and n’yun-do nyuntu, 1sgA and 2sgA respectively, were used “to indicate the Active sense of the verb”. Here he implied that they occurred as the agents in transitive clauses. He gave a number of clauses to show how these forms were functionally distinguished from ngan-ya and ngin-ni, 1sgS and 2sgS respectively:
On this evidence Thieberger’s (2004:54-55) claim that the language was accusatively aligned on all nominal types appears to be incorrect. It was perhaps partially in this evidence that Dixon (2002:313) claims that 1sg pronouns were tripartite.

With regard to the marking of ergative case on 1sg and 2sg pronouns, Symmons described sensitivity to the tense of the verb. This aspect of his description has not been reclaimed in any contemporary accounts of the language.

Symmons described (p.xiii) how 1sgACC ngan-ya and 2sgACC ngin-ni were “always used with a present or past participle, or an Adjective; which is never the case with ngad-jo and n’yun-do”.

He (p.xvii) also stated: “The Personal Pronouns ngad-jo and n’yun-do, having their termination changed to ‘ul’ are used as the signs of the first and second person singular of the Future Tense”, i.e., the forms that marked the ergative case in non-future tenses, were additionally marked with the inflection that marks the ergative case on nouns when the tense of the verb was future.

That ergative marking on nouns and pronouns in Nyungar may be sensitive to the marking of tense, or irrealis mood, has not been suggested in contemporary reclamations of Symmons’ material. Symmons had no impetus to record a sensitivity of case marking to verb tense other

---

48 & 49 Symmons (1841:xvii) described –win as marking the ‘present participle’ and described the infinitive form of the verb as unmarked. The situation is unclear.
than accurately attempting to describe the language as he perceived it. The likelihood of such a phenomena would have been unknown to him.

Note that current understanding of a linguistically interesting relationship between tense and syntactic case alignment in Pitta-Pitta (Blake & Breen 1971:84-90; Blake 1979b:193-196) (Appendix 1§1.3.1) is partially dependent on the nineteenth century record left by W.E.Roth (1897) (Breen 2008:135-136). Symmons’ description deserves to be considered seriously if the structure of Nyungar is to be optimally reclaimed.

6.4.2 Taplin (1878)

Yallop (1975:13;51) was of the opinion that G.Taplin (Appendix 2§1.1) believed that a nominal in ergative case used with a transitive verb formed a passive construction. This is certainly not the case in Taplin’s last work (1878), upon which Yallop (p.4) states his analysis is based. In this work Taplin never supplied a passive translation and rarely supplied passive inter-linear glosses for transitive clauses. He did not translate the following example as “his wife was hit by the man” as Yallop states (p.13), but gave:

76. Kornil mempiir inangk nap
“The man struck his wife”

ko:rn-il memp-ur-inangk napi
man-ERG hit-PAST-3sgDAT spouse

Taplin’s earlier grammars did, however, provide some passive translations of transitive clauses. In this regard, Taplin followed Meyer:

77. Kile yan pettir
“by him it was stolen”

Kili-yan peth-ur
3sgERG-3sgACC steal-PAST

But more frequently he gave a passive ‘interlinear-style’ translation and an active free translation:

78. Ngate yan ellani
By me it will be done
“I will do it”

ngati-yan el-ani
1sgERG-3sgACC do-FUT

The practice, which followed Meyer, was abandoned in Taplin’s last analysis. Contrary to Yallop (1975:13), it is unlikely that Taplin ever construed an AOV clause as passive. Fraser’s 1892 re-arrangement of Taplin (1872) did not interpret Taplin’s AVO clauses as passive:
79. **Kornil mempir napaŋk**
   “The man struck his wife”  
   \[ ko:rn-il \quad memp-ur \quad napi-angk \]
   man-ERG hit-PAST wife-3sgDAT

   Like many other early grammarians, Taplin described a transitive clause with an elided agent as passive (Figure 117).

   ![Figure 117: Taplin’s exemplification of ‘passive’ constructions, 1878:17](image)

80. **Ngan lakkir**
   I am speared
   \[ Ngan \quad lak-ur \]
   1sgACC spear-PAST

   “speared me”

6.4.3 Passive readings of Meyer’s description of ergativity

Meyer’s interpretation of ergative structures captured the attention of linguists in Germany. His grammar of Ramindjeri is referred to, and is quoted in the secondary German literature (e.g., H.C. von der Gabelentz 1861; F. Müller 1882) on PN linguistic structures more than other corpus grammars. His analysis was used to make two distinct points. One concerned whether or not ergative structures in PN languages were passive constructions, and the other concerned the relative evolutionary status of Ramindjeri in comparison with other Australian languages.

Although Meyer did not intend to convey that Ngarrindjeri had a passive voice, subsequent interpretations of his depiction of ergativity, which differs from the analysis given in other corpus grammars, resulted in the finding that some Australian languages had a passive voice (H.C.von der Gabelentz 1861:489-490; F. Müller 1882:2).

6.4.3.1 H.C. von der Gabelentz

Seely (1977:197-198) summarises the way in which ergative data from Basque, Greenlandic and American Indian languages were used to substantiate and to discredit hypotheses that transitive clauses in which the agent was marked for ergative were passive. Although Schuchardt (1895;1896) is generally associated with first having proposed that ergative constructions were passive in nature, Seely (p197) points out that the earliest exponent of the
passive theory of ergativity was H.C. von der Gabelentz in a treatise titled *Über das Passivum* (about Passive Voice) (1861).

Having studied finance, law and languages at Leipzig University and at the University of Göttingen, Gabelentz’s early-career specialisations in Manchu, Mongolic and Classical Indo-European languages later developed into investigation of the grammatical structures of languages at the edge of a rapidly expanding linguistic frontier, including American Indian, Melanesian and Uralic. He did this while pursuing a career as a parliamentarian in the Duchy of Saxe-Altenburg, where he became acquainted with Teichelmann and Schürmann at the time of their ordination. He is known to have corresponded with Teichelmann, from whom he probably obtained copies of the three Dresdener grammars.

Gabelentz (1861) drew material from each of the three Dresdener grammars (1840;1843;1844a), and from Threlkeld (1834 in Meyer 1843) to substantiate his 1861 proposition that ergative constructions were passive.

The way in which Gabelentz’s Australian data contributed to “the heated debate concerning whether the ergative construction was active or passive” (Seely 1977:197) has received no historical attention. Nor has the subsequent discussion of Australian material by later European philologists (F. Müller 1882; W. Planert 1908) been noticed within histories of hypotheses about ergativity in the twentieth century.

Gabelentz (1861:489) first reinterpreted and retranslated clauses from Schürmann’s description of Barngarla (1844a). He wrote:

Although Schürmann does not assume a passive in a description of Parnkalla … his so-called active verbs or rather transitives, are clearly nothing other than passives. Pointing to this fact are the different personal pronouns that are used according to whether the verb is neuter or transitive. For example, *ngai ngukata* or *ngukatai* I go, but *ngatto wittiti* or *wittitatto* I throw the spear. Further evidence comes from the supposed nominative ending *nga* which the nouns assume when standing before a transitive verb, but which also expresses the ablative or the cause of an action. Hence when Schürmann translates *Tyilkellinga ngai kündanarru* as ‘Tyilkelli did hit me’, it would certainly be more correct to say: ‘I (*ngai*, Nominative) was hit by Tyilkelli’. And the forms *ngatto, nunno, padlo* as well as the noun ending *nga* (from me, you, him) may all be described as ablatives.50

81. **Tyilkellinga ngai kündanarru**

*Tyilkelli hits me’*

(Schürmann 1844a)

---

50 *Im Parnkalla nimmt Schürmann … zwar kein Passivum an, allein seine sogenannten Activa oder vielmehr Transitiva sind offenbar nichts anderes als Passiva. Darauf deutet der Umstand, dass verschiedene Personalpronomina gebraucht werden, je nachdem ob das Verb ein Neutrum oder Transitiuum ist, z. B. *ngai ngukata* oder *ngukatai* ich gehe, aber *ngatto wittiti* oder *wittitatto* ich werfe mit dem Speer, noch mehr aber die angebliche Nominativendung *nga* welche Substantiva vor Transitiven annehmen, welche aber auch den Ablativ oder die Ursache einer Handlung ausdrückt; wenn daher Schürmann *Tyilkellinga ngai kündanarru* übersetzt: Tyilkelli schlug mich, so wäre jedenfalls richtigter: von Tyilkelli ich (*ngai*, Nominativ) wurde geschlagen, und die Formen *ngatto, nunno, padlo*, sind ebenso wie die Substantivendung *nga* als Ablative (von mir, dir, ihm) zu erklären (Gabelentz 1861:489).*
Gabelentz’s argument in Barngarla was, as he pointed out, supported by the broad range of case functions marked by the suffix –nga, which marks ergative, instrumental, locative and causal functions (Figure 122).

Gabelentz (1861:489-490) then substantiated his claim that Australian transitive clauses with an overtly marked ergative argument were passive constructions by showing that Meyer’s interpretation agreed with his own. He gave the same examples that Meyer had presented in the discussion of the ‘Duplex form of the Verb’ (1843:39) (65, 66, 83, 84), and reiterated Meyer’s interpretation of the constituents of the AVO clause (66), in terms of the agent being in the ablative case and the verb being a gerund. Gabelentz, however, translated the clauses differently.

“On this matter Meyer … agrees when explaining the difference between the phrases ngāte-yan lakkīn or ngāp-il laggelin I throw him with the spear, kornil lakkīn māme or korne laggelin māmil the man throws the fish with the spear, in terms of the facts that ngāte and kornil are in the first sentences to be understood as ablative or instrumental forms, lakkīn as a gerund or a noun of action and māme as standing in the nominative. 51

Gabelentz’s analysis differs from Meyer’s in proposing that the unmarked argument in accusative case, māme māmil, stands in the ‘nominative’ case. Meyer had not suggested this. Gabelentz went on:

While in the second sentences [65, 83] laggelin is to be taken as an (active) participle and korne and ngāp-(ngāpe) as nominatives while the ablative māmil and il (from him) are to be understood to indicate the object of the action. 52


52 während in den zu zweit angegebenen Sätzen laggelin als Participium (Activi) zu nehmen ist, so dass korne und ngāp- (st. ngape) Nominative sind, der Ablativ māmil und il (von ihm) aber durch: mit, in Beziehung auf zu erklären sind und das Object der Handlung andeuten. (H.C.von der Gabelentz 1861:489).
Note that Gabelentz does not attempt to explain the difference in the forms of the second argument in either pair of clauses. His theory does not account for the difference in *maːmi* and *maːm-il* in examples 65 and 66, or the difference between the 3rd person bound pronouns (see §7.4.2) in examples 83 & 84.

83. ngāp-il

\begin{tabular}{ll}
ngap-il & laggelin \\
1sgNOM-3sgINST & spear-ANTIP-PRES
\end{tabular}

84. ngāte-yan

\begin{tabular}{ll}
ngate-yan & lakkin \\
1sgERG-3sgACC & spear-PRES
\end{tabular}

Gabelentz (1861:490) also substantiated his argument using Meyer’s interpretation (1843:40-41) of Threlkeld’s Awabakal clauses (67, 68), first published in 1834 (p.127):

The same can be seen in the difference between *ngánto wiyán*, ‘by whom speaking?’ and *ngán unnung wiyellin yóng*, ‘whosoever speaking there?’ in the dialect of New South Wales (Threlkeld’s grammar p.127), where it should only be noted that, in active speech, the object is not set in the ablative but rather in the accusative, e.g. *wiyellin bón báng* talking him I (i.e., I tell him). 53

Finally Gabelentz reinterpreted Teichelmann & Schürmann’s data, writing:

Quite the same relationship is found in the dialect of Adelaide (Teichelmann & Schürmann Outlines of a grammar p.5) where the active and ablative cases take the same form, as do the nominative and accusative; *ngatto ninna kaitya* ‘I sent you’ [Teichelmann & Schürmann 1840:16] literally means ‘from me you sent (are)’, as *nanturlo ba kattendi* [Teichelmann & Schürmann 1840P:68] ‘by a horse he is carried’. The ending *nanna* forms a verbal passive meaning, for example. *ngatto kundananna yailtya* [Teichelmann & Schürmann 1840:20] ‘by me killed (or is killed) was thought’ i.e., ‘I thought he would be killed’.54

The four Australian grammars to which Gabelentz refers (Threlkeld 1834; Teichelmann & Schürmann 1840; Meyer 1843; Schürmann 1844a) were written reasonably early within European linguistic encounter with the world’s languages exhibiting ergative structures. Given that Gabelentz (1861) was the earliest exponent of the passive theory of ergativity (Seely 1977:197), and that he saw (pp.489-490) Meyer’s analysis, written almost two decades earlier, as ‘agreeing with his own’, Meyer’s description of ergativity in Ngarrindjeri (1843), which is atypical of the corpus in equating the ergative argument with the function of the Latin ablative

---


54 Ganz dasselbe Verhältniss findet in den Dialekt von Adelaide statt (Teichelmann & Schürmann Outlines of a grammar p.5), wo für den aktiven und ablavitiven Casus dieselbe Form angegeben wird, während Nominativ und Accusativ gleich lauten; *ngatto ninna kaitya* ich habe dich geschickt heisst also wörtlich: von mir du geschickt (bist), ebenso *nanturlo ba kattendi* vom Pferde er wird getragen; die Endung nanna bildet ein Verbale mit passiver Bedeutung, z. B. *ngatto kundananna yailtya* von mir getötet (oder Getödet-sein) wurde gedacht, d. h. ich dachte er wäre getötet (H.C.von der Gabelentz 1861:490).
that marks the agent of a passive construction, is unlikely to have been an original catalyst for passive interpretations of ergative structures.

6.4.3.2 F Müller

F. Müller’s (1882:2-3) introduction to the re-publication in German of ten Australian grammars (Figure 118) quotes from Meyer (1843).

![Figure 118: Contents page from F. Müller 1882 (p. ix), in which he translates grammars of Australian languages into German and provides some of his own synchronic interpretation.]

Müller’s German translations of Meyer’s syntactically unwieldy English renditions of the Ramindjeri transitive clause (66) “by the man is spearing the fish” / “there is a spearing the fish by the man” as “durch den Fischer wird gefangen den Fisch” (Müller, 1882:2) roughly back-translates into English as, “by the fisherman is the fish caught”. The sentence was given by Müller in order to show that the accusative “serves as the complement” of the verb in ‘passive’ clauses.55

The record was eventually set straight by later German philologists. Planert (1908:693) made it bluntly clear that Meyer’s often quoted Ramindjeri transitive clauses were not passive constructions:

---

55 “Auch der Accusativ, wenn er sich vom subjectiven Nominativ geschieden findet, dient nicht etwa zur Bezeichnung des Objects in active Sätzen (z.B. ‘der Fischer fängt den Fisch’), sondern also Complement des Verbums in Passivsätzen (daher man sagt: ‘durch den Fischer wird gefangen den Fisch’)” (F. Müller 1882:2).
The ergative construction in the language from Encounter Bay [Ramindjeri] … has given rise to that *psychologically monstrous* translation “by the man will the fish be pierced”; *korn-il lak-in mām* simply means, “the man (actor) pierced the fish [emphasis added]”.56

Schmidt (1919b:43), who reproduced Meyer’s free (Figure 107) and bound (Figure 142) three-case pronominal paradigms (1843-22-23) maintained Meyer’s original case labels. He did, however, note that the term ‘ablative’ referred to the agent of a transitive verb: “The term ablative is identical to the transitive or ergative”.57

Note that Schmidt’s (1919b:43) use of the term ‘ergative’, employed here to name the ergative case in Ngarrindjeri, had previously been used when describing PN languages by Planert (1907a; 1908) in description of Arrernte and Diyari respectively (§8.6.3.2), and earlier by Schmidt (1902:88) ‘*Casus ergativus*’ when describing Western Torres Strait (Appendix 2§1.3). The term ‘ergative’ had, however, been used much earlier in PN case paradigms, although not to refer to the ergative case, by Taplin (1975[1870]:123;1872:85;1879:123), when describing a peripheral case function in Ngarrindjeri (Appendix 2§1.1.5).

The second reason Meyer’s material is referred to in the European sources concerns the perception that his description showed that the language he described had reached a higher evolutionary stage than other Australian languages. The absence of passive voice was seen to be especially indicative of more lowly-ranked languages; H.C.von der Gabelentz, for example, described languages ‘which do not have a passive at all … [as] allocated to the lowest rank of formation (1861:464),58 and T.G.H. Strehlow described this absence as one of the ‘hallmarks of a primitive language’ (1944:112[1938]). When F.Müller (1882:2;93-94) described passive constructions in Ramindjeri, he invokes that the language is of an elevated evolutionary status, in a way that is easily lost to the modern reader.

The earliest classificatory works to treat Australian linguistic structure (F. Müller 1867; 1882; W. Bleek 1872) were spawned within a particularly racial and short-lived trajectory of Humboldtian philology. While nineteenth century classifications generally assigned language types an evaluative ranking according to a range of criteria (Davies 1975:671), this group of Humboldtian linguists took a transformationalist approach believing that some linguistic types were the evolutionary precursors of others. The study of language approached that of physical

---

56 “Die Ergativkonstruktion in der Sprache von Encounter Bay, die zu jener psychologisch ungeheuerlichen Übersetzung “durch den Mann wird durchbohrt den Fisch” Anlass gegeben hat; *korn-il lak-in mām* bedeutet einfach “der Mann (actor) durchbohrt den Fisch” (Planert 1908:693).

57 “Die Bezeichnung, Ablativ ist identisch mit Transitiv oder Ergativ” (W.Schmidt 1919b:43).

anthropology in providing important empirical data on which one could propose a ‘hierarchical arrangement of contemporaneous human groups [which] mapped directly onto a sequential process of evolutionary development’ (Gilmour 2006:175). These philologists subscribed to a dynamic interpretation of Schleicher’s (1859) enduringly influential three-way typological division of languages as isolating, agglutinative or inflectional [read fusional] classes (Davies 1975:655).

These Nineteenth-century German-speaking philologists also made an internal classification of Australian languages, depicting some as more highly evolved than others. A differentiation in grammatical sophistication, from the east of the continent to the west, was first perceived by Moore (1842:x), who in a description Nyungar spoken in Western Australia stated:

> The grammatical construction appears to be inartificial and elementary, as might naturally be expected among so rude a people and wholly free from that startling complexity of form (especially as regards the verbs) which has been attributed to the Sydney languages in THRELKELD’S Grammar.

Moore’s perception, which was soon refuted by Schürmann (1844a:v), resulted only from the higher quality, and greater detail, of Threlkeld’s material (1834) in comparison to what Moore was himself able to discover about Nyungar.

Bleek (1872:95) similarly assigned a higher ranking to ‘Lake Macquarie Language’ described by Threlkeld (1834), but on the grounds that Awabakal gendered third-person pronouns showed that the language is less degenerated than other Australian languages. Müller (1882:2-3) expanded the hypothesis, postulating a three-step ranking of Australian languages that postulated that the languages described by Meyer had reached a higher evolutionary stage that other Australian languages:

> Morphologically, the Australian languages fall into several categories. Some individual languages, for example, the languages from the West are no more advanced than are the languages without form from Indochina (Burmese and Thai). Others — for example, the language from Lake Macquarie — show agglutinative constructions reminiscent of the Ural Altaic languages [], while others — for example, the language of Encounter Bay — in the way they fuse the word-forming elements with the stem, show a tendency to raise themselves up to a higher level.59

That Ramindjeri supposedly had a ‘real’ declension (§2.4.1.1), because the marking for case and number on nouns was presented as irregular (Meyer 1843; Horgen 2004:96;101), allowed Müller to assign it to a higher ranking. The language Meyer described was ranked more highly

59 “Morphologisch fallen die australischen Sprachen in mehrere Kategorien. Einzeln derselben (z. B. die Sprachen des Westens) stehen nicht höher als die formlosen Sprachen Hinterindiens (das Barmanische, das Siamesische), andere (z. B. die Sprache vom Lake Macquarie) zeigen einen agglutinirenden Bau, der an die uralaltaischen Sprachen erinnert und wieder andere (z. B. die Sprache von Encounter Bay) zeigen die Tendenz: sich durch Verschmelzung der wortbildenden Elemente mit dem Stamme zu einer höheren Stufe zu erheben” (F. Müller 1882:2-3)
than Awabakal, which he described as agglutinative. Awabakal was in turn seen as superior to the ‘morphologically formless’ Nyungar.

The false finding that Ngarrindjeri had a passive voice lent weight to F. Müller’s more central argument that Ngarrindjeri had risen towards the higher linguistic rank of fusional typological structure.

**Chapter 7: Later grammars of the Adelaide School**

This chapter investigates the last two grammars that comprise the ‘Adelaide School’: Schürmann’s grammar of Barngarla (1844a) (§7.1), and Moorhouse’s grammar of Ngayawang (1846) (§7.2). Comparison of these works with the earlier grammars of the school: Teichelmann & Schürmann 1840 (Chapter 5), and Meyer 1843 (Chapter 6) shows that while these grammarians learned from one another, these works employ a range of diverse of descriptive practices.

Schürmann’s presentation of case (§7.1.2) is found to have followed Meyer (§6.2.1), although Schürmann is currently credited in the literature for having developed the innovative descriptive practices. Schürmann’s method of explaining ergative function under the heading ‘the verb’ (§7.1.6) had not previously been employed by grammarians of the Adelaide School, and exerted an influence on later PN description (§8.6.3) that was independent of the earlier Dresdeners’ materials.

The chapter concludes (§7.4) with a discussion of the recognition and description of bound pronouns in grammars of the Adelaide school and in the analyses written in New South Wales, by Günther (1838;1840) and by Ridley (1855b, 1856).

**7.1 C. Schürmann**

In 1840 Schürmann was offered the position as Deputy Protector of Aborigines at Port Lincoln, which had been settled the previous year (Lockwood 2014:93;121). Schürmann was reluctant to relocate to such an isolated outpost, as he had anticipated working at Encounter Bay with Meyer. His choice was, however, made for him, as he himself (Schürmann 1840, in Schurmann 1987:109) described: “His Excellency… refuted all my objections, saying that I had been sent to S.A. generally and not to any particular portion of it”.
Thus Schürmann ceased to work in close connection with his Dresdener brothers: Teichelmann and Klose among the Kaurna in Adelaide, and Meyer among the Ramindjeri at Encounter Bay, and commenced working as Protector at the remote settlement of Port Lincoln, an area which at the time covered most of the Eyre Peninsula.

Schürmann was retained in the area in some missionary capacity until early 1846. Struggling to establish sustained contact with Aboriginal populations on the Eyre Peninsula, where racial relations had been mutually violent and distrustful, his linguistic progress was slower than he would have liked (Rathjen 1998:69-77). In reality he had little time for mission work, and was immediately swept into the police investigations of a series of murders of Aboriginal people and Europeans, in which he felt morally compromised. Frontier hostility on the Eyre Peninsula was better recorded than in most areas of Australia thanks to Schürmann’s elicitation from Aboriginal people of their version of events, which he detailed in letters and in his journal (Schurmann 1987:109-199).

Schürmann’s ability to act as a two-way interpreter between Aboriginal people and the European justice system put him in high demand, and in 1842 he was recalled to Adelaide to act as court interpreter. It was on his return to Port Lincoln in 1843 that Schürmann commenced working on a MS dictionary of Barngarla, which was sent to Grey in 1843. Schürmann perceived this work, which contained 2000 entries, as incomplete (Rathjen 1998:77). In 1844 he published *A vocabulary of the Parnkalla, spoken by the natives inhabiting the western shores of Spencers’ Gulf. To which is attached a collection of grammatical rules.* It is not clear whether the attached grammar had also been sent to Grey. In the year that his ethnographic description was published (1846), Schürmann left the Eyre Peninsula to work with Meyer at Encounter Bay.

In 1848, after experiencing the final stage of the Encounter Bay mission, and after the closure of Lutheran mission in South Australia, Schürmann returned to Port Lincoln as court interpreter (1848-1853). At the request of H.Young (1803-1870), Governor of South Australia (1848-1854), he opened a school for Aboriginal children just to the north of Port Lincoln in 1849. The school operated until 1852, when students were moved to the nearby, better-funded Anglican mission school at Poonindie, which had opened in 1850. Aboriginal people with whom the Dresdeners had worked in Adelaide were also relocated to Poonindie near Port Lincoln. Schürmann moved to Western Victoria in 1853, where he worked as a pastor in European Lutheran congregations until his death. No further grammatical analysis of Barngarla or any other Aboriginal language was made by the Anglicans at Poonindie.
Like Kempe (1891), who made an inaugural description of Arrernte close to first contact (§9.1.1), and like missionaries Hey and Ward at the Mapoon mission in far north Queensland (Appendix 1 §1.3.3), Schürmann (1846:249) observed a multitude of regional dialects: “The principal mark of distinction between the tribes is the difference of language or dialect”. He observed that of the several ‘tribes’ inhabiting the Eyre Peninsula, two were in daily contact with Europeans, the Barngarla who inhabited the eastern coast of the peninsula, and the Nauo from ‘the southern and western parts of the district’. Schürmann collected Barngarla data at Port Lincoln from people who had already shifted away from traditional territory towards European settlements and replaced the previous Nauo populations (Hercus & Simpson 2001).

**7.1.1 Schürmann’s grammar of Barngarla (1844a)**

When naming his twenty-two page grammatical analysis (1844a) a ‘collection of grammatical rules … ‘prefixed’ to a vocabulary, Schürmann reveals his own view of the work. While the dictionary contains some 3000 entries (Rathjen 1998:83), approximately the length of the Kaurna vocabulary (1840), the grammar contains far less exemplification than do the earlier Dresdener grammars (Teichelmann & Schürmann 1840; Meyer 1843), and there is no accompanying ‘phraseology’ section.

Schürmann (1844a:iv) noted the lexical similarities between Kaurna and Barngarla, while also observing that “[i]n forming an opinion on the affinity of languages or dialects, one has to look not only to the number of similar words, but still more to the grammatical structure and idiom”. Schürmann’s lexical comparison is sophisticated in comparison with others of the same era (Grey 1839; Moorhouse 1840; 1846). He shows that while some verb stems are similar in ‘Adelaide’ and ‘Parnkalla’ (Figure 119), the final ‘syllable’, i.e., inflection for present tense, differed. He also showed that initial consonants of lexical items in Kaurna were commonly dropped or lenited in Barngarla. Note that there is no evidence that missionaries working at the Hermannsburg mission between 1877 and 1920, who were learning Arrernte and Luritja at the mission, observed initial consonant deletion in Arrernte (see Koch 2004b:135-136) on words that are cognate in these two languages. This observation was first made by W. Schmidt (1919 b:50) (Koch 2004a:24)
Having previously prepared his analysis of Kaurna for publication with Teichelmann (1840), and probably having assisted Meyer, or at least partially overseen Meyer’s analysis of Ramindjeri, Schürmann approached the description of Barngarla with confidence. The work casts aside some of the traditional schemata engaged in the earlier Kaurna grammar and provides instead concise description of structures in their own terms. Of the adjective he (1844a:9) observed: “The adjective differs with regard to form in no wise from the substantive, it being susceptible not only of a dual and plural numbers, but also of all the suffixes”.

Schürmann (pp.9-10) also provided clear description of the marking for case and number on a noun-phrase (Figure 120). Schürmann’s simple statement and demonstration conveys far more efficiently that number (and case) are marked only on the final constituent of the Barngarla NP than did T.G.H.Strehlow’s unnecessarily repetitive table of declension published exactly a century later (§2.4.1.2). Schürmann’s examples do not, however, clarify the relative ordering of inflection for number and case.
In discussing Barngarla structure, Schürmann references an existing body of knowledge about Australian morphology and syntax. He listed (1844a:v) all the previously published Australian material. This placement of the work within a broader body of literature is not characteristic of later Lutheran description in South Australia. When discussing the inflection for ergative case on nouns, for example, he wrote: “nga forms what has been termed by other writers upon the idiom of Australia, the ‘active nominative case’ [emphasis added].”

Concerning gender, Schürmann (p.3) wrote: “In accordance with the other Australian dialects no distinctions on account of gender have been discovered in the Parnkalla language [emphasis added].” Note that, despite this statement, Threlkeld had clearly described the Awabakal gender distinction on 3rd person pronouns (§3.2.1.1). Similarly, Livingstone (1892) (Appendix 1§1.2) did not describe the third person pronominal gender distinction in Minjangbal as ‘gender’. Pronominal distinction in third person pronouns was not seen as constituting the category ‘gender’ by early grammarians.

In Schürmann’s 1846 ethnographic description (pp.29-30), Schürmann summarised the most “striking peculiarities” of the language. The material was also published in the Dresden Missionsblatt (Rathjen 1998). Schürmann listed nine ‘peculiarities’ common to the structure of the languages he knew. His list is similar to that given by Moorhouse (1846) (§ 7.2.1). and to that captured in Taplin’s 1875 circular (Appendix 2§1.1.2). Most of Schürmann’s discussion concerns features that the languages were perceived as lacking: fricatives, articles, grammatical gender, numerals greater than three, reflexive pronouns, passive voice and prepositions. He also observed that the languages shared: morphological marking of dual number, pronominal sensitivity to kinship, suffixation of nouns with case inflection, and complex verb morphology (1846:250-251).

The impression emerging in the 1840s was that Australian languages belonged to a single family (Grey 1845), by nature of their shared grammatical structure, as well as shared lexicon. The idea was supported by empirical grammatical evidence in three publications made in the same year: H.Hale (1846:479), Moorhouse (1846:vi) and Schürmann (1846:29-30).
7.1.2 Case suffixes or prepositions

Like Meyer, Schürmann did not present case paradigms of nouns, but instead listed and described the function of nominal suffixes. Following Meyer’s earlier innovation, he listed twenty-four nominal suffixes (1844a:4-8) in place of a case paradigm. The choice of presentation allowed Schürmann to show that the suffix marked different nominal types with different function. Examine, for instance, Figure 121, in which Schürmann describes the function of suffixes marking locative and allative cases on proper nouns and pronouns.

![Figure 121: Schürmann’s non-paradigmatic representation of locative and allative case on proper nouns, 1844a:6](image)

Schürmann’s grammar of Barngarla (1844a) has previously been assessed by Rathjen (1998:83-88), who focuses on Schürmann’s method of description, concluding that the 1844 grammar (p.88):

> reveals a significant progression in linguistic thought from the conventionally documented Adelaide grammar. Schürmann is attempting to record the language outside of the classical grammatical framework in which he had been trained, a task which required him to develop new linguistic models and ways of thinking.

Rathjen’s assessment of Schürmann (1844a) is made in comparison with Teichelmann & Schürmann (1840) as well as with Schoknecht’s 1872 description of Diyari (1947) (§8.3.3). Rathjen’s finding that Schürmann innovated new descriptive schemata in order to frame Barngarla structure rests largely on his description of case suffixes. She writes (1998:86):

> In the Parnkalla grammar, there is no attempt to provide noun paradigms (declensions) although there is a rudimentary attempt to do this in the Adelaide grammar, Schürmann is now aware of the suffixing nature of the language where a ‘variety of terminations supply the place of cases and prepositions, conjunctions and adverbs’ … Whereas Schoknecht’s Grammar of the Language of the Dieri Aborigines’ some 30 years later provides classical paradigms … Schürmann is already aware of the inappropriateness of reducing the native language to such a structure”

Rathjen’s assessment fails to recognise that Schürmann’s practice followed his Dresdener colleague’s original innovation. Both Meyer’s (1843) and Schürmann’s (1844a) diminished reliance on the traditional paradigm to convey the function of case forms, in comparison with Teichelmann & Schürmann (1840), shows an increasing awareness within the Adelaide School
that the complexity and size of PN case systems could not adequately be conveyed through simply assigning traditional case labels to case forms.

Schürmann put to good use this method of listing and discussing the function of sub-word units in order to demonstrate the multiple functions of a single morpheme. He showed that the ergative ‘active nominative’ suffix –*nga* marked instrumental ‘ablative’ function, the locative case spatially and temporally, and had a causal function (1844a:4-5) (Figure 122).

![Figure 122: Schürmann’s non-paradigmatic presentation of the function of the suffix marking ergative, instrumental, locative and causal case functions, 1844a:4-5](image)

**86.** **Marrályinga** ngai pittanarrū kányanga

“*The boy me did hit with a stone*”

*Marralyi-nga* ngayi *birda-nga -aru* ganya-nga

Boy-ERG 1sgACC hit/pelt-PAST-3sgERG stone-INST

(Schürmann, 1844a:5)

Schürmann’s application of Meyer’s descriptive innovation also drew Elkin’s attention, who in 1937 (p.150) commended Schürmann’s choice of presentation:

In some languages there are suffixes to indicate what seems to be every conceivable condition of the noun. Schuermann gives twenty-four for Parnkalla …Schuermann rightly described these particles by their function and did not try to invent terms to describe them, like Exative (=from), ergative (=with), ablative (=by), which were used by the Rev. J. Bulmer.

The alternative practice, which Elkin judges so unfavourably, was in fact instigated by Taplin in his description of Ngarrindjeri (1872;1878), and was followed by both Hagenauer
(1878) and Bulmer (1878) who replicated Taplin’s paradigm in descriptions of Wergaya and Ganai published in Brough Smyth (Appendix 2 §1.2).

Schürmann’s choice not to provide case paradigms for nouns may additionally have been motivated by his perception that nominal inflection for case in Barngarla did not constitute declension since the marking of case was not fused with the marking of number (§2.4.1.1). He (p.4) wrote: “there is no declension of substantives in the common sense of the word.”

7.1.3 Description of pronouns

Like Meyer (1843), Schürmann did, however, ‘reduce’ Barngarla pronouns to declension (1840:10-14). Unlike Meyer, and the earlier grammar Schürmann co-authored with Teichelmann (1840), the ergative case, here termed ‘active nominative’, is placed in second position next to the nominative form (Figure 123). There is no association of the ergative case with the label ‘ablative’, or with the position of the ablative case in Latin paradigms. Unlike previous presentations of ergativity given in South Australia (Teichelmann & Schürmann 1840; Meyer 1843), Schürmann (1844a) conceived of the ergative case as a second type of nominative.
7.1.4 Pronouns specifying kinship relations

Schürmann’s choice to present paradigms of pronouns may have been motivated by his wish to show in an organised manner his analysis of pronouns specifying kin relationship. The forms Schürmann described were probably part of what was a much larger system of pronouns specifying the kin relationship that may have resembled the complexity recorded by Schebeck (1973) in Adnyamathanha, a northern member of the Thura-Yura family (see also Hercus & White 1973).

Numbers placed inside Schürmann’s dual paradigms (Figure 124) were marked to indicate that the form showed a kinship reference between the pair referred to by the dual pronoun (pp.11-13). These pronouns that refer to dyadic kin relations (Evans 2006) denote kin pairs, and
are thus categorically different from the possessive kinterms Meyer had described in Ngarrindjeri (§6.2.3).

The number ‘3’ placed next to a form in Schürmann’s paradigm (Figure 124) indicated that marked 1dl and 2dl forms specified that the referents were “certain relatives, as a mother and her children, uncle and nephew”. The number ‘4’ next to other forms in the same paradigms marked that the referents were “a father and one of his children only”. The number ‘5’ placed next to the 3dl form indicated the referents were spouses “husband and wife”.

Schürmann placed the number ‘2’ next to an alternative 2sg form nuro, which was declined alongside the unmarked 2sg form ninna. The form nuro was described as being used “by a father and his children addressing each other”.

Schürmann was not, however, the first Australian grammarian to record such forms. Symmons (1841:xiv-xv) had earlier recorded three sets of dual pronouns in each number in Nyungar (Figure 125). The first specifying same generation ‘brother and sisters and friends’, the second different generation ‘uncle and nephew, parent and child’ and the third spousal ‘husband and wife’.
That some Australian languages had sets of pronouns expressing kinship relations was observed as a typological feature by Ray (1925:5), who gave Schürmann’s ‘Parnkalla’ forms as illustration. Ray (p.5) also observed that “[i]n Western Australia similar terms are very numerous”. It is not known whether Symmons (1841) was Ray’s Western Australian source.

7.1.5 The naming of the ergative case

The term Schürmann used to describe the ergative case ‘active nominative’ had, as Schürmann himself observed, been used by previous grammarians in Australia: Threlkeld (1834) and Günther (1838;1840). The term had not, however, been used by Schürmann in the grammar of Kaurna written with Teichelmann (1840), or by Symmons (1841), or by Meyer (1843), except in the section of his grammar describing the ‘duplex form of the verb’ (§6.2.5). Following Schürmann the term ‘active nominative’ was subsequently used only by Moorhouse (1846), W. Bleek (1858), and in Fraser’s republication of Günther (1892) (Figure 48).

7.1.6 Clarification of ergativity under the heading ‘The Verb’

Commencing with Threlkeld (1834), early Australian grammarians classified verbs according to the arguments that they selected. In what is a confusing discussion, Threlkeld sub-classified verbs into two overarching categories, an ‘active’ class (transitive), which attributed ‘an act to an agent’, and a ‘neuter’ (intransitive) class, which attributed ‘a state of being to a subject’. Each of Threlkeld’s two classes was subject to fifteen listed ‘accidents’ (1834:28), which accounted for forms derived through reciprocal, reflexive, and other valency altering processes.
Threlkeld’s terminological opposition, ‘active’ vs ‘neuter’ had been previously used in accounts of Tibetan ergativity from the 1830s (Vollmann 2008:130).

Teichelmann and Schürmann’s grammar (1840:14-15) introduced the terms ‘transitive’ and ‘intransitive’ into the description of the Australian verb. Their source for these terms is not clear. They gave six genera of the verb, the first of which was termed ‘active, or transitive’, and the second ‘neuter or intransitive’. The division of verbs into these two classes was motivated by the rigidity with which Kaurna verbs select either a single S argument or an A and an O argument. The tendency is shared with most Australian languages, in which very few verbs are ambitransitive (Dixon 2002:176-178). The division became a common feature of the Adelaide School grammars (see Simpson et al 2008:123-124) and grammars and of Diyari. It was in a discussion of these subtypes of verb that Schürmann, and the later grammarians who followed him, clarified the different function of nominals in ergative and nominative cases.

Schürmann (1844a:16) showed “the application of the two nominative cases of the Pronouns [by] select[ing] one Neuter and one Active Verb” (1844a:16). Each tense and mood of the verb was exemplified twice, first using the neuter intransitive verb nguka- “to go” (Figure 126) with pronouns in nominative case, and then using the active transitive verb witti- “to spear” (Figure 127) with pronouns in ergative case. Schürmann thus successfully conveyed the role of verb transitivity in argument predication.
Figure 126: Schürmann’s ‘neuter’ verb showing pronouns in one type of ‘nominative’ case, 1844a:17

Figure 127: Schürmann’s ‘active’ verb showing pronouns in another type of ‘nominative’ case, 1844a:20

Following Schürmann, a group of grammarians explained ergative function not in a discussion of nominal morphology, but rather under the word-class heading, ‘the verb’. The grammarians who elucidate the function of an ergatively marked nominal through demonstrating the role of verb transitivity in determining syntactic case frames include Moorhouse (1846:19), Taplin (1880:14[1878]) and grammarians of Diyari (Koch 1868:no pag.; Schokecht 1947:9[1872]; Flierl 1880:32; Reuther 1981:43-449[1899]).

A remark explaining the relationship of verb transitivity to argument predication within a discussion of the verb classes became a feature of the Lutheran descriptive template. As missionaries refined their craft to suit Australian case systems, the description of ergativity under the heading ‘the verb’ became a feature of a developing template of case description. It is in this section that the role of the ergative case is presented.

7.1.7 Concluding remark

Schürmann’s grammar of Barngarla is the shortest of the Dresdener grammars. Yet it gives a succinct and clear analysis of case (§7.1.2), and includes an insightful description of pronouns that refer to dyadic kin relations (§7.1.4). The clarity of the description might explain why Schürmann’s short work is referred to more frequently by Ray (1925) and by Elkin (1937) than are other grammars of the Adelaide School.
7.2 M.Moorhouse

M.Moorhouse (1813-1876), a trained medical practitioner, arrived in South Australia in 1839 to take up a position as the first permanent protector of Aborigines in the Colony. His responsibility for the welfare of Aboriginal people extended to linguistic and ethnographic description, as well as to Christian civilisation. In these capacities he had dealings with the Dresdener missionaries.

Moorhouse assumed appointment as protector amidst some controversy that previous protectors, G.Stevenson (1837), W.Bromley (1837), and W.Wyatt (1837-1840), had not done enough to understand the local Aboriginal populations during their brief appointments. According to Foster (1990:5): “The pressure on Moorhouse, and the missionaries with whom he worked, to produce detailed descriptions of Aboriginal culture was intense.”

Moorhouse gave detailed ethnographic and linguistic descriptions in the official reports required of him as protector. His twenty-six-page report from 1841, which he co-authored with Teichelmann, was included in the catalogue of Sir G.Grey’s library (Bleek 1858:5) (Figure 128). It is at least as informative as the ethnological publications made by the Dresdeners (Teichelmann 1841b; Schürmann 1846; Meyer 1846). The section headed ‘language’ (Moorhouse & Teichelmann, in Foster 1990:49-53[1841]) contains a five-page description of Kaurna, which presents a case paradigm of pronouns (Figure 102), systematic exemplification of the formation of adjectives and inchoative verbs from nouns, a long listing of verbal ‘modifications’, and a short listing of ‘postpositions’ and ‘postfixa’. The work makes use of some of the schemata developed by Teichelmann and Schürmann, but is also descriptively innovative.

![Figure 128: Bleek’s summary (1858:5) of Moorhouse’s report (1842)](image)

In his role as protector, Moorhouse travelled to the edges of the frontier around Adelaide reporting on the Aboriginal people living in different regions. One of the main purposes of his
early journeys, on which he was sometimes accompanied by the Dresdener missionaries, was to establish which languages were spoken in what regions and how similar they were to one another.

In a letter written to Schürmann in 1841, Moorhouse described a journey upstream along the Murray, stating that he had a boy with him from Mt Barker “who sp[oke] the Adelaide and Pitta languages and could communicate with all the Natives we saw along the Murray, Rapid and Rufus rivers. In this respect the journey was an important one”. The term ‘Pitta’ is a Kaurna word meaning ‘native goose’ and referred to people from the Murray River (Teichelmann & Schürmann 1840V:40).

Teichelmann (diary 9/12/1840) described the purpose of a journey he made with Moorhouse in December 1840, via the Adelaide Hills to Lakes Alexandrina and Albert, as being “to research how far to the east our language was understood and spoken … [and] how far Brother Meyer’s sphere of activity could extend”. Describing the linguistic research he and Moorhouse carried out on the journey, Teichelmann stated that they “made as much progress in a few hours in this language as we had previously only been able to make in 6 months among our own natives.”

Moorhouse collated this linguistic material in a letter to the Private Secretary (1840), which included a comparative pronominal paradigm in four languages termed ‘Adelaide, ‘Encounter Bay’, ‘Pomunda’ and ‘west of the lake’ (Figure 129), and a comparative list of numerals and the marking of number on nouns. The forms shown in this paradigm evince the linguistic diversity of the resource-rich region. Each set of pronouns differs from that given in his 1846 grammar of ‘Murray River’ (pp.vi-v;10-12) (Figure 131).

Moorhouse’s investigations into the forms of pronouns in languages converging near the lakes at the Murray estuary (1840;1846:vi [sent to Grey in 1845]) informed Grey’s (1845:365) precise location of the ‘five principal dialects’ on his map (Figure 82).

60 On this trip Moorhouse attempted to make contact with the people from the Adelaide Hills, writing in December 1840: “We left Adelaide on the 4th and reached the Angas River in the evening. We expected to meet 70 Natives located on that river, but they had left a few days before we arrived. On the following day we rode over the two Special Surveys in that district, one taken by J.Morphett & the other by G.H.Davenport Esquires, but could meet with no Natives at their usual place of encampment”. The Davenport survey was located in the upper catchment of the Angas River around Macclesfield. Thus Moorhouse just missed out on recording the language spoken by the people living on the upper reaches of the Angas River before they disappeared. It is now not known whether the territory of the Ngarrindjeri groups extended from the lakes to the top of the catchment. Virtually nothing is known of the ‘Peramangk’, the language from the Adelaide Hills, and it remains unclassified (Simpson 1996:170).
Moorhouse’s “Annual Report of the Aborigines Department” in 1843 provided information that supplemented that given in the 1841 report, and was organised in a similar outline (Figure 128). Under the heading ‘language’, Moorhouse (in Foster 1990:60[1843]) wrote: “This branch has not been neglected in the past year, and a vocabulary of the Murray dialect, accompanied by some sketches of the grammar should now have been forwarded, had not those who are able to instruct in the language been absent in the bush”. The work to which Moorhouse refers presumably became part of his grammar and vocabulary of Ngayawang titled: A Vocabulary and Outline of the Grammatical Structure of the River Murray Language spoken by the natives of South Australia from Wellington on the Murray, as far as the Rufus forwarded to Grey in 1845 (Moorhouse 1846:v) and published in 1846.

Like each of the earlier published grammars of a PN language, except Schürmann (1844a), Moorhouse identified the variety he described in the title of the grammars in terms of the geographical region in which it was spoken: “The Murray River Language spoken by the natives of South Australia from Wellington on the Murray, as far as the Rufus”. The described area is curiously large, or long and narrow along the River, especially considering the linguistic diversity Moorhouse had described to the south (1840). Moorhouse (in Taplin 1879:30) gave the name of the tribe as ‘Meru’, ‘man’. The language was also referred to as ‘Pitta’ in the 1840s. Ewens (in Taplin 1879:30) named the language ‘Niawoo’, and described it as spoken by the ‘Moorundee Tribe’, ‘Moorunde’ being a place name. The earliest record of the term ‘Ngayawang’, however, was given by E.J.Eyre (1845), who gave the name as ‘Aiawong’ (pp.396;399) or ‘Moorunde’ (p.396). Eyre (1845:396, 399) described ‘Aiawong’ as a chain of
very similar dialects running along the same length of the Murray River that Moorhouse had identified, and observed that the languages spoken just either side of the river were mutually unintelligible.

7.2.1 Moorhouse’s grammar of Ngayawang (1846)

Moorhouse introduced his grammar of Ngayawang with an overview of Australian linguistic structures (1846:v-vii) (Figure 130), which drew from the existing analyses of PN languages. It is one of three such descriptions (Schürmann 1846; Hale 1846) published in 1846 providing empirical grammatical evidence that Australian languages belonged to a single family.

1. Suffixes, or particles, added to the terminal parts of words, to express relation.
2. Dual forms of substantives, adjectives, and pronouns.
3. Limited terms, being only five, for time, distance, and number.
4. No sibilant sounds.
5. No articles.
6. No auxiliary verb.
7. No relative pronoun.
8. No prepositions.
9. No distinctions in gender.*
10. No distinct form of the verb to express the passive voice.

Figure 130: Moorhouse’s typological summary of Australian languages, 1846:vi

Eight out of ten of the features Moorhouse listed as evidence that Australian languages “had their origin from one common source” (1846:vi) related to grammar. Moorhouse observed that there were no articles, auxiliary verbs, relative pronouns, prepositions, gender, or distinct forms of the passive voice. Each of these categories receives no further mention in the description of Ngayawang, other than some explanation of ‘passive’ constructions (§6.4). Regarding point nine ‘gender’ Moorhouse noted that Threlkeld had described gender in third person pronouns (§3.2.1.1), a feature that Schürmann (1846:3) had not described as gender.

Few other early grammarians positioned their grammatical description as being of a language belonging to a larger family for which shared grammatical features had been identified. T.G.H.Strehlow’s (1944) grammar of Arrernte, for example, written in 1938 described morpho-syntactic features of Arrernte as if they were ground-breaking discoveries, ignoring both the score of earlier Australian grammars in which the same structures had been adequately described, as well as these very early typological overviews.
Moorhouse also offered the ‘striking similarity in the pronouns’ (ibid., vi) as evidence of shared heritage and provided a comparative paradigm in six languages, including ‘Swan River’, informed by Grey (1839; 1841), and New South Wales, informed by Threlkeld (1834) (Figure 131). While this approach and conclusion followed Grey (1840) (Figure 132), Moorhouse additionally observed the relative dissimilarity of third person forms in comparison with other pronouns. This had not previously been noted.

On the grounds that first and second person pronouns and the form of the dual suffix on nouns were the same in many languages, Moorhouse (1846:vii) made the fanciful claim that Aboriginal people had “separated in pairs, and these words, being in daily use were retained … as children were born … the terms for the third person had to be invented”!

![Figure 131: Moorhouse’s comparative pronominal paradigm, 1846:vi-vii](image1)

![Figure 132: Grey’s comparative pronominal paradigm, 1840](image2)

While emphasising that Australian languages belonged to one family on grammatical and phonological grounds, Moorhouse (1846:v-vi) also stressed:

The term “dialect” is scarcely applicable to the languages of New Holland. They differ in root more than English, French and German … yet there is evidence sufficient to satisfy any one they belong to one family.
It is important to observe that Moorhouse established the *difference* in languages by referring to their lexicon but established their *similarity* by examining their phonological and grammatical structure. Ridley (1856b:293) similarly pointed out that the relatedness of Australian languages was evident through their grammatical structure, in spite of their lexical diversity, writing: “Though not one *word* in a thousand in Kamilaroi resembles that dialect [‘Lake Macquarie language’, Awabakal] I already perceive important points of resemblance in *grammar*”. These views are likely to have contributed to a prevailing assumption in the later part of the nineteenth century that Australian languages were of the same structure and that their diversity and mutual unintelligibility was more a matter of lexicon. That the grammatical homogeneity of Aboriginal languages was over-estimated resulted in later Lutheran missionary-grammarians borrowing from the works of the Adelaide School more than was warranted (§10.3.2).

Moorhouse’s grammar (1846) is sparsely exemplified, but contains more example clauses than Schürmann’s grammar of Barngarla (1844a). At least one example clause is given for each of his ‘particles’. There are no clauses given in the section headed ‘verbs’, other than a single reflexive construction (p.20). The vocabulary gives close to 1000 entries. Most are given with a single definition and none with an illustrative clause. Like Teichelmann & Schürmann, Moorhouse listed the part of speech to which each entry belonged.

The relative sparseness of Moorhouse’s work might explain its curious omission from F.Müller’s otherwise fairly comprehensive republication of available Australian grammatical material (1882). Like all other work of the Adelaide school, Moorhouse’s grammar had been catalogued by Bleek (1858 Vol. II, Pt I:15), and was accessible to Müller.

Much of Moorhouse’s description of Ngayawang (1846) was reproduced in Taplin (1879a). The responses Taplin had received to the linguistic questions included in his 1875 circular from Police Trooper Ewens (1879a:30) at Blanchetown were sparse. Taplin consequently supplemented information from that area using Moorhouse’s work, as well as his own knowledge (1879a:31). Taplin wrote: “no tribe in South Australia has died with such rapidity as this” (Taplin 1879a:31).

Moorhouse (1846:v) described his field-work methodology in the following terms:

> “I have produced the material, mainly, through the aid of an interpreter, who knows the Adelaide and Murray dialects; and had it not been for his assistance, I could not have gathered many of the grammatical remarks, which are now given, in the few months that I have been engaged with this dialect.

He does not name his interpreter, and it is not clear whether the material informing Moorhouse’s 1846 Ngayawang grammar and vocabulary was collected in Adelaide or in the Murray lands.
where the language was spoken. When describing having been ‘engaged with the dialect’ for only a few months, Moorhouse presumably implied that the period was intermittent and interspersed over the few years since the 1843 report.

Moorhouse’s account of case (§7.2.2), and of ergativity (§7.2.4) employed some of the schemata and terminology innovated by the Dresdener missionaries. Following Teichelmann & Schürmann (1840), for example, Moorhouse also used the term ‘preventative or negative optative’ mood to describe the apprehensional construction (§10.2.1). Compare also, example 59, given by Teichelmann & Schürmann, with that given by Meyer (1843:15) and Moorhouse (1846:6) (Figure 133) to illustrate his ‘instrumental particle’ –al.

\[
\text{Ngâte-yan ngarr......ani mande mart-ungar} \\
\text{by me it (a) building shall be house stone..s with} \\
\text{I shall build a house with stones, or a stone house.}
\]

Figure 133: Similar clauses given in Meyer (1843:15) and in Taplin’s reproduction of Moorhouse (1879a:33[1846:6])

Such provision of a translational equivalent of a clause previously presented in a grammar of a different language occurs elsewhere in the corpus. W.Koch’s reproduced Teichelmann & Schürmann’s Kaurna examples in Diyari (§10.3.2), and Poland & Schwarz (1900) and Hey (1903) reproduced Roth’s (1897) Pitta-Pitta examples, in Guugu-Yimidhirr and Nggerrikwidhi respectively (Appendix 1 §1.3.4).

But beyond Moorhouse’s use of the Dresdeners’ schemata, terminology, and even example sentences, there is evidence that the structures Moorhouse described were imported into the description of Ngayawang from Teichelmann & Schürmann’s description, on the assumption that the languages were structurally identical. Moorhouse’s description of case suggests that this description of Ngayawang was mapped onto the system previously employed by the Dresdeners.

7.2.2 Case systems

Under the heading ‘parts of speech’ (p.2), Moorhouse abandoned the class ‘preposition’ stating: “relation, expressed in English by prepositions, is expressed in this language by cases or particles, used as terminal affixes”. Instead Moorhouse presented the heading ‘particle’ straight after ‘substantive’, where he listed and described the function of cases common to PN languages that are not shown in the case paradigms i.e., Teichelmann & Schürmann’s ‘postfixa’, as well as the range of locational words, Teichelmann & Schürmann’s ‘postpositions’. The placement
of this content directly after the discussion of case, rather than at the end of the grammar under
the heading ‘postposition’, reflected awareness that some of the forms listed as ‘particles’ were
functionally equivalent to the suffixes that were included in the case paradigms.

7.2.3 System of marking syntactic case

The Thura-Yura languages, Kaurna and Barngarla (Figure 3) described by Teichelmann &
Schürmann (1840) and Schürmann (1844a) belong to the higher PN subgroup ‘Central’
(Bowern & Atkinson 2012).

The missionaries described Kaurna (1840) and Barngarla (1844a) as having identical
systems of marking syntactic cases, showing an ergative system (A/SO) on all singular nouns
and undifferentiated marking (ASO) on non-singular nouns (Figure 134). The system
Moorhouse described for the distantly related language Ngayawang, a Lower Murray language
(Figure 3), belonging to the higher level subgroup ‘South-eastern’ (Bowern & Atkinson 2012)
was identical.

On the basis of key morphological paradigms Ngayawang is thought to be more closely
related to Ngarrindjeri languages than to Kaurna (Simpson 1996:170). Phonologically, it shares
phonotactic features with languages spoken up and down-stream along the river that are atypical
of PN languages (see Horgen 2004:62-74), and also shares phonotactic features with Kaurna
that are not shared with Ngarrindjeri, for example, the ‘tp’ cluster, and pre-stopped nasals and
laterals.

While it is possible that Ngayawang, spoken upstream on the Murray River from
Ngarrindjeri, shared diffused grammatical features with Thura-Yura varieties spoken over the
west of the Mt Lofty Ranges and north into Central Australia, given what is known about
Moorhouse’s method of data collection, the similarity should be treated with some
circumspection. Moorhouse’s record is the most extensive source from which the language can
be reclaimed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kaurna, Barngarla, Ngayawang</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ergative alignment A/SO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All singular nouns &amp;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>all singular pronouns,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Figure 134: The alignment of syntactic case marking on nominals in Kaurna, Barngarla and Ngayawang, as described in
the early sources.*

After giving these paradigms, however, Moorhouse mentioned (p.6) that “[a]nother form
of the plural is sometimes used, which might be termed the active nominative, as it appears to
be used only as causative of action”. Given the substantiating clause (Figure 135), it is hard to
understand why the form *merinnamara* was not entered as the ‘active nominative’ in the plural paradigm. The precise structure of the form, based on *mera* ‘man’ and the ergative marker – *ana*, is not clear. The way in which number and case marking may have interacted in Ngayawang has not been reclaimed (Horgan 2004:94-96). What is important for the purpose of this historiographical investigation is that Moorhouse seemingly overlooked the form initially, assuming that the grammatical structure of the language he described must necessarily mirror that described by Teichelmann & Schürmann (1840) and Schürmann (1844a).

Figure 135: Moorhouse’s demonstration of the ergative marking on plural nouns, 1846:6

Ngarrindjeri, which was preserved into the 20\(^{th}\) century at the Point McLeay mission, is the best-documented variety of the Lower Murray Areal group. The complexity of the split in marking Ngarrindjeri syntactic case stands in contrast to Moorhouse’s record. If the same complexity of split existed in Ngayawang, as was documented by Meyer in Ngarrindjeri, it is unlikely that Moorhouse’s field method would have elicited the data.

With a limited number of clauses, and given that there is evidence that Moorhouse’s data was collected via translation of specific words and phrases from what was probably a simplified form of Kaurna used in European interface, the authenticity of Moorhouse’s grammar as a representation of Ngayawang structure is questionable. His description of the alignment of the syntactic cases suggests that he did not only borrow aspects of the Dresdener’s descriptive template, but that morpho-syntactic structures were also transferred across language boundaries. This propensity is evident though comparison of Meyer’s discussion of processes of clause subordination (§10.4.2).

The conclusion that Nyayawang is said to belong within an island of languages extending further upstream along the Murray River which do not exhibit pronominal enclitics (Dixon, 2002:340) should also be treated with a degree of caution. Given what is known about Moorhouse’s method of fieldwork, the scantiness of the grammar, and the fact that the better described neighbouring languages Kaurna and Ngarrindjeri have bound pronominal systems, it is possible that the absence of a bound pronominal system in Moorhouse’s grammar is a descriptive oversight.
7.2.3.1 Case paradigms

Despite presenting a language in which all nominals were ergatively aligned, i.e., where there was no overt accusative marking, Moorhouse did not opt to re-employ the realignment of pronominal case forms that he had engaged with Teichelmann when presenting Kaurna in 1841 (in Foster 1990:49) (Figure 102).

Unlike Meyer (1843) and Schürmann (1844a), Moorhouse presented paradigms declining nouns for case (1846:3-5) although with some reservation that the forms did not “strictly form declensions” (p.5) (§2.4.1.1). Ngayawang case inflection was seen, after deliberation, to constitute declension by virtue of phonological alteration at the stem and inflection boundary.

Like other grammarians of the Adelaide School, and indeed of the larger Lutheran school of South Australian description, Moorhouse’s case paradigms are conservative (Figure 136, Figure 138) in comparison with those previously presented of languages spoken in New South Wales (Threlkeld 1834; Günther 1838;1840). The paradigms do, however, include two functionally and formally distinct ‘ablative’ cases. The first ‘ablative’ case inflected with –anno and translated “at, remaining with X” is the locative (Horgen 2004:95) and possibly also marked comitative function. Although the second ‘ablative’ case is in fact, unnamed, it is likely that Moorhouse had ‘ablative 2’ in mind, since the form is translated with the prototypical ablative function, “from, away from X”.

The nominal inflections included in Moorhouse’s paradigms are shown in Figure 137.

![Figure 136: Moorhouse’s case paradigm on Meru ‘man’, 1846:3-4](image_url)
Given by Moorhouse

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Translation</th>
<th>Case label</th>
<th>Horgen 2004:95</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- ø</td>
<td>“(a/the) X”</td>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>Absolutive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-anna</td>
<td>“a X, the agent”</td>
<td>Active nominative</td>
<td>Ergative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ning, -ngo, -ung</td>
<td>“of, belonging to X”</td>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>Genitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-anno</td>
<td>“to, locally X”</td>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>Locative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-allarnu*</td>
<td>“to, giving to X”</td>
<td>Dative (unnamed)</td>
<td>Not reclaimed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- ø</td>
<td>“(the) X”</td>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>Absolutive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-anno</td>
<td>“at, remaining with X”</td>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>Locative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-nnainmudl</td>
<td>“from, away from X”</td>
<td>Ablative (Unnamed)</td>
<td>Ablative</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 137: Case forms and functions given by Moorhouse on nouns

* Only in singular paradigm of ‘child’.

Moorhouse presented two paradigms of case on nouns, first for meru ‘man’ and then for nguilpo ‘child’, explaining (1846:5) “it will be seen that the modes of inflection differ; so much so, as to lead one to suspect the existence of several declensions. I have not yet been able to discover how or in what class of words these variations occur”. That Moorhouse was unable to describe the type of nouns incurring particular inflections, or to describe morphophonemic processes, as Threlkeld (1834) (Figure 39) and Günther (1838;1840) (§4.4.1) had done, is not surprising given his comparatively short engagement with the language.

Figure 138: Moorhouse’s case paradigm on Nguiulpo ‘child’, 1846:4

The singular paradigm for nguilpo ‘child’ gives two functionally and formally distinct ‘dative’ cases. All other paradigms show a single ‘dative’ case. The form in the singular paradigm that is not included in the non-singular paradigms terminates in –allarnu, and is translated “to, giving to X”. Again, although the case is unnamed, it is assumed here to be a ‘dative 2’ because of its translation as the iconic dative.
7.2.3.2 Moorhouse in Taplin (1879a)

In reproducing Moorhouse’s work, Taplin (1879a:31) renamed the cases and adjusted the paradigms, applying another variation on the numerous conventions he experimented with when representing Ngarrindjeri case (Appendix 2§1.1.5). Moorhouse’s ‘active nominative’ case is now termed ‘causative’ in the singular paradigm (A/S/O). Taplin deleted Moorhouse’s comment ‘the agent’ next to the ergative form and inserted instead ‘by X’ (Figure 139).

Taplin’s representation of some other case forms given by Moorhouse is peculiar. He introduced his own invented term ‘exative’ to name the spatial function of the ablative case carried by dual and plural pronouns ending in –mudl and translated as it ‘from x’. But singular pronouns marked with the same form and given the same translation were termed ‘ablative’. The forms termed ‘ablative’ in the dual and the plural are marked by –anno. This form was left out of the singular paradigm, presumably because it was the same as the ‘causative’.

Figure 139: Taplin’s rearrangement of Moorhouse’s Ngayawang case paradigm, 1879a:31

7.2.4 Description of ergativity

Moorhouse termed nouns in ergative case ‘active nominative’ and placed them in second paradigmatic position (Figure 136, Figure 138). In doing so, he followed Threlkeld’s (Figure 37) and Schürmann’s representation of pronouns (Figure 123). This practice differs from Teichelmann and Schürmann’s and Meyer’s placement of ergative case in last position, which was to become influential on later Lutheran PN description. Moorhouse provided additional clarity within the tables of nominal declension by translating ergative forms as “X did, does or will act upon a subject” (p.3).

Moorhouse placed ergative pronouns in different paradigmatic position from ergative nouns. Ergative pronouns were placed last in the paradigm and were called both ‘active
nominative’ and ‘ablative’ (Figure 140). The use of both ‘active nominative’ and ‘ablative’ to name the ergative pronouns was influenced by Teichelmann & Schürmann (1840). Next to the ‘active nominative/ablative’ form, Moorhouse placed the note: “the agent or by me”. While previous grammarians had used the term ‘agent’ to describe ergative case forms, Moorhouse also used the term ‘patient’ (1846:4) to describe accusative forms, a usage that is unique in the corpus.

Figure 140: Moorhouse’s 1sg pronominal case paradigm, 1846:10

Moorhouse adopted Schürmann’s presentation of ergative function through exemplification of the case frame of arguments predicated by transitive and intransitive verbs (Figure 126, Figure 127). He used the neuter verb terri- “to stand” followed by the active verb parldke- “to strike” (1846:19-23), and clearly described the arguments predicated by each (p.20):

1st – Neuter or intransitive, or those which describe the state or condition of a subject; or an action which has no effect upon an object …
2nd – Active or transitive, or those which describe an act which passes from an agent to some external object

7.2.5 Concluding remark

Moorhouse’s understanding of PN structure was developed in conjunction with the Dresdener missionaries. Teichelmann’s description of Kaurna (1841), which appeared in a report co-authored with Moorhouse, as well as the comparative pronominal paradigms of Lower Murray languages (1840) that Moorhouse collected on a tour of the area with Teichelmann, probably primed Moorhouse to prepare his own grammar. His grammar of Ngayawang (1846) is unlikely to have been produced if not for the practice of grammatical description instigated by the Dresdeners. In writing the last of the flurry of grammatical work emanating from the appointment of the Dresdener missionaries to South Australia, Moorhouse utilised a mixture of descriptive techniques developed by Dresden mission-grammarians as well as some of his own.

While Moorhouse’s grammar of Ngayawang is well informed about Australian grammatical typology, his lack of long-term engagement with speakers of the language, and his
mapping of the structure onto a template supplied by the Dredeners, produced a grammar that failed to provide a nuanced account of the structure of the language.

7.3 Conclusion: The Adelaide School

The missionary-grammarians of the Adelaide School honed their descriptive skills in response to their increased understanding of PN structures. As Simpson (1992:410) observes, their “grammars and vocabularies … show[] how … [the grammarians] learned from one another”. That said, the descriptive frameworks employed by the Adelaide School grammarians are far from homogeneous. Such proclivity for descriptive independence is evident also in the differences suggested in chapter four between Watson’s lost Wiradjuri grammar, and Günther’s MSS (1838-1840). A notable exception to this tendency is, however, found in the Lutherans’ descriptions of Diyari (Chapter 8).

Various aspects of the analyses innovated by grammarians of the Adelaide School influenced different groups of later grammarians. Teichelmann & Schürmann’s case paradigms came to be particularly influential on grammars of Diyari (Chapter 8). Schürmann’s neat exposition of the different marking of ergative and nominative pronouns with transitive and intransitive verbs (§7.1.6), followed by Moorhouse (§7.2.4), was employed by Taplin (1878), but only in his last grammar of Ngarrindjeri (Appendix 2§1.1), and in grammars of Diyari (§8.6.3). Meyer’s conception of the ergative case was to have repercussions for Taplin’s later presentation of case. Meyer employed a framework that is less similar to Teichelmann and Schürmann’s (1840) than are the later Lutheran grammarians’ descriptions of Diyari (Chapter 8).

After the closure of the Dresdener missions, the retiring missionaries were quickly engaged within the growing German Lutheran communities in Australia, for which there was a shortage of pastors. Despite the following decades of missionary inactivity in South Australia, the Dresdener missionary-grammarians supported the establishment of the later inland South Australian Lutheran missions (§8.1). This continuity provided an environment in which the earliest morpho-syntactic analyses of South Australian PN languages were preserved and passed down to later generations of Lutheran missionaries trained at the Hermannsburg Mission Society and the Neuendettelsau Mission Society.
7.4 The description of bound pronouns

Chapter 3 (§3.2.5.1) of this thesis examined Threlkeld’s (1834) account of bound pronouns in Awabakal. Since the system he described appears to have interacted with the marking of the syntactic cases in a way that is atypical of what is known about other systems described by corpus grammarians, this aspect of Threlkeld’s grammar was of little assistance to later corpus grammarians.

Because there was no existing schema in which to describe the form and function of bound pronouns, they tended to be accounted for in a ways that may not seem immediately intuitive to a modern reader. Alternatively the forms were simply not described at all.

Consider briefly, for example, Ridley’s description of the forms in Gamilaraay. The language is reclaimed as having second person bound pronouns in all numbers (Austin 1993:68 [2013]. Ridley did not, however, describe any bound pronominal forms, despite his knowledge of Hebrew, which is described in nineteenth century grammars as having ‘separate’ pronouns and ‘pronominal suffixes’ (Gesenius & Kautzsch 1910:105-109).

Close reading of Ridley’s grammars does, however, suggest the existence of a set of bound forms. The earliest recorded source shows that 2sg and 2dl forms as vowel initial (1855b:75). They are, however, always shown as a free word:

\[
\begin{array}{ll}
\text{Murruba} & \text{inda} \\
\text{Good} & \text{2sgNOM} \\
\text{“you are good”} & \\
\end{array}
\]

(Ridley 1875:39)

Ridley also observed that “the nasal at the beginning [of a pronoun, e.g., \textit{nginda}] is sometimes softened down very much, especially in the second person, which may be regarded at times as \textit{inda}” (1875:6). The reclamation of a bound pronominal system in Gamilaraay, which is based on a range of sources (Giacon 2014:129-130), could not have been reconstructed from Ridley’s materials alone (Giacon pers. comm. 8/12/2016). This fact brings into question the certainty with which other languages of which there is only early source material, for example, Ngayawang (§7.2), can be said not to have exhibited such systems.

The following discussion of the description of bound pronouns commences (§7.4.1) by examining Günther’s (1838;1840) limited description of bound pronouns in Wiradjuri. This record is compared with that left by Hale (1846), upon which the system of Wiradjuri bound pronouns has been reclaimed differently by Rudder & Grant (2001), and by Dixon (2002). Section 7.4.2 examines Meyer’s description of bound pronouns in Ramindjeri, which gave the
first comprehensive account of bound pronouns in a grammar published in Australia, and shows how Meyer’s analysis was replicated by Taplin (1867) in the earliest grammar of Ngarrindjeri. Section 7.4.3 then examines Teichelmann & Schürmann’s (1840) less transparent description of the forms in Kaurna, suggesting a slightly different analysis than that currently given in the literature (Amery & Simpson 2013), and suggesting why some bound forms have not currently been reclaimed. Teichelmann & Schürmann’s description of bound pronouns is shown to be obscured in the same grammatical schema and for similar reasons, as are bound pronouns in Mathews’ and Spieseke’s grammars of languages from the southeast.

Section 7.4.4 looks briefly at Schürmann’s description of the forms in Barngarla (1844a), showing that bound pronouns did mark accusative case (contra Dixon 2002:345). The discussion concludes by showing that the recognition of bound pronouns in early typological studies of Australian languages (Ray 1893; Elkin 1937; Ray 1937) was largely limited to understandings gleaned from Mathews’ descriptions.

7.4.1 Günther (1838;1840)

Günther (1838;1840) made only a single explicit reference to the existence of bound pronouns in Wiradjuri (Figure 141). Günther’s sound knowledge of the language allowed him to elucidate how the marking of a possessive NP for clausal case occurred in one of two ways, depending on whether the NP included a free or bound pronoun. He (1840:355) wrote:
If the Possessive Pronoun is put before the noun, it [i.e., the noun] accepts of its termination or in other words is declined. But the more common practice is to put the pronoun behind as a postfix in an abbreviated form.

Figure 141: Günther’s illustration of an ‘abbreviated’ pronoun used as a ‘postfix’, 1840:355

The forms given to illustrate the ‘postfix’ being placed ‘behind’ the noun are of the structure:

87. **buraugundi**
   “to my boy”

   *Burai-gu-N-dhi*
   Boy-DAT-?-1sgPOSS

   (Günther 1840:355)

88. **Buraigunu**
   “to your boy”

   *Burai-gu-nhu*
   Boy-DAT-2sgPOSS

   (Günther 1840:355)

89. **Buraigugula**
   “to his boy”

   *Burai-gu-gula*
   Boy-DAT-3sgPOSS

   (Günther 1840:355)

Like other early grammarians (Teichelmann & Schürmann 1840; Schürmann 1844a; Spieseke 1878), Günther also illustrated the forms when conjugating the verb. His earliest paradigm (1838:77) showed bound and free-form 2sg pronouns, while the later paradigm (1840:362) did not. Gunther was clearly aware that pronouns might be ‘abbreviated’ and occur as ‘postfixes’, yet the forms are not anywhere presented in a systematic way.
Wiradjuri is reclaimed (Dixon 2002:345) as being highly unusual in having 1sg and 2sg bound pronouns that mark a similar range of peripheral functions as the free-form pronouns: nominative/ergative, accusative, dative, genitive, locative and ablative. The scenario has been reclaimed based on Hale (1846:488), who provided ‘full forms’ and ‘contractions’ or ‘adjunct pronouns’ side by side in first and second person singular pronominal paradigms.

Mathews’ grammar of Wiradjuri (1904) clearly distinguished bound and free-form pronouns. Mathews (p.285) described the grammar as having been based on the speech of speakers, rather than on existing sources. Mathews (p.288) stated: “The extended forms of the pronouns … are not much used as separate words, except in answer to interrogatives, or assertively … In common conversation … the pronominal affixes are employed”. He did not, however, provide case paradigms of the ‘pronominal affixes’, nor suggest which cases they marked.

The certainty of existence of 1sg and 2sg bound pronouns marking an extended range of peripheral functions (Dixon 2002:345) is brought into question by comparative reading of the early sources. The reclamation of these forms is based on the assumption that Hale (1846:488-489) did not engage in ‘paradigm filling’. Note that with regard to phonology, Hale (1846:483) mentioned that the linguistic material he collected during the two weeks he spent working with Watson at Wellington Valley Mission was reviewed and reassessed from notes after leaving Australia. The certainty that bound pronouns existed only in 1sg and 2sg assumes that Hale did not, for the sake of space, simply choose not to give the ‘contracted’ pronominal forms in the later third person paradigms. He (p.483) did after all state: “All the pronouns when postfixed to other words undergo contractions [emphasis added].” Rudder & Grant (2001:28-38) reclaim a situation in which 3sg bound pronouns mark a full range of case functions.

7.4.2 Meyer (1843)

While the Dresdener missionaries may have been alerted to the possible existence of a class of pronouns that are “never used by themselves” (Threlkeld 1834:18), they could not have found Threlkeld’s analysis of an atypical situation (§3.2.5.1) overly helpful. Threlkeld’s terminology, ‘personal nominative’ and ‘verbal nominative’ fell into obscurity.

Unlike the situation Threlkeld encountered, the recognition of the form and function of bound pronouns in South Australian languages was aided by their transparent relatedness to the free pronouns (Figure 147) and by their shared syntactic alignment. In Kaurna, for instance, bound pronouns, like all other nominals, show ergative alignment (A/SO) on singular nouns, and are undifferentiated (ASO) in the non-singular (Figure 147). The same holds true for the
complexity of the split in marking syntactic case on personal pronouns in Ngarrindjeri (Figure 108).

Bound pronouns were described as ‘affixes’ in Kaurna (Teichelmann & Schürmann 1840:23), as ‘contractions’ in Barngarla (Schürmann 1844a:22) and as ‘inseparable’ (Meyer 1843:23) and ‘euphonised’ forms in Ngarrindjeri (Taplin 1867:no pag.). Bound pronouns are not found in Diyari or Arrernte, described by later Lutheran missionaries. Bound pronouns are not found in Diyari or Arrernte, described by later Lutheran missionaries. 61 Meyer gave the most transparent description and Teichelmann and Schürmann the most opaque. The extent to which the forms were obscured in the early grammars depended on the nature of the system and its functional load in comparison with the free-form pronouns.

In 1840, just after arriving in South Australia, and three years before his grammar of Ngarrindjeri was published, Meyer (1839-1850) wrote:

The difference [between Kaurna and Ngarrindjeri] consists not only in words but also in the formation of the same. In Adelaide, to the best of my knowledge, the pronoun is placed before the substantive, here by comparison one makes use of suffixes: for example, Gelano: brother, Gelanowe: my brother, Gelauwe: your brother, Gelaauwalle: his brother and so forth in several cases, although they also make use of the pronoun for several things, nanauwe, namauwe and lomauwe.

Teichelmann and Schürmann’s grammar of Kaurna was complete at the time Meyer wrote this. That Ngarrindjeri bound pronouns were immediately recognised by Meyer in his earliest encounter with the language, while the Kaurna forms remained unknown to him suggests that the systems of bound pronouns operated differently in the two languages. Further, Meyer’s ignorance of the forms in Kaurna also suggests that Teichelmann & Schürmann’s account of the forms was indecipherable.

The class of constituents to which bound pronouns attach is usually constrained, and is language specific. In Kaurna (§7.4.3) and in Barngarla (§7.4.4) bound forms appear to have attached to the verb and to interrogatives, a common scenario for PN languages. In Ngarrindjeri they appear to be less constrained and attach also to the first constituent of a clause, which in the following example is a free-form pronoun:

90. Kil-an drēk-ir drek-urm-ungai
“he cut me with a cutting thing (Knife)”
3sgERG-1sgACC cut-PAST cut-NMZR-INST (Meyer, 1843:15)

61 Arrernte has a specialised set of possessive bound pronouns that attach only to kin terms. (Wilkins 1989:133-135). A similar set was recorded in Diyari by Reuther (1894), although Austin (2013:56-57) could not find the forms in late twentieth century speech.
Meyer (1843) gave the earliest representation of case forms of bound pronouns paradigmatically alongside the free-forms under the word-class heading ‘Pronouns’. Meyer tabulated nominative, accusative and ‘ablative’, i.e., ergative forms (Figure 142).

Figure 142: Meyer’s paradigm of bound pronouns in nominative, accusative and ergative cases (and vocative), 1843:23

Meyer does, however, appear to have recognised that bound pronouns also inflected for other cases, as is evident from the note attached to the asterisked form of the 1sgO form in the paradigm. He (p.23) stated: “an occurs sometimes as a prefix, as, Yarn-ir an-angg-itye he spoke to me” (91). Here the form an-angg is shown marking the second argument of the verb “to speak”.

91. Yarn-ir-an-angg-itye
   yarn-ir-anangk-itye
   speak-PAST-3sgDAT-3sgNOM62

Meyer analysed the form an-angg as bi-morphemic, despite describing the corresponding free-form Ngañangk “to me” as ‘dative’ (Figure 109). See also Meyer’s representation of the bound pronoun m-angg –mangk (Figure 226, Example183), which appears to be a 2DAT bound pronoun that is unspecified for number: the free 2ACC forms being ngūm (singular), lōm (dual) and nōm (plural) (Figure 107).

Taplin’s presentation (1867:no pag.) of the bound forms in his later grammar of Ngarrindjeri (Appendix 2§1.1) follows Meyer’s (Figure 143). The resemblance between

62 Note that the 1sg pronominal suffix –anangk, that is here said to mark the dative case, is reclaimed by Gale et al (2010:56) to maintain Meyer’s bi-morphemic analysis. Gale proposes that the form comprises the 1sg accusative form –an suffixed with –angk, which is reclaimed as marking the indirect object on pronouns (p.56) or the allative case and locative cases on nouns (p.51).
Meyer’s and Taplin’s paradigms indicates Taplin’s initial dependency on Meyer’s earlier description of a closely related language Ramindjeri.

Figure 143: Taplin’s earliest paradigm of Ngarrindjeri bound pronouns in nominative, accusative and ergative cases (and vocative), 1867: no pag.

7.4.3 Teichelmann & Schürmann (1840)

The presentation of bound pronouns given by Teichelmann and Schürmann tells of a dawning recognition of the existence of the system and of its function. The missionaries first mention the presence of pronominal affixes (p.19), without explicitly describing their form or function, in relation to the ‘conditional mood of the verb’: “Whether this mood is changed in its significance when the personal pronouns are affixed must remain for farther enquiry.”

At the end of the grammar, in a section appearing as an addendum headed ‘Grammatical Remarks’, the authors wrote: “The nominative is frequently put twice, the answering pronoun being affixed to the verb” (1840:23). They gave two examples. The first presents 1plS as a free and a bound form pronoun:

92. Niina narta padne-ota, ngadlu yaintya wandi-adlu
   “You are going, (but) we, we shall sleep here”
   niina narta padni-utha, ngadlu yaintya wanti-adlu
   2sgNOM now go-fut, 1plS here sleep-1plS

Teichelmann & Schürmann (p.24) then wrote: “The same takes place for the accusative (the object)”, and gave a second example (93).
They included an additional bracketed construction (94), explaining (p.24): “The contracted form in the parenthesis is the usual way of speaking; the separate forms have been chosen for the sake of illustration”. In this example the bound 3dlO pronoun is attached to the bound 1sgA pronoun, which is attached to the verb:

94.  (nguiyuatturla)  

   nguyu-athu-rla
   warm-1sgERG-3dlACC
   “I warm them”

That these comments and illustrations appeared almost as an afterthought, at the end of the grammar, suggests that the missionaries’ unpreparedness to describe bound pronominal forms resulted in less coverage in the body of the grammar than their function warranted.

Teichelmann & Schürmann’s most comprehensive presentation of bound pronouns occurred within descriptions of the optative and imperative moods of the verb. The presentation suggests that the missionaries were alerted to the existence of bound pronouns when hearing these short utterances. The optative and imperative moods provided the missionaries with a schema in which bound pronouns were accommodated while maintaining traditional descriptive format. The same strategy was used by Threlkeld (1834:51), who showed bound pronouns under the heading ‘the imperative mood’.

Blake’s (2015:18-19) unravelling of Spieseke’s (1878) and Mathews’ (1903a) descriptions of bound pronouns in Wergaya and in Bunganditj respectively, and Koch’s (2008) overview of Mathews’ description in multiple languages, confirm that even when bound forms could appear on other clausal constituents, the forms were more likely to be depicted as verb inflections. This occurred both when a grammarian recognised that the forms were pronominal, and in instances when this was apparently not understood. Of Spieseke’s analysis of the bound pronouns in Wergaya (1878) (Figure 1) Blake (2015:18-19) writes:

Although verbs in many Australian languages appear to inflect for person … and number …the person number forms are actually enclitics, abbreviated, unstressed pronouns that can be attached to words other than the verb. Spieseke gives past and ‘perfect’ forms of the verb who-räg ‘speak’. … His perfect forms are the same as the past forms with the addition of mala ‘then’, but note how the person marking –n and -r now appears on mala. The third person is often unmarked. Spieseke, presumably unfamiliar with this practice, has filled in the demonstrative kinya “this one”.

289
Teichelmann & Schürmann showed all bound first person pronouns, except 1sgACC, attached to the verb in ‘optative’ mood (1840:18) (Figure 145), which was described as expressing “the wish or the will of a person”. Importantly, the authors recognised that inflection for optative mood was pronominal, stating (p.18) that the mood “is not marked by a particular termination; but the personal pronouns are affixed to all the tenses of the indicative, and form, in this manner, a new mood.”

Most second and third person dual and plural bound pronouns are shown under the heading “the imperative mood” (1840:17) (Figure 146). Ergative forms are shown attached to the ‘active’ transitive verb kundo- ‘to beat’, and the nominative forms are attached to the ‘neuter’ intransitive verb tikka- ‘to sit’. Again, the authors (p.17) explained that the mood inflection is pronominal:

There occurs no common termination for the imperative, neither does there appear to be any distinction of time in it; the following may give to the reader an idea of the formation of this mood … it will be seen that each person of this mood is formed, in most instances by the last or more syllables of the answering pronoun.
There occurs no common termination for the imperative, neither does there appear to be any distinction of time in it; the following may give the reader an idea of the formation of this mood:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active Verb</th>
<th>Neuter Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing. Kundando, beat, thou</td>
<td>Tikka, sit, thou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kundaingki, let him beat</td>
<td>Tikkaingko, let, ye.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dual. Kundaingwa, beat, you two</td>
<td>Tikkaingwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kundara, let them two beat</td>
<td>Tikkarla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur. Kundaings, beat, you</td>
<td>Tikkainga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kundara, let them beat</td>
<td>Tikkarna</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It will be seen that each person of this mood is formed, in most instances, by the last or more syllables of the answering pronoun, except in the third person singular, where there are other forms (ki for the active, and ko for the neuter verb.) The second person singular of the neuter verb, and those that terminate in remfi, is the pure root of the verb, or the present when the termination mfi is thrown off.

The missionaries’ understanding that the ‘inflection for imperative mood’ was pronominal was sufficiently advanced to enable them to point to instances of suppletion in the paradigm.

They noted (p.17) that the 3sg forms kundaingki and tikkaingko were marked by “other forms”, describing that here the imperative was marked by –ki on the transitive verbs and by –ko on intransitive verbs. These forms are probably cognates of the Thura-Yura imperative suffix -ka (Hercus and Simpson 2001:279), although an intervening segment –ing, which as consonant-final is phonotactically aberrant, remains unexplained. These 3sg imperative forms appear to be marked with an imperative verbal suffix –ing-kV. Third person singular bound pronouns commonly have zero-realisation in PN languages (Dixon, 2002:343).

95. kundaingki
   ‘let him beat’

   kunda-ing-kV –Ø
   beat-?-IMP – 3sgERG

Teichelmann & Schürmann (1840:17)

96. tikkaingko
   ‘let him sit’

   tikka-ing-kV –Ø
   sit-?-IMP-3sgNOM

Teichelmann & Schürmann (1840:17)
Figure 147 shows the section of Teichelmann and Schürmann’s grammar in which each bound pronoun was exemplified. The morpheme –*ing* in the 3sgA, 3sgS/O, 2dl, 3dl and 2pl forms precedes the bound pronoun in the imperative mood.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Free-forms</th>
<th>Bound forms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1sg ngathu (A) ngai (S,O)</td>
<td>-athu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2sg ninthu (A) niina (S,O)</td>
<td>-nthu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3sg padlu (A) pa (S,O)</td>
<td>-ing-ki-Ø</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bound form ASO</td>
<td>Shown as:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1dl ngadli</td>
<td>-adli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2dl niwa</td>
<td>-ing-wa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3dl purla</td>
<td>-ing-rla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1pl ngadlu</td>
<td>-adlu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2pl na</td>
<td>-ing-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3pl parna</td>
<td>-rna</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1sgS/O and 2sgS/O bound pronouns were not given in the imperative and optative paradigms, but their existence is attested elsewhere in the corpus. The anticipated form of the 1sgS/O bound pronoun –*ai* is shown in the following clause (see also 53 & 169):

97. **Kauwitya kundowarponendi ai**

“I wish to have water”

*(Teichelmann & Schürmann 1840V:14)*

*Kauwi-tya kuntawarpunithi-nthi-ai*  
*water-DAT chest bone-INCH-PRES-1sgNOM*  
*“I long for water”*

Regarding the 2sgS/O form, the missionaries (p.17) explained that the form of the 2sg imperative, when used with the intransitive verb *tikka*, “to sit”, was “the pure root of the verb”. While this bound pronoun was apparently not used in imperative commands, the anticipated

---

63 The form of the 2sgERG pronoun shown here, *ninthu*, follows Amery & Simpson (2013:136). The expected form according to reconstruction of Proto-PN (Koch 2014:62) is *nintu*.

64 Where *kuntawarpunithi-‘* chest bone-INCH is a metaphor for ‘desire’ (Amery & Simpson 2013:165)
form of the 2sgS/O bound pronoun –iina is shown attached to an interrogative in the following example:

98. Ngando inna  pulyunna  meyurlo  anto-kartando  yungk-i?
   “What black man has given you the kangaroo skin?”  (Teichelmann & Schürmann 1840:68)

Nganthu-iina                  pulyuna    miyu-rlu    nantu-kartantu  yungki?
who.ERG-2SgACC          black        man-ERG      kangaroo-skin-[ACC]    give-PAST

The clause given by the missionaries to show the function of the ergative interrogative nganthu (§5.5.2) (99) shows the bound 1sgDAT -aityu attached to the interrogative nganthu.65

Dative bound pronouns were not explicitly described by the missionaries:

99. Ngando aityo  mudlinna  metti
   Who has taken away my implements?  (Teichelmann & Schürmann 1840:10)

Nganthu-aityu    mudli-rna             mit-i
INTER.ERG-1sgDAT    implement-[ACC]-pl  steal-PAST
“who has taken away the implements on me”

While the corresponding free-form pronoun ngaityu may have functioned to mark both dative and possessive functions, the same cannot be true of the bound pronoun in the above construction. In Australian languages bound pronouns in possessive case must always attach to the possessed noun that is the head of the possessive NP (Dixon, 2002:395). Therefore, the bound pronoun -aityu cannot be in possessive function in this clause. The possessive interpretation of this clause shown in the missionaries’ translation would have seemed much more natural, and this dative interpretation somewhat odd.

Thus a complete set of bound pronouns for A, S & O functions and 1sgDAT are reclaimed.

Current reclamation of the language (Amery & Simpson 2013:138) does not propose a complete set of bound pronouns, but rather suggests that the bound system was partially fused with the marking of imperative mood. The form 2pl –ingga attached to the verb in the following example is, for instance, currently interpreted as a single portmanteau morpheme marking mood and agreeing with the number and person of the agent.

100. Itto ngaityo  yungaitya  kattinga
   “these bring, carry to my elder brother”
   itu ngaityu  yunga-itya  kat-inga
   DEMpl  1sgPOSS older brother-ALL  bring-IMP2pl

The analysis taken here proposes that the verb is better glossed:

Kat-ing-a
Bring-?IMP-2plERG

65 See footnote 37
The forms that are not reclaimed by Amery & Simpson (2013) as bound pronouns (shaded in Figure 147) are:

— Zero realisation of 3sg forms
— 2sgERG –nthu.\(^{66}\)
— Those which follow the segment –ing in imperative mood, 2dl –wa and 2pl –a. Although note that 3dl –rla is reclaimed.

While the bound form may commonly have occurred in an optative or an imperative construction, bound pronouns are also found in declarative statements. The 2sgACC form –iina appears only to have been used in declarative clauses (98). There is ample evidence for the 2sgERG bound form –nthu (see examples 161, 162).

While no examples of the bound pronouns 2dl –wa and 2pl –a have been located in a declarative clause, example 94 shows the 3dl form rla operating in a declarative clauses without the preceding imperative marker–ing.

It is possible that the forms 2dl –wa, 2pl –a have not been as well recorded, or as properly retrieved from the record, as were the other bound pronouns which have an obstruent onset. The initial liquid in 3dl –rlu was probably also more easily discerned.

7.4.4 Schürmann (1844a)

Schürmann’s description of Barngarla, made the year following Meyer’s publication, continued to present bound pronouns within a discussion of ‘verbs’ rather than presenting the forms as an additional pronominal paradigm, as Meyer had done. Rather than showing the forms as marking a mood of the verb, he shows them as person and number markers. His choice probably does not indicate that bound pronouns were largely restricted to attachment to verbs, although there is evidence in both languages that they could also attach to interrogative and demonstrative pronouns (examples 99&161).

Regarding his exemplification of the forms of pronouns used with transitive and intransitive verbs (§7.1.6) (Figure 126, Figure 127), Schürmann (p.22) stated:

> In the above paradigms the pronouns have been placed before the verb to show the full form of both the verbs and the pronouns; but the natives very commonly pronounce the pronoun after the verb and more or less contract the two into one word.

---

\(^{66}\) The form of 2sgERG pronoun shown here follows that given by Amery & Simpson (2013). The expected form according to reconstruction of Proto-PN (Koch 2014:62) is ngantu.
He provided an additional paradigm showing nominative bound pronouns attached to the intransitive verb \textit{nguka-ta}, go-PRES/FUT, and ergative bound pronouns attached to the transitive verb \textit{witti-ta}, spear-PRES/FUT for each person in singular, dual and plural number (Figure 148). Note that the anticipated 3dl bound pronoun \textit{–alanbi} is not given, confirming that Schürmann did not ‘fill-in’ anticipated forms in this paradigm.

![Figure 148: Schürmann’s presentation of bound pronouns, 1844a:22](image)

Although Schürmann did not tabulate bound forms of pronouns in accusative function, there is evidence that an object could be marked by a bound pronoun. Examine the following example in which the form \textit{–adli}, a reduction of the 1dlACC pronoun \textit{ngadli} (Figure 124) stands in accusative case.

\textbf{101.} Karpanga: iridningutu \textit{adli}

\begin{tabular}{ll}
\textit{garrba-nga} & \textit{iridni-ngu-du-w-adli} \\
house-ERG & separate-CAUS-PRES-EP-1dlACC \\
the house/room separates us & \\
\end{tabular}

(Schürmann 1844aV:8)

(Gloss and transcription, Clendon 2015:44)

As with Kaurna, there is also evidence of bound pronouns in dative case in Barngarla. Examine, for instance, the following example, of which the analysis taken here differs from that given by Clendon (2015:45), who glosses the 1sg pronoun \textit{ngadyi} possessive.

\textbf{102.} mai \textit{ngaitye pulyo kulakaitye}

\begin{tabular}{llll}
\textit{mayi} & \textit{ngadyi} & \textit{pulyu} & \textit{gula-ga-adyi} \\
“cut me a little bread pray” & & & \\
food-[ACC] & 1sgDAT little & cut-IMP-1sgDAT & \\
\end{tabular}

(Transcription Clendon 2014:45)

For the same reason that the Kaurna dative pronoun in example 99 cannot stand in possessive case, the bound form of the first person pronoun \textit{–adyi}, in example 102 cannot be analysed as having possessive function. While the initial free-form 1sg pronoun \textit{ngadji} can be interpreted as having either possessive ‘my’ function, or dative ‘for me’ function, the bound
form –adyi is not amenable to the possessive interpretation, since possessive pronominal enclitics must always attach to the possessed noun (Dixon 2002:395).

In contrast to this analysis of bound pronouns, Dixon (2002:345) concludes that the system of bound pronouns in Barngarla is unusual among Australian languages in not marking O function. Dixon’s error results from taking the early source at face value without unpicking the grammarians’ rationale for describing the language in ways that the traditional paradigm could accommodate. Bound pronouns in accusative function were not as easily illustrated within traditional schemata, because verbs in SAE languages do not agree with pronouns in accusative case.

Koch (2008:203-204) points out that Mathews attempted, but struggled, to account for the agreement of verbs with their object, i.e., the attachment of accusative bound pronouns to verbs.

7.4.5 Later understandings of bound pronouns

Despite the numerous, although sometimes opaque, descriptions of bound pronouns in the early grammars of PN languages, the recognition of these systems in middle-era overviews of Australian languages (Ray 1925; Capell 1937; Elkin 1937) are confined to material gleaned from Mathews’ grammars, and relate largely to the marking of possession in languages from the southeast of the country.

Ray (1925), who had not encountered bound pronouns in his own study of Western Torres Strait (1893;1907) or Paman languages (1907) (Appendix 1§1.4), refers to their function only in marking the possessed constituent of a possessive NP, which he (p.5) described as confined to “[t]he Victorian languages, some of the eastern languages and a few others [which] denote possession by means of a suffix”. His findings were informed by Mathews’ grammars of Bunganditj (1903a), Thaguwurru (Daungwurrang) (1902), Thurrawal (Dharawal) (1901b) and Tyatyalla (Djadjala) (1902a).

Similarly Elkin’s (1937:148-149) awareness of bound pronouns is limited to bound pronouns in possessive case and is informed by Mathews’ description of Djadjala (1902a), spoken in Victoria.

Koch (2008:188-189) describes how in languages from New South Wales and Victoria that Mathews described, possession is marked not only by the possessive case suffix attached to the dependent possessor element of the possessed NP, as standardly occurs in PN languages. In these languages the possessed constituent, which is the head of the NP, is also marked with an enclitic possessive pronoun. The English translational equivalent of a possessive phrase might be: ‘man’s boomerang-his’. Mathews conveyed this structure standardly in his grammars,
presenting paradigms of nouns inflected with a portmanteaux morpheme marking possessive case and number and person (Figure 149). As Koch (2008:194) observes, Mathews was aware that these suffixes were pronominal.

Mathews’ (1902a:78) statement: “Anything over which possession can be exercised is subject to inflection for person and number”, was quoted by Capell (1937:58), who also presented Mathews’ Djadjala paradigm to show that ‘suffixed pronouns’ marked possession in some languages. Capell (p.55) described how in the southeast “the genitive relationship is doubly indicated”.

Unlike Ray (1925) and Elkin (1937), Capell (1937:68-69) did describe bound pronouns in other cases. Capell had conducted field-work in ‘incorporating languages’ — non-Pama-Nyungan prefixing languages — in which verbs mark agreement for the number and case of the predicated arguments. Capell (1937:68) used Mathews’ description of Gundungurra (1901a) (Figure 150) to substantiate the hypothesis that some of the non-prefixing languages of New South Wales “show development in the same direction” as the “incorporating languages” of the Kimberley (1939:68) but noted: “the system has never been investigated in full”.

Several languages of New South Wales show forms that, if not actually to be classed as incorporation, in the same sense as in the Northern Kimberley languages, at any rate show development in the same direction. Thus in Gundungurra:

yuriniga, I beat; yuburinji, thou beatest; yubuminji, thou beatest me.
yubunj, he beats; yubujinja, he beats me.
yuberinya, I hit you.
yuburinjulug, we two beat; yubunyaunjuluy, we two beat you.

The system has never been investigated in full, but looks on the surface remarkably like that of Worora.

That Ray (1925) and Elkin (1937) did not retrieve the existence of bound pronouns in other cases as a feature of some PN languages is due to the opaque nature of their description. Elkin refers to both Teichelmann & Schürmann’s grammar (1840) and to Schürmann’s work (1844a), in which bound pronouns were illustrated.
The oversight might be also due to the curious and unexplained absence in Elkin’s overview of reference to Meyer’s (1843) grammar, which gave such a succinct analysis of bound pronouns (§7.4.2). Elkin (p.133) did, however, refer to Taplin (1879), which presented a paradigm of Ngarrindjeri bound pronouns (Appendix 2, Figure 1), but without any exemplification. While Ray (1925:2) does list Meyer’s work, it is not clear that the ‘Narrinyeri’ material to which he refers did not also come from Taplin’s grammars. Note that Capell (1937) too, does not refer to Meyer.

Blake (in press) describes how the early MS and published descriptions of Australian languages “lay in libraries for decades largely forgotten”. Many early grammars became collector’s items that were priced beyond the reach of scholars and sometimes libraries. That the print-run of some early grammatical material on Australian languages was so small, and the works were generally unavailable to later researchers, may also have hindered the dissemination of the valuable description of bound pronouns contained in Meyer (1843).
Chapter 8:
Grammars of Diyari (1868-1899)

This chapter investigates the grammars of Diyari (Koch 1868; Schoknecht 1947[1872]); Flierl 1880; Reuther 1894;1899) and other Karnic languages (Flierl 1880; Reuther 1901a,1901b) that were written by Lutheran missionaries at the Bethesda Mission, east of Lake Eyre in South Australia, as well as the grammars of Diyari written by European philologists (Planert 1908; Gatti 1930), whose work was informed by the missionaries’ analyses. Comparison of the description of case given in each of these grammars of Diyari shows that the grammars produced at the mission are descriptively homogenous. By contrast, the grammars of Diyari made by European philologists are analytically innovative.

The analysis given in the earliest grammar of Diyari by W.Koch (1868), which is presented in this thesis for the first time, was largely reproduced by later missionaries. Koch’s initial description of case and of ergativity is found to have been influenced by Teichelmann & Schürmann’s (1840) grammar (Chapter 5).

8.1 Two inland Lutheran South Australian missions

Grammars of Diyari and of Arrernte were written at the two inland missions established by the Lutheran church in the arid north of South Australia in the second half of the nineteenth century. These are the Bethesda Mission (formerly Hermannsburg, Lake Killalpaninna/ Kilawilpanina (Kirlawirlpanhinha), Kopperamanna (Kaparramaranha), and Cooper Creek) (1866-1915), situated to the east of Lake Eyre, and Hermannsburg Mission (later Finke River) (1877-1982) situated in the Western MacDonnell Ranges (Figure 3). These Lutheran missions, and the Cape Bedford Lutheran mission in Queensland (1886-1942) (Appendix 1§1.3.2) endured longer than most other missions at which early grammars were written.

The longevity of the Bethesda and Hermannsburg missions fostered the development of a tradition of grammatical description of Diyari and of Arrernte at each mission respectively. Grammars were written as pedagogical tools for learning the language and for preparing sermons, and newly arrived missionaries copied out existing grammars, sometimes altering the orthography and the analysis. In a pre-academic era of linguistic description, and especially within the missionary sphere, unattributed borrowing from an earlier document was unproblematic. Consequently, establishing the original authorship of an analysis takes careful comparative study of the sources. At both missions later, better-known missionaries have been
over-credited with having made grammatical analyses, while the analytical achievements of earlier, lesser-known missionaries, who made the inaugural grammatical descriptions, have been overlooked historically (see for example, Kenny 2013:87; Hill 2002:527). By examining the differences between grammars of the same language, this and the following chapter assign intellectual provenance to the different analyses of Diyari and Arrernte.

Second-generation missionaries at each mission also described languages spoken in territories adjacent to the mission site, but which came to be within its extended reach. At Bethesda, Flierl described Wangkangurru (1880) and Reuther described both Wangkangurru (1901) and Yandrruandha (1901), as well as collecting vocabulary lists of Arabana, Thirrari, Ngamini and Yawarrawarrika. At Hermannsburg C.Strehlow described Luritja (1910).

The endurance of these missions was due to their remoteness, and to the ongoing support received from members of European Lutheran congregations in the settled southern districts of South Australia with whom mission staff held close familial and community connections. The Dresdener missionaries (Teichelmann, Schürmann and Meyer §5.1) had been instructed to “gather German settlers into congregations, which would provide a support base for Aboriginal work” (Lockwood, 2007:9), but the fledgling migrant German populations around Adelaide were unable to offer the early Dresdener missionaries the support they required, but which did later sustain the inland Lutheran missions. Once established, the Bethesda and Hermannsburg missions also benefitted from the loyalty of Diyari and Arrernte Christian ‘converts’, whose work at the mission stations was essential to their economic viability.

Twenty years of Lutheran missionary inactivity had followed the initial and short-lived attempts of the Dresdeners to Christianise Aboriginal people in South Australia (1838-1848). Missionary interest in Central Australia was re-kindled by the first crossing of the continent from south to north by J.M.Stuart (1815-1866) in 1861-62, and by the encroachment of pastoralism into the arid interior. A mission site at Coopers Creek to the east of Lake Eyre was considered suitably remote from the disruptive influence of European populations. The site was also chosen as a reciprocal gesture of Christian values towards the Diyari, who had saved King, the only survivor of the Burke and Wills expedition (Clark 2013:137).

Despite the decades separating the closure of the South Australian Dresdener missions (1848) and the second wave of inland mission activity, continuity of support from the Dresdener grammarians provided an intellectual link between these two phases of mission activity in South Australia. Meyer, who wrote a grammar of Ngarrindjeri (1843) (§6.2), was president of the Bethany-Lobethal Synod (1848-1861) (later the Evangelical Lutheran Synod of Australia, henceforth ELSA), and was especially influential in establishing the alliance with the
Hermannsburger Missionsgesellschaft (Hermannsburg Mission Society, henceforth HMS) required to re-commence mission work. He is also known to have corresponded with Rev. W. Löhe, founder of Neuendettelsau Mission Institute, which trained the third wave of Lutheran missionaries in South Australia. (J. Strehlow 2011:249). Schürmann, who had earlier written a grammar of Barngarla (1844a) (§7.1.1), had been the Church’s first choice of missionary for the first inland Lutheran mission, but at the age of 48 he advised that two “young men of courageous faith” should be sourced from Leipzig or the Hermannsburg Mission Society in Germany (Zweck 2012:60). Teichelmann, who co-authored the earliest South Australian grammar with Schürmann (1840) (Chapter 5), was present at the 1866 dedication in Tanunda of the HMS missionaries who were to establish the mission to the Diyari (Proeve & Proeve 1952:54). This continuity is relevant when assessing the potential influence of the Dresdener missionaries on the grammatical descriptions of their Lutheran successors.

Theological schisms and tentatively established alliances between factions of the Australian Lutheran synods threatened the continuity of each of the inland missions at different stages. These developments are relevant to this examination of the grammatical descriptions made by Lutheran missionaries because the administering synod determined from which German seminary missionaries were recruited. Seminaries provided different degrees of linguistic training, with possible consequences for the type of linguistic material produced. Further, staff trained at the same German seminary and administered by the same Australian synod were moved between missions. This may have facilitated the dissemination of grammatical understanding across language boundaries.

In order to establish the earliest inland mission in the Lake Eyre Basin, a union between distinct South Australian synods (1863) was required before L. Harms, the director of the HMS in Germany, would agree to supply missionaries (Brauer 1956:223-224; Proeve & Proeve 1952:33-38). In 1874 this union dissolved and the South Australian Lutheran Church splintered into two main factions, contributing to the near abandonment of the mission to the Diyari for a period of four years from 1872. In 1876, the Evangelical Lutheran Immanuel Synod (henceforth ELIS) assumed control of the mission and sourced missionaries from the Bavarian Neuendettelsauer Missionsgesellschaft (Neuendettelsau Mission Society, henceforth Neuendettelsau) from 1878.

Note that the Bethesda mission was officially named ‘Hermannsburg’ before being administered by ELIS. During this phase, however, it was commonly referred to by its location, which shifted several times towards well-watered country. For the sake of clarity, the mission is consistently referred to here as ‘Bethesda’.
After ELIS assumed control of Bethesda, the ELSA faction established the second inland mission, called Hermannsburg, further inland in Central Australia, and continued to recruit missionaries from the HMS. A continuing relationship between the Australian synod and the HMS eventually became untenable (Harms 2003:148), and the HMS ceased to support missions in South Australia. After the departure of the last HMS missionaries from Hermannsburg in 1891, the mission was left in the hands of a few unordained staff, as Bethesda had been in 1872. In 1894 the ELIS acquired the Hermannsburg mission station, after which both inland South Australian missions were run in collaboration between Neuendettelsau and ELIS, Bethesda from 1876 and Hermannsburg from 1894.

Unlike Bethesda at Lake Eyre, which had earlier been called ‘Hermannsburg’, the Hermannsburg mission on the Finke River to the Arrernte retained its naming after its founding seminary, even after missionaries were sourced from Neuendettelsau.

Relations between the missionaries, the mission staff and their families working at the two inland South Australian Lutheran missions were always particularly close. Bethesda was a resting place for Hermannsburg missionaries making the arduous journey to and from the mission and the Barossa Valley, facilitating a collegial exchange of ideas between these two mission stations. The movement of Aboriginal people between Hermannsburg and Bethesda also supported the missionaries’ aims. The first baptisms at Hermannsburg, made eight years after the mission’s establishment, occurred only after the Arrernte people Tekua (Thomas) and Kalimala (Andrea) met with Diyari Christians at Bethesda when accompanying the missionaries on the journey southwards (Harris 1994:398).

Neuendettelsau missionaries were also sent to Aboriginal missions in Queensland: Cape Bedford (1886-1942) (Appendix1§1.3.2), Bloomfield (1887-1901) and Mari Yamba (1887-1902). There was considerable transfer of Neuendettelsau missionaries between the two South Australian missions and the Queensland mission.

The Neuendettelsau-trained missionary C.Strehlow (§9.2.2), who arrived at the Bethesda mission in 1892, was well acquainted with the structure of Diyari before being transferred to Hermannsburg in 1894 and beginning to learn Arrernte. His ability to communicate in two Aboriginal languages is the most well recognised instance of cross-mission linguistic fertilisation (see Hebart 1938:193; Albrecht 2002:7; Kenny 2008:32). The extent to which the movement of staff facilitated a transfer of linguistic analysis across language boundaries deserves consideration more generally. For instance, did the HMS missionaries’ understanding of PN morphosyntactic structure acquired through learning Diyari in any way influence the earliest description of Arrernte made by HMS graduate Kempe? Further, did the Lutherans’
analysis of Diyari made at Bethesda have any influence on the earliest descriptions of Guugu-Yimidhirr spoken at Cape Bedford mission in Queensland?

Aboriginal guides also often accompanied missionaries travelling to other missions. The Diyari evangelist Johannes Pingilina (birth date unknown, died 1904) travelled from the South Australian Bethesda mission to the Cape Bedford and Bloomfield missions in Queensland where he assisted German missionaries in learning the local languages, and with liturgical translations, before returning to Bethesda in 1892. The linguistic interaction between Aboriginal visitors, their hosts and the mission staff is not readily retrievable from the record.

8.2 Missionary grammars of Diyari

Four grammars of Diyari were written at the Bethesda Mission. Two were written during the HMS mission era, one by lay-missionary and teacher W.Koch (1868), and one by missionary Schoknecht (1872[1947]). Two grammars were written by Neuendettelsau missionaries (Flierl 1880; Reuther 1899[1894]).

All of these four Diyari grammars are similar enough to be treated as a single analysis, with points of difference noted. Examine, for example, the Diyari grammarians’ paradigms declining possessive pronouns (Figure 151; Figure 152).

Figure 151: Reuther’s declension of dual possessive pronouns 1894:21
Such paradigms, which account for the additional clausal case marking of a pronoun in possessive case, were introduced into descriptions of South Australian languages by Teichelmann & Schürmann (1840) (§5.3.3). Reuther’s (1899) grammar of Diyari, which was translated into English by Hercus & Schwarzschild (1981), and which is the last, and most well known of the early Karnic sources, provides paradigms declining dual possessive pronouns for each number (Figure 151). Austin (1981c:27) observes that when translating dual possessive pronouns Reuther “inadvertently associated number with the thing possessed rather than the possessor, i.e., he has translated ngaldrani, ngaldranha 1dlINCL.POSS, and ngalini, ngalirni 1dlEXCL.POSS, as ‘my two’ instead of as ‘belonging to us two’”. The same problem occurs in all early Diyari grammars. The mistake had first been made in the earliest Diyari description from the mission (Koch 1868) (Figure 152), who translated the nominative form of the dual possessed pronoun as unserer beiden (‘our two’), rather than ‘belonging to us two’.

Note that Taplin made exactly the same mistake, before correcting himself in his MS grammar of Ngarrindjeri (1867) (Figure 153). Both Taplin and Koch may have been independently led astray by Teichelmann & Schürmann’s confused analysis (§5.3.3).
Structurally, the Diyari grammars are organised under the same headings and sub-headings, employ the same numbering of sections and often give the same Diyari example clauses. The extent to which the later grammars replicate the structure and schemata of the first grammar (Koch 1868) is evident through comparison of the pages detailing verb morphology. In each work — with the possible exception of Schoknecht (1947[1872]) (§8.3.3), the original of which has not been sighted — pages are ruled in the same, unconventional manner and present some content in portrait format. Compare, for example, Koch 1868 (Figure 154) with Flierl 1880 (Figure 155). Note that the authors used different illustrative verbs. Koch used the verb *rnandra*- “to hit, to strike”, and Flierl *nganka*- “to make”. Note also the absence of the velar nasal in Flierl’s representation *anka*-. 
8.2.1 Neglect of Diyari grammars in histories of Australian linguistic research

No missionary grammars of Diyari were published or translated into English during the time of the mission. The only Diyari grammatical material emanating from the mission that was published *in Australia* before Austin (1981) are E.Homann’s pronominal paradigms in Taplin (1879a:86) and in Fraser (1892:43-44), and three Karnic wordlists presented in Curr (1886) attributed to ‘F.E.Jacobs’ (1886a;1886b;1886c), where the author’s initials and surname are
given incorrectly. The wordlists were supplied by lay-missionary J.E. Jacob, a German-born South Australian wagoner, who helped establish the mission and became integral to its longevity. Jacob’s wordlists are of unnamed languages identified by the location: ‘North-West of Lake Eyre’, ‘The North Shore of Lake Eyre’, and Kopperamana. The languages are Wangkatyaka, Ngamini and Diyari respectively (Hercus 1994:19).

The Diyari grammars remained obscure unpublished German MSS well into the twentieth century, and some remain so. The only missionary analysis published in the pre-contemporary era is a grammar by W. Planert (1908) published in Germany, based on missionary Wettengel’s documents (1908) (§8.5.3). In 1874 S. Gason (?1845-1897), the mounted constable at Lake Hope (1865-1871), published The Dieyerie tribe of Australian Aborigines, which contained vocabulary, example sentences and some poorly spelled verb forms. The material was republished in Woods (1879), and in part, in Curr (1886) and in Fraser (1892).

This situation differs from the prompt publication of grammars by the earlier Dresden Mission Institute missionaries (Teichelmann & Schürmann 1840; Meyer 1843; Schürmann 1844a), and from the publication of grammars by Taplin (1872;1874;1879;1880) (Appendix 2§1.1) and by Ridley (1866;1875) (Appendix 1§1.1), which appeared close to the time of the Lutherans’ first descriptions of Diyari. While Missionary Günther’s MS analyses of Wiradjuri (1838;1840) were brought to a greater public through publication in Fraser (1892), the Diyari grammars are not included in Fraser’s volume. The only Diyari material that is included in Fraser are a pronominal paradigm supplied by HMS missionary E. Homann (1892:43-44), and Gason’s material (pp.44-45).

The unpublished Lutheran grammars of Diyari did not inform later non-Lutheran descriptions of PN languages examined in this thesis. W. E. Roth appears unaware of, or was at least unable to access, these German MSS when preparing his 1897 grammar of the related Karnic language Pitta-Pitta. The Lutheran Diyari material does not appear in Roth’s substantial

---

67 The vocabularies supplied by Jacob, who is said to have been a fluent Diyari speaker (E. H. Proeve, 1946:11) presents the most bizarre orthographic convention attested in this corpus. Jacob uses the trigraph ‘sth’ to represent all word-initial nasals other than the bilabial. The spelling was so unconventional as to receive the following explanation in Curr’s introduction (1886 vol.ii:12):

I have thought it necessary to call attention to the nationality of my correspondent, as in many cases the spelling of the words of his vocabulary, taken from an English point of view, represents sounds which it would be impossible for an Australian black to utter. The sth which occurs so frequently, I take to represent the nasal sound which is generally expressed by ng.
bibliography. F. Müller’s (1882) otherwise fairly thorough collation of Australian grammatical material does not note the existence of the Diyari grammars.

The grammars have also been overlooked in histories of Australian language description. They are not referred to by Ray in an otherwise comprehensive description of “existing material available for the study of Aboriginal languages” (1925:2). Elkin (1937:9) and (1972:15) refer only to Planert’s (1908) Diyari grammar, published in Germany. There is no chapter discussing the early description of Diyari in McGregor’s seminal volume on the historiography of Australian languages (2008a). The overview of research and documentation of South Australian languages given by Simpson et al (2008) provides no detail of the missionaries’ morpho-syntactic analysis of Diyari, and incorrectly states (p.120) that Austin (1981) was the first published grammar of Diyari, overlooking Eylmann (1908), Planert (1908), Gatti (1930) and Schoknecht (1947). That the earliest two published Diyari grammars were written in German and the third in Italian certainly contributed to this oversight.

The oversight is also due to the fact that the role that the missionaries’ analyses may have played in language reclamation programmes, which began in South Australia in the 1980s, has been supplanted by comprehensive analysis informed by speakers in the modern descriptive linguistic era (Austin 1981). The early grammatical descriptions of Diyari do not have the contemporary relevance of earlier Dresdener grammars upon which language reclamation has so entirely depended.

Austin (1978), however, gives a good overview of most of the early Diyari linguistic material. This section was excluded from his 1981 published grammar due to space considerations, but now appears in the second edition which is available online as Austin (2013:241-245).

In comparison with the recent historical attention received by Neuendettelsau-trained missionaries (e.g., Hercus & Schwarzschild 1981; Jones & Sutton 1986; Nobbs 2005), the HMS missionaries at Bethesda have been under-investigated and their grammatical contribution, upon which the Neuendettelsau missionaries relied, has been under-recognised. Kneebone (2005b:24) aims to “highlight the sophistication and reliability of the early documentation of the Dieri (sic) language by Hermannsburg missionaries”, thus redressing the historical oversight of the earliest HMS grammarians. It appears, however, that Kneebone was unaware of Austin’s (1978) review of earlier research. Despite the studies made by Austin (1978) and Kneebone (2005b), the initial HMS missionaries’ analysis of Diyari, that occurred prior to the arrival of Neuendettelsau men, continues to be overlooked in histories of the mission (see for example, Kenny 2013:87).
8.3 The Hermannsburg Mission Society missionaries at Bethesda

This section surveys the linguistic work made during the first HMI period of missionary activity at Bethesda (Figure 156).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Occupation at Bethesda</th>
<th>Dates at Bethesda</th>
<th>Produced grammar in:</th>
<th>Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>W. Koch (1848-1869)</td>
<td>Teacher</td>
<td>1868-1869</td>
<td>1868 Unpublished German MS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E. Homann (1838-1915)</td>
<td>HMI-trained missionary</td>
<td>1867-1871</td>
<td>Pronominal paradigm in Taplin 1879a:86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H. H. Vogelsang (1832–1913)</td>
<td>HMI-trained mission assistant</td>
<td>1867-1913</td>
<td>Copy of Diyari grammar sent to Howitt in 1878</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 156: Table showing grammatical descriptions of Diyari produced during the HMI phase of mission activity at Bethesda.

The HMS was founded in 1849 by L. Harms (1808-1865). The mission seminary was philosophically similar to Gossner’s of the Berlin Mission Society, established in 1836, which trained some of the missionaries who established the Zion Hill mission at Moreton Bay – present day Brisbane. Ganter (2016b) writes that these two mission societies:

formed break-away institutions from already established mission societies with the express purpose to accept candidates who were being turned away by the other training colleges, and to prepare them for ‘heathen mission’. They commenced with very basic curricula but eventually succumbed to external pressures and integrated more demanding standards, and the Bible languages, into their programme in order to achieve ordination for their candidates.

That the Bible used at the Hermannsburg seminary was written in Plattdeutsch, a ‘low’ German dialect is telling of the mission philosophy. The early HMS candidates received only a basic academic education without instruction in any classical languages. The training received by the HMS Lutheran missionaries lacked the classical orientation and academic rigor of that received by the earlier Dresdener, the later Neuendettelsau Lutheran missionaries, and those trained at Basel Mission Institute (4.1).
8.3.1 Homann: the earliest phase of the HMS mission at Bethesda

The HMS missionaries sent to Australia to establish the first inland mission — J.F. Gößling (1838–1917), E. Homann (1838–1915) and missionary assistant H.H. Vogelsang (1832–1913) — arrived with G.A. Heidenreich (1828–1910) and C.G. Hellmuth (1827–1895). All of these men played important roles in Australian Lutheran mission.68

The HMS administered the Lutheran mission at Lake Eyre during a period of instability and uncertainty. Continuity of staff was poor. Concurrent with the Lutherans’ decision to establish a mission among South Australian Diyari populations, the Society for Promoting Moravian Missions to the Aborigines of Victoria was similarly motivated to establish a mission in the area (Edwards 2007:209). In 1864 four Moravian missionaries were sent from Germany. Unbeknown to each other, the Moravian party left Adelaide only ten weeks before the Lutheran party left Langmeil in the Barossa Valley. Both parties arrived at Lake Hope in December 1866, where they experienced considerable hostility from Aboriginal populations.

The arrival of the Lutheran party, consisting of missionaries E. Homann, J.F. Gößling, lay missionary H.H. Vogelsang, and the Australian-born wagoner J.E. Jacob, contributed to existing tension in the region, resulting from the recent introduction of pastoralism and the ensuing pressure on scarce water supplies. In early 1867, only ten weeks after first establishing themselves at Killalpaninna, the Lutheran party retreated south to the Barossa Valley, and at the same time the Moravians retreated to Boolcaltaninna, Bucaltaninna.

There are two accounts of the missionaries’ progress in learning Diyari during this earliest phase of mission activity. Theodor Harms (1867, quoted in Proeve & Proeve 1952:68), the then HMS director, noted the existence of a wordlist collated before the missionaries’ 1867 retreat:

> The natives assist them in their work, and see how the missionaries snatch one word after the other from their lips. So far they have succeeded in collecting a few hundred words.

In addition to this evidence that the missionaries elicited their own material before leaving the mission early in 1867, is a letter from Gößling (quoted in Brauer 1956:229) that was written during the first short ten-week stint at Killalpaninna (March 1867), in which he admits difficulty in learning the language, but states that they had “learned several hundred native words from Mr. Gosse [sic Gason]69 at Lake Hope”. Kneebone’s investigation also shows that Gason had

68 Hellmuth founded the German-Scandinavian Lutheran synod in Queensland, which supported the Mari Yamba mission, where HMS graduate A. C. Claussen (1846–1897) was the first missionary.

69 This is probably a transcription error. W. Gosse (1842-1881) led an expedition from Alice Springs to Perth in 1873 on which he discovered and named Ayres Rock. He is not known to have travelled to the Lake Eyre Basin.
dictated “‘a few hundred words’, which provided Homann and Gößling with the first working vocabulary in Dieri [sic]” (2005b:80).

Note that Homann and Koch had initially referred to the people at the mission as Körni and Karna (ibid.,259) meaning ‘Aboriginal person’ in Diyari— the origin of the modern name for the language family ‘Karnic’ — rather than Dieri, Diari or Diaeri. Compare this with the naming of the Adelaide language and people as ‘Kaurna’, also a term meaning ‘men’, but in a neighbouring language (§5.1.1).

8.3.2 Koch: the second phase of HMS at Bethesda

In January 1868, after being assured of adequate police protection, The Lutherans returned and established a settlement at Lake Killalpaninna. The party returned without HMS missionary Gößling, but with women who had married the lay-missionaries — D.Vogelsang (née Heistermann) and M.E.Jacob (née Auricht),70 and a young German teacher named Wilhelm Koch (1848-1869).

The Lutherans maintained a mutually supportive relationship with the Moravian missionaries, who in October 1867 had settled at Lake Kopperamanna, sixteen kilometres from Killalpaninna. When in November 1868 the decision was made from Saxony to close the Moravian mission, the title for the Aboriginal reserve at Kopperamanna was transferred to the Lutherans (Edwards 2007:221). Moravian missionary Walder remained until May 1869. The Moravians made some progress in learning Diyari. They established a school in which missionary Kramer taught (Proeve & Proeve 1952:67), and missionary Meissel later contributed a wordlist from Lake Kopperamanna to G.Taplin’s ‘Comparative Table of Languages of the Australian Aborigines’ (1872[1870]).

W.Koch had initially met Gößling, Homann and Vogelsang on the sea voyage to Australia. Fleeing financial and moral dishonour (Kneebone 2005b:89-90), Koch decided to join the missionaries and to travel with them to Lake Eyre. His initial application to Hermannsburg was, however, rejected. Koch later became reacquainted with the missionaries while working as a teacher in the Barossa Valley during the missionaries’ 1867 retreat south. Koch reapplied to join the mission, and was this time accepted.

70 After the death of his first wife, H.Vogelsang married Jabob’s wife’s sister, A.M.Vogelsang (née Auricht). These women were the daughters of the influential Pastor C.A.Auricht (1832-1907), who established Auricht’s Printing Press in Tanunda which printed German newspapers. Another daughter, Luise Auricht married J.Flierl and also lived at Kilallpaninna before travelling with her husband to New Guinea.
Koch, who had studied, although had not completed, four years of gymnasium education, including Latin and Greek, is described as “a gifted young man” (Hebart 1938:187), who “brought to the mission a classical education and considerable natural talent for language” (Kneebone 2005b:10). At the time of their acquaintance, Koch is said to have “helped [the missionaries] to explore the Dieri language about which the missionaries knew nothing except for a wordlist of 300 Dieri words” (Ganter 2016d).

On arrival at Bethesda, Koch was given responsibility for teaching in the mission school and used Diyari as the language of instruction (Harms 2003:51). Substantial linguistic progress was made in 1868. Homann was assisted in improving his Diyari sermons by Johannes Pingilina, one of the early Christian ‘converts’. Homann perceived that the Diyari people were beginning to understand his message. In 1869 Homann was preaching to more than fifty people (Harms 2003:52).

This first productive period of missionary activity ended abruptly. The engagement of a large number of Diyari people with missionary activity had coincided with a drought. Lack of fresh food and the increasing salinity of the water at the mission caused illness (Harms 2003:56), and W.Koch died from typhoid in April 1869 at the age of 21. After summer rain fell at the end of 1869, school attendance decreased as Aboriginal families returned to the filled watercourses and lakes away from the mission (Harms 2003:57).

Koch’s death doubled Homann’s workload, who was now too busy to pursue further linguistic work (Harms 2003:56). Homann left disheartened and embittered in 1871, after having been accused by the mission committee of being ‘of little faith’! (Ganter 2016d).

The Vogelsang and Jacob families sustained the mission in the intervening months before the arrival of Homann’s replacement. H.H.Vogelsang remained at the mission until his death in 1913. His son H.Vogelsang, one of eight Vogelsang children born at the mission, was literate in Diyari and was the last teacher in the school before the closure of the mission in 1915. Another son, E.T.Vogelsang, who was also a capable literate user of Diyari (see Figure 157), worked at the South Australian Museum in the 1920s as an attendant, where he attempted to make a translation into English of Reuther’s extensive MS (§8.5.2.1). He later worked with H.K.Fry on his publication of Diyari legends (1937a;1937b), and co-authored an anthropological article about the Diyari with R.Berndt (1938-1941).

71 H.A.E.Meyer had similarly been forced to defend the decision to close the mission at Encounter Bay against the accusation that the Dresdener missionaries had “lacked the patience and the persistence, and above all the watchword ‘Love’ ” (J.M. Torbitzki, 03/04/1862, quoted in Zweck, 2012:50).
In January 1872, Homann was replaced by C.H. Schoknecht (1841-1905), the last HMS-trained missionary to work at Bethesda. Mission activity moved between Mundowdna, Cooranina, to Tankimaria and then Bulcaltaninna due to lack of water, and the future of the mission was less than certain (Harms 2003:63-67). After less than two years’ service, Schoknecht followed Gößling and Homann to the more hospitable southern regions of the state and did not return. Thus concluded the involvement of HMS trained missionaries among the Diyari, the Kuyani and other groups of people at Lake Eyre. Again, the station was managed by the tenacious Vogelsang and Jacob families, this time for a period of four years, until they were partially relieved by the arrival of lay missionary C.A. Meyer, an “elder of the Langmeil congregation” in South Australia (Hebart 1938:189), and in 1878 by the first Neuendettelsau missionary, J.Flierl.
8.4 Provenance of the early analysis of Diyari

All later missionary grammars of Diyari (Schoknecht 1872; Flierl 1880; Reuther 1894; 1899) replicate almost the entirety of the existing parts of Koch’s MS grammar (1868). All were written in German, and contain little additional analysis. A few passages are, however, given in this earliest Diyari grammar that are not reproduced in later works.

Schoknecht’s MS grammar of Diyari, written in German in 1872, was published in English translation by Schoknecht’s descendants (1947), and is reproduced in Kneebone (2005b). The original German MS remains with the family and has not been sighted for this study.

The existence of a grammar predating Schoknecht’s analysis (1872), written by W. Koch was only established in 2005, by Kneebone (2005b:13-14). In correspondence with HMS mission director Harms, Koch refers to his grammar of Diyari as Grundzüge der Grammatik [Basics of a Grammar]. The work is known to have been sent by the missionaries in Australia to Harms in Germany (Harms 2003:297). Kneebone refers to it as the “lost handwritten manuscript by Wilhelm Koch” (2005b:14).

However, another copy of the earliest grammatical description of Diyari produced before Homann’s departure (1871) remained in Australia. After the final withdrawal of the last HMS missionaries, lay missionary C. AMeyer prepared to travel to Bethesda in order to relieve Vogelsang and Jacob. In the days before his departure from the Barossa Valley, it appears that Meyer wrote to Homann requesting that Homann supply him with a grammar of Diyari. Homann’s response communication (1875) shows that a grammar of Diyari predating Schoknecht’s analysis remained in Australia:

I am quite happy to allow my work regarding the Dieri language to be copied, but I would not like to let it out of my hands, the works are too dear to me for that. In case you want to copy them here, I am happy to be at your disposal to impart important information about them regarding learning the language and if necessary to make them more complete.

In 2013, I located a copy of Koch’s original MS grammar in a box of papers acquired by the University of Adelaide’s Barr Smith Library Rare Books and Special Collections (henceforth BSL) from Professor J.A. FitzHerbert, Hughes Professor of Classics at Adelaide University between 1928 and 1957.
The MS has no title page, and initial pages giving an introductory listing of word-classes and a discussion of phonology and orthography are missing. The work commences with table headed ‘Changes in the declension of the indefinite article’, showing case forms of the indefinite article in each gender in German, as if the author needed to remind himself of the analysis of his mother tongue before understanding Diyari. The work concludes after the discussion of verbs and does not include the later word-class headings: adverb, postposition, conjunction and interjection, which are found in other grammars of the language. Sections under the heading ‘the verb’ are also missing — Bermerkungen zu der Zeitformen (Observations about the Tenses) and Bildung der Verben (Formation of Verbs) — although blank pages in the middle of the document suggest that they were intended to be filled in.

Comparison of handwriting samples shows that the BSL MS grammar is written in the uneducated hand of H.H.Vogelsang (Figure 158), who is said to have had “a good, basic primary school education as judged by the quality of his written German (J.Strehlow 2011:265). Vogelsang is also known to have sent a copy of a Diyari grammar to A.W.Howitt (1830-1908), with whom he corresponded. Vogelsang sent the grammar to Howitt in October 1878, the year before Flierl’s arrival, writing (1878): “I send to you with this post a small grammar of the Diari language” Note that this evidence is contrary to Kneebone’s assumption (2005b:18) that lay missionaries would have made no written record of Diyari, “according to the hierarchy and work-division of the mission”.

---

72 The notebook containing the grammar is one of four small water-damaged books that are written in a miniscule and almost illegible Sütterlin script. I thank Peter Mühlhäuser for arranging funding for transcription and translation into English of the document. The work was skillfully carried out by Thomas Krückemeyer.

73 ‘Abänderung Deklination des unbestimmten Artikels’

74 “Ich sende Ihnen mit dieser Post eine kleine Grammatik über die Diari Sprache” (letter H. H. Vogelsang to A.W.Howitt 2 Oct. 1878)
The first dated 7/6/1880 is based on an English script that Vogelsang used in the grammar to represent Diyari words. The second dated 24/10/1881 is based on the old German script, a more relaxed style, which Vogelsang used in sections of text written in German.

The ‘Diary’ notebooks are likely to have come into the possession of Professor FitzHerbert during the 1920s when H.H.Vogelsang’s son, E.T.Vogelsang, was employed at the South Australian Museum as an attendant, and was attempting to translate the Reuther MS into English for publication. FitzHerbert, at the University of Adelaide, situated adjacent to the South Australian Museum, was at the same time investigating Australian languages. FitzHerbert himself translated Vol. V of Reuther’s MS. The translation is held by the BSL and is presumably the grammar and vocabulary which Austin (2013:247[1981a]) refers to as being
“compiled by the late Professor FitzHerbert apparently based upon Reuther (1899). I have searched for this material in Adelaide but was unable to find it.”

FitzHerbert also supervised the first grammars of Australian languages written for academic award: J.R.B.Love’s (1938[1933]) grammar of Worora, and the grammar of Western Arrernte written by T.G.H.Strehlow (1944[1938]), in which Elkin (1944:1) described FitzHerbert’s role as that of “the helpful godfather”. In 1930 FitzHerbert formed “a small language committee at the University of Adelaide” (Tindale 1935:261) with South Australian Museum ethnologist N.B.Tindale (1900–1993) and South Australian pastoralist and geologist, C.Chewings.

While the BSL MS was written by Vogelsang, its content is not Vogelsang’s original analysis. Passages of the BSL grammar which are not contained in later corpus Diyari grammars confirm that the author was highly educated. Examine, for example, the following remark (1868:no pag.):

It is easily explainable why we have not found any other tenses apart from the main forms. In a language which moves only within the sensual and the coarsely material, as does the Diari language, it follows that there is no mention of any historical tenses.75

Observe also the use of Latin terminology, and the etymological remark about the term ‘Zeitwort’, literally ‘time word’, which appear in the following introductory section to ‘the verb’, but which are absent from other missionary grammars of Diyari:

About the Zeitwort (verb).
The verb expresses an activity in both or one voice and, at the same time, defines the time it is happening, which is also where it has its name from.
For each verb, one has to note:
1. the gender or (genus)
2. the mood “ (modus)
3. the tense “ (tempus)
4. the number “ (numerus)
5. the person “ (persona)
6. the conjugation“ (conjugation)” (Koch 1868)76

The BSL Diyari grammar is established here as Vogelsang’s copy of Koch’s Grundzüge der Grammatik [Basics of a Grammar] (1868) on internal orthographic evidence. Koch’s authorship is confirmed through comparative examination of the analysis given in the early

75 Es ist leicht erklärlich, warum wir keine weiteren Tempora, als die Hauptformen gefunden haben. In einer Sprache, die sich nur im sinnlichen u. grob materiellen bewegt, wie die Diari Sprache, ist deshalb auch nicht von historischen Tempora die Rede (Koch 1868 no pag.).

76 Vom Zeitwort (Verbum) Das Zeitwort drückt eine Thätigkeit, in beiden oder einem Zustand aus, u. bestimmt zugleich die Zeit wann es geschieht, woher es auch seinen Namen hat. Bei jedem Verbum hat man zu merken: 1. die Gattung oder (Genus) 2. die Art [oder] (Modus) 3. die Zeit [oder] (Tempus) 4. die Zahl [oder] (Numerus) 5. die Person [oder][Persona] 6. die Abänderung [oder] (Conjugation)” (Koch 1868 no pag.).
Diyari sources. The differences between the sources are important when establishing that the BSL MS Grammar of Diyari is a copy of Koch’s Grundzüge der Grammatik [Basics of a Grammar](1868) (§8.4.1.1).

Schoknecht’s grammar (1947[1872]) is followed by a vocabulary, which gives over 1,000 Diyari-German entries, followed by German-Diyari. Like the earlier Dresdener vocabularies (Teichelmann & Schürmann 1840; Meyer 1843; Schürmann 1844a) all items are arranged alphabetically in a single list and are not portioned into separate alphabetical listings for different parts of speech and semantic domains, as was the practice of Threlkeld (1834) and Ridley (1866;1875). It is probable that the lexical material originates from the earlier Homann and Koch phase of mission, although an earlier MS vocabulary has not been located.

8.4.1 Orthographic treatment of the lamino-palatal stop

During the short phase in which HMS missionaries worked with the Diyari (1866-1873), a primer was produced for publication. The thirty-two-page primer was published in 1870, after Koch’s death and before Homann’s departure (Figure 159).

Assigning authorship to the translations made in the primer is not straightforward. Two of the seven Diyari hymns are shown as having been translated by Koch (1870:26). Although the translator of the remaining five hymns, the commandments, psalms and catechism is not given, the Report of the Lutheran Mission (1885) stated that Koch “translated the Creed, the Ten Commandments, and the Lord’s Prayer” (p.3). Yet the work has been attributed to Homann &
Gößling (Graetz 1988:100) and to Homann alone (Harms 2003:59). The 1870 primer is here attributed to Homann & Koch.

Austin (2013:241[1978]) observes two orthographic features which show that the work pre-dates involvement by Flierl. He suggests that the author is Schoknecht, although Schoknecht had not yet arrived at the mission at the time of the primer’s publication. One of the features observed by Austin, the failure to represent velar nasals word initially, is typical of early spelling systems of PN languages. The second feature, the use of the letter ‘x’, is unique within Australian Aboriginal languages, being used only by the HMS missionaries when describing Diyari.

The early HMS missionaries used the letter ‘x’ to represent the lamino-palatal stop, which in Diyari is sometimes heard as an affricate [çʃ] (Austin 2013:25[1981a]). The consonant is most usually represented in early PN sources using the digraphs ‘tʃ’ and ‘ch’, including by Gason in Diyari (1874). In modern sources it is standardly represented as ‘ty’, ‘tʃ’ and ‘j’. Schoknecht (1947:1[1872]) listed the Greek letter ‘x’ in his Diyari alphabet stating: “x is pronounced, like the Greek X as tj, for example, Xika, pronounced tjika”.

As pointed out by Kneebone (2005b:101-105;359), the missionaries’ use of the letter ‘x’ appears to follow the Lepsius universal alphabet (1855;1863), in which the symbol was used to represent the uvular and velar fricatives, or, with an acute accent, palatal fricatives (Whitney 1861:323-324). The use of the symbol in Diyari, without an acute accent, was applied to the affricate and thus differs from Lepsius’ use. The standardised alphabet of K.R.Lepsius gained currency in protestant missionary circles and was also utilised by philologists, including H.C.von der Gabelentz (Kemp 2006:403-404).

It is this orthographic feature that establishes that the analysis given in the BSL MS grammar was made during the earliest HMS phase of mission activity. The consistency with which the letter ‘x’ is engaged in the BSL MS compared with other early sources shows that the original grammar from which Vogelsang made a copy pre-dates other extant grammars of Diyari, the earliest of which is Schoknecht 1872, and as such is attributable to Koch (1868). 77

8.4.1.1 Forensic investigation of the Diyari orthographies

The letter ‘x’ appears in the title of the first Diyari primer (Homann & Koch 1870) (Figure 159) in the representation of the suffix -yiṭye ‘habitual association’ (Austin 2013:45[1981a])

77 I have previously attributed the work to Homann & Koch (1868) (Stockigt 2015) but on further consideration now consider the grammar to be Koch’s own analysis.
–iexa. The symbol was used *consistently* throughout the primer to represent the lamino-palatal stop (Figure 160):

![Sample text from The Diyari primer, Homann & Koch 1870:16](image)

The use of the letter ‘x’ was abandoned altogether by the later missionaries trained at Neuendettelsau. For example, while Homann & Koch (1870) represented the form of *Dityi-nhi* “day-LOC” in Luther’s third commandment: “Thou shalt sanctify the holy day” as *Dixini*, Flierl (1880) wrote *Ditjina*.

Schoknecht’s grammar, however, used the symbol inconsistently to represent the consonant. Schoknecht gave *kutyi* “devil” as *kuchini* (*kutyi-nhi*, devil- LOC) (Figure 161). The primer gave *kuxi* (Figure 160). Schoknecht also wrote *tyika* “mistake” as either: *xika* or *tjika*.

![Sample of Schoknecht’s orthography, 1947:3(1872)](image)

The BSL MS grammar used the letter ‘x’ more consistently than Schoknecht did in his 1872 grammar and vocabulary. Compare for example, the representations of the phone in each author’s discussion of the derivational affix –*kantyi*, ‘excessive concern’ (excess) (Austin 2013:45[1981a]). The BSL MS shows *kanxi* (Figure 162) while Schoknecht gave *kantji* (Figure 163).
But most significantly, when illustrating reciprocal constructions, each of the missionary grammars of Diyari gave a verb translated as “Liebet euch untereinander!” (you all love one another!). The BSL grammar gives \textbf{anxamalianimai}. The form is identical to that given in hymn five of the primer (1870:28)

103. \textbf{Anxamalianimai}

“Liebet euch untereinander”

\textit{Ngantya-mali-ya-ni -mayi}

Love-RECIP-IMP-pl-EMPH

“you all love one another!”

Schoknecht’s grammar, on the other hand, represented the reciprocal verb as:

104. \textbf{antja mali animai}

(Schoknecht 1947:9[1872]).

The above orthographic evidence establishes that the BSL MS. grammar of Diyari is a copy of Koch’s 1868 grammar.
8.4.2 Concluding remark

Significant grammatical description of Diyari was produced during HMS’ involvement at Bethesda (1868-1872). The HMS missionaries laid the groundwork for the later and more enduring Neuendettelsau-phase of the mission at Bethesda. They secured the co-operation of members of the local community and forged relationships which continued to benefit the Neuendettelsau missionaries in acquiring the language. Pingilina, who in adulthood was a significant contributor to the translation and linguistic analysis of Guugu-Yimidhirr, having travelled to the Cape Bedford mission in Queensland with C.A Meyer (Appendix 1 §1.3.2), had, as a young man, worked closely with Homann at Bethesda. It may be his name that appears in the HMS grammarians’ declension of proper names (Koch 1868:no pag.) (Figure 164). Pingilina returned to Bethesda from Queensland in 1892, and it may also be his name that appears in same paradigm given by Neuendettelsau-trained Reuther in 1894 (Figure 165).

![Figure 164: Koch’s declension of a male personal name, 1868:no pag.](image)

![Figure 165: Reuther’s declension of a male personal name, 1894:13](image)

8.5 Neuendettelsau Missionaries

The second group of Lutheran missionaries at the Bethesda mission were trained at the Neuendettelsau Mission Society. The society had been established in Bavaria in 1841 by Rev. W. Löhe in response to the need of German emigrants in America for German clergy. Before
forming an alliance with South Australian ELIS in 1875, the society did not train candidates for mission work, termed äussere mission (outer-mission), but concentrated on producing pastors for innere mission (inner-mission), who would serve existing Lutheran and German-Protestant congregations. The preparation of graduates for outer mission in Australia, and in the German colonies in New Guinea and East Africa, commenced in the last quarter of the nineteenth century. Unlike the training received at the HMS, but like that at the Dresden Mission Institute, Neuendettselsau prepared men for ordination as Lutheran pastors as well as missionaries. The young candidates usually came from grammar schools and received either three or four years training. Of the training missionaries received at Neuendettelsau, (Ganter 2016e) writes:

From its humble beginnings, the curriculum was steadily built up. In 1859 the teaching timetable started at 8am and ended at 7pm, including half a day on Saturdays, with five hours of formal instruction, interspersed with two hours of independent study. About half of the teaching was dedicated to instruction in English, Hebrew, Latin and Greek. Next to theological training, candidates were also instructed in piano, violin and singing, and writing and oratory. It was hardly possible to extend the daily routine, so more years were added to the training. The 1861 graduates had spent three years at the college. From 1892 this increased to four years, and by 1913 the training had grown to six years.

Missionary training became increasingly rigorous under the directorship of Johannes Deinzer. Deinzer trained all of the Neuendettelsau missionaries who wrote grammars of PN languages, except for J. Riedel. These were: Flierl (1880), Reuther (1894;1899;1901a;1901b), C. Strehlow (c.1907;1908;1910), and Poland & Schwarz (1900), as well as Siebert (§8.5.2.3), and Wettengel (§8.5.3) (Figure 166).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Missionary</th>
<th>Mission</th>
<th>Grammar</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>J.Flierl (1858-1947):</td>
<td>Bethesda 1878-1885; Cape Bedford 1886</td>
<td>Diyari 1880; Wangkangurru 1880</td>
<td>Based on Koch 1868</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.J.Reuther (1861-1914)</td>
<td>Bethesda 1888-1906</td>
<td>Diyari 1899; Wangkangurru 1901</td>
<td>Based on Koch 1868</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C.Strehlow (1871-1922)</td>
<td>Bethesda 1892-1894; Hermannsburg 1894-1922</td>
<td>Arrernte c.1907, 1908, 1910</td>
<td>Luritja 1910</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O.Siebert 1871-1957</td>
<td>Bethesda 1896-1902</td>
<td></td>
<td>Possible author of the Wangkangurru and Yandruwandha material in Reuther 1901</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N.Wettengel (1869-1923)</td>
<td>Bethesda 1896-1902; Hermannsburg 1902-1906</td>
<td></td>
<td>Informed Planert (1907; 1908)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.H.Schwarz (1868-1959)</td>
<td>Elim/Cape Bedford 1887-1942</td>
<td>Guugu-Yimidhirr 1900</td>
<td>Informed Roth (1901), although the template of the 1900 description is taken from Roth (1897)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W.G.F.Poland (1866-1955)</td>
<td>Elim/Cape Bedford 1887-1909</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Figure 166: Neuendettelsau missionary-grammarians trained by Deinzer*

Equipped with this training, the PN grammars written by the Neuendettelsau missionaries might be expected to be of a higher quality and more analytically insightful than grammars written by missionaries trained at the HMS seminary, who had received a less demanding training.

### 8.5.1 J.Flierl

J.Flierl, the first Neuendettelsau-trained missionary in Australia arrived at Bethesda in 1878 at the age of twenty. Flierl had completed three years training under Deinzer, who described him as “one of my most gifted pupils” (quoted in J.Strehlow 2011:250).

Flierl engaged deeply in the linguistic aspects of mission work, making revisions and additions to the first Diyari primer (Homann & Koch 1870), which was published in 1880: *Christianelli ngujangugura-pepa Dieri jaurani & Papaia buru kulnolu*. On the basis of this work, Austin (2013:242[1978]) states: “Flierl had a good command of the language”. Flierl also produced a Diyari reader, Bible history and hymnal which was published in 1883 titled: *First
Reading-book in the Dieri language, Wonini-Pepa Dieri-Jaurani Worapala. Both of these booklets continued to be used in the mission school over the coming decades, and were not updated until W. Riedel (c.1914).

Flierl continued the process of refining the orthography printed in the first primer (1870). He did away with the use of the letter ‘x’. He innovated the representation of the retroflex lateral, at least in some words, for example, in the ergative interrogative warli, shown by Reuther (1894) as warle, but by Koch (1868) and Schoknecht (1872) as wale. Flierl represents the initial velar nasal more consistently than earlier missionaries, showing, for example, 1sg.LOC/ALL (labelled ‘dative’) as ngakangu (Flierl 1880; Reuther 1899) whereas Koch (1868, no pag.) and Schoknecht (1947:5[1872]) had shown nalkangu. Orthographic differentiation of interdental, palatalised and retroflex nasals and stops was not achieved by any of the four missionary grammarians. For example, the Diyari 3plACC proximal pronoun thananha-ya continued to be shown as tananaia in all four missionary sources, and 3plDAT thanarni is shown as tanani (labelled ‘genitive’), and 3sgnfDAT, nhungkarni as nunkani.

8.5.1.1 Flierl’s comparative grammar of Diyari and Wangkangurru (1880)

Flierl’s major grammatical contribution to further analysis of Karnic structure was his brief grammar of Wangkangurru. Maintaining contact with Aboriginal people at Lake Eyre was a continuing challenge during this stage of mission work and Flierl travelled to the north east of the mission in order to contact surrounding Aboriginal populations. Lay missionary Jacob, who contributed vocabularies of other Karnic languages to Curr (1886a; 1886b; 1886c), also contacted speakers of surrounding languages who did not reside at the mission. Earlier mission references to this neighbouring Karnic language had been made by Schoknecht (Hercus 1994:19) and by Homann (1868), who wrote that he taught children from five tribes “Diaeri, Wonkanurro, Terrari, Aumeni und Wonkarappanna [Diyari, Wangkangurru, Thirrari, Ngamini, Arabana]” (quoted in Harms 2003:259).
Flierl’s Wangkangurru grammatical material is given in a comparative grammar of Diyari and Wangkangurru (1880). The Diyari material appears on the left hand side of a double page headed “D” and the equivalent, but less detailed, Wangkangurru material on the right, headed ‘W’ (Figure 168). Flierl also compiled a comparative Diyari Wangkangurru vocabulary, which is set out in exactly the same fashion (no date a). This work is held in the Basedow papers in the Mitchell library, while its sister document, the grammar, is at the Lutheran Archives in Adelaide. Flierl also compiled a comparative vocabulary which tabulates pronouns in four languages: Diyari, Ngamini, Wangkangurru and Arabana (no date b). This work was sent by Flierl to Deinzer and is held in Neuendettelsau (Figure 169).

Flierl left Bethesda in 1885 in order to establish a mission in German New Guinea (1884-1919). While delayed in Cooktown, he founded the Lutheran Elim mission (Cape Bedford, Hopevale) on an Aboriginal reserve north of Cooktown at Cape Bedford (Appendix 1§1.3.2).
Figure 168: Flierl's comparative DIYARI and WANGKANGURRU grammar 1880

Page showing verb paradigm

Figure 169: Flierl's comparative vocabulary of four languages spoken close to the mission 1880

Page showing nominal and pronominal paradigms.
8.5.2 J.G.Reuther

Flierl was replaced by the Neuendettelsau graduate J.G.Reuther (1861-1914), who had received only two years missionary training. Regarded by his teacher, Deinzer as linguistically untrained, and having struggled with classical languages, Reuther dropped the study of Latin, but persevered with Classical Greek, since the Lutheran tradition uses Classical Greek — more correctly Koine Greek — as the source language for translation of the Holy Scriptures (J.Strehlow 2011:332). Reuther was later described as being “lame at languages” (§8.5.2.3; see Kenny 2013:88).

Reuther arrived at Bethesda in 1888 and remained until 1906, during which time the Christian instruction and vernacular literacy booklets prepared by Flierl (1880;1883) continued to be used in the mission school. No new linguistic materials were produced by Reuther prior to the arrival of fellow Neuendettelsau graduate C.Strehlow in 1892. Strehlow worked with Reuther at Bethesda for two years before being transferred to Hermannsburg where he made grammatical description of Arrernte and Luritja (§9.2.2).

Within a year of C.Strehlow’s arrival, Reuther and Strehlow began the enormous task of translating the entire New Testament into Diyari (J.Strehlow 2011:326). Testamenta Marra was published in 1897 at Auricht’s Printing Office in Tanunda. It is the first whole translation of the New Testament into any Australian language.

8.5.2.1 Reuther’s grammars

There is a gap of fourteen years between Flierl’s comparative grammar (1880) and Reuther’s earliest known Diyari grammar (1894). This MS grammar, which is held at the Lutheran Archives in Adelaide, is almost identical to a later grammar completed by Reuther in 1899. The later Reuther work is held within Volume 5 of Reuther’s substantial unpublished German manuscript of 13 volumes, which records Diyari culture, language and belief, and is held at the South Australian Museum. Reuther’s 1899 grammar is the most well known missionary analysis of Diyari, having been translated into English by L.A.Hercus and T.Schwarzschild in 1981. Volume 5 also contains separate and less extensive grammatical descriptions of two other Karnic languages, Wangkangurru and a dialect of Yandrruwandha (Austin 1981c:73-74), which were also translated into English in 1981. The Yandrruwandha grammar is the least detailed of the three works, and the grammar of Diyari the most detailed. Austin (1981c) annotates the translation of the original three analyses.

In addition to the four languages given in an earlier comparative vocabulary by Flierl (no date b) — Diyari, Ngamini, Wangkangurru and Arabana — Reuther (1899) supplied data for
Thirrari, Yawarrawarka, Yandruwandha, and the northern Thura-Yura language Kuyani (Figure 167).

Reuther’s record of the distinctive marking of case on singular and non-singular nouns and pronouns shown in his nominal case paradigms (8.6.3.4) substantially improves on the record left by Flierl (1880), Schoknecht (1947[1872]) and Koch (1868).

Parts of Reuther’s grammars are overtly comparative, observing points of grammatical difference between the three languages. For example, Reuther (Jandruwantha grammar 1901, translated Hercus and Schwarzschild 1981:56) wrote:

> In Diari there are three declensions: two of common nouns and one of proper nouns but in Wangkangurru there are only two: one of common nouns and one of proper nouns. In Jandruwanta proper nouns are identical in declension with common nouns, kinship terms, however, have their own declensions: Jandruwanta thus has one declension of ordinary nouns and two declensions of kinship terms.

Reuther (Hercus & Schwarzschild 1981:38) also observed that in contrast to Diyari, which has a gender distinction on third person singular pronouns, “Wonkanguru makes no difference of gender whatsoever: masculine, feminine and neuter are all rendered by the same third person pronouns and demonstratives.”

8.5.2.2 Comparison of Reuther’s and Flierl’s grammars of Wangkangurru (1880;1901)

Reuther’s Wangkangurru grammar (1901) provides considerably more analytical detail and example clauses than Flierl’s grammar of the same language (1880).

The 1901 grammar, for example, gives paradigms for inclusive and exclusive non-singular first person pronouns (1981:36), while Flierl’s earlier work (1880) had provided only the inclusive terms. Interestingly, Reuther includes a description of the allative case suffix before the tables of nominal declension: “the ending –ruku is used as a post-position: it occurs when one wishes to imply movement towards the object in question” (Hercus & Schwarzschild 1981:31). While also described here as a ‘post-position’, the description of the form and function of the allative case suffix within the description of nominal declension does not occur in any other missionary grammars written at Bethesda (§8.6.2).

The description of ordinal numbers in the 1901 Wangkangurru grammar is of considerable interest, differing from that given in all Diyari grammars and in the Yandruwandha work (1901). Reuther’s Diyari grammar follows previous Diyari grammars (e.g., Schoknecht 1947:9[1872]) in stating that there are no ordinal numbers. Under the heading ‘Ordinal numbers’ the Wangkangurru grammar (1981:35[1901]), however, lists forms translated as ‘the first’ … ‘the fourth’, ‘the last but one’ and ‘the last of all’. As Austin (1981c:54) observes:
“these words can scarcely be regarded as ordinal numbers. They are derivatives formed with – nganha (Reuther’s ngana), an elative adjectival suffix meaning ‘originating from’, which is common to Wangkangurru”. The elative suffix is described (Hercus 1994:108) as rarely marking case on pronouns and “usually refer[ing] to locations and times. ‘Ordinal numbers’ in Wangkangurru had not been described by Flierl (1880).

As noted by Austin (1981c:54), there are problems with Reuther’s listing of ergative and nominative case forms in the Wangkangurru and Yandruwandha grammars. In Wangkangurru, the first person plural pronouns are shown as tripartite (A/S/O), whereas Austin records them as marked with an accusative system (AS/O). This mistake was imported from Flierl’s analysis (Figure 181), which appears to have extrapolated the tripartite marking of 1pl pronouns in Diyari into Wangkangurru. Further, in Yandruwandha there is confusion concerning the nominative and ergative forms of demonstratives (1981c:75).

8.5.2.3 Otto Siebert

The Neuendettelsau-trained missionary Otto Siebert arrived at Bethesda in 1896. Known as ‘the bush missionary’ (Hercus & McCaul 2004:36), his task was to “work among the aborigines living in camps in the surrounding districts” (Hebart, 1938:190). A tradition of travelling away from the mission site in order to preach to Aboriginal populations had been established at Bethesda at least since Flierl’s time. Equipped with a tent, Siebert frequently visited Diyari and Wangkangurru camps far from the mission, which Reuther as mission-manager was unable to do.

It is possible that Siebert contributed to the grammatical analysis of Karnic languages made during the later Neuendettelsau stage of mission activity.

Like Vogelsang, Siebert corresponded with Howitt, and contributed Wangkangurru and Diyari material to Howitt’s The Native Tribes of South-East Australia (1904). Siebert studied Wangkangurru society, as suggested in the title of his 1910 publication: Sagen und Sitten der Dieri und Nachbarstämme in Zentral-Australien (Siebert 1910) [Legends and customs of the Dieri and neighbouring tribes in Central Australia].

Siebert was an astute linguist, observing (quoted in Kneebone 2005b:372-373) that the style of language spoken at the mission and used in translation, which he termed ‘Küchen-Dieri’ (kitchen Diyari), differed from gemeinverständlichen Dieri (commonly understood, Diyari) spoken away from the mission. When writing to Howitt in 1899 (see Nobbs 2005:32), Siebert observed that the widely-acclaimed publication by B.Spencer (1860-1929) and F.J.Gillen (1855-1912), The Native tribes of Central Australia (1899), was linguistically ill-informed.
Siebert translated a collection of eighty psalms while at Bethesda (Nobbs 2005:42). They remain unpublished and are not held in the public domain. The Siebert family gave the documents to Chris Nobbs, who continues to hold them privately. Preliminary investigation suggests that are all written in Diyari.

The strongest suggestion that Siebert did make his own independent analysis comes from his own recollections of his interaction with Reuther. Late in life, when in Germany, Siebert corresponded with E.T.Vogelsang, son of H.H.Vogelsang, who was attempting to translate the Reuther MS translation while working at the South Australian Museum. Siebert (1935) recalls some academic jealousy between himself and Reuther. In the 1930s, when the South Australian Museum endeavoured to have the Reuther MS published in English, N.Tindale travelled to Germany and interviewed Siebert, who described Reuther as “lame at languages” (Tindale 1937b). Siebert also stated that the grammatical material in Eylmann (1908) was not Reuther’s but his own analysis. Eylmann (1908:93), however, acknowledged Reuther as supplying the Diyari grammatical material.

8.5.3 Planert’s grammar of Diyari (1908)

In 1908, Wilhelm Planert (1882-post1940), a linguistic student associated with the Königliches Museum für Völkerkunde (Royal Museum for Ethnology) in Berlin published a grammar of Diyari in the well regarded German ethnographic journal Die Zeitschrift für Ethnologie. This Diyari grammar appeared as “Australische Forschungen II. Dieri-Grammatik” (1908) and was preceded by a grammar of Arrernte (1907a): “Australische Forschungen I. Aranda-Grammatik”.

Planert had previously studied Khoisan languages spoken in German South West Africa (present day Namibia), publishing Über die Sprache der Hottentotten und Buschmänner (1905) and Handbuch der Nama-sprache in Deutsch-Südwestafrika (1905). His description of languages spoken in the German colonies continued with his study of Samoan, Einige Bemerkungen zum Studium des Samoanischen (1906), and the publication of his Ph.D. dissertation, Die Syntaktischen Verhältnisse des Suaheli (1907), on Swahili, in the same year that his first Australian grammar was published.

With this background it is not surprising that Austin (2013:245[1978]) assesses Planert’s description of Diyari as showing “a much keener awareness of linguistics and an insight into the workings of the Diyari language [than the missionaries’ grammars]”. Planert’s PN grammars of Arrernte (1907a) and of Diyari (1908) are anomalous to the corpus in being synchronic descriptions published outside the country. Written within the heart of German
philological discourse, these works are of a different style to others in the corpus. As summarised by Austin (2013:245[1978]), Planert’s Diyari grammar sits within a different theoretical framework from grammars of PN languages written in Australia.

Planert’s attention was drawn to PN languages by the return from Central Australia of the Neuendettelsau-trained missionary N. Wettengel (1869–1923). Having been dismissed by the Immanuel Synod Mission Committee in 1906 (§9.2.1), Wettengel contacted the Berlin museum in order to sell ethnographic artefacts (J. Strehlow 2011:960-962). Like many other missionaries at the time in Central Australia, Wettengel attempted to supplement his income by supplying German museums with difficult to procure ethnographic items. Planert was able to utilise Wettengel’s knowledge of Diyari and of Arrernte, which Wettengel had gained while working at the Bethesda mission (1889–1901) with fellow Neuendettelsau graduates, Reuther, Siebert and Strehlow, and then later at the Hermannsburg mission with Strehlow (1901–1906).

It is clear that Planert’s grammar of Diyari was primarily based on a written copy of the missionaries’ analyses, rather than Wettengel’s knowledge of the language, or on Wettengel’s memory of examples given in the written sources. In Planert’s earlier grammar of Arrernte (1907a:551), he had stated that Wettengel possessed valuable manuscript vocabularies of Diyari and of Arrernte, which he intended to publish. The section describing ‘Postpositionen’ (1908:692), for example, replicates the missionaries’ presentation (Figure 198), giving suffixes in identical order, and translated using the same German prepositional phrases. Planert’s grammars commence with a long initial section headed Wortbildung (Word Building) which is atypical of the corpus. The section provides richer exemplification of derivational processes than do the missionary sources. The initial section of the grammar ‘Wortbildung’ describing derivational morphology is assessed by Austin (2013:245[1978]) as containing “very useful information although there are one or two errors”. That Planert’s grammar contains information about derivational morphology that is not given in other sources suggests that this material was drawn from Wettengel’s vocabularies.

The more complex areas of morphosyntax, including processes of clause subordination, which were exemplified in the missionaries’ grammars (Chapter 10) are absent from Planert’s grammar. From what is known about Wettengel’s linguistic ability, it is likely that these were left out because Wettengel was unable to provide clarification. At the time when C. Strehlow

---

78 The Wettengel collection remains at the Ethnological Museum in Berlin

79 “There are also two valuable manuscripts belonging to Mr Wettengel which should be published, namely an Aranda and a Dieri dictionary”. (Auch sind zwei wertvolle Manuskripte des HrN. Wettengel, nämlich ein Aranda- und Dieri-Wörterbuch, zu publizieren) (Planert 1907a:551).
knew that the publication of an Arrernte grammar informed by Wettengel was imminent, Strehlow (1907) wrote to his German editor Leonhardi stating: “I am not at all afraid of missionary Wettengel’s research, but rather surprised that he dares to write an Aranda Grammar at all, if one keeps in mind his weak grammatical knowledge”. Further confirmation that the material Wettengel supplied to Planert was not his own analysis comes from Siebert, who, in a letter also written to Leonhardi, stated: “The Wettengel’ian Dieri grammar is too good for W[ettengel]. He used the material before him and it was a good thing that he did so” (quoted in Leonhardi 1909).

Planert’s presentation of the syntactic cases differs vastly from the missionaries’ and is discussed in section 8.6.3.2

Unlike most other early PN grammars, both of Planert’s works conclude with a section headed ‘Texte’. In the Diyari grammar these are Biblical texts, and in the Arrernte grammar these are legends. Planert supplied both interlinear-style and free translation. In this way Planert’s works resemble F.Müller’s (1882) grammars, also written in German, which included final sections headed ‘Sprachprobieren’. The inclusion of these sections reflect an Humboldtian descriptive tradition, which came to be known as the ‘Boasian trilogy’ (Darnell 1999:8-9) (§3.2), in which investigation of Volk and language were branches of integrated investigation.

8.5.3.1 European representations of Australian phonology

Planert’s grammars (1907a;1908) employed another noteworthy descriptive convention, which was utilised by European linguists describing PN languages (Lepsius 1855:64;1863:226; Müller 1882; Gatti 1930:17) but which did not become standard practice in Australia until the middle of the 20th century. These European grammarians, all of whom had never heard an Australian Aboriginal language, presented the sounds of Australian languages in systematic diagrams, with consonant inventories set out in tables that mapped place of articulation against manner of articulation, and vowels shown in triangular displays that mapped height against backness. Unlike modern practice, however, manner of articulation is shown on the horizontal axis instead of the vertical, and the vowel triangles are inverted, with the low vowels at the highest, rather than lowest, point of the diagram.

Die Laute.
L Vokale.
a) Einfache Vokale.
  a ü ä ë ë
  i ù u ù

b) Zusammengesetzte Vokale (Diphthonge).
ae, ai, au, ea, ei, oe, ou, ie, io, in, ea, eu, oe, oi, um, ue, ui.
Auch Triphoneme sind nicht selten: aia, aua, aue.
The earliest such representation of an Australian language is in Lepsius (1855:64;1863:266), which refers specifically to Teichelmann & Schürmann’s grammar (1840) (Figure 171), but mentions no other Australian work. Informed by the missionaries’ grammar, Lepsius (1863:226) produced a table of consonants and a vowel triangle purporting to represent Australian sound systems.  

This type of phonological representation is not a feature of the corpus grammars, although Fraser (1892:8), whose classificatory and typological study of Australian languages is in other respects anomalous to the material produced in Australia, attempted such a representation (Figure 172).

Notes made by FitzHerbert (c.1930), a founding member of the Adelaide University Language Committee, comparing spellings of Arandic words taken from multiple historical sources.
sources, including Planert (1907a), show that he was unacquainted with this method of representing Australian phonology. The earliest two-dimensional representation of vowel shape appears to have been made by T.G.H. Strehlow in Western Arrernte (1944:4[1938]). Other than Fraser’s attempt, the next earliest representation of consonants published in Australia appears to have been Capell (1956:8).

**8.5.4 Gatti’s grammar of Diyari (1930)**

In 1930, Giovanni Gatti (dates unknown) published a grammar of Diyari in Italian *La lingua Dieri: contributo alla conoscenza delle lingue Australiane* (The Dieri language: the Australian contribution to the knowledge of languages). As the title suggests, Gatti presented the Diyari material within a broader discussion of Australian linguistic structure and classification, referencing an impressive range of available primary and secondary material.

Gatti’s Diyari material is, however, based in a limited range of sources. In keeping with the containment of the missionaries’ analysis of Diyari from the public domain, Gatti did not have access to the missionaries’ MS grammars. More surprisingly, Gatti did not refer to Homann in Fraser (1892), or to Planert (1908), which were by far the most extensive available resources. He stated (p.47) that his work is informed by Gason in Curr (1886), by Jacob in Curr (1886c), and largely by Reuther and Strehlow’s (1897) translation of the New Testament into Diyari (1897). The work is in this way similar to Ray and Haddon’s grammar of Western Torres Strait (1893), which was based on the structure of the language used in the translations of the Gospel of St Mark (Appendix 1§1.4).

Austin (2013:245[1978]) describes Gatti’s grammar as “suffer[ing] from the deficiencies of the primary sources, especially in phonology”.

It is not known whether the work was produced as a doctoral dissertation, or in what other context it was written. Further investigation might show the extent to which the grammar describes the mission idiom as printed in the New Testament and how this differs from the variety described by Austin (1981, 2013).

A later paper (1934) prepared by Gatti discussed the use of different creoles and pidgins in the Pacific region. In this work Gatti listed Diyari terms for newly introduced items, which were collated from the New Testament translation. He also referred to material supplied by G.Aiston (1879-1943). The work contains a map of sub-groups of Australian languages (Figure 173), which is similar to, but not identical, to the map produced by Schmidt (1919) in German.
8.6 Early analyses of Diyari and other Karnic languages

Having introduced the large body of Diyari grammatical material produced in the pre-contemporary descriptive era, this section assesses and compares the analyses given in different sources.

The missionary-grammarians’ descriptions of Diyari morphology and syntax adhere closely to the structure and terminology inherent to the traditional grammatical framework. They are succinct and relatively short documents in comparison to some other corpus grammars, including Threlkeld’s inaugural PN grammar (1834), Meyer’s grammar of Ramindjeri (1843), Kempe’s grammar of Arrernte (1891) and Roth’s grammar of Pitta-Pitta (1897), all of which were initial descriptions of previously undescribed languages.

Each missionary grammar of Diyari is organised around the nine classical parts of speech and the traditional subheadings thereof. Compare Figure 174 and Figure 175, given by Flierl (1880) and Reuther (1894), which not only name the same Redeteile (parts of speech) in the
same order using Latin terminology, but give the same illustrative example for each. In each grammar the Diyari missionary-grammarians list the sub-types of pronoun shown in Kühners grammar of classical Greek (1834-1835:xxiii) (Figure 8): personal, personal possessive, demonstrative, interrogative, indefinite, reflexive/ reciprocal/ relative, and correlative. The collapse of the three traditionally distinct pronominal sub-headings — reflexive, reciprocal and relative — into a single unit is discussed in section 10.4.3

Figure 174: Flierl’s Redeteile ‘parts of speech’, 1880:6

Figure 175: Reuther’s Redeteile ‘parts of speech’, 1894:2

Within this classical descriptive structure, the grammars of Diyari adequately conveyed a number of PN structures that are not found in classical European languages: ergativity, a split ergative system of marking syntactic case, the difference in the marking of alienably and
inalienably possessed constructions, an inclusive/exclusive distinction in non-singular first person pronouns, and processes of marking clausal dependency within the morphology of the verb. The grammarians tended to appropriate the European classical tradition in order to accommodate foreign structures for which the traditional grammatical framework was descriptively powerless. Koch’s initial description (1868) of some of these PN ‘peculiarities’, written after a relatively short encounter with the language, is neat and concise relative to the PN corpus.

8.6.1 Gender

The missionaries described the gender distinction displayed in the Diyari third person singular pronoun, which distinguishes feminine from non-feminine pronouns (Austin 2013:64[1981a]), in terms of the traditional European division of feminine/masculine. Unlike Roth’s later description of the related Karnic language Pitta-Pitta (1897:2), in which Roth accurately described the two-way gender distinction: “one for the masculine and neuter, the other for the feminine”, the Lutherans assumed the language marked the gender divide in the familiar European way.

The Lutheran missionaries also presented masculine and feminine paradigms of the ‘demonstratives’ showing inflection for case. Koch (1868) described the forms as being “constructed as per the third person of the personal pronoun to which the syllable pini or para is attached”. Koch’s ‘syllables’ are members of what Austin (2013:15) describes as “a complex set of deictic suffixes used with pronouns, locationals and predicate determiners.” The missionaries ‘gendered demonstratives’ are gendered 3sg pronouns suffixed “with one of a set of deictic suffixes which indicate relative location” (Austin 2013:66[1981a]). Of the form para-parra ‘there’ Austin (p.66) states: “seems to indicate location away from the speaker. I have not been able to clarify fully the semantics of this affix.”

The early grammarians perceived a linguistic construction foreign to the traditional grammatical framework and were challenged to find terminology to describe the forms. In arriving upon the label ‘demonstrative’, the missionaries borrowed schema from traditional grammar and use it to label and present the deictic forms that have comparable function. Hence ‘gendered demonstratives’ in Diyari.

The Lutherans also gave a third gender class on pronouns. Schoknecht (1947:1[1872]) wrote: “we shall see when discussing the pronoun, all three genders, masculine, feminine and newter [sic], appear in the language”. While the third person singular three-way distinction is present in German and English, no PN languages make a pronominal three-way gender
distinction. Note that Threlkeld (1834:20-22) had similarly described Awabakal as having masculine, feminine and neuter third person pronouns (§3.2.1.1). The Lutherans’ analysis of three genders in Diyari is, however, differently motivated than was Threlkeld’s, and is unique within both early and contemporary PN analyses.

Evidence for the neuter class is taken from the form of the ‘neuter interrogative pronoun’ *minha* “what?”, which is distinct from the form of the ‘personal interrogative pronoun’ *warli* “who?”. Nouns select different interrogative/indefinite pronouns according to their animacy. In Diyari, the interrogative/indefinite *minha* “covers the set of common nouns with non-human reference” (Austin 2013:58). “The interrogative-indefinite pronoun ‘who?, someone’ rang[es] over the class of pronouns and nouns with human reference” (Austin 2013, p.67). T.G.H.Strehlow came close to the same analysis of ‘neuter’ category in Arrernte, when describing the Arrernte interrogatives, *ngwenhe* “who” and *iwenhe* “what”, as “particularly interesting because it is here that we find the one solitary relic of gender-division still extant in modern Aranda” (1944:59).

8.6.2 Case systems

Throughout more than three decades of successive descriptions of Diyari, the Lutheran missionaries strictly maintained the Latin six case paradigm, presenting cases termed ‘nominative’, ‘genitive’ (dative), ‘dative’ (allative/locative), ‘accusative’, ‘vocative’ and ‘ablative’ (ergative/instrumental).

The Diyari grammars followed Teichelmann & Schürmann (1840) in only placing case suffixes marking functions associated with the case systems of European languages in the paradigm. The practice differs from that employed by Threlkeld (1834) and by Günther (1838;1840) in description of languages spoken in New South Wales. Like Teichelmann and Schürmann (1840), Symmons (1841), Kempe (1891), C.Strehlow (no date), and T.G.H.Strehlow (1938), each of the Diyari sources considered here, with the exception of Gatti (1930:58;64-65), accounted for the remainder of Diyari case morphology under the heading *Postpositionen*.

However, Gatti presented a ten ‘case’ Diyari paradigm (Figure 176), which he constructed largely from Reuther and Strehlow’s New Testament translation (1897). He included suffixes marking the ablative case ‘*ablativo*’, and the dative on female nouns (Austin 2013:55) ‘*dativo di comado*’. He also included a case form termed ‘*comitativo*’, which shows the proprietive suffix –*nthu*, which is analysed by Austin (2013:48) as derivational.
Note that the form of the ergative suffix, termed ‘nominativo agente’, on this female personal name is given incorrectly. No early Diyari grammarian recorded the different case marking on female person names (§8.6.6.1). The ergative form in Gatti’s paradigm should be Mariyandru (Austin 2013:53[1981a]). The function of the suffix Gatti calls ‘limitativo’ consists of the dative plus the post-inflectional suffix –rlu ‘STILL’, so that Maria-ngulu would mean ‘as far as Maria’ (Austin pers. comm. 1/09/2016).

8.6.3 Description of ergativity

Grammarians of Diyari followed Schürmann (1844a) (§7.1.6) in accounting for the difference in the form and function of ergative and nominative nouns and pronouns within the discussion of the verb. It is here that the Diyari grammarians clarified the relationship of verb transitivity to syntactic argument case marking.81

In the earliest Diyari grammar, Koch (1868:no pag.) explained:

81 Koch, and Reuther (1981:3[1899]), however, also provided an additional account of ergative function within the description of nominal morphology. Koch (1868: no pag.) wrote: “The active form is one specific to this language which expresses the subject in an active manner (Die Activform ist eine der Sprache eigenthümliche, welche das Subject activ oder thätig ausdrückt ). He gave the following example, without a translation.

*Koch 1868:no pag.*

?Godalli kalkame tallara kurdı b?ma wirri

?God-ERG wait.IMP-EMPH rain fall-ben-ptcpl aux-PRES

‘God wait, the rain fell for us yesterday’

Austin (pers. com. 01/09/2016) describes this construction as odd, since “it seems to involve the imperative ‘wait!’ but with God as the transitive subject”.

---

Figure 176: Gatti’s case paradigm, 1930:58
For the transitive verbs, one always uses the active form as the subject (both for the pronoun and for the substantive). For the intransitives one uses the nominative, likewise also for the reflexive and reciprocal verbs.  

Koch (1868:no pag.) also distinguished ‘Verba Activa’ (active verbs) from ‘Verba Reflexiva’ (reflexive verbs) and ‘Verba reziproka’ (reciprocal verbs). Active verbs were defined as “verbs describing an activity which is performed by the subject themselves”. These were divided into two classes named transitiva (105, 106) and intransitiva (107, 108) and exemplified. The terms ‘transitive’ and ‘intransitive’ had been previously employed with the same modern reference by Moorhouse (1846:20).

105. **kuba natu nandrai**  
ich schlage den Knaben  

\[\text{kupa ngathu nandra-yi}\]  
boy-[NOM] 1sgERG hit-PRES  
“I hit the boy”  

106. **Kintella kuballi nandrai**  
Der Knabe schlägt den Hund”  

\[\text{Kinthala kupa-li nandra-yi}\]  
Dog-[ACC] child-ERG hit-PRES  
“The child hits the dog”  

107. **nanni wappai**  
Ich gehe  

\[\text{nganhi wapa-yi}\]  
1sgNOM go-PRES  
“I go”  

108. **Kuba tikai**  
Der Knabe kehrt zurück  

\[\text{kupa thika-yi}\]  
Boy-[NOM] return-PRES  
“The child returns”

Each subsequent Diyari grammar gave similar, although not identical clauses to illustrate ergative marking in introductions to the verb. Observe, for example, Flierl’s explanation (Figure 177).

---

82 Regel Bei den transitiven Verben gebraucht man als Subjekt stets die Act. form (sowohl beim pronom als beim Subst.). Bei den intransitiven gebraucht man den Nom., gleicherweise auch bei den Reflectionen u. Reciproken Verben (Koch 1868 no pag.).

83 Note that Koch’s schema is problematic in first assigning reflexive and reciprocal verbs to a non-‘active’ class, before observing that they behave like the ‘intransitive’ category of his ‘active’ class of verbs.
While it is possible that the Diyari grammarians were independently motivated to clarify ergative form and function in this way, and had not been influenced by Teichelmann & Schürmann, the fact that other aspects of the Diyari grammars show unequivocal influence from Teichelmann and Schürmann (1840) (§8.6.3.1; §8.6.3.5; §8.6.7; §10.3.2) lends weight to the hypothesis that in this regard the Diyari grammarians were guided by their Lutheran predecessors.

8.6.3.1 Placement of the ergative case in the paradigm

Following Koch (1868), ergative and instrumental case forms were placed at the bottom of case paradigms and labelled ‘active’ and sometimes ‘ablative’, in each missionary grammar of Diyari and of other Karnic languages (Figure 178, Figure 179).

Teichelmann and Schürmann had been motivated to place the ergative case at the bottom of the paradigm by the syncretism of most nominal types in Kaurna for ergative and instrumental function. Their exemplification of formally distinct ergative and instrumental interrogatives in Kaurna showed that they used the term ‘active’ to label ergative function and ‘ablative’ to label instrumental (Figure 103). In Diyari, however, there is no nominal class for which ergative and instrumental function have distinct forms.

In nominal paradigms, each Diyari missionary-grammarian, with the exception of Reuther (§8.6.3.4), assigned both labels ‘active’ and ‘ablative’ to the ergative-instrumental form at the bottom of the paradigm. In this, they followed Teichelmann and Schürmann (§5.5.2). Note that Koch uses three German prepositions: mit, von and durch — roughly translatable into English

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>V. Verbum.</th>
<th>I Genera verbi.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Verba activa: s. Verba, in nunn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1. Transepurz, j. AMB nuaxatnandrai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>je fleturok kim; kantioki kin,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>telu nandrai, stw Runra fleturok dan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>stw.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Transepurz, j. Longani wapan, ip</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>yna, andri tahal, stw Mintonatofu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
as ‘with’, ’from’ and ‘by’ — to translate the multi-functional form labelled both ‘active’ and ‘ablative’.

Figure 178: Koch’s case paradigm of dual nouns, 1868

Figure 179: Flierl’s case paradigm of singular nouns, 1880:10-11

Like their Lutheran predecessors, the Diyari grammarians, again with the exception of Reuther (§8.6.3.4), used the term ‘active’ in order to capture ergative function and the term ‘ablative’ to capture instrumental function. This is evident from the pronominal paradigms (Figure 180, Figure 181), in which the term ‘ablative’ is not used to name either the ablative or ergative cases. Recognising that pronouns were unlikely to act in the role of instrument, the early grammarians did not assign the label ‘ablative’ to the ergative/instrumental pronominal forms. Pronouns in ergative case are called ‘active’. In doing so, these Diyari grammarians, with the exception of Reuther, followed Teichelmann and Schürmann (Figure 90).
8.6.3.2 Planert’s conception and naming of syntactic cases.

Planert’s grammar of Diyari (1908) and of Arrernte (1907a) used the terms ‘ergative’ and ‘absolutive’ with current reference to describe these syntactic cases.

The term ‘absolute’ had been used with grammatical reference from the sixteenth century to refer to the form of a word that is “not inflected to indicate relation to other words in a sentence” (OED 1933 vol. I, p.37). The first application of the term ‘absolutive’ to a case realised by nominals that remain unmarked in the role of subject and object was made by William Thalbitzer (1904:242-243) in a description of Kalaallisut (West Greenlandic). (Lindner 2013:198; 2015:231,226). In this work, Thalbitzer named the ergative case ‘relative’.

Planert’s use term ‘ergative’ with modern reference, which was followed by C.Strehlow (1908) (§9.2.2.2), had first been used by W.Schmidt (1902:88), when describing the Papuan languages Kai and Miriam (Meryam Mir), and the PN language Saibai (WTS). The term was, however, first used by G.Taplin (1975[1870]:123; 1872:85;1879:123) in a grammar of Ngarrindjeri, but to refer to peripheral case function (Appendix 2§1.3).

Planert’s descriptions of Arrernte (1907a:555) and Diyari (1908:689), which thus make very early usages of the terms ‘ergative’ and ‘absolutive’ with modern reference, are significant
within global history of ergativity in giving the earliest paired oppositional use of the terms ‘ergative’ and ‘absolutive’.

Planert presented a four case analysis of split syntactic case systems (Dixon 2002a:132). When describing syntactic case in Arrernte, he stated: “the absolutive can represent our nominative and accusative cases and the ergative refers to the actor” (1907a:555).

Planert’s description of syntactic case in Diyari employed the terms ‘ergative’, ‘absolutive’, ‘accusative’ and ‘nominative’ with identical reference to that used in the most complete modern description of the language (Austin 2013:52). Planert’s paradigm of Diyari interrogatives, which shows ergative alignment (A/SO), lists no accusative case but gave an ergative and an absolutive (Figure 182).

Because non-singular first and second person Diyari pronouns show accusative alignment (AS/O) and other pronouns show tripartite marking (A/S/O) (Figure 189) pronominal paradigms necessarily listed all three syntactic cases (Planert 1908:689; Austin 2013:52).

---

84 "...der Absolutiv unseren Nominativ und Akkusativ vertreten kann, der Ergativ den Täter bezeichnet" (Planert 1907a:555).
Under this four case analysis, nominals showing accusative alignment (AS/O), like the non-singular first and second person pronouns, are shown standing in either the nominative or the accusative case, and the term nominative is used in its traditional sense. Nominals showing tripartite marking, like the first and second person singular, and third person pronouns, are shown standing in either nominative, accusative or ergative cases. The subsequent dual reference of the term ‘nominative’ — used to refer only to subject where the pronoun shows tripartite marking, but referring to both agent and subject where the pronoun shows accusative alignment — is a consequence of Planert’s four-case dichotomous scheme.85

Planert’s theoretical and terminological innovations, made in a German academic journal before the First World War, have not been noticed by modern linguistic theorists or historians. Dixon (1972:9), who reached the same four-case analysis independently when describing Dyirbal more than sixty years after Planert, was unaware of Planert’s analysis, as was Austin (2013[1981a]) when reaching the same analysis of Diyari. M. Silverstein (1976:112), who reintroduced the term ‘absolutive’ into grammatical descriptions of PN languages, does not refer to Planert’s earlier usage of the term.

8.6.3.3 Teichelmann & Schürmann’s legacy

Teichelmann & Schürmann’s placement of ergative case forms in final paradigmatic position, which they instigated in their first grammar of a language spoken in South Australia (1840),

85 See Wilkins (1989:163-166) for a discussion of other problems arising from a four-case analysis of syntactic case in Arrernte.
was carried forward through the missionaries’ unpublished descriptions of Diyari, into the
grammars of the language published in German in the first decade of the twentieth century.

Planert’s placement of the ergative case last in the paradigm, was influenced either by
Wettengel’s memory of the missionaries’ paradigms, or by a MS grammar Wettengel had in
his possession. Planert’s Arrernte grammar (1907) (Figure 183), by contrast, follows existing
grammars of that language (Kempe 1891; C.Strehlow 1931[c.1907]) in placing ergative forms
in second position next to the nominative.

Like Planert, Eylmann (1908:94) placed Diyari ergative forms last in the paradigm. Gatti
(1930:58-65), however, broke from tradition and labelled the Diyari ergative case ‘nominativo
agente’ and placed it in second paradigmatic position (Figure 176).

8.6.3.4 Reuther’s case paradigms

Reuther’s case paradigms (1894;1899) differ from earlier grammars in the way they label the
ergative case. In contrast to the earlier Diyari missionaries who use either one or both of the
labels ‘active’ and ‘ablative’ to label nouns marked with a suffix that marks ergative and
instrumental functions, Reuther’s grammars (1894;1981[1899;1901a;1901b]), which are the
last and best known missionary descriptions of Karnic languages, only use the term ‘ablative’
(Figure 184). The term ‘active’ is absent from all of Reuther’s case paradigms.

![Figure 184: Reuther's Diyari case paradigm (1894:no pag.) showing the ergative case at the bottom of the paradigm, labelled 'ablative'.]

In this regard, Reuther’s work is similar to Meyer’s, in which the term ‘ablative’ was used
to name ergative case function. Note that in contrast to Koch (Figure 178), who translated nouns
marked in ergative and instrumental function using three prepositions — *mit, von* and *durch* —
Reuther used only *von*.

Providing English equivalents for German prepositions is fraught. The preposition *von*
translates into English as either ‘by’, ‘of’ and ‘from’. Hercus and Schwarzschild (1981:4)
translate Reuther’s German rendition of Diyari ‘ablative’ nominal forms “by X”. Their
translation of the Wangkangurru form labelled ‘ablative’ (1901:31) is, however, translated as
“from X”. This difference is motivated by the syncretism of ergative and ablative functions on nouns in Wangkangurru (Hercus 1994:66). Given the absence of ablative pronominal forms, which do not show syncretism with the ergative case (ibid.,110), from all of Reuther’s Wangkangurru paradigms, it is more likely that the translation “von X” was used to invoke ergative function, as in the Diyari paradigms, rather than ablative. A translation of Reuther’s ‘von X’ into English as ‘by X’ better captures Reuther’s intended meaning of the term ‘ablative’.

Austin (1981c:53) assumes that, when choosing the term ‘ablative’ to name ergative/instrumental case, Reuther was “following the classical tradition [and] was aware of the Latin passive construction and therefore called this agentive case ‘the ablative’”. This had been Meyer’s reasoning for choosing the label ‘ablative’. The “ablative of personal agent” was described by Meyer (1843:38) as having “the force of Latin ablatives”. However, it is possible that, when dropping one of the two case labels previously used by all Diyari grammarians, Reuther also realised that two case labels were unnecessary when naming case forms which never formally distinguish between ergative and instrumental functions. He dropped the term ‘active’ and maintained the term ‘ablative’.

8.6.3.5 ‘Ablative’ interrogative pronouns

The paradigms of Diyari interrogatives from the second half of the nineteenth century show the extent of influence that Teichelmann and Schürmann’s earliest grammar of a South Australian language had on these later Lutheran grammars. Like Teichelmann and Schürmann’s paradigm of Kaurna interrogatives (Figure 103), the descriptions of Diyari also show different ‘active’ and ‘ablative’ forms in the interrogative paradigm. The assumption that Australian languages were structurally similar (§7.2.1) led the early Diyari grammarians to import structures across linguistic boundaries, and to impose Kaurna structures onto Diyari.

The interrogative that was shown in the Kaurna paradigm (Figure 103) as ‘active’, ngando, was illustrated in ergative function (57) and the interrogative ngannarlo labelled ‘ablative’, was illustrated with instrumental function (58). Teichelmann and Schürmann provided these examples to show that these Kaurna interrogatives marked the ‘active’ and ‘ablative’ cases distinctly. Interrogatives were the only nominal type which were not described as showing syncretism for ergative and instrumental case functions.

Influenced by Teichelmann & Schürmann’s description, later Lutheran missionaries also provided distinct ‘active’ and ‘ablative’ forms of ‘personal interrogatives’ in Diyari (Figure 185), as well as in Wangkangurru (Figure 186). While Teichelmann and Schürmann had
carefully exemplified the functional difference of the ergative and instrumental interrogatives in Kaurna (57&58), the distinction is not motivated in Diyari, in which all classes of nominals mark ergative and instrumental function identically (Austin 2013:53[1981a]).

Figure 185: Koch’s case paradigm of interrogatives, 1868:no pag.

Figure 186: Flierl’s case paradigm of interrogatives, 1880:22-23

Diyari forms on the left and Wangkangurru forms on the right

The Diyari interrogative *wale warli,*66 that is labelled ‘active’ in the Diyari interrogative paradigms, is described by Austin (2013:67[1981a]) as the ergative interrogative form.

The form that is shown as ‘ablative’ in each of the missionaries’ interrogative paradigms is not a regular interrogative case form (see Austin, 2013:67[1981a]). The form that the missionaries slotted into the paradigmatic position is a pronoun marking possessive function, which is then marked for ergative case.

Interrogative pronouns with possessive function, translated into English as ‘whose?’, are labelled ‘dative’ by Austin (2013:66[1981a]), and were labelled ‘genitive’ by the missionaries. When in possessive function, these forms may be further inflected for the clausal case in which the possessed NP stands. In Diyari, case is usually marked on the final constituent of a continuous NP, but each constituent can receive case marking if the NP is discontinuous, or

66 There appears to be some confusion in case forms of interrogatives given by the missionaries. While Austin (2013:67[1981a]) describes the marking of syntactic case on interrogatives as showing ergative alignment (A/SO), the missionaries all show distinct nominative and accusative forms.
“where there is special emphasis or contrast intended” (Austin 2013:97[1981a]), as in Figure 187. In this example the possessive 3sgnfDAT pronoun nhungkarni qualifies the head of the possessed NP kinthala dog. The NP ‘his dog’ stands in ergative case, and ergative case marking occurs on both constituents. Note that the ergative suffix is “realised as -li after a and -yali elsewhere” (Austin 2013:35[1981a]), except on female proper names which show -ndru (ibid.,53).

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{kinthala-li} & \quad \text{nhungkarni-yali} & \quad \text{nganha} & \quad \text{matha-rna} & \quad \text{wara-yi} \\
\text{dog-erg} & \quad \text{3sgnf.dat-erg} & \quad \text{1sg.ace} & \quad \text{bite-pipeple} & \quad \text{aux-pres} \\
\end{align*}
\]

‘HIS DOG bit me’

Figure 187: Ergative case marking on both constituents of a continuous NP in Diyari (Austin 2013:97[1981a])

Thus, it is likely that a possessive interrogative might receive clausal case marking in Diyari. Indeed Austin (2013 [1981:67]) states: “It may be possible for interrogative-indefinites in dative case where there is an understood head noun to be followed by noun case suffixes … but there are no examples in the corpus”. It is, however, these forms that are used to fill in the vacant position in the paradigm of interrogative pronouns, notwithstanding the discrepancies that exist between interrogative forms in early sources and modern sources. The possessive interrogative warnini marked with the ergative suffix -li, warnini-li, is the form shown as the Diyayi ‘ablative’ interrogative pronoun. This has not previously been understood.

These missionaries’ ‘ablative’ interrogatives might occur in a phrase such as: ‘whose dog bit the child?’. Flierl’s Wangkangurru ‘ablative’ interrogative (Figure 186) is of the same structure (see Hercus 1994:127):

109. \text{worakunaru} \quad \text{waRakunha-ru} \\
INTER.POSS-ERG

Understanding the missionaries’ rationale for inserting these forms in their paradigms has required a comparison of the material produced by HMS missionaries at Bethesda with earlier grammars of PN languages written by the Dresdener missionaries.

8.6.4 The ablative case

Teichelmann & Schürmann (1840), Meyer (1843) and the Diyari grammarians’ use of the term ‘ablative’ differed from other corpus grammarians, who used the term ‘ablative’ to name the nominal suffix that marked the primary function of the Latin ablative, ‘motion away from’, from the Latin ablātīv-us, “to carry away” (OED, 1933 vol. I:22) (Figure 104). A consequence of Teichelmann & Schürmann’s and the Diyari grammarians’ practice of naming of the case
with ergative and instrumental functions either ‘active’ or ‘ablative’, or simply ‘ablative’, is that nominals standing in ablative case marking the “location from which motion proceeds and indirect cause” (Austin 2013:55[1981a]) were not described within the traditionalist Latin case paradigm. The term had already been ‘used up’ as a descriptor of syntactic case.

Unlike Meyer, who also labelled the ergative case ‘ablative’, Teichelmann & Schürmann and the Diyari grammarians did not introduce an additional place into the paradigm in order to accommodate the primary function of the Latin ablative. Other grammars, including later Lutheran grammars of Arrernte (Kempe 1891; C.Strehlow 1931a [c.1907]), which utilised a five case Latin paradigm, but which conceived of the ergative as a second nominative case (§9.3.3.2), adequately account for PN ablative functions under the heading ‘ablative’. The absence of ablative forms from nominal paradigms and the relegation of the discussion of ablative function to other sections of the grammar, most notably the section headed ‘postpositions’, is peculiar to the early Kaurna and Diyari grammars.

C.Strehlow’s earliest grammar of Arrernte (1931a [c.1907]) (§9.2.2.1) presented comparative case paradigms of nominals in Arrernte, Diyari and Ramindjeri. The ergative case forms were placed in second paradigmatic position and labelled ‘nominative transitive’. Consequently the ablative forms, labelled ‘ablative’ are included in the paradigm (Figure 188). In this way C.Strehlow’s presentation of case in Diyari differs from all other missionary grammars of Diyari.

![Figure 188: Kramer’s copy of C.Strehlow's comparative table of case forms 1931a:48-49 [c.1907]](image)

The Diyari grammarians also exemplified ablative marking and function under the heading ‘correlative pronouns’ (§2.3.4, example 7).

**8.6.5 Split system of marking syntactic case and other case syncretism**

The complexity of the ergative split on different nominal types in Diyari was more complicated than the splits encountered by most earlier grammarians, with the exception of Meyer and Taplin, who described Ngarrindjeri, and Threlkeld, who described Awabakal.
In Diyari the alignment of the marking of the syntactic cases — nominative, ergative and accusative — on different nominal types is sensitive to number and gender (Figure 189). Similarly, peripheral cases: dative, allative, and locative show allomorphic variation according to number, gender, and nominal-subclass (Figure 190).

The record of the split in the marking of the syntactic cases, and the sensitivity to number and gender of nouns in peripheral cases differs across the early sources. It took the missionaries at Bethesda some time to properly convey the marking of different nominal types in nominative, accusative and ergative (‘ablative’) cases, and the different marking of allative/locative and dative cases on different types of nouns.

The following sections assess the missionary-grammarians’ record of case marking on different nominal types in Diyari. Attention is given to the obstacles that compromised the accuracy of the historical record. Figure 189 and Figure 190 are referred to throughout the discussion.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A/SO</th>
<th>AS/O</th>
<th>A/S/O</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ergative alignment</td>
<td>Accusative alignment</td>
<td>Tripartite marking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Male personal names, Singular common nouns, Interrogatives</td>
<td>First and second person non-singular pronouns</td>
<td>First and second person singular, and third person pronouns, Non-singular common nouns, Female person names</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Figure 189: The syntactic alignment of different nominal types in Diyari (from Austin 2013:52)*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case label assigned by Austin</th>
<th>Case label assigned by the missionaries</th>
<th>Singular common nouns</th>
<th>Male personal names</th>
<th>Non-singular common nouns</th>
<th>Female personal names</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>Ablative/Active</td>
<td>-Ø</td>
<td>-nha</td>
<td>-Ø</td>
<td>-ni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ergative/Instrumental</td>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>-li/-yali</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td></td>
<td>-ndru</td>
<td>-ngundru</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative/Possessive</td>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>-ya</td>
<td>-rni</td>
<td>-hangleka</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allative</td>
<td>Dative</td>
<td></td>
<td>-ngu</td>
<td>-hangu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Locative</td>
<td>Dative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-nhi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Figure 190: Syncretism of Diyari cases on different types of noun (content informed by Austin 2013:53-55)*

This table does not show the marking of case on spatial locational nominals, which are a small closed class, and which inflect only for ablative and allative cases (Austin 2013:42[1981a])

Shaded cells indicate suffixes undifferentiated in the missionaries’ orthographies. Each was shown as –nì.
8.6.6 Sensitivity of case marking to number and gender

Strict adherence to the word and paradigm descriptive model was an especially effective method of conveying the sensitivity to number. The application of the model in the initial grammar (Koch 1868) (Figure 191) successfully conveyed the marking of each case included in the paradigms on pronouns in different numbers.

Note that the style of presentation of pronouns in the extant copy of Koch’s analysis differs from later sources, which gave discrete paradigms for person, and placed number on the horizontal axis.
Yet, the following discussion shows that it took the Diyari grammarians decades to properly record the complexity of the systems paradigmatically, and some aspects of the complexity, recorded by Austin, were never captured in the missionaries’ analyses.
Koch’s initial paradigms for common nouns (1868) (Figure 192) failed to show the sensitivity of case marking to number. This earliest case paradigm of a Diyari noun shows the singular kinthala “dog”, and the dual kinthalawurlu ‘two dogs’. Koch did not provide a paradigm for plural nouns. See that the singular accusative and dual accusative forms are each unmarked. Following Koch, no early grammarian before Reuther (1894) recorded that non-singular common nouns show tripartite marking (A/S/O) and are marked with the suffix –nha in accusative case (see Figure 189, Figure 190). Instead, non-singular nouns were shown as having the same ergative alignment (A/SO) as singular nouns.

The dual accusative form shown by Koch (1868:no pag.) (Figure 192) is unmarked:

110. kintella ulo
    *kinthala-wurlu
dog-dl-[ACC]
    ‘two dogs’

Neither Schoknecht (1872) nor Flierl (1880:10, 12) declined dual and plural nominals for case, but rather gave syntagmatic rules stating that case inflection follows inflection for number. Presumably they also thought the situation was no more complicated than Koch had conveyed, and assumed that non-singular nouns were marked in the same way as singular nouns (A/SO).
Reuther’s record of the distinctive marking of case on singular and non-singular nouns and pronouns shown in his nominal case paradigms (8.6.3.4) substantially improves on the record left by Flierl (1880), Schoknecht (1947[1872]) and Koch (1868).

It took grammarians of Diyari over two decades to accurately describe this complexity, with Reuther (1894) being the first grammarian to properly display the sensitivity to number of the marking of the syntactic cases on nouns. His paradigms show ergative alignment (A/S/O) for singular number and tripartite marking on dual and plural common nouns (A/S/O) (Figure 193).
The earliest Diyari sources also failed to show that non-singular common nouns are marked differently for dative ('genitive') case than are singular common nouns. Koch recorded that the dative ('genitive') case was marked with –ya on both singular and non-singular common nouns (Figure 192). Koch failed to note that non-singular dative ('genitive') nouns are marked with –rni. Like the alignment of syntactic case, the unpredictable marking of the dative case on nouns of different number was first recorded in Reuther’s word and paradigm tables (Figure 193). In 1894 Reuther showed the dative ('genitive') singular common noun as kanaia karna-ya, the
dual dative forms as kana wulani karna-wurla-rni and the plural as kana worani karna-wara-rni. The forms accord with those described by Austin (2013:55[1981a]) (see Figure 189, Figure 190). Reuther’s 1899 MS, however, shows the plural form as kana woraia karna-wara-ya taking the same dative suffix as the singular. The alteration may result from a transcription error.

The earlier sources also failed to show that the allative and locative cases, termed ‘dative’, are marked differently on singular and non-singular nouns (see Figure 189, Figure 190). Both the singular and the dual ‘dative’ common nouns were marked with the suffix –ni (Figure 192).

Note that the distinct marking for allative and locative (‘dative’) cases on singular common nouns was not recorded (see Figure 190). The marking of allative function on singular common nouns with the suffix –ya was only exemplified in the missionary-grammarians description of “einsilbige Affixe” (monosyllabic affixes) (§8.6.7).

111. Kintella uluni
Dem beiden Hund
kinthala-wurlu-rni
“For two dogs”

Reuther (1894) shows the ‘dative’ dual form as –ngu, and the plural as –ni. Austin recorded -ngu as the allative/locative suffix on both dual and plural common nouns (see Figure 190). Reuther (1899) gave both –ni and –ngu in the plural. These variations in the marking of locative/allative (‘dative’) function on plural common nouns have not been explained, although Austin (pers. comm 01/09/2016) suggests that Reuther has mixed up the locative suffix –ngu with the dative suffix –rni across the paradigms.

The missionaries’ inability to recognise and/or to orthographically distinguish nasal phonemes at interdental, retroflex and alveolar positions resulted in the identical representation as –ni of the case suffixes –nhi, marking the locative case on common singular nouns, –rni, marking dative case on non-singular common nouns and male personal names, and –ni marking the nominative case on female personal names (Figure 190). The range of functions of these formally distinct suffixes was shown by the missionaries to be marked by the same case form. Understanding which case form and function Koch intended to represent when showing the singular ‘dative’ nouns suffixed with –ni is consequently difficult.

112. Kintellanni
Dem Hund
Kinthala-nhi
“To/of the dog”

The form Kintellanni which Koch translated as ‘dem Hund’, showing the dative form of the German article on the masculine noun, must be marked with the suffix –nhi which marks
the locative case on singular common nouns. This dative singular form given by Koch, Schoknecht (1947:[1872]) and Flierl (1880) could be assumed to be grammatically correct and correctly translated if the form acted as the complement of a verb like *yatha-* ‘to speak’. In Diyari the complement of the verb ‘to speak’ stands in locative case:

113.  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nganhi</th>
<th>nhungkangu</th>
<th>karna-nhi</th>
<th>yatha-rna</th>
<th>wara-yi</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1sgNOM</td>
<td>3sgnf.LOC</td>
<td>person-LOC</td>
<td>speak-ptcple</td>
<td>aux-PRES</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

“I spoke to that man”

(Austin 2013:131[1981a])

In German the complement of *‘sprechen’* stands in the dative case.

Alternatively, the form *kinthala-nhi* might be grammatically correct and correctly translated if it acted as a complement in a construction like the following (Austin pers. comm. 01/09/2016), of which the German translation also has a dative complement:

114.  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nhani</th>
<th>yapa-li</th>
<th>ngana-yi</th>
<th>Kinthala-nhi</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3sgFEMS</td>
<td>fear-INST</td>
<td>be-PRES</td>
<td>dog-DAT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

“Sie hat Angst vor dem Hund”

“She has fear of the dog”

Further, the conservative case paradigms provided by the Diyari grammarians, which, unlike those given by Threlkeld (1834) (Chapter 3) and by Günther (1838;1840) (Chapter 4), only included forms marked by case suffixes carrying functions that are marked morphologically in SAE languages, were powerless to convey the asymmetry in the syncretism of allative, dative and locative cases on different nominal types. The function ‘motion towards X’ is not marked distinctly from other case functions on any nominal type (Figure 190). The suffix marking the allative case on singular common nouns –*ya* was, however, exemplified as a ‘mono-syllabic affix’, and allative function was also exemplified in a discussion of ‘correlative pronouns’ (§2.3.4, example 8). The missionaries’ discussion and exemplification of the marking of allative function falls short of showing the different marking of this function on different nominal types or on the same nominal type in different numbers. The different marking of the case function on male names and on singular and non-singular nouns may have been adequately conveyed if the Diyari missionary-grammarians had, like Threlkeld and Günther, included suffixes marking cases extraneous to the Latin inventory within their paradigms.

Similarly, the different marking of singular and non-singular nouns in the ablative case was unlikely to have been successfully recorded in the early sources because the ablative inflection was treated as a postposition, and postpositions were not declined for number (§8.6.4).
8.6.6.1 Nominal declension classes

In order to convey morphophonemic variation and the sensitivity of case marking to gender and animacy, the missionaries presented nominal declension classes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case label assigned by Austin</th>
<th>Case label assigned by the missionaries</th>
<th>Singular common nouns</th>
<th>Male personal names</th>
<th>Non-singular common nouns</th>
<th>Female personal names</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>Ablative/Active</td>
<td>-Ø</td>
<td>-nha</td>
<td>-Ø</td>
<td>-ni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td></td>
<td>-nha</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ergative/Instrumental</td>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>-li/-yali</td>
<td></td>
<td>-ndru</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-ndru</td>
<td>-ngundru</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative/Possessive</td>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>-ya</td>
<td>-rni</td>
<td></td>
<td>-nhangka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allative</td>
<td>Dative</td>
<td></td>
<td>-ngu</td>
<td></td>
<td>-nhangu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Locative</td>
<td>Dative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- nhi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 190 summarises a situation in which male proper names and singular common nouns show ergative alignment (A/SO). Male names are overtly marked with the suffix –nha in nominative and accusative cases. Singular common nouns are unmarked in these cases. Female proper names show tripartite marking, taking different nominative and ergative suffixes from male proper names. These three nominal types also display different syncretism for the peripheral cases.

All early Diyari sources fail to account for the unique marking for case on female names in the early sources (Figure 190). That female names are overtly marked in accusative case (A/S/O), while male personal names are not (A/SO) was undescribed. The different marking on female personal nouns in the missionaries ‘genitive’ (dative) and ‘dative’ (locative/allative) cases was also not recorded in any early source. Reuther (1894:11;1981:7[1899]) first provided paradigms for a female proper noun. He declined Parubukana Parru-puka-nha literally ‘fish-bread-NOM’ (Figure 194). The case forms given for this female name are, however, not the same as those recorded by Austin, including the nominative citation form, which in the variety recorded by Austin is marked for nominative case with –ni. While the difference may result from language shift, or dialect difference, it is more likely that the absence in the record results from oversight on the part of the missionaries. Note that Gatti (§8.5.4) (Figure 176) also presented an incorrect paradigm of the female name ‘Maria’, a fact that is unsurprising given that his grammar was informed on the missionaries’ translations.
The different case marking on male personal nouns was, however, conveyed in the early grammars through the presentation of nominal declension classes. Each early Diyari source presented three declension classes. While membership of each class was differently defined in each early source, the third declension class consistently showed case marking on male proper nouns which accords with Austin’s modern record (2013[1981a]). The third declension class was motivated by the different marking of case on common singular nouns and male proper nouns (Figure 195). The distinctive marking of male proper nouns was properly recorded through provision of a distinct declension class.

The first two of the missionary-grammarians’ three declension classes were phonologically motivated by morphophonemic alternation, the complexity of which was never properly understood in the early descriptions of Diyari. Each author presented a slightly different range of nominals in the first two declension classes (see for example, Figure 196) in attempting to accommodate the morphophonemic processes which were later described by Austin (2013:28[1981a]). These are:

The neutralisation of final vowels of trisyllabic common nouns ending in i or u.
The ergative case suffix –yali → -li / a, u_
None of the early grammarians of Diyari attempted to account for morphophonemic variation by describing process, as Günther (1838:1840) had done (§4.4.1). The missionary grammarians were unable to define membership of their claimed noun classes. Schoknecht (1947:2[1872]) wrote:

The Dieri language had three declensions, which we differentiate as first and second declension and the declension of the nomina propria … The endings of the words do not enable one to decide according to which declension they are to be flexed. Here practical use must come to one’s aid.

The examples provided by each grammarian of Diyari in the tables of declension show a good range of bi-syllabic and tri-syllabic common nouns ending in different vowels, indicating that each grammarian was able to assign individual items to different classes. Only Reuther (1981:8[1899]) explained that the number of syllables was a controlling factor.

### 8.6.7 Postpositions

Following Teichelmann and Schürmann (1840), the Diyari missionary-grammarians distinguished two types of postpositions. Reuther (1981:25[1899]) wrote: “Many locational relationships can be expressed by postpositions, but there are no prepositions. Postpositions are of two kinds, the first kind are strictly speaking not postpositions but simply monosyllabic affixes. The second type are true postpositions, they are free and independent words” (see also Flierl 1880:50; Schoknecht (1947:13[1872]). Reuther’s grammars of other Karnic languages (1901) do not make this distinction. This section is absent from Koch’s incomplete grammar (1868).

The Diyari missionaries’ “einsilbige Affixe” (monosyllabic affixes) class corresponds to Teichelmann & Schürmann’s ‘postfixa’. Their ‘independent words’ corresponds to Teichelmann & Schürmann’s ‘postpositions’. The second class of ‘independent word’ includes
mostly locational words — translated as ‘in front of’, ‘behind’ etc. — as well as the following three anomalies (Figure 197).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>‘Postpositions’</th>
<th>Translated</th>
<th>Exemplification:</th>
<th>Recoded by Austin (2013)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mara</td>
<td>with</td>
<td>noa mara</td>
<td>-mara</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>with the (lawful)</td>
<td>kinship proprietive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>husband</td>
<td>(kin dyad) (p.48)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pani</td>
<td>without</td>
<td>kalti pani</td>
<td>pani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>without a spear</td>
<td>Adj: ‘none’, ‘no’ (pp.49-50)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pota</td>
<td>with</td>
<td>Turupota</td>
<td>thurra putha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>with fire</td>
<td>Fire ash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>A generic nominal followed by a specific nominal (p.44)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Figure 197: Reuther's class of 'postpositions', which are 'independent words'*

Like Teichelmann and Schürmann’s ‘postfixa’, the Diyari grammarians’ list of monosyllabic affixes (Figure 198) given at the end of the grammar under the heading *Postpositionen*, presents the balance of Diyari case inflections that are not included at the front of the grammar under the heading *Substantivum* (1880:52) because they mark case functions that are not marked morphologically in SAE languages. The ‘monosyllabic affixes’ also includes derivational morphology, as well as post-inflectional morphology.
Flierl’s ‘einsilbige Affixe’ (monosyllabic affixes) that do not mark case, include the post-inflectional suffixes **ru, –rlu** glossed STILL (Austin 2013:181) (115), and **ldra -lda** marking additional information (Austin 2013:185[1981a]) (116).
115. **kalkuralu,**
“until the evening”

*Kalkawarra-yar-rlu*
Evening-ALL-STILL

116. **jidni ko ja nga ni koldra**
You are ignorant and so am I

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Yini</th>
<th>kuwu</th>
<th>nganha</th>
<th>kuwu-lu</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2sgNOM</td>
<td>ignorant</td>
<td>1sgNOM</td>
<td>ignorant-addinf</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Also included as ‘mono-syllabic affixes’ are two derivational suffixes, proprietive suffix –nto
–nthu (Austin 2013:48[1981a]) (117) and –la –lha ‘characteristic (Austin 2013:40[1981a])
(118), the last of which is absent from Reuther’s grammar (1899)

117. **kupanto**
“with a child”

*Kupa-nthu*
Child-PROP

118. **waru warula**
of old. Formerly

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>waru-waru-lha</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>long ago-REDUP-CHAR</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

“of old”

The ‘monosyllabic affixes’ that are markers of case include those marking locative, dative,
allative and ergative/instrumental cases. Here the Diyari grammarians exemplified both the
spatial (119), and causal (120) functions of the ablativa case:

119. **mitandru** out of the Earth

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>mitha-ndru</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ground-ABL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

120. **widlandru** on account of the woman

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>wilha-ndru</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>woman-ABL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Inflection for locative case on singular common nouns was presented as a ‘mono-syllabic affix’ (121):

121. marani in or on the hand
    mara-nhi
    hand-LOC

as was the marking of allative case function on singular common nouns (122):

122. nghapaia towards water
    ngapa-ya
    water-ALL

As with other grammarians examined in this thesis, suffixes marking case functions not associated with the case systems of European languages that were included in the early PN case paradigms were accounted for and exemplified again by the Diyari grammarians under the heading ‘postposition’. The Diyari grammarians list the ergative/instrumental inflection as a postposition (123) although it had already been accounted for within the case paradigms:

123. pitali with the stick
    pirta-li
    stick-ERG/INST

### 8.6.8 The inclusive/exclusive distinction

The Lutheran grammarians working in Diyari adequately conveyed, in a note accompanying their paradigms, the inclusive/exclusive distinction of first person non-singular forms that occurs in many PN languages (Dixon 2002:68–69). They were the first Australian grammarians to describe the distinction on plural pronouns. The distinction, which is absent within the traditional grammatical framework, had not been described as occurring in grammars of Kaurna, Barngarla or Ngarrindjeri. Earlier grammars of languages spoken in New South Wales described the distinction only on dual first person pronouns (§4.5). Pama-Nyungan languages which were described as having an inclusive/exclusive distinction are, in chronological order of description, Awabakal (Threlkeld 1834), Wiradjuri (Günther 1838; Mathews 1904), Diyari (Koch 1868; Schoknecht 1872; Flierl 1880), Gamilaraay (Ridley 1875:6; Mathews 1903b:263), Nggerrikwidhi (Hey 1903:12), Western Torres Strait (Ray 1897:125;1907:22) and Arrernte (Mathews 1907b). It is apparent that the earliest missionary-grammarians who described this distinction in Diyari were not aware of it in previously described languages.

In the first Diyari grammar Koch wrote: “Regarding the difference in the dual form given in the dualis and pl., note that nali or naiani means we under exclusion of the person addressed,
naldra or naiana we under inclusion of the person addressed\(^{87}\) (Koch, 1868:no pag.) (Figure 199). Subsequent to Koch’s description, the distinction was described in all grammars of Diyari including the earliest publications (Planert 1908; Gatti 1930). Flierl’s 1880 comparative grammar of Diyari and Wangkangurru (Figure 200) showed the inclusive/exclusive distinction in Diyari but not in Wangkangurru. The distinction was first shown in Wangkangurru by Reuther (1981:36[1901]), who also described the distinction in Yandruwantha (1981:61[1901]).

In an early summary of Australian grammatical structure, Ray (1925:5) presented Diyari non-singular inclusive and exclusive pronouns to show that “Australian pronouns usually distinguish the speaker, the person addressed and the person or thing spoken about”. Ray was informed by Planert’s publication (1908).

The grammars of Diyari, written in German, use the terms \textit{Ausschluß} (‘exclusion’) and \textit{Einschluß} (‘inclusion’). The terminology used in Planert’s later Diyari paradigm (1908:689) is the Latinate ‘Inklusiv’ and ‘Exklusiv’. The description of the distinction in non-singular first person pronouns in Diyari by Koch (1868) may have occurred without knowledge of the existence of the feature in any other language, including Awabakal described by Threlkeld (1834), who appears to have been aware of the distinction via his knowledge of Tahitian (§4.5.1).

Following Koch (1868), both Schoknecht (1947:5[1872]) and Flierl (1880:18-19) showed exclusive and inclusive non-singular first person forms side by side for each case in the paradigm except the ‘active’ (ergative) case (Figure 200). Both dual and plural first person Diyari pronouns are accusatively aligned (AS/O) so that the ergative forms take the same shape as the nominative. The forms that were given as the sole ‘active form’ are the exclusive pronouns naldra and ngayana. It is not clear why this occurred. Only Reuther (1894;1981:10[1899]) showed both inclusive and exclusive forms in nominative and ‘active’

---

\(^{87}\) “Über den Unterschied der im Dualis und Pl. angegeben doppelten Form, merke nali oder auch naiani bedeutet wir mit Ausschluß des Angeredeten, naldra oder auch naiana wir mit Einschluß des Angeredeten” (Koch 1868:no pag.)
(ergative) cases. Unlike the earlier grammarians he supplied no accompanying statement explaining the functional difference between the forms.

![Figure 200: Fliri's first person pronominal paradigm, 1880:18-19](Image)

*Diyari (left side) and Wangkangurru (right side)*

**8.6.9 Inalienably possessed NPs**

In most PN languages inalienable possession is distinguished from alienable possession. Inalienable possessive constructions, or ‘part whole’ constructions (Dixon 2002:59), are often marked through juxtaposition, as in the following Pitta-Pitta example (124) in which the ‘possessor’ *mochoomba*, ‘kangaroo’ is morphologically unmarked:

```
124.  Mochoomba  wapa
      Kangaroo’s pup
```

Koch (1868) is the earliest PN grammarian to describe the absence of morphological marking of an inalienable possessed NP (see Dixon 2002:59). Koch notes the differences in the marking of inalienably and alienably possessed NPs twice, once in a description of nouns (Figure 201) and again in a description of pronouns (Figure 202).
In the discussion of nouns, Koch (1868:no pag.) wrote: “Regarding the use of the genitive, also note that it is only used when the relevant object is not part of the subject itself”88 (Figure 201). In order to exemplify the difference, Koch supplied examples (125, 126) to contrast the lack of marking on the ‘possessor’ in an inalienably possessed NP with the suffixation of –ya, written by the missionaries as –ia, to the possessor in an alienably possessed NP.

125. Teraia kalti nicht teri kalti, (Koch 1868:no pag.)

tari-ya kalti not tari kalti
boy-POSS spear not boy-[NOM] spear

126. kintella milki nicht Kintellaia milki (Koch 1868:no pag.)

Kintihala milki not Kintihala-ya milki
dog-[NOM] eye not dog-POSS eye

The juxtaposition of the constituents of the inalienably possessed NP was also shown by Schoknecht (1947:3) and Flierl (1880:12) using an example, which better clarified the difference:

127. mataraia kalti, der mannes speer, aber nicht mataraia milki, der mannes augen, sondern matari milki (Flierl 1880:12)

mthari-ya kalti the man’s spear, but not mthari-ya milki the man’s eye, rather mthari milki

man-POSS spear, ‘the man’s spear; but not: man-POSS eye, ‘the man’s eye’, rather man-[NOM] eye

---

88 Über den Gebrauch des Genetives merke noch, daß er nur dann angewandt wird, wenn das betreffende Object kein Theil des Gegenstandes selbst ist.
Koch (1868:no pag.) also exemplified the construction in instances in which the possessor is pronominal:

Note. 1. On occasion, the nom. of the personal pronoun will also be used where we in German would use the nom. of the possessive pronoun. This occurs where one talks about parts of the body. For example, *mara nani* my hand, not *mara nakani* (Koch, 1868, no pag.) (Figure 202)

![Figure 202: The unmarked inalienably possessed NP where the possessor is pronominal, Koch 1868:no pag.](image)

Strangely, description of the construction is altogether absent from Reuther’s grammars (1894;1899;1901;1901b).

Despite the occurrence of this astute observation in the earlier grammars, the earliest printed translations of liturgical texts into Diyari (Homann & Koch 1870) employed a possessive suffix on the ‘possessor’ of body parts (see Kneebone 2005b:142;159).

That Reuther did not describe this construction in his grammar, when earlier missionaries had, may suggest that the target language of his description was the variety of Diyari used within the mission domain, rather than fluent native-speaker usage.

The earlier missionaries at Bethesda made the first description of the difference between these two constructions when analysing Diyari, and also explained the distinction more accurately than middle-era overviews of Australian structure. That inalienable possessive constructions are marked through juxtaposition was still unrecognised as feature common to Australian languages in the 1930s. The structure was not mentioned by Elkin (1937), Capell (1937), or by Ray (1925), and was not described by T.G.H.Strehlow (1944[1938]) in his grammar of Arrernte.

The use of juxtaposition to convey other syntactical relations in Australian languages was, however, being observed at the time. Juxtaposition of phrases was discussed in the comparison

---

89 *Der Nom. Der Personalfürwörter wird auch zuweilen gesagt, wo wir im Deutschen den Nom. des Possessivpronomens setzen. Dies geschieht wenn von Körpertheilen die Rede ist. z.B. mara nani mein Hand nicht mara nakani* (Koch 1868 no pag.).
of adjective (Capell, 1937:55 & Elkin, 1937:41) as was the juxtaposition of clauses, rather than processes of subordination (Elkin, 1937:40).

**8.6.10 Concluding remarks**

The missionary grammars produced at the Bethesda mission, written by men trained at different Lutheran seminaries, and over three decades, present remarkably homogenous analyses of Diyari. They bear little resemblance to Threlkeld’s inaugural description of an Australian language (1834). In addition to traits discussed in this chapter, the Diyari missionary-grammarians’ work differs from Threlkeld’s grammar in not using hyphens to mark syllable boundaries or meaningful sub-word units, and in not providing interlinear-style glosses. While Threlkeld may have “set a standard for other missionary work in the field which followed soon after” (Carey, 2004:269), the Diyari grammarians’ analysis of a PN language made in the second half of the nineteenth century is clearly influenced by a later school of descriptive practice.

The prominent influence of their Lutheran predecessors’ grammars of South Australian languages, made within the Adelaide School (Simpson 1992:410), most particularly Teichelmann & Schürmann’s (1840) grammar of Kaurna, is shown in the presentation of small Latinate case paradigms (§8.6.2), the explanation of ergative function in a discussion of verbs (§8.6.3), the placement of ergative case forms at the bottom case paradigms in the position of the Latin ablative case (§8.6.3.1), the declension of possessive pronouns (§8.6), and the division of ‘postpositions’ into two classes (§8.6.7). This strong influence from Teichelmann & Schürmann (1840) is further evidenced in the missionaries’ descriptions of the syntax of complex clauses (Chapter 10). These similarities show that the earliest HMS-trained missionaries at Bethesda were equipped with copies of the published grammars made by the previous generation of Lutheran missionaries from the south of the state, a fact that is not surprising given the continuity of personal involvement in the 1840s and 1860s South Australian Lutheran missions.

Remarkably astute summaries of the inclusive and exclusive distinction in non-singular first person pronouns (§8.6.8), and unmarked inalienably possessed noun-phrases (§8.6.9) were given by W.Koch, who died at the mission sixteen months after arriving, in a grammar (1868) that is relatively short and succinct. Koch’s discussion of the role of verb participles in clause subordination (§10.3.2) is equally perceptive. Koch’s analysis was reiterated by later missionary-grammarians with minor and historiographically important alterations.
Comparison of the sources shows that, while Flierl (1880) made the largest improvement to the orthographic representation of the sound system of Diyari, Reuther’s grammars (1894;1899) show substantial improvement to the missionaries’ record of the idiosyncratic and unpredictable marking of case on nominals of different numbers.

That it took the Lutherans almost thirty years to come closer to describing the complexity of the system of case marking on different nominal types is of consequence to the certainty upon which some other early analyses can be relied. That after thirty years of intense engagement, the different marking of cases on female personal names appears to have remained undocumented at Bethesda should alert the linguist engaged in the reclamation of other languages from older sources written with much less exposure to the structure of a language, to the type of material that is likely to have never have been recorded.

On a related point, it would not have been possible to reconstruct the case system of Diyari based on the early sources alone. Case inflections marking distinct functions with the forms –ni, -rni, - nhi were orthographically undifferentiated by the missionaries and consequently the suffix –ni was shown to mark nominative, dative, allative and locative cases in the early grammars of Diyari (Figure 190). Analysis of the Diyari case system is dependent upon the recorder hearing nasals at alveolar, retroflex and interdental positions and developing an orthography that consistently distinguishes these nasal phonemes. It is important to note this situation when considering the limitations to the reconstruction of a language that was lost before modern analysis.

While the last missionary grammar of Diyari written by Reuther (1894;1899) records the sensitivity of case marking to number more accurately than did earlier grammars, other aspects of his description, including the absence of reference to the unmarked inalienably possessed noun-phrase, and his account of processes of clause subordination (§10.4.4), suggests that Reuther recorded a linguistic variety developed at the mission during decades of mission activity, rather than fluent native speaker usage. Further philological study is required to establish whether features of the language Reuther described also occur in liturgical translation.

The grammars of Diyari written by European philologists (Planert 1908; Gatti1930), who had never heard Diyari, and whose grammars were informed by the missionaries’ written records, produce strikingly different depictions of the Diyari case system. The conception of syntactic case presented in Planert’s grammar (1908), which followed his Arrernte grammar (1907) produced a year earlier, presents a four case analysis of split syntactic case systems (Dixon 2002a:132).
Chapter 9:
Grammars of Arrernte (1891-1938)

This chapter presents the six grammars of Arrernte written at, or emanating from, the Lutheran mission at Hermannsburg, west of Alice Springs. The linguistic work made by missionaries at the Hermannsburg mission was the culmination of a tradition of Lutheran description of South Australian languages. Western Arrernte, the Arandic variety spoken at the mission, was the fifth and last language to be grammatically described by Lutherans administered from Adelaide. The Arrernte grammars were produced over a similar time frame (1891-1923) as the grammars of Diyari (1868-1899), but are more diverse in structure.

9.1 The HMS phase of Hermannsburg mission (1877-1891)

The Hermannsburg mission station was established on the Finke River west of Alice Springs in 1874 by the Immanuel Synod (ELIS) and the Hermannsburg Mission Society (HMS). The first HMS trained missionaries sent to Adelaide in order to establish the mission were A.H.Kempe (1844-1928) and W.F.Schwarz (1842-1920). The arduous journey to the continent’s interior lasted two years, and the party rested for several months at Bethesda on the way. At the time of the missionaries’ stopover, Bethesda mission was staffed by C.A.Meyer and the Vogelsang and Jacob families. Schoknecht, the last HMS-trained missionary to work at Bethesda had already left and J.Flierl, the first Neuendettelsau missionary, had not yet arrived. Kempe and Schwarz reached Hermannsburg on the Finke River 1877. They were joined by HMS missionary L.G.Schulz (1851-1924) the following year. These three men had entered the HMS seminary together in 1870.

Kempe (quoted in Scherer 1973:13) felt their linguistic training was insufficient for the task of translation and described the difficulty:

no one can imagine how difficult it is in the initial stages to reach the point where it is possible to proclaim even the basic truths of Christianity to the heathen - and this especially in view of the fact that no white people had ever been there before us and that we often had to drag every single word out of them

A school for Aboriginal children was opened in 1879. Mirroring the pattern of the production of printed material in Diyari by HMS missionaries at Bethesda, the first work in Arrernte produced at Hermannsburg was a primer for use in the school, Intalinja Nkenkalalbutjika Galtjeritjika (Kempe 1880), published within three years of the mission’s establishment and a decade before the publication of an Arrernte grammar. The prompt
publication of these primers at both inland missions reflects the focus of evangelistic effort on the children (Harms 2003:55).

As with the earliest materials produced at Bethesda by HMS missionaries, assessing the relative involvement of different missionaries is not straightforward. This twenty-one-page work, which was printed in Adelaide, is attributed to Kempe (Graetz, 1988:103), who is usually credited with having done the linguistic work during the HMS phase of Hermannsburg mission. The primer was followed a decade later by the service booklet *Galtjintana-Pepa Kristianirberaka Mbontala* (Kempe & Schwarz 1891), which was published in Hanover. Kempe is recognised as having collated and translated this material (Graetz, 1988:103), although the MS held at LAA attributes the work to both Kempe and Schwarz, who “completed an exegesis of Isaiah in 1881” (J.Strehlow 2011:368). This 160-page work contained Old and New Testament stories, Psalms, Luther’s Small Catechism, occasional prayers and 53 hymns.

The use of the term *Pepa* in the title, which is a phonological approximation to ‘paper’, to translate ‘book’, had previously been used in the title of the first Neuendettelsau publication in Diyari (Flierl 1880). The root *pepa* had also been incorporated into the Kaurna lexicon, as recorded by Teichelmann and Schürmann (48). Aboriginal languages frequently employ the same term to name an object and the material from which it is made (Dixon 1980:117). The application of the word *pepa* ‘paper’ to refer to a book is likely to have originally been coined by Aboriginal people who incorporated the English word ‘paper’ into their languages.

Graetz (1988:156) translates the title of the Arrernte primer: *Galtjintana-Pepa Kristianirberaka Mbontala* as “instruction book for the Christians on the wide open plains”. The first segment is

128. **Galtjintana-Pepa**

    kaltye- anthe- nhe- pepe

    knowledge give NOM paper

    ‘book that gives knowledge’

The noun, or adjective, *kaltye* meaning ‘knowledgeable’ is compounded with the stem of the verb *anthe* ‘to give’, which is nominalised, with the suffix –*nhe*: “used in names for some things that that describe some action associated with them” (Henderson & Dobson 1994:499). This noun appears to be compounded with *pepa*. Regarding the next segment:

129. **Kristianirberaka**

    Kristian- iRpeRa- ke

    Christian pl DAT/POSS
Kempe (1891:4) described -irbera as marking plural number, although T.G.H. Strehlow (1944:77[1938]) described this plural suffix as “antiquated and archaic”. The plural noun ‘Christians’ is then marked for dative/possessive with the suffix –ke.

The next segment of the title Mbonta (Mpurnte) is cognate with Mparntwe in Eastern/Central dialects (Gavan Breen pers. comm 10/09/2012), which is marked for locative case with the suffix –le.90 Mpurnta, which occurs in the name given to the linguistic variety spoken in Alice Springs, ‘Mparntwe Arrernte’ is translated by Strehlow (1979:42) as “wide timbered plains”. The word probably refers to the type of habitat that occurs around major watercourses in which the settlements of Hermannsburg and Alice Springs are situated.

The title of this Arrernte primer (1891) is morphologically similar to part of the title of the second Diyari primer (Flierl & Meyer 1880): Christianeli ngujangujara-pepa, demonstrating a cross-mission linguistic influence. ngujangujara appears to be some reduplication of nyuyama- ‘to know’, which is compounded with pepa, and placed alongside ‘Christian’, although the function of what looks like an ergative suffix on ‘Christian’ is uncertain.

Of the first Hermannsburg missionaries, Kempe was the most prolific. In addition to publishing the first grammatical description of Arrernte (1891) (§9.1.1), Kempe compiled a list of native plants and supplied samples to Ferdinand von Müller (1825-1896). He also wrote the first major survey of Central Australia and its people, published in the Hermannsburger Missionsblatt (Kempe 1881).

Kempe’s 1881 publication gives the earliest published reference to the Altyerre (pp.55–56), contra Green 2012, who attributes the earliest written reference to the term to Schulze, 1890.91 Kempe’s record is significant to this present study because he spelled Altyerre as alxira, representing the term’s lamino-palatal stop with the letter ‘x’. This orthographic treatment of the phone shows that Kempe had read and assimilated the HMS missionary’s analysis of Diyari, in which ‘x’ was used to represent the lamino-palatal stop, which he is likely to have encountered during his sojourn en route to Hermannsburg.

While Kempe’s initial use of the letter ‘x’, and the structure of the title of the 1891 primer, show a cross-mission and cross-linguistic descriptive influence from Bethesda to

90 The use of the locative suffix here in natural Arrernte is unlikely. The sense would rather be expressed through affixation of associative suffix –arenye (Wilkins 1989:202) to Mpurnta, deriving a lexeme meaning ‘people associated with/hailing from the wide open plains’.

91 The term, which denotes a multifaceted abstract concept intrinsic to Arandic ontological belief, was chosen by the HMS missionaries to denote the Christian ‘God’. Interestingly, in Strehlow’s earliest grammar (1931a:19[c.1907]) he gave ‘Altjira’ as an example of a concrete noun (Concrete Substantive) along with inkata ‘master’, kwatja ‘water’ and alarkna ‘mud’!
Hermannsburg, the HMS missionaries’ analysis of Arrernte otherwise shows little influence from the Lutherans’ earlier analyses of Diyari, despite the considerable movement of staff between the two missions.

The Hermannsburg mission was abandoned close to the time of the publication of Kempe’s substantial grammar (1891), in much the same circumstances in which Bethesda had been abandoned by the last HMS missionaries two decades earlier (§8.3). Lack of fresh food and water, illness and death again coincided with doctrinal disputes that threatened the continuity of the mission. Kempe was the last to leave after burying his wife beside their young son in 1891.

9.1.1 Kempe (1891)

After thirteen years at Hermannsburg, Kempe published the first grammar of Arrernte (1891). The thirty-six page work remained the most comprehensive published grammatical description of Arrernte until missionary C.Strehlow’s son, T.G.H.Strehlow wrote a Masters thesis submitted to the University of Adelaide in 1938: “An Aranda Grammar”. T.G.H.Strehlow’s grammar remains the most comprehensive published of Western Arrernte morphology and syntax.

Unlike the MS. grammars of Diyari written in German during the HMS phase of mission at Bethesda (Koch 1868; Schoknecht 1872), Kempe’s grammar was published in English translation. The essay was read to the Royal Society of South Australia in December 1890, and was edited by R. Tate (1840-1901), Elder Professor of natural science at the University of Adelaide and president of the Royal Society. The publication of the work in the Society’s Transactions (1891) was to a degree a collaboration with Tate, the journal’s editor. Since no earlier MS grammars of Arrernte have been located, the nature of Tate’s edit is unknown. Tate was a natural scientist, as were other early scholars who investigated Australian Aboriginal people and languages before the emergence of departments of linguistics and anthropology in Australia, for example W.Dawes, R.Brough Smyth and C.Chewings.

As a geologist, Tate travelled through Central Australia in 1882 preparing geological and mineralogical reports. He visited Hermannsburg, after Kempe’s departure, as a member of the Horn Expedition, and contributed to the preparation of palaeontological, botanical and geological reports of the expedition.

There is a tendency among the corpus grammars for the earliest descriptions of a language — Threlkeld (1834), Teichelmann & Schürmann (1840); Meyer (1843), Koch (1868) and Roth (1897) — to be more morphologically wide-ranging and less formulaic than later works.
Kempe’s inaugural grammar of Arrernte (1891) provides a wealth of illustrative clauses that are socio-linguistically richer than those ubiquitous to missionary craft. The work also demonstrates a willingness to express linguistic complexities that were beyond Kempe’s descriptive capacity. Like Teichelmann & Schürmann (§10.4), Kempe (§10.5.2) illustrates processes of clause subordination under the heading ‘relative pronoun’ without providing an analysis of the structures.

9.1.2 R.H. Mathews’ grammar of Arrerte (1907b)

Mathews’ 1907 grammar of Arrernte is atypical of his large body of linguistic material in being informed through correspondence with European informants, rather than directly by speakers, a feature of his works that Mathews was fond of emphasising.

Most of the material that Mathews presented was picked from Kempe’s much longer document. Mathews acknowledged Kempe’s 1891 publication as a source of material informing his publication. He also acknowledged: “a capable friend... who resides in the district” (1907b:323). This may be the same informant who is described as ‘one of my most valued correspondents in the locality” (ibid.,336). Mathews initiated correspondence with the second wave of Neuendettelsau-trained missionaries at the Hermannsburg mission in November 1905, well after Kempe’s departure in 1894. In a letter (1905) addressed “Dear Mr Strehlow (or Mr Wettengell [sic])” Mathews writes:

“I am desirous of finding out particulars of the Aboriginal language used among your natives, and will be greatly obliged to you if you will answer the following few questions”.

Kempe’s unnamed informant was most probably C. Strehlow, who supplied Mathews with the ‘inclusive’ and ‘exclusive’ forms included in the grammar (§4.5.4). All of the data included in Mathews’ grammar is of Western Arrernte spoken at Hermannsburg mission, and not of the central Arandic varieties spoken in Alice Springs.

9.2 The Neuendettelsau phase of Hermannsburg mission (1894-1923)

In 1894 the Evangelical Lutheran Immanuel Synod purchased the Hermannsburg station in Central Australia, after which both inland South Australian missions were staffed by missionaries trained at Neuendettelsau. C. Strehlow, who had been working at Bethesda for two

---

92 Items diagnostic of the Western dialect are arugutya arkwetye, ‘woman’, rela relhe ‘mankind’ and tmurka apmerreke, ‘yesterday’, which Mathews spells using the missionary’s peculiar orthographic representation of the homorganic pre-stopped bilabial nasal.
years, was appointed as the new missionary to Hermannsburg. On his initial journey from Bethesda to Hermannsburg Strehlow was accompanied by Reuther, with whom he was in the process of translating the New Testament into Diyari. Once stationed at Hermannsburg, Strehlow continued working on the final drafts of *Testamenta Marra* published in 1897.

Strehlow remained at Hermannsburg until his death in 1922, leaving Central Australia only three times during his twenty-eight years of service, once in 1903 during which time missionary N. Wettengel was left in charge. Like Strehlow, Neuendettelsau-trained Wettengel had worked at Bethesda (1896-1902) before being transferred to Hermannsburg, where he remained until being dismissed by the Immanuel Synod Mission Committee in 1906 (Figure 166). Wettengel then returned to Germany, where he met the Berlin-based philologist W. Planert. Planert published a grammar of Arrernte (1907a) (§9.2.2.2) and a grammar of Diyari (1908) (§8.5.3) based on information supplied to him by Wettengel.

**9.2.1 C. Strehlow’s retranslation of Kempe’s materials**

Two years after his arrival at Hermannsburg, C. Strehlow (1896) wrote to his brother-in-law C. Keysser (1877-1961) about the structure of Arrernte. He discussed the morphological negation on the verb (Wilkins 1989:235; Henderson 2013:356), and marking of past tense. 93

Learning the language is a huge amount of work; it is much more difficult and complicated than the Dieri language. One must, for example, observe that for every positive form there is also a negative form […]. For example, Jinga lama = I go, Jinga litjikana = I do not go. Jinga laka or lakala – I went, Jinga litjina = I will go. In the first two negative-forms the word not = itja is placed in the middle of the word = l-itji-kana, l-itji-makana (before certain consonants, especially for “tj”, the a is turned into i). By contrast, in the negative future tense there is another word gunia that is placed at the end of the verb.

I used to think, as Missionary Kempe writes in his grammar, that there is to be found only a single perfect-form in the Aranda language. But I think that I can now safely assume that there are at least 2 of these forms. I have had, that is, for example, inakala, but I have often heard the form initjita. I now believe that the form inakala is used for the past several days. Should this opinion prove to be true, then the entire Bible history should have to undergo a thorough revision. 94

93 D. Wilkins (pers. com. 26/08/2016) suggests that the Western Arrernte ‘past tense’ inflection -kala – kele, which is not documented in other Arandic varieties, is in fact -ka – ke PAST found in Western Arrernte and in other Arandic varieties, suffixed with subsequent inflection either marking the same subject –le (§10.5.2), or with –rle the relative clause marker (§10.5.1). See examples 191 & 195.


In addition to showing Strehlow’s engagement with the morphology and morphophonology of Arrernte, this passage shows that reasonably soon after arrival, Strehlow contemplated retranslating Kempe’s work.

By 1904 C. Strehlow had prepared a revision and expansion of Kempe’s Christian instruction book (1891). Strehlow’s 264-page work (1904a) included the second of five translations of Luther’s Catechism into Arrernte, prayers, and an enlarged hymnal with 100 hymns (Graetz 1988:104). Strehlow became adept at employing morphological processes internal to the language’s structure to coin new words expressing esoteric Christian concepts. His son, T. G. H. Strehlow described his father’s rewriting of his predecessor’s work as a process of eliminating Latin terms (1979:42).

Ironically the missionaries’ pronunciation of Arrernte was so poor that the ingenious derivations upon which they coined new terms were sometimes lost on the Arrernte, who imitated the European’s pronunciation. The word lunaluna, for example, was coined to translate ‘redeemer’, derived from the verb root –irlwe, ‘to let go, to untie, through a process of nominalisation marked with the suffix –nhe and reduplication, producing a noun that refers to an entity habitually involved in the action of the verb (see Wilkins 1989:139-141). Of this created lexeme T. G. H. Strehlow (1944:363[1938]) wrote: "the natives copy the white missionaries' mispronunciation of the two original n sounds of this word!” That is, their speech failed to differentiate a phonemic interdental and alveolar nasals:

130. lunaluna = redeemer

irlwe- nhe- irlwe -nhe
to loosen, untie -NMZR.Hab.rdp

Missionary Wettengel, however, refused to use C. Strehlow’s retranslations on theological grounds, and detailed the aspects of the texts to which he objected in correspondence with the mission board. Strehlow was subsequently forced to defend each translational change against charges of teaching false doctrine, maintaining (1904b) that he tried to make as few changes as possible to Kempe’s manual but aimed to:

“substitute Aranda words for terms which were imported from the Latin, Greek, English and German languages and only leave those foreign terms we also use in German”95

Als wahr herausstellen, so müßte die ganze bibl. Geschichte einer gründlichen Revision unterzogen werden.” (Strehlow 1896).

95 “Die aus der lateinischen, griechischen, englischen u. deutschen Sprache herübergenommenen Wörter durch Aranda-Ausdrücke zu ersetzen u. nur die fremdsprachlichen Wörter stehen zu lassen, die wir auch im Deutschen gebrauchen” (Strehlow 1904b).
Strehlow’s retranslations of Kempe’s Arrernte catechism and the commandments (1904a) play an important role within the historiography of the description of ergativity, because it was Wettengel’s refusal to teach from Strehlow’s 1904 translations that ultimately resulted in Wettengel’s dismissial, and his return to Germany, where he subsequently met W. Planert. Planert’s published grammars of Arrernte (1907a) (§9.2.2.2), and of Diyari (1908) (§8.5.3), based on missionary Wettengel’s materials, gave very early global usages of the terms ‘ergative’ and ‘absolutive’ to name the syntactic cases, and conceived of split ergative systems in a way that was not repeated in Australia until the modern descriptive era (§8.6.3.2).

9.2.2 C. Strehlow’s works

C. Strehlow (1871-1922) is best known for his seven-volume German work *Die Aranda- und Loritja-Stämme in Zentral-Australien*, which details Arrernte kinship, totemism, social life and religion (1907-1920) (see Kenny 2013). Regular communication with his German editor, M. von Leonhardi (1856-1910), during the course of its production placed Strehlow at the epicentre of early 20th century European thinking, while conducting his research at Hermannsburg. Through correspondence between Hermannsburg and Germany, Strehlow was kept informed of the reception in Europe of Australian and European publications describing Australian Aboriginal languages and culture, which Leonhardi sent to Strehlow. A range of material was appraised in terms of the relative value of their own pending publications. When assessing Basedow’s Arrernte vocabulary (1908), published in Germany, Leonhardi (1908b) demonstrates how conversant the pair was with available material describing Australian languages:

I had already anticipated that you would not be satisfied by Basedow’s work. Our periodicals always accept such works; since – with very, very few exceptions – we have no other vocabularies. The vocabularies in the 3-volume work by Curr are hardly any better and, yet, we still have to work with them. And that is a great shame. With regard to phonetics, there are no correctly recorded Australian Languages whatsoever to be found in the literature, even the works of Threlkeld, Günther, Meyer are inadequate.

In the year that Mathews’ (1907b) grammar of Arrernte was published, Leonhardi (1907) assessed Mathews’ scholarly contribution unfavourably:

That Mr RH. Matthews (sic) in Paramatta churns out a terrible lot of writing and is an awful muddle-head who does not just flood Australian and American journals with his essays, but also French, Austrian and German ones.

Leonhardi’s correspondence indicates that Strehlow’s seven-volume publication was intended to contain more linguistic material than eventuated. Leonhardi often refers to the importance of the inclusion of comparative linguistic material, writing (1908a), for instance, “One could have
the linguistic work published at later stage – possibly separately –, but in my view it is very important that a good grammar and dictionary of Aranda, Loritja and Dieri comes out together.”

Three different grammatical descriptions of Arrernte written by Strehlow survive (1931a & b [c.1907];1908;1910). All are written in German and one is published (1908).

9.2.2.1 Strehlow 1931a & b [c.1907]

One of Strehlow’s three analyses of Arrernte survives as two very similar but non-identical copies of a lost original. The date of the original lost document from which the copies were made is not known. It is, however, probable that the lost original was Strehlow’s earliest analysis of Arrernte, since the copies resemble Kempe’s publication (1891) much more closely than do either Strehlow’s 1908 published grammar, or his 1910 MS grammar. In this earliest work Strehlow (pp.30-31) expresses surprise that in Arrernte there is no third person pronominal gender distinction.

Strangely gender of the personal pronouns cannot even be seen in the third person. era serves to indicate he, she and it. Era pitjima as well as meaning he comes also means ‘she comes’ and ‘it comes’.

It is likely that this observation was made by Strehlow soon after encountering Arrernte, since he was aware that Diyari did make this distinction.

The original analysis, from which the copies were made, is referred to here as [c.1907], the work’s latest likely date, although it is possible that this earliest grammar by C.Strehlow is least a decade older, since Strehlow arrived at the mission in 1894.

The grammar makes some comparative phonological and grammatical study of Arrernte, Diyari and Ramindjeri, the latter referred to as the Encounter Bay Sprache, for which Meyer (1843) is acknowledged as the source. Comparative case paradigms for nouns and pronouns are given in each number for the three languages.

One copy of the lost original ‘Grammar of the Aranda language’ was made by the self-appointed missionary E.Kramer (1889-1958), and is dated as completed 12/05/1931. The notebook is held by the South Australian Museum. Strehlow is not named as the original author. Through comparative study of the MS with other Arrernte grammars (§9.3.5), the analysis is attributed here to C.Strehlow, and is referred to as Strehlow 1931a [c.1907].

1931, the year Kramer completed copying Strehlow’s grammar, was also the year in which T.G.H.Strehlow, C.Strehlow’s son, made his first return journey to Alice Springs from Adelaide. Kramer provided Strehlow with important support on this initial field trip, supplying him with camels (Hill 2002:150).
Having completed his honours degree in English at the University of Adelaide, T.G.H. Strehlow was encouraged by his classics professor J.A. FitzHerbert to apply to the Australian National Research Council to make a comparative survey of dialects of Arrernte.\textsuperscript{96} 1931 was also the year that T.G.H. Strehlow’s mother, F. Strehlow (1875-1957), returned to Germany, at which stage C. Strehlow’s MSS came into T.G.H. Strehlow’s possession (J. Strehlow pers. comm 10/08/2013).

Kramer’s copy of C. Strehlow’s grammar refers to T.G.H. Strehlow, in a note ‘am Rand’, ‘in the margin’ (Figure 203). It appears that Kramer copied the grammar from a document on which T.G.H. Strehlow had added additional notes to the margins. It is possible T.G.H. Strehlow lent Kramer C. Strehlow’s now lost original grammar, on which he had made notes while familiarising himself with his father’s grammatical analysis at the commencement of his own academic study of the language.

\begin{figure}[h]
\centering
\includegraphics[width=0.5\textwidth]{figure203.png}
\caption{E. Kramer’s copy of C. Strehlow’s grammar (1931a [c.1907:36]) showing reference to ‘Th. Str.’}
\end{figure}

However, T.G.H. Strehlow distanced himself from the earlier analyses of Arrernte, perhaps deliberately under-emphasising the extent to which his work was initially informed by his father’s and, indirectly, by Kempe’s analysis (1944:55): “The present Grammar has been written independently of the work of earlier writers. The earlier grammars of the language were not available to me at the time of writing this Grammar in Central Australia.” But the comparison of T.G.H. Strehlow’s grammar with earlier missionary analyses of Arrernte shows how Strehlow modelled his description on his Lutheran forefathers’ works.

This notebook into which Kramer copied Strehlow’s grammar also contains a second Arrernte grammar: “An abbreviated grammar according to Pastor Riedel”, which Kramer completed copying the following day (13/05/1931).\textsuperscript{97} J. Riedel (1885-1965), who studied at

\textsuperscript{96} In 1934, when lecturing in Old and Middle English, Strehlow (1934) applied to have the title of his approved Masters thesis altered from ‘The Elizabethan conception of tragedy’ to ‘Primitive elements in Old Icelandic Mythology and in Old Heroic verse, in the light of Aranda myths and legends’.

\textsuperscript{97} The South Australian Museum pagination of the two grammars, which is used here, is not straightforward. The Riedel grammar starts on page 87 and runs on double page spreads until the end of the notebook. From there it
Neuendettelsau (1904-08), was chairman of the Finke River mission board (1926-1950) and served at Hermannsburg for six months after C. Strehlow’s death in 1923. His brother W. Riedel was missionary at Bethesda between 1908 and 1914.

A second mimeographed copy of C. Strehlow’s earliest analysis titled: ‘Die Grammatik der Aranda-Sprache’ was made by an unknown typist. It is nearly identical to the copy made by Kramer but contains some additional material. The sections that are contained in this copy, but which are absent in the Kramer copy, mostly describe Diyari and Ramindjeri. This mimeograph document also makes more frequent reference to ‘Th. Str.’ (Theodore Strehlow). Again this material is noted as ‘Am Rand’ (in the margin), where equivalent Luritja is also supplied. The work is held at the Lutheran Archives, where a previous archivist has attributed it to missionary Wettengel. The analysis bears no resemblance to Wettengel’s grammatical description of Arrernte, which is contained in Planert (1907) (§9.2.2.2). While it is difficult to disregard any possible, unrecorded factors upon which the previous archivist attributed the grammar to Wettengel, the work is here attributed to C. Strehlow (1931b[c.1907]).

9.2.2.2 Planert 1907, Strehlow 1908

In 1907 W. Planert published “Australische Forschungen I. Aranda-Grammatik” in the prestigious Berlin-based German ethnological journal Die Zeitschrift für Ethnologie. Material for the publication was furnished by missionary N. Wettengel, who had returned to Germany the previous year, having been dismissed by the mission committee because he refused to teach from Strehlow’s retranslation (1904) of Kempe’s catechism (1891).

In his introduction Planert (1907a:551) acknowledged Wettengel as having informed the work, and he outlined the limitations of his source:
Herr Wettengel has lived many years in Central Australia and has familiarised himself with both languages to the extent that he could preach in them fluently. It is therefore hoped that his statements are for the most part correct, although a lack of previous education leaves something to be desired. I have eliminated errors, as far as possible, and re-worked the grammar according to linguistic principles. Since Herr Wettengel only remained in Berlin for two weeks, my results will not of course properly convey the grammars of Aranda and Dieri. 98

Shortly after the work’s publication, Leonhardi (1908a) wrote to Strehlow:

I suspected that you would not be impressed by the Wettengel-Planert grammar. It appeared immediately thin to me. The same is likely to apply to the Dieri grammar…. At the moment I do not want to make any comment on your judgment of the Planert Aranda grammar, which you would like to publish as a response. However, protest in one or another form will be voiced.99

The publication of Planert’s grammar of Arrernte sparked a response publication from Strehlow: ‘Einige Bemerkungen über die von Dr. Planert auf Grund der Forschungen des Missionars Wettengel veröffentlichte Aranda-Grammatik’ (Some remarks on the grammar published by Dr. Planert based on the research of missionary Wettengel) (1908). Strehlow’s response appeared in the same journal as Planert’s grammar of Diyari (1908). In the opening passage Strehlow (1908:698) stated:

In the year 1890 missionary H. Kempe published a grammar and a dictionary of Wonkaranda, which may still, despite its many mistakes, be regarded as a good work. When after some 16 years Dr. Planert undertakes to write a new grammar of Aranda – based on material supplied by missionary Wettengel, one might expect it to be an improvement on the earlier work…I unfortunately one is in this regard mistaken…the Planert-Wettengel grammar is the poorer and more meagre of the two.100

As suggested by the title, the work is not a complete grammar. Strehlow (1908:698) explained:

it is beyond my current intention to attempt to correct all the mistaken forms and words contained in the new Aranda grammar, I here limit myself to pointing out a few of its more significant mistakes, while hoping in time to publish myself a comprehensive work on the Aranda language.101

---


101 “Es kann nicht in meiner Absicht liegen und würde zu weit führen, wollte ich hier den Versuch machen, alle unrichtigen Formen und Wörter der neue Aranda-Grammatik zu berichten; ich beschränke mich daher darauf, auf einige gröbere Fehler hinzuweisen und hoffe in einiger Zeit selbst eine zusammenhängende Arbeit über Aranda-Sprache veröffentlichen zu können” (C.Strehlow 1908:698)
Despite Strehlow’s hope, the work remained the most extensive grammatical material that he published.

**9.2.2.3 Strehlow 1910**

A MS comparative grammar of Arrernte and Luritja dated 1910, written by C.Strehlow is held at the Strehlow Research Centre (Alice Springs, Northern Territory). The work gives little discussion and hardly any German translation of the Arrernte and Luritja material. The work presents Arrernte material on the left of the page and the parallel Luritja material on the right. The same comparative format had previously been employed by Flierl (1880) and by Hale (1846).

Strehlow probably wrote this grammar for his own evangelistic purpose as an aid for the preparation of sermons into Luritja. This Western Desert language spoken to the west of Hermannsburg came into the sphere of mission activity as people migrated east towards the mission and towards centres of European industry. *Galtindjinjamea-Pepa* (1924) compiled by Carl Strehlow, and published posthumously, contained an appendix with a Catechism and hymns in Luritja, which were translated by teacher A.Heinrich and M.Tjalkabota (Moses) (1869-1964), the Arrernte ‘blind evangelist’.

In spite of the existence of these MSS grammars by C.Strehlow (1931a[c.1907]; 1931b[c.1907]; 1910), which describe not only Arrernte but Diyari, Ramindjeri and Luritja, a recent major biography of Strehlow written by his grandson (J.Strehlow 2011) asserts (p.1064) that C.Strehlow “seems not to have compiled a Dieri grammar at all, nor to have improved on the sketchy Loritja grammar Mathews published.” This oversight is characteristic of the tendency, observed of historical accounts of Threlkeld (Roberts 2008:108), for historians to ‘gloss over’ their subjects’ linguistic achievements.

**9.2.3 The naming of ‘Arrernte’**

The earliest record of the term Arrernte, ‘Arrinda’, is given by C. Giles (c.1841-1917), stationmaster at Charlotte Waters telegraph station south of Alice Springs. Giles gave the term to name the language in 1875 in response to Taplin’s questionnaire (Taplin 1879a:89-91) (see Koch & Turpin 1997).

The second known record of the term is given on the northern most boundary of a map made by C.Richards (no dates) in 1892 (see Knapman 2011). The area marked ‘Ar-On-Tha’ (item 139) is close to Charlotte Waters and northwest of the ‘Won Ga Ngooroo’ (Wangkangurru), and is east of the Lar Itcha (Luritya) (Knapman 2011:18-19).
The next known usage of the term ‘Arrernte’ is made by Gillen in 1894, who used the term, ‘Arunta’, to refer to the people and language from the MacDonnell Ranges. The term appears in the title: “Notes on some manners & customs of the Aborigines / McDonell Ranges / Tribe of the Arunta …” (Figure 204).

In 1903 Gillen (1997:434) wrote to Spencer:

I am inclined to think that in all the CA [central Australian] tribes the tribal name comes from without[.]
No one in Cent’l Aust knew the tribal name Arunta until I dig it up.

It is possible that Gillen ‘dug-up’ the term from Taplin (1879a), but note that Gillen was post-master at Charlotte Waters from 1875-1892, and his source may also have been independent.

The gradual evolution of the term Arrernte to refer more broadly to people speaking related languages, and specifically to the people and language from the Hermannsburg mission, is evident in the correspondence between Leonhardi and C.Strehlow. In his initial introductory letter (1901), Leonhardi seeks Strehlow’s opinion of the validity of Spencer and Gillen’s use of the term ‘Arunta’ asking: “they are called Arunta by those doing the reporting. Is that name correct?” The title of C.Strehlow’s Aranda service book published in 1904 shows the earliest use of the term at Hermannsburg: Galtindinjamea-Pepa Aranda-Wolambarinjaka (Knowledge giving paper for the Arrernte speaking congregation).

That the earliest missionaries at Hermannsburg did not name the people at the mission ‘Arrernte’ has been misinterpreted as a failure, or at least an inexplicable oversight, by Albrecht (2002:4); Harms (2003:130), and by J.Strehlow (2011:271), who writes: “for some reason that nobody has been able to explain, the first missionaries never discovered that these people called themselves ‘Aranda’”. Here J.Strehlow fails to heed his own father’s (T.G.H.Strehlow 1947:47)
warning that researchers should not assume “that the Aranda people when they first came into contact with white men formed a well-knit, unified tribal whole”. All sources misunderstand traditional practices of naming languages in Aboriginal societies (see Sutton 1979).

9.3 Lutheran traditions of Arandic description 1891-1938

Kempe’s grammar of Arrernte, made without recourse to earlier work and produced after thirteen years of mission work, has to an extent been overshadowed by Strehlowian renown. It has not previously been recognised that C.Strehlow’s earliest grammar of Arrernte (1931a [c.1907]) reproduced much of Kempe’s work. For example, regarding the choice of the term ‘postposition’ rather than the more conventional term ‘preposition’, Kempe (1891:4) had written: “Concerning Prepositions, there are none in the language. The relative word always stands behind the noun as either a bound or stand-alone form. For this reason the word-class would better be termed ‘post-position’.” C.Strehlow (1931a[c.1907]:17) wrote: “There are no prepositions in the Aranda language. The relationship word always stands behind the noun, whether it is attached, or is a stand-alone word. For this reason, the word-class would better be called ‘postposition’.”102 In the spirit of collaborative research made towards the common aim of proselytisation, grammars written by Neuendettelsau men at Hermannsburg reproduced the analysis given by earlier Hermannsburg missionaries, as had previously occurred in grammars of Diyari written at Bethesda.

Moreover, Kempe (1891) is not recognised by linguistic historians as having presented the earliest description of kin-dyadics (9.3.1), or the category of associated motion (9.3.2).

9.3.1 -nhenge ‘kin-dyadic’

Many PN languages mark pronouns and other terms with a dyadic suffix showing a reciprocal relationship between the referents (Merlan & Heath 1982). In Arrernte members of these pairs are marked with -nhenge. Wilkins (1989:136) describes the structure in Mparntwe Arrernte:

-\textit{nhenge} ‘kin-dyadic’ attaches to certain kin terms…to form a lexeme which refers to a group of people (usually only two) who are related to each other in such a way that one member of the group would call the other member of the group by the kin term which is the root of the formation.

\footnote{102}Praepositionen gibt es in der Aranda Sprache nicht. Das vorhältnis Wort steht immer hinter dem nomen, entweder verbunden mit ihm, oder als selbständiges Wort, deshalb wird diese Wortklasse besser mit den Wort ‘Postposition’ bezeichnet” (C.Strehlow (1931a[c.1907]:17).}
Kempe (1891:3) described a “particular form of the dual, which is only used personally by annexing the particle nanga, as wora, ‘the boy’; worananga, ‘the two boys’”. Following Kempe, C. Strehlow (1931a [c.1907]:25) wrote:

In instances in which the people stand in a close and friendly relationship with one another, the dual is commonly expressed with the ending “nanga”, especially in sentences which are questions. For example, kwarananga ntana? Where are both the girls? (literally girls both where?) tjinananga, the two friends.103

T.G.H. Strehlow’s (1944:61[1938]) later account of the suffix did not explain that the suffix marked a reciprocal relationship as effectively as had his predecessors’ descriptions. He firstly described naŋa (nhenge) as alternative dual suffix, proposing that the form was the original dual suffix that has been replaced by tara (therre). He also exemplified the suffix in a list of items given under the heading ‘collective nouns’: tjóanaŋa ‘twins’, mánaŋa ‘mother and baby’, njínaŋa ‘father(s) and son(s)’ and kanaŋa ‘two brothers’.

In an overview of the category in Australian languages, Evans (2003:2) overlooks the pre-contemporary descriptions of the category:

To our knowledge the first discussion of the term ‘dyadic’ in the sense used here … was given by Merlan & Heath (1982), though other Australianist scholars had discussed the same or related phenomena under other names, such as ‘kinship proprietives’ (e.g. Breen 1976, Blake 1979), ‘kinship duals’ (Dixon 1972:234-5), ‘reciprocal plurals’ (Donaldson 1980:104-5), ‘collective nouns’ (Hercus & White 1973) and ‘kinship pairs’ (Hercus 1982).

The oversight of the pre-contemporary descriptions of the structure is characteristic of a discontinuity in the tradition of Australian grammatical description. Structures were described in the modern descriptive era as if for the first time, without recognition of the descriptive breakthroughs that had been made earlier.

9.3.2 Verb morphology and the category of associated motion

Kempe’s grammar of Arrernte delved boldly into the complexity of verbal morphology in a way that is uncharacteristic of the corpus. Allusions to the complexity of verb structure are widespread within the corpus works (Teichelmann & Schürmann 1840:13; Schürmann 1844a:16;1846:30; Ridley 1855b:76;1866:63), and Ray (1925:6) observed that verbal morphology remained under-investigated. Grammarians frequently qualify this area of their description as incomplete conveying that they are aware of a much greater complexity than their presentation attempted to account for. Kempe (1891:25) wrote “[n]ow there are many forms, which have been considered in the foregoing chapters, which can be brought into all the

103 “Bei Personen, die in einem näheren Freundschaftsverhältnis zu einander stehen, wird der Dual häufig besonders in Fragesätzen durch die Endung “nanga” ausgedrückt zB: kwarananga ntana? Wo sind die beiden Maedchen? (Woertlich: MAEDCHEN BEIDE WO?) Tjinananga = die beiden Freunde.” (C. Strehlow 1931a [c.1907]:25)
moods and voices… there are 30 at the least which can be thus regularly conjugated, that means, from one mood can be made 9,000 different phrases.” Compare this statement with T.G.H.Strehlow’s (1944:175[1938]) later claim that “a transitive verb … gives rise to many thousands of verb forms”, which is uncannily similar to Kempe’s. This similarity is among a handful of elements contained in Strehlow’s grammar that place his work firmly within the long tradition of Lutheran description of Arrernte and of languages spoken in present day South Australia.

Kempe assigned the tables of verb conjugation, which are among the most comprehensive materials relating to the verb considered in this thesis, to a ten-page appendix (pp.26-36), and instead devoted the section describing verbs given in the main section of the grammar (pp.17-24) to the description of inflection and derivation of a more complex nature. Chapter XIII (pp.23-24) ‘Sundry moods and forms …’ presents subordinating morphology including a discussion of the translation of the counterfactual construction from John 11: 21 ‘if thou hadst come here my brother would not have died’. The detail given here surpasses that provided in the grammars of Diyari written over three decades of mission work at Bethesda.

Arrernte is among a group of languages spoken in Central Australia with verbs specifying “that the verb action is associated in some way with a motion event” (Wilkins 1989:270). The morphological system was first described as a ‘category of associated motion’ by Koch (1984:23) for the Arandic language Kaytetye.

Wilkins’ discussion (1989:270-298) of associated motion in Mparntwe Arrernte refers to T.G.H.Strehlow’s account of some of the same forms. Strehlow listed verbs inflected for the category in a discussion of ‘periphrastic verbs’ (1944:171-174[1938]). Wilkins (pp.273-274) observed that:

Strehlow himself never separates out the individual morphemes nor indicates in what manner the verb form is derived. Indeed, … he lists reduplicated aspactual forms as well as combining reduplicated aspactual forms and associated motion forms.

Some of the forms Strehlow gave had first been described by Kempe (1891:19-22) and subsequently by Mathews (1907b:334). Like T.G.H.Strehlow, Kempe interspersed the verbs inflected for associated motion with verbs exemplifying other functions marked by aspect or reduplication. The morphemes controlling different categories of verbal morphology were not identified. Kempe for instance, included example (131), in which the verb root –twe “to hit” is marked with the morphological compound -ety=alpe-, a category of associated motion indicating that the “subject returns to a place and then performs the action described by the verb stem” (Henderson 2013:241), before word final inflection for present tense.
Kempe also supplied example (132) showing inflection for continuous aspect, which fills the slot in the Arrernte verb directly after the marking of associated motion (Henderson 2013:276). In this example the verb is inflected with the morpheme complex –rle=pe- : ‘do continuously while moving along’, indicating “an action which is done repeatedly or continuously while moving along” (Henderson 2013:248; Wilkins 1989:252).

Kempe (1891:20) also recognised the associated motion forms: ty=antye DO UPWARDS and tye=kerle DO DOWNWARDS (Wilkins 1989:272-273). He described ty=antye DO UPWARDS as injama “to rise or ascend” (133), and recognised that verbs containing this form implied motion upwards. While his analysis of the constituents of tye=kerle DO DOWNWARDS, ikalama (134) was flawed, he demonstrated how both forms altered the meaning of verbs with which they co-occurred. Both illustrative examples convey the time of the day implied by the motion of the sun:

Mathews (1907b:334) listed forms illustrating that the Arrernte verb showed “repetition or continuance of the act described, and many complexities, which must only briefly be mentioned in this article” (Figure 205). In keeping with his propensity to assert that his analysis was the first to present Australian linguistic structures, he likened the Arrernte forms to verbs in
“Kamilaroi, Wiradjuri, Thurrawal and other Australian tongues, the grammars of which have been published by me.”

Each of the forms Mathews listed (Figure 218) were picked from Kempe’s four page analysis (1891:20-23). Mathews, however, failed to appreciate that some of the examples he picked from Kempe’s grammar described a category that was not shared by any of the languages he mentioned.

![Figure 205: Mathews' exemplification of verbal complexity, 1907b:334](image)

9.3.3 Early representations of case

9.3.3.1 Prepositions

Rather than presenting the word-class ‘preposition’ in its conventional position towards the back of the grammar, Kempe discussed ‘prepositions’ (pp.4-5) straight after ‘substantive case’, and before ‘adjectives’ and ‘pronouns’. This placement, which had previously been employed by Moorhouse (1846:2), reflects Kempe’s awareness that some members of this class performed the same grammatical function as suffixes deemed to mark case.

He explained that the term ‘postposition’ was more appropriate than ‘preposition’, since the particles were placed at the end of a word, but nevertheless maintained the term ‘preposition’.

Kempe (p.4) divided ‘prepositions’ into two classes: “one consisting of separate words” (Figure 206) and the other “consisting only of small particles annexed to the substantives, to which they belong as suffixes” (Figure 207). This division had been established by Teichelmann & Schürmann (1840) (§5.3.2), and was followed by Lutheran missionary-grammarians describing Diyari (§8.6.7). Following Kempe (1891:4-6), the division was maintained in later descriptions of Arrernte, although the classes were assigned different labels, by Mathews (1907b:335), and by T.G.H.Strehlow (1944:199-207[1938]). This division of pre/postpositions into two functionally distinct classes is unique to the South Australian sub-corpus of description.
Kempe’s first class (Figure 206) corresponds to Teichelmann & Schürmann’s ‘postpositions’ (Figure 87). The class includes what are mostly locational words and spatial adverbs. The forms given by Kempe are mostly the same as those given by T.G.H. Strehlow as ‘postpositional suffixes’.

Kempe’s second class (Figure 207), which corresponds to Teichelmann & Schürmann’s ‘postfixa’ (Figure 86), are termed ‘postpositional suffixes’ by T.G.H. Strehlow. These are the peripheral case suffixes that were not included in the conservative Arrernte case paradigms, marking cases that are now called allative, instrumental/comitative, locative, proprietive and AFTER. They attach to the unmarked stem of nouns and to the dative stem of pronouns, or, as T.G.H. Strehlow (1944;199[1938]) explained: “to the nominative cases of nouns and adjectives, and to the possessive cases of personal pronouns.”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Original translation</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Currently described as:</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>‘governed by the ablative case’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ulara</td>
<td>in front, against</td>
<td>iwarre</td>
<td>in front, front</td>
<td>Breen 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>topala</td>
<td>behind</td>
<td>irtpe-le</td>
<td>back-LOC</td>
<td>Breen 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gatala</td>
<td>outside</td>
<td>kethe-le</td>
<td>outside-LOC</td>
<td>Breen 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mbobula</td>
<td>between</td>
<td>mpwepe-le</td>
<td>Middle-LOC, between</td>
<td>Breen 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ntuara</td>
<td>other side</td>
<td>ntwarre</td>
<td>other side</td>
<td>Breen 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nankara</td>
<td>this side</td>
<td>nhenh-ankwerr / nhangkwarr</td>
<td>in this direction</td>
<td>Green, 2009:714</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nkela</td>
<td>beside</td>
<td>?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>itinjawara</td>
<td>close by</td>
<td>itenye-(iwarre)</td>
<td>close by -?</td>
<td>Breen 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ntuarintjirka</td>
<td>though</td>
<td>ntwarre-(?)</td>
<td>? on the other side</td>
<td>Breen 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘governed by the accusative case’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>katningala</td>
<td>upon</td>
<td>kertnegele</td>
<td>above</td>
<td>Breen 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>katningalagana</td>
<td>over</td>
<td>Kertnegele-?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kwanakala</td>
<td>down</td>
<td>kwanakerle</td>
<td>downwards</td>
<td>Breen 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kwanala</td>
<td>inside</td>
<td>kwanale</td>
<td>inside</td>
<td>Breen 2000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 206: Analysis of Kempe’s first class of ‘preposition’
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Original translation</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Currently described as marking</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-una</td>
<td>‘on, upon, into’</td>
<td>-werne</td>
<td>allative</td>
<td>Wilkins 1989:189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-lela</td>
<td>‘the instrument with which anything is made, or the person by whom anything is accompanied’</td>
<td>-LeLe</td>
<td>instrumental and comitative</td>
<td>Wilkins pers. com. 26/08/2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-la</td>
<td>‘the place where someone is’</td>
<td>-le</td>
<td>locative</td>
<td>Wilkins 1989:174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-gata</td>
<td>‘with’ (Latin cum)</td>
<td>-kerte</td>
<td>proprietor</td>
<td>Wilkins pers. com. 26/08/2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-raba</td>
<td>‘without’</td>
<td>repe</td>
<td>ADVERB ‘going along without a particular thing or person’</td>
<td>Henderson &amp; Dobson 1994</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-gitjala</td>
<td>‘for in exchange for’</td>
<td>-ketye-le</td>
<td>?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-kaguia</td>
<td>‘for the sake of’</td>
<td></td>
<td>unattested</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kiaka</td>
<td>‘on, to’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ibera</td>
<td>‘from, out of’</td>
<td>-iperre</td>
<td>AFTER</td>
<td>Wilkins 1989:210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ibena</td>
<td></td>
<td>-ipenhe</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Figure 207: Analysis of Kempe’s second class of ‘preposition’*

Kempe divided his first class of ‘prepositions’, i.e., locational words, into two classes, those ‘governed’ by the accusative case, and those ‘governed’ by the ablative case. By ‘governed’ he meant that the locational word was postposed to a nominal in a particular case, as in the NP *artwe-nge lwarre* “in front of the man”, given in example (135)

135. Era atunga ulara tnama  
‘he of man in front stands’”  
(Kepe 1891:4)

Re artwe-nge lwarre irtna-me  
3sgNOM man-ABL in front stand-PRES  
‘he stands in front of the man’

Clauses given by Kempe to exemplify ‘postpositions’ governed by the ablative case resemble the Mparntwe Arrernte ‘relative location construction’, in which a subclass of spatial adverbs “enter into a special construction in which the NP representing the ground is suffixed with –nge ABL” (Wilkins 1989:314). They are also shown in Pfitzner & Schmaal’s (1991:64) description of Western Arrernte.

Note that Kempe’s attempt to demonstrate that the first of the four ‘prepositions governed’ by the unmarked accusative case *kertnengele* ‘above’ is incorrect (136). The noun *aputa*- ‘hill’ does not stand in the accusative case, but is marked with the locative suffix.

136. jinga aputala katningala tname  
“I hill upon stand”  
(Kempe 1891:4)

ayenge aperte-le kertnengele irtna-me  
1sgNOM hill-LOC above stand-PRES  
“I stand upon the hill”
9.3.3.2 Case paradigms

Figure 208 summarises the labels given to nominal case markers in the early grammars of Arrernte, and contrasts them with Wilkins’ more recent analysis.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-Ø</td>
<td>Nom / Acc</td>
<td>Nom Acc</td>
<td>Nom intrans</td>
<td>Abs</td>
<td>Nom intrans</td>
<td>Nom intrans</td>
<td>Nom intrans</td>
<td>Nom I Obj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-le</td>
<td>Erg</td>
<td>Nom Caus</td>
<td>Nom intrans</td>
<td>Erg</td>
<td>Erg</td>
<td>Nom intrans</td>
<td>Nom intrans</td>
<td>Nom II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-nhe</td>
<td>Acc</td>
<td>Dat Dat</td>
<td>Acc All Dat</td>
<td>Dat Acc</td>
<td>Dat</td>
<td>Dat</td>
<td>Dat</td>
<td>Obj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ke</td>
<td>Dat</td>
<td>Gen Gen Gen</td>
<td>Gen Gen Gen Gen</td>
<td>Gen Gen Gen</td>
<td>Gen Gen</td>
<td>Gen Gen Poss</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-kenhe</td>
<td>Poss</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-nge</td>
<td>Abl</td>
<td>Abl Abl Abl</td>
<td>Abl Abl Abl</td>
<td>Abl Abl Abl</td>
<td>Abl Abl Abl</td>
<td>Abl Abl Abl Abl</td>
<td>Abl</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-werne</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>Dat All Loc</td>
<td>Loc Loc I Loc 2</td>
<td>Loc I Loc 1</td>
<td>Loc I Loc 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-lela</td>
<td>Inst</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Inst Inst</td>
<td>Inst Inst</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ipenh/</td>
<td>AFTER</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-iperre</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Figure 208: Nominal inflections on nouns in Arrernte which have been described as marking case.

*Instrumental function is marked by –le in Mparntwe Arrernte, which also marks the ergative and locative cases. Instrumental function is described as distinctly marked in Western Arrernte with the form –nhe, which also marks the comitative case.

** Riedel and C.Strehlow (1910) give an additional case form –ngibera termed ‘Loc 3’. It is not given by other early grammarians. It appears to be –nge ABL + -iperre AFTER.

† See Figure 218

Following the missionary grammarians of Diyari (Figure 178) and Teichelmann & Schürmann’s description of Kaurna (1840) (Figure 83), Kempe (Figure 209) produced conservative Latinate case paradigms when describing Arrernte. He (1892:3) wrote “There are six cases — nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, ablative and vocative”.

*Figure 209: Kempe’s case paradigm of singular nouns, 1891:3

While the case labels, and the ordering of cases that Kempe showed in his paradigms, are ostensibly the same as his Lutheran predecessors’, Kempe’s presentation of ergative morphology and function differ from that instigated by Dresdeners. The practices Kempe
employed were later followed by C. Strehlow (1931a[c.1907]), and mark an alteration to the descriptive tradition.

Ergative case forms are no longer placed at the bottom of the paradigm in the position of the Latin ablative. Kempe is among the few early grammarians who described the ergative case as ‘nominative’ and placed ergative forms along side ‘other’ nominative forms at the top of case paradigms (Symmons 1841; Roth 1897; Ray 1907) (Figure 209). Kempe’s (1891:3) explanation of ergative function is perfectly adequate\(^\text{104}\) (Figure 210), as was Ray’s description of the form of the “subject of a transitive verbs” (1907:272). Kempe wrote:

> the nominative is expressed in a double manner. The noun is unchanged if connected with an intransitive verb…but it is formed by adding the particle “\(\text{la,}\)” when it is unconnected (sic) with a transitive verb.

\[\begin{align*}
\text{\textit{Ta kwatja nanjinga inama}} & \quad \text{“I fetch water from the well”} \\
\text{1sgERG water-[ACC] well-ABL get-PRES} & \\
\text{The kwatye ngentye-nge ine-me} & \\
\end{align*}\]

\(\text{Figure 210: Kempe’s explanation of ergativity, 1891:3}\)

Unlike generations of Lutheran missionaries before him, who had used the term ‘ablative’ to name the ergative case (Figure 104), Kempe used the term ‘ablative’ to describe the suffix marking a range of functions currently associated with the case called ‘ablative’ in Arrernte (Wilkins 1989:185-187). Kempe gave a brief discussion of the marking and function of each case form, and provided example clauses for each. He described the ablative suffix \(-\text{nge}\) as marking:

a) “the direction where a thing comes [sic]”:

\(^{104}\) Note, however, that Kempe’s (1891:8) declension of possessive pronouns (Figure 91), did not list both a nominative and an ergative form under the heading ‘nominative’. The omission is odd.
b) “the material from which a thing is made”:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>138.</th>
<th>Era</th>
<th>ulbainja</th>
<th>ititjinga</th>
<th>erbuma</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Re</td>
<td>3sgNOM</td>
<td>boomerang-[ACC]</td>
<td>mulga-ABL</td>
<td>make-PRES</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

“he a boomerang from mulga makes”

(396)

(Kempe 1891:3)

While C. Strehlow’s earliest case paradigms (1931a:50-51[c.1907]) (Figure 211) resemble Kempe’s, C. Strehlow’s treatment of the ergative case differed. Ergative forms are now called ‘nominative transitive’, and are assigned their own position in the paradigm, occurring after the nominative form termed ‘nominative intransitive’ (Figure 208; Figure 211; Figure 212):

c) “the cause for which a thing is done”:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>139.</th>
<th>Jinga</th>
<th>woringa</th>
<th>tarama</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yenge</td>
<td>1sgNOM</td>
<td>boy-ABL</td>
<td>laugh-PRES</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

“I laugh for the sake of the boy”

(396)

(Kempe 1891:3)

While the Western Arrernte term for ‘boomerang’ is listed as *ulperrenye* (Breen 2000), Kempe’s spelling *Ulbainja* suggests the term was *ulpeyenye*.
Figure 211: E.Kramer’s copy of C.Strehlow’s comparative case paradigm of singular nouns in three languages, 1931a:50-51 [c.1907]

Figure 212: E.Kramer’s copy of C.Strehlow’s comparative case paradigm of dual pronouns in three languages, 1931a:64-65 [c.1907]

Strehlow’s use of the term ‘nominativ transitiv’, given here in this comparative grammar of Arrernte and Luritja (1910), is unique in the Australian literature. Although Strehlow reproduced Kempe’s conservative five-case paradigm — excluding the vocative — Strehlow (p.17) did consider the idea of inserting other forms termed ‘locativ’, ‘instrumentalis’ and ‘causalis’ to name case forms in this earliest analysis. Strehlow’s discussion of these terms, and his choice of ‘nominativ transitiv’ to name the ergative case may have been introduced via communication with Leonhardi. The term Nomitivus transitivus had previously been employed by Fabricius (1801:78-79[1791]) in descriptions of Greenlandic (see Lindner, 2013:186, 198).

Like Kempe, C.Strehlow (1931a:27[c.1907]) accounted for the different marking of agents and subjects in terms of verb transitivity. In a note accompanying his case paradigm Strehlow reproduced in German part of Kempe’s (1891:3) English explanation (Figure 210):
The nominative has a double form, depending upon whether the noun is connected with an intransitive or a transitive verb. If the subject nominative is connected with an intransitive verb, then the pure nominative is placed. That is the word is not altered. If however, the word is connected with a transitive verb, then the syllable ‘la’ is added to the word.106

9.3.4 Later representations of case

Planert’s grammar of Arrernte (1907a:555) set up the same six case forms as the missionaries, but altered the naming of the cases and, importantly, the conception of syntactic case. Planert presented the ergatively aligned nouns (A/SO) as standing in two cases, which he named ‘ergative’ and ‘absolutive’ (Figure 213) (§8.6.3.2). This section was presumably among those that Planert (p.551) described as having been “re-worked … according to linguistic principles”.107

![Figure 213: Planert’s case paradigm showing the terms ‘absolutive’ and ‘ergative’, 1907a:555](image)

C.Strehlow upped the ante. His 1908 case paradigms differ radically from those given in his earlier MS, and from the homogeneity of earlier Lutheran case paradigms of South Australian languages. C.Strehlow’s later case paradigms (1908;1910) are the last in the corpus, although his 1910 paradigm was later replicated by Riedel (1931[c.1923]). They mark a radical departure from the Lutheran paradigmatic template established by Teichelmann & Schürmann (1840) and followed in the Lutheran descriptions of Diyari and by Kempe. C.Strehlow’s 1908 and 1910 paradigms are better representations of the case system than that presented in other published Western Arrernte grammars, including T.G.H.Strehlow’s description made in the academic era.

After criticising Planert’s listing of cases as “incomplete and inadequate” (dürftig und unvollkommen), Strehlow (p.699) stated: “one must differentiate eleven cases.”108 (Figure 214).

---

106 “Der Nominativ hat eine doppelte Form, je nachdem das Substantivum mit einem intransitiven oder transitiven Verb verbunden ist. Ist das Subjecktive Nomen mit einem verbum intransitivum verbunden, so wird der Nominativus purus gesetzt; d.h. das Wort erleidet keine Veränderung. Ist dagegen das Wort mit einem transitiven Verb verbunden, so wird die Silbe “la” dem Wort angefügt” (C.Strehlow (1931a:27[c.1907])).

107 “nach sprachwissenschaftlichen Prinzipien ausgearbeitet” (Planert 1907:551).

108 “Man muss elf Kasus unterscheiden” (C.Strehlow 1908:699).
Figure 214: C. Strehlow’s later extended case paradigm of nouns, showing the term ‘ergative’, 1908:699-700

C. Strehlow’s 1908 paradigm includes case suffixes marking locative, instrumental, allative (§9.3.6.1), and a case marked by alternative suffixes –iperre and –ipenhe, glossed by Wilkins (1989:210) as AFTER. These had previously been described as ‘prepositions’ (Kempe 1891; C. Strehlow 1931a[c.1907]), and as ‘postpositional suffixes’ by T. G. H. Strehlow (1944:199-204[1938]). Leonhardi (1909) noted that three of those cases Strehlow identified in the 1908 publication had been “included in Dr. P[lanert]’s postpositions”.

C. Strehlow’s response assimilated the new term ‘ergativ’ from Planert’s grammar, but not the term ‘absolutiv’. Strehlow’s paradigm shows the accusative case as overtly marked with –na –nhe (A/S/O), as had his earlier work (1931a [c.1907]), differing from Kempe’s representation (Figure 215). From this it can be concluded that Planert’s material was based on Wettenegel’s adherence to Kempe’s first representation of the language.

Figure 215: Kempe’s case paradigm of singular nouns, 1891:3

C. Strehlow’s 1908 paradigm employs a range of other case terminology not generally found in the corpus: ‘allativ’, ‘instrumentalis’, ‘locativ’, and ‘causalis’. His stimuli were from a diverse range of sources.

He imported the term, ‘allativ’ from Planert. It was used with modern reference to indicate motion towards the marked nominal. This term is not found elsewhere in the corpus. C. Strehlow’s MS comparative grammar of Arrernte and Luritja (1910) (Figure 216) maintained
the large paradigm but excluded the term ‘allative’, opting instead for a numbered locative case. Parallel forms are given in Luritja. This paradigm was reproduced by Riedel (1931[c.1923]) (Figure 217), probably after Strehlow’s death in 1923, indicating that Riedel copied his material from Strehlow’s 1910 MS.

Figure 216: C.Strehlow’s comparative case paradigm of Arrernte and Luritja nouns, 1910:11

Figure 217: Riedel’s case paradigm of nouns, 1931:104 [c.1923]

The term ‘causalis’ was presented with a footnote (p.700) stating: “I am unclear of the correct signification of this case. The naming is therefore only provisional.”109 In March 1908 Leonhardi (1908a) wrote to Strehlow: “About the causalis or sublative, I should probably best ask Father W.Schmidt in Mödlingen, when the occasion arises.” Strehlow’s connection to

109 “Über die richtige Bezeichnung dieses Kasus bin ich nicht im Klaren, die Benennung Causalis ist daher nur eine vorläufige” (C.Strehlow 1908:700)
Leonhardi allowed him to seek advice on the naming of Arrernte cases from European linguistic intelligentsia. By contrast C.Strehlow’s naming of other cases appears to have been influenced by Australian grammarians.

C.Strehlow’s inclusion of suffixes marking functions not associated with the case system of SAE languages is reminiscent of the paradigms given in the earliest grammars of PN languages by Threlkeld (1834) (§3.2.2) and by Günther (1838;1840) (§4.4.2). Strehlow was aware of Fraser’s (1892) publication. Leonhardi (1908b) mentioned both of these grammarians when writing to Strehlow, as if he was also conversant with their grammatical descriptions. It is possible that Fraser’s (1892) publication of these earliest two PN grammars influenced the shape of C.Strehlow’s paradigms and his choice of terminology.

The term ‘locative’ had been previously only been used in Australia by Günther (1840:346-347) and by Livingstone (1892:10), although Taplin (1879a:31) contemplated using the term when describing Ngayawang. It is likely that in choosing the term ‘locativ’ Strehlow was guided by grammars in Fraser (1892).

The term ‘instrumental’ had previously been used by Günther, ‘instrumentative’ (1840:346-347), as well as by Moorhouse (1846:6) to name a ‘particle’, and by Livingstone (1892:9). Mathews, with whom C.Strehlow corresponded, also used the term (see Koch 2008:192), including in his description of Arrernte (1907b:324). Strehlow’s stimuli for using the term are likely to have come from either Günther (1892) or Mathews (1907b), of which Strehlow is most likely to have become aware through his communication with Leonhardi.

9.3.5 Recognition of sensitivity to animacy

Western Arrernte animate nouns, or as T.G.H.Strehlow (1944:76[1938]) defined them, “names of persons and sometimes the names of animals (particularly if the latter are regarded as semi-human beings, as in the sacred legends)”, are optionally marked with the morpheme -nhe in accusative case (140). Inanimate nouns are consistently ergatively aligned (A/SO), and are unmarked in nominative and accusative cases (142). This situation differs from Mparntwe Arrernte in which all nouns are ergatively aligned. The situation in summarised in Figure 218. The suffix -nhe marks pronouns as accusative in both varieties.
Figure 218: The different alignment of the syntactic cases on types of nouns in Western Arrernte and Mparntwe Arrernte

T.G.H. Strehlow gave the following three examples to illustrate the situation in Western Arrernte.

140. Atuala katjiana tuma
   “a man hits the child” (T.G.H. Strehlow 1944:76[1938])
   Artwe-le keteye-nhe atwe-me
   Man-ERG child-ACC hit-PRES

141. Ața atęa araka
   “I saw the man” (T.G.H. Strehlow 1944:76[1938])
   The artwe are-ke
   1sgERG man-[ACC] see-PAST

142. Atuala poțta tuma
   “A man hits the rock” (T.G.H. Strehlow 1944:76[1938])
   Artwe-le apwerte atwe-me
   Man-ERG rock-[ACC] hit-PRES

The earliest grammar of a PN language (Threlkeld 1834) (Figure 38) had effectively shown the sensitivity of genitive marking to animacy in Awabakal by establishing classes of declension. Declension classes were first established in Arrernte by C. Strehlow (1931a:39[c.1907]), who despite stating that “there is only one declension in the Aranda language,” provided separate case paradigms (pp.39-42) for ‘Substantivum Personale’ (personal nouns) and ‘Substantivum Materiale’ (material nouns). C. Strehlow recognised (1931a:33[c.1907]) (Figure 219) that case marking was sensitive to the animacy of the noun:

The accusative ends either in na or is the same as the nominative. With personal nouns the ending na attaches to the stem. For example, ta katana raka … I saw the father. With physical nouns the accusative sounds identical to the nominative. For example, garra ilkuma … he eats meat.

110 Es gibt in der Aranda Sprache nur eine Deklention” (C. Strehlow 1931a:39[c.1907])
The examples C.Strehlow gave in this explanation are given below:

143. Ta katana raka
“Ich sah den Vater”

The karte-nhe are-ke
1sgERG father-ACC see-PAST
“I saw father”

144. Garra ilkuma
“er isst Fleisch”

Kere arlkwe-me
Meat-[ACC] eat-PRES
“(he) eats meat”

C.Strehlow’s (1931a:39[c.1907]) case paradigm of Substantivum Personale showed the noun karta ‘father’ marked with the accusative suffix –nhe, katana, while the paradigm of Substantivum Materiale shows merne ‘bread’ in accusative case as unmarked, mana.

Kempe’s paradigm for the animate noun artwe ‘man’ (Figure 209) showed the accusative form as unmarked, whereas C.Strehlow’s earliest case paradigm (Figure 211) showed the same noun suffixed with –nhe in accusative case.

Kempe, in the earliest grammar of Arrernte (1891), failed to recognise that accusative function was overtly marked on animate nouns (Figure 209) and was unmarked on other nouns, perhaps because of the optional nature of the animate marking.

It is clear that animate nouns were optionally overtly marked in accusative case in the variety described by Kempe in 1891. Kempe’s attempt to account for the suffix –nhe (§9.3.6) shows that the language had not, in this respect, altered in the generation between Kempe’s and C.Strehlow’s recordings.
Kempe’s analysis that animate nouns in accusative case were unmarked was followed by Mathews (1907:324), and reiterated by Eylmann (1908:84) “Im Accusativ bleibt das Wort ungebogen”. Both Mathews and Eylmann showed an inanimate noun unmarked in accusative case, using the same example taken from Kempe (1891:3):

145. Ta kwatja njuma
“I drink water”

(Kempe, 1891:3; Mathews 1907b:324; Eylmann 1908:84)

Planert’s (1907a) case paradigm (Figure 213) also shows the noun artwe ‘man’ unmarked in accusative case, shown as the absolutive case. It is this similarity between Kempe’s and Planert’s presentation of accusative case forms, and the difference between this analysis and that given in Kramer’s (1931a) copy of an earlier Arrernte grammar, which shows that Kramer’s copied the grammar (1931a) from a MS by C.Strehlow (c.1907). Leonhardi (1909) observed that this feature of Strehlow’s published analysis (1908) differed from that previously given by Planert (1907a) and Kempe (1891) “In the declension, you newly provide … the difference in the acc[usative] for words for living and inanimate things”. The recognition that animate nouns marked accusative case differently from inanimate nouns shows that Kramer (1931a) was a copy of C.Strehlow’s now lost earliest MS grammar, referred to here as c.1907.

9.3.6 The description of the dative case

Although Kempe failed to recognise that accusative function might be overtly marked on animate nouns, he did attempt to account for the accusative suffix –nhe. Kempe’s failure to discern the presence of the accusative suffix on animate nouns was caused by the same assumption that had confused the analysis of the marking of dative function in Kaurna and in Barngarla (§5.4.1).

In Western Arrernte the third argument of the verb ‘to give’ can be marked with the accusative suffix (Capell 1958:7). T.G.H.Strehlow (1944:76[1938]) described how the accusative case, which he termed ‘objective’, “fulfils the function of both the dative and accusative cases”. The only dative function implied here is the marking of the third argument of the verb nthe- ‘to give’. Other dative functions marked by the suffix –ke were poorly analysed by Strehlow (§9.3.6.2).

111 “In accusative case the word remains unchanged” (Eylmann 1908:84).
T.G.H. Strehlow (1944:76;86[1938]) stated:

the –na termination of the objective case is frequently dropped if the case is equivalent to the accusative Latin.

Here he makes it clear that when a nominal stood in accusative case it was optionally marked with the suffix –nhe. His statement also implied that when a nominal functioned as a recipient argument it was more likely to be overtly marked with the suffix -nhe. Using Strehlow’s parlance: when the objective case was not equivalent to the Latin accusative, but fulfilled the function of the dative, -nhe was not dropped.

The assumption that the forms which mark the indirect object of the verb ‘to give’, must necessarily be called ‘dative’, the prototypical dative function, led Kempe (1891:3) to the conclusion that “the dative terminates in na.” Mathews (1907b:324) was of the same opinion, and both authors gave example (146) to illustrate the marking of dative function.

146. Ata katjia-na nte-ma

“I give to the child”

the ketyeye-nhe nthe-me

1sgERG child-ACC give-PRES

The conclusion that –nhe marked the dative case forced a passive interpretation of transitive clauses with an overtly marked animate noun in accusative case. In order to account for what he thought was dative marking on the second argument of a transitive verb, Kempe (1891:15) interpreted an AOV clause, which translates simply as “the man hit the boy” (147), as “the boy is beaten by the man”. Kempe stated, “A proper form for the Passive Voice does not exist, and it is expressed by putting the subject in active form and the object in dative case.”

147. Atula worana tukala

By the man to the boy is beaten.”

i.e., “the boy is beaten by the man”

Artwe-le werre-nhe twe-kele

Man-ERG boy-ACC hit-PAST

“the man hit the boy”
Mathews (1907b:324) gave the same clause to show that, “in some expressions the accusative takes the dative inflection.” His English translation of the same clause falsely assigned dative function to an accusative object:

148.  

Atuala  worana  tukala

The man to-the-boy  beat

“the man gave (to) the boy a hiding”

(Mathews 1907b:324)

This false conclusion also contributed to the misanalysis of the allative case (§9.3.6.1) and of the dative case (§9.3.6.2) in Arrernte.

9.3.6.1 Analysis of the allative case

An inability to recognise retroflex and interdental nasal phonemes contributed to an initial failure to differentiate the inflection marking the allative case –werne from –nhe (accusative). The combined range of functions were said to be marked by the suffix –na. C.Strehlow (1931a:31[c.1907]) wrote:

The dative ends in na. For example, ta worana ndama [sic] (I to the boy say). This case stands also for the locative (lat: in cumaccus)[sic]. For example, jinga lama Tungauna, I go to Henbury.¹¹²

149.  

Jinga  lama  Tungauna

ayenge  alhe-me  Tunga-werne

1sgNOM  go-PRES  Tunga-ALL

150.  

ta  worana  ndama

the  were-nhe  ngke-me¹¹²

1sgERG  boy-ACC  tell-PRES

In 1908 (p.700) C.Strehlow wrote: “it would be possible to treat the dative and accusative cases as one, were it not for certain inanimate words which necessitate a difference.”¹¹⁴

Strehlow’s earliest paradigm suggests that, like Kempe, he believed that allative function was marked like the accusative on animate nouns with –nhe. His 1908 paradigm (Figure 214) shows the ‘dative’ (i.e., accusative) form as atuana and the ‘allative’ as atuaúna. His 1910

¹¹² Der Dativ endigt auf na z.B. ta worana ndama (Ich d. Knabe sage) ich sage dem Knabe. Diese Fall steht auch als Lokativ (lat. in Cumaccus)[sic] z.B. jinga lama Tungauna — Ich gehe nach Henbury.” (C. Strehlow 1931a:31 [c.1907]). Note that Strehlow 1931b[c.1907] ‘lat. In Cumaccus’ is correctly shown as ‘in cum accus.[ative]’. The reference appears to be the Latin preposition cum used with a noun in accusative case.

¹¹³ This is presumably an original, or a transcription, error. The form ndama shown here looks like the verb ntne- ‘to give’. The verb ngke- means ‘to say’.

pronominal paradigm (Figure 216) shows 1sgDAT jingana ayenganhe, and 1sgALL nukauna nukawerne, in which the allative suffix –werne is attached to the dative base, termed ‘genitive’ by the missionaries.

Planert (1907a:555) presumably also based his analysis on the understanding that the ‘dative’ case (i.e. overtly marked accusative nouns) and allative function were identically marked, stating somewhat confusingly, “The allative case replaces the dative and accusative.”115 He nevertheless presented two forms as allative (Figure 213), suggesting that Wettengel’s analysis, upon which Planert’s work rests, was based in the later Neuendettelsau understanding rather than in Kempe’s original analysis.

9.3.6.2 Analysis of the dative

The marking of dative and possessive functions in the variety of Arrernte described by the earliest missionaries appears to be merged (Dixon 2002:167, Blake 1987:36), with the entire functional range marked by the form –ka –ke. The suffix was described as marking the ‘genitive’ case by Kempe and C.Strehlow, and the ‘possessive’ case by T.G.H.Strehlow.

Kempe provided the following three clauses (Figure 220) to exemplify ‘genitive’ case function:

a) Adnominal possessive function (possessive):

151. Wora kataka
“the son of the father”
(Werre karte-ke
boy father-POSS)

b) Beneficiary function (dative):

152. Ta irbunga ina-ka kngiribata-ka
“The fishes caught old man for”
(The irrpenge ine-ke kngerrepate-ke
IS.ERG fish-[ACC] catch-PAST old man-GEN)

c) Purposive function (dative):

153. Aragutja inkuka laka
“the woman went for bullrushes”
(Arrkwetye ingkwe-ke lhe-ke
woman-NOM bullrushes-GEN go-PAST)

115 “der Allativ den Dativ und Akkusativ ersetzt” (Planert 1907:555).
Figure 220: Kempe’s description of the function of ‘genitive’, ‘dative’ and accusative cases, 1891:3

T.G.H. Strehlow described this range of case functions as being marked by either -ke or –kenhe. Although he maintained a single-case analysis, he showed that these two cases were syntactically distinct. Phrasal, possessive function could be marked by either morpheme:

154. árugútja-ka tjaia
“the woman’s road”

arrkwetye-ke tyaye
Woman-POSS road-[NOM]

(T.G.H. Strehlow 1944:75)

155. árugútja-kaņa tjaia
“the woman’s road”

arrkwetye-kenhe tyaye
Woman-POSS road-[NOM]

(T.G.H. Strehlow 1944:75)

But clausal dative case functions could only marked only by -ke

156. jiŋa árugútja-ka tjinbalama
*jiŋa árugútja-kaņa tjinbalama
“I am waiting for-the-woman”

ayenge arrkwetye-ke tyenpelhe-me
1sgNOM woman- DAT wait-PRES

(T.G.H. Strehlow 1944:75)

Note this situation differs from that described in Mparntwe Arrernte (Figure 221)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Dative Case</th>
<th>Possessive Case</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Western Arrernte</td>
<td>-ke</td>
<td>-ke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-kenhe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mparntwe Arrernte</td>
<td>-ke</td>
<td>-kenhe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 221: The marking of dative and possessive functions in Western and Mparntwe Arrernte
In T.G.H. Strehlow’s words, “either form of the possessive case can be used if the noun in the possessive case depends upon another noun. If, however, the noun in the possessive case is governed by a verb, the short –ka form alone is permissible” (1944:75).

Further, a possessed NP that is marked for dative clausal function was described by Strehlow as a double possessive case.

157. **tjaia atukaŋa**ka jiŋa juntulabu-ma

“I am wandering-about-looking-for the men’s road”  
(T.G.H. Strehlow 1944:75)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tyaye</th>
<th>artwe-kenhe-ke</th>
<th>ayneng</th>
<th>yunthe-rla.pe-me</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[Road</td>
<td>man-POSS]-DAT</td>
<td>1SgNOM</td>
<td>look for-DO ALONG-PRES</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note also that in Strehlow’s declension of possessive adjectives (Figure 92) (§5.3.3), the form labelled ‘possessive’, nukanaka, can only have dative clausal function, because a possessive NP cannot be additionally marked for possessive function.

158. **Kata nukanaka**  
(T.G.H. Strehlow 1944:95)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Karte</th>
<th>nwekenhe-ke</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[Father</td>
<td>1sgPOSS]-DAT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The single largest analytical failing of T.G.H. Strehlow’s “An Aranda Grammar” is his poor description of the inflection for dative case –ke. That Strehlow did not appreciate that dative function was marked distinctly from possessive function is evident in a comment made regarding the ‘declension of an inanimate object’ (Figure 222). He wrote: “The kana form seems to be absent from the possessive case”. Strehlow’s ‘possessive’ form is marked with –ke dative, rather than –kenhe possessive, since an inanimate object is unlikely to function as the possessor in a possessive NP.

The degree to which the function of the dative inflection –ke was misconstrued by T.G.H. Strehlow is further illustrated by his listing of the form as a ‘concessive particle’, said to denote “grudging concession” (1944:196[1938]). The following example was given to illustrate this ‘concessive particle’ –ka where it is shown attached to anma anme ‘soon’. The form is marked by dative inflection –ke, which when attached to a temporal nominal conveys duration (Wilkins 1989:182):
9.4 Conclusion

This study of early descriptions of Arrernte shows that the Lutheran school of South Australian linguistic description, which originated with the Dresdener missionaries’ descriptions of languages spoken in the south of the state (Teichelmann & Schürmann 1840; Meyer 1843; Schürmann 1844a), had an enduring influence on the description of Arrernte, which extended into the twentieth century and into the academic era of Australian linguistic description.

Kempe’s inaugural Arrernte grammar (1891), which is a remarkably comprehensive work describing verbs inflected for associated motion (§9.3.2), and kin-dyadic terms (§9.3.1), does not follow Teichelmann & Schürmann’s placement of the ergative case towards the bottom of the case paradigm. This format was maintained over six decades of descriptions made in Australia, by Taplin (1867;1872[1870];1874;1878) (Appendix 2§1.1), and by those who replicated his paradigms in Brough Smyth (Appendix 2§1.2), and in all grammars of Diyari (Chapter eight), including Planert’s (1908) grammar published in Germany. Kempe’s choice to present ergative forms as an alternative ‘nominative’ form was atypical, and marked a departure from established practice, but is characteristic of the descriptive independence displayed by many of the corpus grammarians, who confidently presented new and alternative representations of PN structures. Nevertheless, many aspects of Kempe’s analysis show that he did borrow descriptive methods instigated by his predecessors. The grammarians he followed were the South Australian Lutherans with whose work he was familiar.

The features of Kempe’s grammar that situate his work within this South Australian sub-school of description also places T.G.H.Strehlow’s grammar (1944[1938]) within the nineteenth century Lutheran tradition of his forebears. Yet T.G.H.Strehlow’s grammar was, after Love’s MA thesis grammar of Worrorra (1938[1933]), and Trudinger’s grammar of Pitjantjatjara (1943), the third earliest published grammar of an Australian language written from within the academic sphere. These features are the division of post-positions into two classes, (§9.3.3.1), made originally by Teichelmann & Schürmann (§5.3.2) and followed in grammars of Diyari (§8.6.7), and the inclusion of paradigms declining possessive adjectives...
(Figure 92), which had similarly been initiated by Teichelmann & Schürmann and followed by the Diyari missionary-grammarians (§5.3.3).

Comparison of T.G.H.Strehlow’s work with previous grammars of Arrernte, and of these grammars with the larger corpus of early PN grammatical description, shows few analytical or descriptive improvements over the course of a century. While T.G.H.Strehlow’s grammar gives the most comprehensive account of Arrernte morphology and syntax, it does not add substantial analytical insight to what was discovered by the missionaries. C.Strehlow’s later case paradigms (1908; 1910) are in fact better representations of the case system of Arrernte than are T.G.H.Strehlow’s representations. T.G.H.Strehlow’s analysis of the dative case remains confused by the same factors that had initially led Teichelmann & Schürmann’s analysis astray in 1840. These finding are borne out in the comparative study of apprehensival constructions (10.2.3§) in the following chapter.
Chapter 10:
The syntax of complex clauses

This chapter studies the description of the syntax of complex clauses in grammars written by Lutherans in South Australia, and confirms that these Lutheran missionary-grammarians utilised each other’s works. Just as W. Koch (1867) was shown to have wrongly described both ‘active’ and ‘ablative’ interrogative pronouns in Diyari, on the assumption the language was structurally the same as the language described by Teichelmann & Schürmann (1840) (§8.6.3.5), this investigation shows the gratuitous importation of syntactic structures across language boundaries by the grammarians operating within this descriptive school.

10.1 Introduction

As with many other parts of their grammatical description, grammarians of the Lutheran School explained the processes of marking clausal dependency using methods that differed from those utilised by Threlkeld (1834).

Threlkeld accounted for the subordinating function of a range of verbal morphology in Awabakal in lengthy tables of verb conjugations that constitute more than half his grammar (pp.33-77). Under the heading ‘subjunctive’, verbs marked with dependency-marking suffixes are described as being “in regimen”, i.e., ruled by something else. For example, verbs inflected with the suffix –wil, were described by Threlkeld (1834:49) as being “in regimen denoting the purpose of the subject”. The suffix is described by Lissarrague (2006:77) as the desiderative or purposive suffix, which “occurs in a subordinate clause and indicates subsequent action resulting from the main clause”. Threlkeld’s description of subordinating morphemes marking forms as being in regimen was not used again in the description of an Australian language.

Threlkeld (p.70) described a range of morphology with subordinating function, including the subordinating clitic –pa (Lissarrague 2006:93), as marking of the subjunctive mood of the verb. In a detailed investigation of Threlkeld’s description and use of this subordinating clitic –pa, Wafer & Carey (2011:126-132) state that the clearest reference Threlkeld made to –pa occurred under the heading ‘adverbs of time’ (1834:75-76), concluding that his idiomatic usage of the clitic was better than his ability to describe its function. It appears, however, they overlook Threlkeld’s account of the suffix as marking the subjunctive mood (Figure 223),
where clauses marked with the clitic are translated as temporal relative clauses “while X”, given without the main clause (160).

Figure 223: Threlkeld’s presentation of –pa in a discussion of the subjunctive mood of the verb, 1834:70

160. Wi-yán no-a ba
“While he speaks”

Wiya-N nyuwa-pa
Speak-PRES 3sgmNOM-SUB

While the presentation of subordinating morphology within a discussion of verbal mood is common to the corpus, only the Lutheran sub-corpus also presented subordinating morphology under the heading ‘relative pronouns’.

Section 10.2 of this chapter examines the description of apprehensional constructions. Section 10.3 examines constructions presented as ‘conditional’ moods of the verb, and section 10.4 examines constructions presented under the heading ‘the relative pronoun’. The depiction of these features by the Lutheran grammarians in South Australia is compared with that given by T.G.H. Strehlow (1944[1938]).

10.2 Apprehensional constructions

The apprehensional, lest, or aversive construction is common to many PN languages. Verbs marking apprehensional constructions have a subordinating, non-finite usage (Dixon 2002:87), and often also a modal, finite usage (ibid.,210). Apprehensional constructions were described in the earliest grammar of a South Australian language by Teichelmann & Schürmann (1840) in a listing of moods of the verb, where they were named the ‘negative optative or preventative mood’. Later South Australian grammarians termed this ‘verbal mood’ the ‘denunciative’ (Koch 1868:no pag.), the prohibitive (Taplin 1879a:32) and the ‘metutiv’ (Planert 1908:692).
10.2.1 Teichelmann & Schürmann’s ‘negative optative or preventative’ mood

Teichelmann and Schürmann (1840:18-19) described the apprehensional, or aversive, morpheme in Kaurna, –tuwayi, attached to a verb marking it as subordinate and indicating that the main verb event should be executed in order to avoid the action of the verb that is marked as subordinate. They (1840:18) described the function of their ‘negative optative or preventative mood’ well, stating: “This termination expresses that something will, may, or shall not take place, in consequence of another action”. They (p.18) described the verb marked with the apprensional morpheme as non-finite when judiciously observing: “since this mood always depends on the proposition, there is no need for any tense in it, being always expressed by the tense of the proposition”.

Teichelmann & Schürmann exemplified the construction within entire matrix clauses (161&162) showing both main and dependent constituents. In each the apprehensional clause immediately follows the main clause. It is not known whether other orderings were possible. Their description and exemplification of the subordinating usage of the apprehensional construction is good compared with that of many other early grammarians.

161. Tarralyoanna mutyertanna wondando, yerta buttonettoai
   “Put the clothes on the table, lest they be (or become) spoiled by the earth”
   (Teichelmann & Schürmann 1840:18)
   
   Tarryl-ana mutyarta-rna wanna nthu\textsuperscript{116}, yarta purtu-rni tuwayi
   table -ALL Clothes-pl put-2sgERG earth-full-INCH-AVERS

162. Yurrepaiaiandunna, kundattoai parna.
   “You must pay attention to them (the goats), lest they kill (them)”
   (Teichelmann & Schürmann 1840:18)

   Yurri- payi nthu-rna, kuntu tuwayi parna
   Ear-examine-2sgERG-3plACC kill-AVERS 3plACC

Teichelmann and Schürmann did, however, also note that: “sometimes the first sentence is omitted, and must be supplied by the hearer”. Teichelmann’s later description of the ‘negative optative or preventative mood’, given in his 1858 amendments, conveyed the dependency of the marked verb to another clause less clearly: “the fearing that something might happen and take place and wishing that it might not”. There is, however, no solid evidence that the Kaurna morpheme –tuwayi had modal finite usage.

Teichelmann and Schürmann also exemplified the structurally similar purposive construction, which is common to PN languages marking “an action which happens by virtue of some earlier action, referred to in a previous clause” (Dixon 2002:71), as a mood of the verb.

\textsuperscript{116} For discussion of the form of the 2sgERG pronoun, in this and the following example, see footnote 63.
Under the heading ‘infinitive mood’, they (1840:19) explained: “No exclusive termination is yet known for this mood. Sometimes when an intention or purpose of an action is to be expressed, the termination titya (i.e., itya) is affixed”. They gave two examples: “I came in order to hear you speak” and example 163. As in the apprehensional constructions, the purposive morpheme was shown attached to a verb in a subordinate clause that was exemplified alongside a main clause. It is not known whether the Kaurna purposive morpheme –titya had modal non-finite function.

163. Ngatto punggetitya wārpunna pingga
“I have made the dagger for the purpose of stabbing”

(Deichelmann & Schürmann 1840:20)

10.2.2 The ‘denunicatiiv’ mood in Diyari

Apprehensional constructions in Diyari (termed ‘lest’ by Austin 2013[1981a]) are marked by the morpheme –yathi, which is the only dependent clause verbal inflection in Diyari which does not also mark switch reference, i.e., whether the subject of the dependent clause is either the same or different subject as the main clause (Austin 2013:229[1981a]).

The apprehensional construction was established as a mood of the verb and named the ‘denuntiativ’ (denunciative) in grammars of Diyari by Koch (1868:no pag.), who described the mood as “Modus der Drohung oder Ankündigung” (mood of threat or notification). The exemplification, which is given by each later missionary grammarian, is missing from the extant copy of Koch’s original analysis. The section occurs within the pages of the MS that are left blank (§8.4). Schoknecht’s (1947:10[1872]) description also discusses the ‘denunciative’ in terms of a ‘threat’:

This is a mood that is not employed in any language, either ancient or modern of which we have any knowledge. It expresses an announcement [notification] or a threat, and always states, in the first part of the sentence, the means by which the threatened consequence may be averted.

Schoknecht’s description and exemplification of apprehensional constructions (164&165) can be assumed to have been taken from a non-extant section of Koch’s analysis (1868):

164. Ninkidani wapamai, nato nandraiatil!
“Come here, otherwise I strike!”

(Schoknecht 1947:10[1872])

Note that in example (165) the name ‘Jesu’ has not been not grammatically integrated. Diyari masculine names are normally marked with –nha in accusative case (Figure 189).
Jesu antjanimai, jura paliati!

“Love Jesus, or you will die!”

Yesu ngantya-ni-mayi, yura pali-yathi

“love Jesus, lest you die!”

10.2.3 T.G.H. Strehlow’s description of apprehensional and purposive constructions (1944[1938])

Teichelmann & Schürmann’s and the early Diyari grammarians’ exemplification of verbs marked with apprehensional and purposive morphemes in subordinate, non-finite clauses alongside the main clause is more enlightening than the description of the apprehensional and purposive constructions given in Arrernte by T.G.H. Strehlow (1944:118-120[1938]) a century later.

While the purposive morpheme –tyeke is described in Mpartntwe Arrernte (Wilkins 1989:236-237) as having both subordinating, non finite function and a modal, finite function, there is no evidence that the apprehensional morpheme –ketye (termed ‘aversive’ by Wilkins 1989:240) marked the verb of a main clause with modal, finite function.

Strehlow simply showed the apprehensional morpheme –ketye and the purposive morpheme –tyeke in conjugational tables attached to a verb. The presentation does not allude to their subordinating function. The apprehensional morpheme was listed as a mood called the ‘negative final 1’, and the purposive as the ‘jussive subjunctive’ mood. While the terminology Strehlow chose to name these verb forms may have conveyed their dependent status to the most grammatically well-educated reader, the apprehensional construction was not anywhere exemplified alongside the clause upon which it was dependent. For example:

ata tukitja

“lest I strike”

the atwe-ketye

1sgERG hit-AVERS

Planert’s grammar of Diyari (1908:692), in which the apprehensional inflection was termed ‘metutiv’, also illustrated the dependent apprehensional construction in isolation of the main clause:

Ngato nganka-ati

“ich mache sonst, damit ich nicht mache, das ich bloss nicht mache”

[I make or else, so I make not, that I just not make]

ngathu nganka-yathi

1sgERG make-AVERS

117 Strehlow shows two variants –kitja and -mitja

Planert 1908:692

(T.G.H. Strehlow 1944:125[1938])
Further, and even worse, Strehlow labelled the forms as being in the present tense. In the following Arrernte example (168), for instance, the verb marked as purposive with the suffix –tyeke in a subordinate clause cannot be said to be in the present tense:

168. ‘etna relir’perana jainaka iřina er’kutjika

“They sent men to arrest him”

(Capell 1958:15)

As Teichelmann and Schürmann (1840:18) had pointed out a century earlier, verbs marked with apprehensional morphemes are non-finite and the understood time of the action depends on the tense of the main verb. Strehlow’s strict application of the WP descriptive model (§2.4.1.2), and the lack of delineation between subordinate and main verb morphology in his grammar, compromised his analysis.

10.3 ‘The conditional or potential mood of the verb’

The processes of marking clausal dependency that Teichelmann & Schürmann (1840) discussed under the heading ‘the conditional or potential mood of the verb’ influenced the development of ideas about clausal subordination in the Lutheran sub-corpus.

10.3.1 Teichelmann & Schürmann

Teichelmann & Schürmann (1840:19) exemplified two types of conditional constructions in a discussion of the ‘conditional or potential’ mood of the verb. Although Bleek (1858:40) described the annotations Teichelmann made to the copy of the 1840 grammar of Kaurna he sent to Grey (1858) as extending “over the whole grammatical part”, it is this section that Teichelmann marked most heavily.

The first construction exemplified in a discussion of verbal moods (169) is fairly certainly a hypothetical finite construction. The suffix –ma is shown attaching to verb roots in two adjacent clauses. Teichelmann and Schürmann (1940:19) perceived that the morpheme –ma did not mark clausal dependency when stating: “this termination expresses not only the condition, but at the same time, the consequence”. In 1858, Teichelmann (1858:19[1840]) described this inflection as “a particle expressing the possibility or if you like what might be the case [illegible]”. The suffix –ma appears to be a finite verb inflection that occurs in the place of tense and marks the verb as conditional but not as subordinate. Following Wilkins (1989:233) -ma is
glossed hypothetical, after the Arandic morpheme –mere, which marks the verb as irrealis but has no subordinating function. That this construction was firmly described by the missionaries as finite is relevant to later descriptions of Diyari made by Lutheran missionaries in South Australia, whose analysis appears to have been influenced by this section of Teichelmann and Schürmann’s work.

169. **Ninna ngattaityangga wānggama, nindaitya aii budnama.**

   ‘If you had spoken to me, I would have come to you.’

(Neumeister & Schürmann 1840:19)

*Niina ngathaityangka wangka-ma, ninthaitya-au pudna-ma*

169. **Niina ngattaityangga wānggama, nindaitya aii budnama.**

   ‘If you had spoken to me, I would have come to you.’

(Neumeister & Schürmann 1840:19)

In both of examples (169&170) two juxtaposed finite hypothetical clauses are translated as a conditional complex clause construction.

170. **Niwa yakko ngarkoma, niwa yakko padloma**

   “If you two had not eaten, you would not have died”

(Teichelmann & Schürmann 1840:19)

*Niwa yaku ngarku-ma, niwa yaku padlu-ma*

The missionaries also provided this example elsewhere in the grammar:

170. **Niwa yakko ngarkoma, niwa yakko padloma**

   “If you two had not eaten, you would not have died”

(Teichelmann & Schürmann 1840:19)

*Niwa yaku ngarku-ma, niwa yaku padlu-ma*

In both of examples (169&170) two juxtaposed finite hypothetical clauses are translated as a conditional complex clause construction.

The second ‘affix’ that Teichelmann & Schürmann presented as marking the ‘conditional or potential mood of the verb’ was introduced (p.19) by the following statement:

Besides *ma*, another affix occurs … *ntyidla*, which, when added to the verb renders it either as a participle of the present tense, or a verbal substantive, but is frequently used in the sense of this mood.

They supplied example 171, which shows -ma attached to the verb of the second component and –ntyidla to the verb of the first. The suffix -ntyidla appears to mark the verb nguri- ‘to throw’ as both conditional and dependent. The main verb action yungku- ‘to give’, marked with –ma, might occur, if the dependent verb action were to occur.

171. **Ngatto ngurrityidla, ninna yungkoma**

   Were I permitted to throw, I would give (the bird) to you

(Teichelmann & Schürmann 1840:19)

*Ngathu nguri-ntyidla, niina yungku-ma*

Again, Teichelmann had more to say about these constructions in the annotations he sent to Grey (1858). On page 22 he wrote: “ntyidla, I do not doubt any more, is an affix which gives the verb the character of the participle, which may be affixed to any tense”, and on page

118 The form of the 2sgDAT pronoun, ninthaitya, shown here follows Amery & Simpson (2013:137). The form is likely to be ninaitya (see Koch 2014:62).
he added the following note comparing and clarifying the different syntactic functions of -ntyidla and -ma.

The termination — ntyidla expresses that if a certain thing had taken place, another would have been the consequence, but because the one did not take place, the other would not be expected, or not follow. But the above instance where the condition is expressed by –ma the consequence too, is a simple conditional case which might or might not have happened.

10.3.2 The Diyari grammarians

The Diyari grammarians presented forms marked with inflection –nani, –rnanhi in a discussion of the mood of the verb termed Modus Conditionalis. The form –nan(n)i, –rnanhi is now analysed (Austin 2013:226-229[1981a]) as a subordinate marker carrying both aspectual and switch reference functions, i.e., marking a dependent clause as imperfective and as having a different subject to that of the main clause (172).

172. pantha-ma-mayi kilthi ngakarni ngothu wayi-rna wara-rnanhi

smell-tr.IMP-EMPH stew-[ACC] 1sgPOSS 1sgERG cook-ptcple aux-IMPERF.DS

"smell my stew, that I cooked"

(Austin 2013:214[1981a])

Under the heading Modus Conditionalis Schoknecht (1947:12[1872]), Flierl (1880), and Reuther (1894) discussed the semantic function of the form in marking the verb as conditional without attributing a syntactic dependency marking function to the morpheme. They provided example (173), in which there are two clauses with –nani, –rnanhi marking the verb as conditional in each. There appears to be no clausal dependency.

173. judla taji-nani, judla pali-nani

"If you eat, you will die"

(yula thayi-rnanhi, yula die-COND

2dlNOM eat-COND, 2dlNOM die-COND

(Schoknecht 1947:12[1872])

Note that the dual form of the second person pronoun — given in the missionaries’ orthography with a pre-stopped lateral (see Austin 2013:27[1981a]) — falls out only in Reuther’s translation: “if you two eat, you will die” (1894:37;1981:12[1899]).

Such constructions do not, however, occur in the variety recorded by Austin (pers, comm. 13/08/2010), in which the verb in the second clause would be marked for tense (see Austin 2013:94[1981a]) (174), as in the example shown at Figure 224

174. pali-lha ngana-yi

die-FUT aux-PRES

‘will die’
There is an intriguing structural similarity between this abridged translation of Genesis 2:17 and 3:3 given by the Diyari grammarians to illustrate the conditional mood of the verb, and the construction given by Teichelmann & Schürmann (1840V:67) (170).

Although Teichelmann & Schürmann’s construction is negative and the Diyari construction is affirmative, the symmetry between the constructions is unlikely to be coincidental. While Teichelmann and Schürmann gave solid evidence that the Kaurna inflection –ma did not have dependency-marking function (§10.3.1), a parallel finite function of the Diyari inflection –rnanhi is not substantiated by Austin.

The Diyari morpheme –rnanhi was used frequently in the missionaries’ translations to mark the verb as hypothetical, but not as dependent. This does not accord with the structures recorded by Austin. Examine the following translation of John 11:21:

175. Kaparajai, jidni ninkida ngana-nani, neji ngakani wata pali-nani
"Lord if thou had been here, my brother would not have died"

(Kaparra-yayi      yini           nhingkirda ngana-rnanhi,   nhiyi      ngakarni       wata       pali -rnanhi
Boss-EMPH       2sgNOM   here             be-COND         brother   1sgDAT       NEG      die-COND

Although the English translation shows a subordinate clause as the first component of this counterfactual construction, both Diyari clauses are with marked with –rnanhi, which in the variety Austin recorded is a different subject subordinator.

Note that the translation into Arrernte of this same counterfactual construction, from John 11:21, was later discussed by Kempe (1891:23), and by T.G.H. Strehlow (1944:108[1938]), who in 1938 stated that the passage was “impossible to translate…into good Aranda”. 119

It seems probable that the use of –rnanhi in this clause, and in: ‘If you eat, you will die’ (173), was a syntactic feature of ‘mission Diyari’, and did not reflect native speaker usage. This structure is likely to have been developed by the missionaries, who had poor control of the language, as a translational solution for conditional and counterfactual constructions required for developing Diyari liturgical material. The Diyari grammarians appear to have calqued this construction from Teichelmann & Schürmann’s exemplification of the Kaurna suffix –ma

119 Strehlow (1944:108) later qualified this statement writing: “it is possible to translate this sentence literally into Aranda”.

420
and showed two juxtaposed finite ‘conditional’ clauses, which they translated as a conditional complex clause construction.

10.4 ‘Relative pronouns’

The category ‘relative pronoun’ is generally not included in the corpus grammars, other than to note that the forms were not to be found. Mathews (1907:327), for example, wrote that there were no relative pronouns “in the Aranda tongue and in this respect it resembles all other Australian languages with which I am acquainted.” However, by functional analogy with the SAE relative pronoun, Lutheran missionaries, and after them T.G.H. Strehlow, categorised certain subordinating clause types under the heading ‘relative pronouns.’

10.4.1 Teichelmann & Schürmann’s description of relative pronouns in Kaurna, 1840

In addition to presenting apprehensional constructions as the ‘negative optative or preventative mood’ (§10.2.1), and conditional complex clause construction as the ‘conditional or potential mood’ (§10.3.1), Teichelmann & Schürmann discussed other subordination processes under the heading ‘relative pronoun’, based on their perception that those structures were functionally equivalent to the relative pronoun in European languages. Their presentation is a classic example of how foreign PN structures were presented as traditional grammatical categories, which conventionally convey structures that were perceived as functionally equivalent to the newly encountered PN structure (§2.3.4). The vacant slot ‘relative pronoun’ was colonised by processes of clause subordination that Teichelmann & Schürmann struggled to understand.

Teichelmann & Schürmann (1840:13) initially observed the absence of a relative pronoun — “if there be any, they are hitherto unknown” — before providing examples (176, 179, 180) to show how “the relation between two nouns is expressed.” Here the missionaries simply illustrated the construction without providing accompanying analysis. It is fortunate that they did so, because these examples add to our understanding of how complex clauses in Kaurna may have been formed, although the subordinating processes they exemplified remain poorly understood. With limited data, assigning function to morphemes remains speculative. The first example they gave was:

176. \[\text{Ngurluntya ai kunda, tikkandi urlo}\]

“That man struck me, who is sitting there”

\[\text{ngurlu-ntya-ai kurnta, tika-nthi-urlu}\]

DEM.ERG-indef-1sgACC hit-[PAST] sit-PRES-?

?“Someone hit me, the one sitting”
Here the verb *tika* ‘to sit’, in the ostensible relative clause, is marked with the present tense morpheme –*nthi*, which is in turn followed by a morpheme –*urlu*. Presumably the comma in the original shows two separate independent clauses, and the morpheme –*urlu* is in some capacity marking some sort of clausal relation that the missionaries understood as relative in nature, and conveyed though their awkward English translation. The function of –*urlu* is not entirely clear (see Amery & Simpson 2013:191-192).

Teichelmann (1858) later showed that –*urlu* was an encliticised form of the ergative distal demonstrative *ngurlu* (Teichelmann & Schürmann 1840:9) that marked a temporal or causal relationship, which he translated as English relative constructions: ‘when X, then…’. Examine the following seemingly dependent non-finite examples:

177. manyarendurlo (manyarendi ngurlo)
when it rains then…
*manyaa-rri-nthi-urlu*
rain-RECIPE/REFL-PRES-?

178. wakwakurlo ngurretti urlo (ngurlo)
just when the boy had thrown then ….
*wakwaku-rlu ngurru-thi-urlu*
child-ERG throw-PAST-?

While this evidence does not show that the contracted form of *ngurlu* was necessarily anaphoric, it is significant that Teichelmann (1858) translated these additional examples of –*urlu* in dependent temporal clauses.

However, in example 176, there appears to be no such temporal or causal relationship. The ergative enclitic –*urlu* could be seen to be referencing the transitive subject of the initial clause *ngurlu-ntya* ‘someone’. The same strategy seems to be at work in example 179.

The next clauses (179&180) supplied under the heading ‘relative pronoun’, given without explanation,

179. Idlo atto numa nakkoma, padlo ngai turnki yungkoma idlo
“him I would love, who would give me clothing”
*idlu-athu numa naku-ma, padlu ngai turnki yungku-ma idlu*
DEM.ERG-1sgERG well look-HYPOTHETICAL 3sgERG 1sgACC cloth-[ACC] give-HYPOTHETICAL DEM.ERG
“This one, I might love [him], he might give me clothing, this one”

180. Ngatto pa wadli nakko-ndi, ngai turnki padlo yakko yungkondi
“but him I hate who gives me no clothing”
*Ngathu pa waadli naku-nthi, ngai turnki padlu yaku yungku-nthi*
1sgERG 3sgACC dislike see-PRES 1sgACC cloth-[ACC] 3sgERG NEG give-PRES
Examine (180), the second clause in the complex structure (179, 180). The co-referentiality of the object of the first clause, “I hate him”, with the subject of the second clause, “he gives me no clothing”, is represented in translation as a relative clause: “but him I hate who gives me no clothing”. There is, however, no morphology marking clausal dependency in the original, and both verbs remain finite. A literal translation would therefore read: “Him I view badly. He does not give me clothes”. The co-referentiality is simply understood from the juxtaposition of the two clauses, and from the context, particularly from the fact that this matrix (180) follows an initial utterance (179) translated as: “Him I would love who would give me clothing”.

In this first construction (179) both verbs are marked with the morpheme –ma, marking the verb as conditional without subordinating function (§10.3.1). The ergative demonstrative idlu ‘this’ (Teichelmann & Schürrmann 1840:9), at the beginning of the utterance and then right at the end, appears to be coreferential with 3sgA pronoun padlu, the agent of the second clause “he might give me clothing”, and to be establishing its referent as a salient argument. That the ergative form is used to track this argument suggests that the role of the agent in the second clause is being focussed on, and that the first clause is providing qualifying information.

Teichelmann later altered this section of the grammar in the annotated version he sent to Grey (1858a[1840:13]) (Figure 225). He wrote: “Relative pronouns: there are none”. He supplied the following explanation of how clausal dependency was marked (1858):

The relation is expressed by all active cases, and by all terminations expressive of time, when referred to time or of place when referring to place. The given ex.amples are good! See my phrases.

Unfortunately, it is not clear to what he was referring, and the comment does not further clarify the nature of these construction in Kaurna.

---

Figure 225: Teichelmann’s annotated copy (1858a) of the grammar he published with Schürrmann (1840).

Page showing Teichelmann’s alteration to the description of ‘relative pronouns’.
Although, it is difficult to be sure of the structures that Teichelmann & Schürmann presented without explanation, it is clear that they perceived that demonstrative pronouns played a role in marking clausal dependency in Kaurna. Of the closely related Thura-Yura language Barngarla, of which Schürmann sadly provided no exemplification, he (1844a:10) also wrote:

Relative pronouns there are none in this language, their place being supplied partly by demonstrative pronouns, partly by repetitions and circumlocutions.

The notion that demonstrative pronouns, or pronouns more generally, had subordinating function recurs in later descriptions of South Australian languages, as does the description of other subordinating processes under the heading ‘relative pronoun’.

10.4.2 Meyer’s description of relative pronouns in Ramindjeri, 1843

Although Meyer’s innovative approach to the description of case was forged independently of the analysis given by Teichelmann and Schürmann (1840) (§6.2), his description of processes of clause relativisation imports his Lutheran predecessors’ analysis across language boundaries. Meyer assumes Teichelmann and Schürmann’s treatment of Kaurna and imposes it directly on Ramindjeri.

Meyer (1843:33) supplied example 181 to illustrate his assertion that sometimes personal pronouns could also at times act to relativise a clause. He stated, somewhat hesitantly: “the personal pronoun kitye, he, seems also sometimes to perform the office of a relative [emphasis added]”.

181. Ngāte nakk-ir korne, yarn—ir an-ang—itye watangrau
By me (a) seeing has been man, speaking was me to he yesterday
“I have seen the man who spoke to me yesterday” (Meyer 1843:33)

Ngati nak-ir ko:rm, yarn-ir-anang-itye watangrau
IsgERG see-PAST man-[ACC], speak-PAST-1sgALL/DAT-3sgNOM yesterday

Unlike in Teichelmann and Schürmann’s examples (176&179), there is no morphology indicating dependency. Meyer shows two independent clauses. “I saw the man. He spoke to me yesterday”. The bound pronominal compound –anang-itye, which Meyer represented as a free-form and into which he inserted two morpheme boundaries is comprised of the first person dative bound form pronoun anang (see note at example 91), to which is attached the third person nominative bound pronoun –itye (Figure 142), of which the free-form is kitye (Example 91). It is this last element –itye which Meyer analysed as “fulfilling the function of the relative”.

424
Meyer (1843:32) also stated, again hesitantly: “the demonstrative pronoun nāiye, that, appears also to be sometimes used as a relative, as in the following examples [emphasis added]” (Figure 226). Again, there is no morphosyntactic motivation for analysing any of the clauses he supplied (182,183) as subordinate.

Figure 226: Meyer’s illustration of demonstrative pronouns acting to form subordinate clauses, 1843:32

*The notes to which Meyer refers, explain processes of morphophonemic alternation*

182. Nāiye lēw-...in mant-angg-an
That living is house at my
“He who lives at my house”

*(Meyer 1843:32)*

Naiyi le:w-in mant-angk-an
DEM sit-PRES house-LOC-1POSS
“that one lives at my house”.

This clause has an interrogative rather than a demonstrative pronoun:

183. Ngande-...m-...angg-... engg-ul ram-...ing?
By whom you to them two by (a) speaking was?
Who are the two who told you?

*(Meyer 1843:32)*

ngandi-mangk-engkul ram-ing
INTER.ERG-2DAT-3dIERG speak-PAST
“which two spoke to you?”

The first can only be translated as “that one lives at my house”, and the second as, “which two spoke to you two?”. Despite Meyer’s claim, there is no evidence that pronouns form relative or subordinated clauses in this Ramindjeri data. It seems that Meyer has misapplied the conclusions drawn from Teichelmann & Schürmann’s Kaurna data onto his own.

Meyer imported Teichelmann & Schürmann’s claim that demonstrative pronouns could act to relativise clauses in Kaurna, and sought to find evidence that personal pronouns in Ramindjeri could similarly act to subordinate clauses. His misappropriation of the Kaurna data

---

120 The number of the 2DAT -mangk bound pronoun is unspecified. See §7.4.2.
served to feed a developing doctrine in the Lutheran sub-corpus that pronouns act to relativise clauses in Australian languages (§10.4).

10.4.3 The first descriptions of relative pronouns in Diyari

Like their Lutheran predecessors, the Lutheran Diyari grammarians illustrated the syntax of complex clauses not only in a discussion of the conditional mood, ‘Modus Conditionalis, but also under the heading relative pronouns, Relativa Pronomina.

Following Koch (1868:no pag.), each subsequent missionary grammarian of Diyari treated what are three discrete categories of pronouns in the traditional framework — reflexive, reciprocal and relative — under a single sub-heading ‘Reflexive, Reciproka, und Relativa Pronomina’. Here it is explained that “the forms do not appear in the Diari language” (Schoknecht 1947:7[1872]). These three categories, which in the traditional framework are treated separately, were collapsed into single unit in the early Diyari grammars because the function of each of these SAE pronominal categories is not carried pronominally. In keeping with the tendency of the corpus grammarians to identify as structures in PN features that they perceived to be functionally equivalent to the SAE structure traditionally described under that heading in the received grammatical framework (§2.3.4), the missionary-grammarians explained how the function of SAE reciprocal, reflexive and relative pronouns were conveyed in Diyari, under this single heading. They provided one example clause for each. Koch (1868:no pag.), and following him Schoknecht and Flierl, all stated:

\[
\text{in order to express these pronouns, one will need the assistance of the reflexive and reciprocal verbs for our reflexive and reciprocal pronouns and the present participle for our relative pronouns} \quad [\text{emphasis added}].^{121}
\]

Reflexive and reciprocal constructions are illustrated as marked within the morphology of the verb, by -\text{tharri-} (Austin 2013:81[1981a]) and -\text{mali-} (Austin 2013:80[1981a]) respectively. The missionaries then presented two types of ‘present participles’ that they believed ‘expressed the relative pronoun’. The forms, -\text{ni} and -\text{nan(n)i}, are currently analysed (Austin 2013:194-209;226-229[1981a])) as marking the different subject of perfective (sequential) (184) and imperfective dependent (185) clauses respectively. They mark the verb to which they attach as dependent and indicate that the subject of the dependent clause is different from the subject of the main clause. While there is no suggestion that any of the early missionary grammarians

---

121 "um diese pronomina auszudrücken, muß man die Verba reflecciva und reciproka für unsere reflecciven u. reciproken pronomina, und das präsen partizipi für unsere relativen pronomina zu Hülfe nehmen" (Koch 1868: no pag.).
appreciated a difference between a perfective (sequential) and an imperfective dependent clauses, it is interesting that they recorded the forms that mark each.

184. nganhi wakara-rna wara-yi, yundru matya ngonthi wayi-rna wara-ni
1sgNOM come-PTCPLE aux-pres 2sgERG already meat-[ACC] cook-PTCPLE aux-SEQDS
‘I came after you had already cooked the meat’
(Austin 2013:227[1981a])

185. pantha-ma-mayi kilthi ngakarni ngathu wayi-rna wara-rnani
smell-tr.IMP-EMPH stew-[ACC] 1sgPOSS 1sgERG cook-PTCPLE aux-IMPERF.DS
‘smell my stew, that I cooked’
(Austin 2013:214[1981a])

A pair of complex constructions (186,187) were given by Koch and Schoknecht to show how their ‘present participle’ of the verb carried the function of the European relative pronouns. Each complex structure consists of a declarative clause followed by a dependent clause with a subject that is different from the subject of the main clause.

186. Ninnaia anxale wappaia, nanna anxanalli

Den liebe ich, welcher mich liebt,

(Koch 1868)

nhinha-ya ngantya-lha122 wapa-ya, nganha ngantya-?
3sgACC-near love-PTCPLE/FUT aux-PAST 1sgACC love-?
‘I loved the one who loves me’

187. nunkangu nani kalakalaila123 wappaia, nakangu kalakalai nanni124
und den hasse ich welcher mich hat.

(Koch 1868)

nhungkangu nganhi kaLakaLari-lha wapa-ya, ngakangu kaLakaLari-rnani
3sgfLOC 1sgNOM hate-PTCPLE/FUT aux-PAST, 1sgLOC hate-IMPERF.DS
‘I hated the one who hates me’

The second complex construction (187), “I hated the one who hates me”, appears to show a declarative clause, “I hate him”, which is marked for tense, followed by dependent clause, “hates me”, in which the verb is inflected with the morpheme -rnani marking its subject as different from the subject of the main clause, and as having imperfective aspect. It is not clear

122 Austin (2013:94[1981a]) notes that missionaries record of the participle –lha marking the main verb followed by the past auxiliary wapa-ya differs from his own data. The form of the verb in these clauses would in the variety Austin described be ngantya-rna and kaLakaLari-rna. The verbal suffix –lha marks future tense according to Austin.

123 This verb meaning “to hate” is shown here as having a S, LOC argument frame. It is an intransitive verb which takes a locative complement. The verb, which is listed in Schoknecht’s vocabulary (1847:23[1872]), is not given in Austin (2013[1981a]). See Austin (2013:130) for discussion of a small class of intransitive verbs with complements standing in locative case, most of which convey cognitive states, for instance tyampa- “to be fond of”. Austin (2013:133[1981a]) describes the locative case as indicating “the non-controlled cause of a more or less temporary physiological or mental state”.

124 It is possible that the missionaries were here attempting to reproduce a construction in which the abstract noun ‘love’ is marked for ergative case and occurs with the copular verb ngana- ‘to be’ (see Austin 2013:124-125[1981a]). There are also problems with this analysis. The form nanna- given in the example clause is for instance, not inflected for tense.
what inflection the missionaries showed attached to the dependent verb in the first matrix clause (186) “I love the one who loves me”. Austin (pers. comm. 02/09/2016) suggests that the verb form is incorrectly recorded, since the imperfective different subject marker -rnanhi is the only inflection that could occur here.

Flierl (1880:26) gave a different construction with the same German translation, suggesting that he had identified problems with the example provided by the earlier missionary-grammarians. In Flierl’s example, the dependent verb in the first matrix clause is marked with -ni, marking the subject of the dependent perfective sequential clause as different from the main clause (Austin 2013:[1981a]). While the morphology attached to the second dependent verb remains slightly unclear, again, the form is likely to be –rnanhi.

Flierl (1880:26) gave a different construction with the same German translation, suggesting that he had identified problems with the example provided by the earlier missionary-grammarians. In Flierl’s example, the dependent verb in the first matrix clause is marked with -ni, marking the subject of the dependent perfective sequential clause as different from the main clause (Austin 2013:[1981a]). While the morphology attached to the second dependent verb remains slightly unclear, again, the form is likely to be –rnanhi.

188. Ninaia ngato antjai, ngana antjani, nathing-a ngahta nganta-ya, ngingha nganta-ri
3sgACC-near 1sgERG love-PRES, 1sgACC love-seq.DS
“I loved the one who loves me”

Flierl (1880:26) gave a different construction with the same German translation, suggesting that he had identified problems with the example provided by the earlier missionary-grammarians. In Flierl’s example, the dependent verb in the first matrix clause is marked with -ni, marking the subject of the dependent perfective sequential clause as different from the main clause (Austin 2013:[1981a]). While the morphology attached to the second dependent verb remains slightly unclear, again , the form is likely to be –rnanhi.

While there are problems with the missionaries’ command of the language, these clauses given under the heading ‘relative pronoun’ show that after only two years encounter with Diyari, the missionary-grammarians were aware that the construction of complex clauses only involved verb inflection, rather than the use of relative pronouns.

10.4.4 Reuther’s description of relative pronouns in Diyari, 1894

Remarkably, under the heading ‘relative pronouns’ Reuther (1894:29;1981:17-18[1899]), in the last missionary grammar of Diyari, reported and exemplified an utterly different process of clause subordination than had any of the earlier three grammarians. Reuther did not suggest that clause subordination occurred through the ‘participle of the verb’ or any other verb morphology. Rather than explaining how clause dependency was marked within the verb, Reuther (1894:29) explained: “Personal pronouns are used in lieu of relative pronouns”, and supplied the following construction with a slightly different relative clause translation in German:

189. Ngato ninaia ngantjai, nulia ngakangu ngumu nganka-na warai
1sgERG 3sgACC-near love-PRES, 3sgnFERG-near 1sgLOC good make-PART AUX-PRES
“I love him who has been good to me”

While there are problems with the missionaries’ command of the language, these clauses given under the heading ‘relative pronoun’ show that after only two years encounter with Diyari, the missionary-grammarians were aware that the construction of complex clauses only involved verb inflection, rather than the use of relative pronouns.

10.4.4 Reuther’s description of relative pronouns in Diyari, 1894

Remarkably, under the heading ‘relative pronouns’ Reuther (1894:29;1981:17-18[1899]), in the last missionary grammar of Diyari, reported and exemplified an utterly different process of clause subordination than had any of the earlier three grammarians. Reuther did not suggest that clause subordination occurred through the ‘participle of the verb’ or any other verb morphology. Rather than explaining how clause dependency was marked within the verb, Reuther (1894:29) explained: “Personal pronouns are used in lieu of relative pronouns”, and supplied the following construction with a slightly different relative clause translation in German:
The simplest interpretation of this Diyari example, in which verbs in both clauses are marked for tense, is that it is composed of two separate clauses: ‘I love him’, ‘He has been good to me’, or as juxtaposed co-ordinated clauses, ‘I love him and he has been good to me’, where co-referentiality between the pronominal object of the first clause and the subject of the second clause is signalled by suffixing both the pronouns with the same relative distance suffix –ya glossed here as ‘near’ (see Austin 2013[1981a]).

Reuther, however, believed that the second clause “who has been good to me” was marked as subordinate to “I love him” by the third person personal pronoun nhulu-ya, standing in the position of the SAE relative pronoun, which acted ‘in lieu of relative pronouns’ to relativise the construction. His analysis resembles that given by Meyer’s (1843:33) analysis of Ramindjeri in which that the third person pronoun was said to sometimes “perform the office of a relative” (§10.4.2).

It is curious that Reuther’s description of clause subordination is so different from preceding analyses of Diyari, when the rest of his grammar is reasonably similar to the previous works. His description of the processes of clause subordination is more peculiar in that it is currently not described in Diyari (Austin 2013[1981a]), while the earlier hypothesis that verbal morphology marked clause dependency is, and is a common feature of PN languages.

The appearance of this process of clause subordination in Reuther’s grammar suggests that he recorded a standardised variety used by missionaries, and perhaps also by Diyari Christians, for religious and mission purposes. Further philological investigation of religious texts in Diyari would help establish whether the linguistic variety used by the missionaries was the data source for Reuther’s grammatical analyses.

It is also noteworthy that Reuther proposed this analysis in his initial grammar (1894), which was written six years after his arrival, and two years after C.Strehlow’s arrival, at the mission, and in the same year that Strehlow was transferred from Bethesda to Hermannsburg (§9.2). Reuther’s view that personal pronouns acted to relativise clauses in Diyari appears to have been influenced by the analysis of clause dependency given by HMS missionary Kempe and his colleague Strehlow’s analyses of Arrernte. Section 10.5.3 shows that Strehlow’s analysis may have been swayed by Meyer’s 1843 opinion that person pronouns relativised clauses in Ramindjeri.

To understand this alteration to the description of marking clausal dependency in missionaries’ records of Diyari, it is necessary to consider the description of such processes given other works of the South Australian Lutheran School.
10.5 Description of clause subordination in Arrernte

10.5.1 The fully embedded relative clause

Mparntwe Arrernte is described as having fully embedded relative clauses of the structure:

\[ [X-rle \text{ (Y) Vb finite – (rle)}]_{SREL} \text{ (3pnDEF) – CASE} \]  

(see Wilkins 1989:414-423).\(^{125}\)

The first constituent of the relative clause, in which the verb is finite, is marked with the relative clause marker –rle, which occurs again optionally attached to the finite verb. The relative clause usually sits after the head that it modifies. The final constituent of the clause is marked to agree with the case of the head. This may be a third person pronoun.

A fully embedded relative clause was described by T.G.H. Strehlow in Western Arrernte in two parts of the grammar. The structure is shown first (p.83) under the word-class heading ‘adjectives’, where it is discussed and exemplified as the sixth and final class of adjective labelled “Participles used as adjectives”. Since the relative clause, like the adjective, sits after the head that it qualifies, it was described by T.G.H. Strehlow as adjectival. Capell (1958:15) better described the structure in Western Arrernte stating: “-la is added to the first word of the relative clause”.

T.G.H. Strehlow also discussed and exemplified clause subordination under the heading ‘relative pronoun’. Despite stating (1944:99[1938]): “There is no relative pronoun in Aranda”, he described clausal subordination under this heading by functional rather than structural analogy. In doing so, he unwittingly placed his description within a Lutheran sub-school of tradition. Strehlow’s (p.100) apologetic excuse for the absence of ‘real’ relative pronouns in Arrernte typifies an unresolved tension regarding the ‘primitive’ status of Arrernte that is found throughout the grammar. When casting the language as less evolved and ‘primitive’, he at once elevates it to the status of Old English:

\[ \text{[t]he absence of a real relative pronoun in Aranda need not be looked upon as a very serious linguistic defect in a primitive language. English students will recall the similarly unsatisfactory state which used to obtain in the Old English period} \ldots \]

T.G.H. Strehlow (1944:100[1938]) described the structure of the relative clause in the following terms:

The presence of a relative clause is indicated merely by the suffix –la, which is attached to the subject of what should be a “relative” clause [emphasis original]. E.g., “The man whom I saw” is turned into “The

\(^{125}\text{An alternative analysis of the structure (Henderson & Dobson 1994:202) suggests that the marking with SREL –rle is optional on both the verb and the first constituent.}
man I saw,” with –la added to the “I” … -la is the substitute for relative pronouns in every shape and form.

The clause chosen to exemplify the construction (pp.100-101) (190) stands in the unmarked nominative case. Thus Strehlow did not need to explain that the relative clause was marked for the case of the noun that it qualified. In the following clause the 1sgERG pronoun is the first constituent of the relative clause “I saw” and is marked with the relative clause marker –rle.

190.  

Atua      aṭāla      raka
“the man I saw”      

artwe      the-rle      are-ke
man-[NOM]      [1sgERG-SREL see-PAST] –[NOM] 

(T.G.H.Strehlow 1944:100[1938])

10.5.2 Kempe

In the first grammar of Arrernte, Kempe (1891:11) wrote: “There are no Relative Pronouns in the language; they are expressed either by repetition of the demonstrative pronouns nana and tana … or else by the participle of the verb” (Figure 227).

Figure 227: Kempe’s description of clause subordination, 1891:11

Thus Kempe exemplified two processes under the ‘relative pronoun’ heading. The first (example 191) showed ‘the repetition of demonstratives’.

191.  

Atua      nala      nana      tmurka      albuka      worana      tukala
“the man who went away yesterday has beaten the boy”  

Artwe      nhale,      nhenhe      apmwerreke      alpe-ke,      werre-nhe      awe-ke-le
Man      that.ERG      that.NOM      yesterday      return-PAST      boy-ACC      hit-PAST-SS 

(Kempe 1891:11)

“the man, who returned yesterday, is the one who hit the boy”

Like the processes Meyer and Reuther had perceived as occurring in Ramindjeri (181,182,183) and in Diyari (189), the clause that is given the relative translation in Kempe’s first example nhenhe apmwerreke alpe-ke “who went away yesterday” is marked by a free-standing pronoun, nhenhe, which is the first constituent. The pronoun in Kempe’s examples is a demonstrative. The structure of this example, and of Reuther’s example (189), resembles the structures of the SAE relative clause constructions that are given in German and English translations.
But note that in example 191, the clause *Artwe nhale [...] werre-nhe atwe-ke-le*, which is translated as the declarative clause “The man […] has beaten the boy”, is itself marked as subordinate. The past tense of the verb *atwe-ke* ‘hit’ is inflected with the same subject switch reference marker. This analysis follows D. Wilkins’ (pers. comm. 26/08/2016) suggestion that the Western Arrernte inflection *-kala –kele*, which the missionaries analysed as a second past tense inflection (§9.2.1), and which is *not* documented in other Arandic varieties, is in fact *-ka –ke PAST* found in Western Arrernte and in other Arandic varieties subsequently marked with either the same subject inflection *–le*, or with *–rle*, the relative clause marker (§10.5.1). See also example 195. The structure of the constructions given by Kempe that show that a demonstrative pronoun acted to mark clausal dependency remains uncertain. What is important for this historiographical investigation is that Kempe’s (1891) discussion of demonstrative pronouns acting in a relativising capacity, may have influenced Reuther’s (1894) analysis of Diyari, which differed from that offered in previous Diyari grammars.

The second example provided by Kempe under the ‘relative pronoun’ heading (192) showed that the relative pronoun was ‘expressed’ by the verb participle:

**Example 192.**

*Ilupa tera iltala mbakatnarakala jiraka*

“the two axes, which were leaning on the house disappeared”

(Kempe 1891:11)

Both of Kempe’s two examples were republished by Elkin (1937:164) to show that “[t]he absence … of certain parts of speech [i.e., relative pronouns] does not necessarily mean the absence of the process of thought which we express through them”.

Interpretation of the morphological process used in Kempe’s second example (192) is complicated by the under-differentiation of lateral phonemes in the missionaries’ orthography. There are two possible interpretations of the clause Kempe provided, depending on whether the suffix *–la* attached to *ilthe* ‘shelter’ is *–le* marking locative case, or is *–le* marking locative case followed by *–rle*, the relative clause marker, where the segment *–le-rle*, may have been reduced or simply not heard, and was represented as *–la*.

A relative clause interpretation would be:

**Example 193.**

*Ilthe(-le)-rle ampeke-tne-rrre-ke-rle*

[ilepe therre | ilthe(-le)-rle | ampeke-tne-rrre-ke-rle | uyerre-ke]


“the two axes, which were leaning against the house disappeared”

where the relative cause ‘*ilthe-le-rle ampeke-tne-rrre-ke-rle*’: ‘which were leaning against the house’ is of the structure: [X-rle Vb finite] and is unmarked for nominative case in agreement with the head ‘two axes’.

432
Alternatively example 192 might be given a switch reference interpretation, in which the finite verb in a dependent clause is marked to indicate that it either shares or does not share the subject of verb in the main clause (see Wilkins 1988;1989:454-470). In Western Arrernte the dependent verb is suffixed word finally with –le (SS) to indicate that its subject is shared with that of the main clause or the dependent verb is marked with–nge (DS) to indicate that the subjects of the two clauses have different identity.

The compound *ampeke-tne* ‘to lean against (standing)’ might be marked with –le as having the same subject as the verb *uyerre-* ‘to disappear’. This would give relative tense interpretation (Wilkins 1989:462), where the dependent verb event occurs prior to the time of the man verb event:

\[\begin{align*}
\text{194. } & \text{ ilepe } \text{ atherre } \text{ ilthe-le } \text{ ampeke-tne-rrre-ke-le } \text{ uyerre-ke} \\
& \text{ Axe } \text{ two-[NOM] } \text{ shelter-LOC } \text{ lean-stand-duS/A-PAST-SS } \text{ disappear-PAST} \\
& \text{ “the two axes were leaning against the house before they disappeared”}
\end{align*}\]

Whatever the structure, Kempe clearly perceived that clause subordination was signalled on the verb and that he exemplified the process.

### 10.5.3 C.Strehlow

Carl Strehlow’s earliest analysis of Arrernte (1931a[c.1907]) utilised the previous analysis of Arrernte written by HMS missionary Kempe (1891). C.Strehlow reproduced Kempe’s explanation of clause subordination under the heading ‘relative pronouns’, but gave different example clauses (pp.39-40). Strehlow’s explanation (Figure 228) is almost a word-for-word translation into German of Kempe’s English publication (Figure 227).
Like Kempe (1891), C. Strehlow (1931a[c.1907]) also provided examples of two processes of clause subordination in this section of the grammar. The following example was used to show how repetition of a demonstrative acted to relativise a clause.

195. Atua lena, nana lata pitjikala, mara nama
   “mann dieser, der da heute gekommen ist, gut ist”
   (C Strehlow 1931a[c.1907]:39-40)
   Artwe lanhe, nhanhe lyete petye-ke-rle, marre ane-me
   Man that.NOM this.NOM today come-PAST-REL good sit-PRES
   “That man, the one who came today, is good”

Here the demonstrative, nhanhe ‘this’, which is the head of the parenthetical relative clause nhanhe lyete petye-ke-rle ‘the one who came yesterday’ makes anaphoric reference to the S of the main clause, artwe lanhe ‘that man’.

Strehlow also illustrated a different process of clause subordination. He provided another example (196) to show that where there was no repetition of the demonstrative, the participle form of the verb acted to relativise the clause. He stated: “The repetition does not occur and the predicative verb occurs in the participle form.”

196. Ara nana unta nguruka ntainatnala (part.perf.) andere naka
   “kaenguru dies da, du gestern gespeert habend fett war”
   (C Strehlow 1931a[c.1907]:39-40)
   Aherre nhenhe unte ngwerreke irntarme-rtna-rle antere ane-ke
   Kangaroo this 2sgERG yesterday spear-?-REL fat sit-PAST
   “this kangaroo, that you speared yesterday, was fat”

In this earliest grammar of Arrernte by C. Strehlow (§9.2.2.1), he provided comparative Diyari and Encounter Bay Sprache (Ramindjeri) material. The typescript copy of Strehlow’s
grammar held at the Lutheran Archives (1931b[c.1907]) contains a more extensive note on the comparison of clause subordination in three languages (Figure 229) than does the copy made by Kramer held at the South Australian Museum.

Figure 229 Copy of C.Strehlow’s analysis of Arrernte (1931b [c.1907]) made by an unknown typist (no page).

Annotations made by unknown reader

Here Strehlow reproduced the example published by Meyer in 1843 (182) with slight variation (197). He provided interlinear and free translation:

197.  
Korne naiye lewin mantangg an
Mann der wohnte im Haus mein
“Der Mann, der in meinem Hause wohnte”

(C.Strehlow 1931b [c.1907] after Meyer 1843:32)

He reiterated Reuther’s description of clause subordination in Diyari, which had differed from all four previous missionary-grammarians descriptions of the language: “personal pronouns replace the missing relative in Diyari”, and reproduced the clause, which had been given by Reuther (189)

198.  
ngato ninaia ngantjai, nulla ngakangu nguma nankara warai
Ich ihn liebe, er mir gutes getan hat
“Ich liebe den, der mir gutes getan hat”

(C.Strehlow 1931b [c.1907] after Reuther 1894:29)

Drawing on the work of Meyer and Reuther, Strehlow concluded that the process of relativisation occurs similarly in the three languages. Meyer’s erroneous examples are recycled
to substantiate the suggestion that personal or demonstrative pronouns function to relativise clauses in these three Australian languages. While the year in which C.Strehlow made this analysis is unknown, it seems likely that these parallels between Meyer’s account of clause subordination in ‘Encounter Bay’ and the structure of Diyari were drawn before Reuther completed his 1894 grammar, within C.Strehlow’s first two years in Australia. It is also likely that C.Strehlow was further alerted to the possibility of such structures occurring by Kempe’s (1891) published description of demonstratives acting to relativise clauses in Arrernte.

It is also likely that the subordinating construction that Strehlow and Kempe described reflects a new method of marking subordinate clauses that developed as a syntactic calque from German and English, and which became a feature of the variety of language used at the mission. It may have been a feature of what Siebert described as ‘Küchen-Dieri’ (kitchen Diyari) at Bethesda (quoted in Kneebone 2005b:372-373), and of Arrernte.

Gatti’s grammar (1930) of Diyari (§8.5.4), based on the language used in Reuther and Strehlow’s translation of the New Testament, shows the third person pronoun acting to mark subordinate clauses in the variety used by the missionaries in liturgical translation. Gatti (p.67) quoted Luke 1:19: “I am Gabriel, who stands in the presence of God”. In presenting the construction, he specifically indicated that the Diyari third person pronoun nauja corresponded functionally to the Italian relativiser che:

199. Nangi Gabrieli nganai, nauja Godani terkai
   io sono Gabriele che sto innanzi a Dio
   (Gatti 1930:67)

   Nganhi Gabriel ngana-yi, nhawa Goda-nhi tharka-yi
   1sgNOM Gabriel be-PRES, 3sgNF God-LOC stand-PRES
   “I am Gabrielle, who stands in the presence of God”

   T.G.H.Strehlow (1944:101[1938]) described the shift to marking subordinate clauses with a pronoun in Arrernte as having occurred among Arrernte speakers at the Hermannsburg mission. He suggested that Bible translation “necessitated the continual use of the interrogative pronouns (ŋuña, iwunañu) and of the demonstrative pronoun ‘naña’, by the white missionaries in a strictly relative sense”, and he saw this usage as having influenced the speech of younger Arrernte generations. Capell (1958:13) observed the same shift in function of Western Arrernte demonstrative pronouns. (see also example 1). T.G.H.Strehlow gave this example:

200. iwunañu aṭa arugula altaraka, laña aṭa jusem ila-ka
   “what I first found, that I used” (T.G.H.Strehlow 1944:101[1938])
   Iwenhe the arrekwele arlhare ke, lenhe the usem ile ke
   DEM 1sgERG first find-PAST DEM 1sgERG use tr-PAST
10.5.4 Concluding remarks

The theoretically challenging description of processes of clause subordination examined in this chapter reveals the extent to which Lutheran grammarians in South Australia, including T.G.H. Strehlow, assimilated the ideas of earlier grammarians within this tightly-knit descriptive school.

The longitudinal study of the description of Diyari and Arrernte given in the preceding three chapters shows that, beyond the limitations imposed by pre-phonemic orthographies (§8.6.10), there are serious limitations to the type of material that can be reclaimed from historical sources alone. It is instructive to observe the processes of clause subordination that could not be retrieved from the early grammars of Diyari and Arrernte without guidance from Austin’s (2013[1981a]) and Wilkins’ (1989) modern grammars of the languages, thus pinpointing the structures are likely to remain unreclaimed in languages of which there is no modern description.

Despite there being a good record of complex sentences in the early Diyari sources, relative to other works considered in this thesis, for example Ridley (1875[1855a]) and Schürmann (1844a), the subordinating processes that are exemplified in the early Diyari grammars constitute less than half of the seven possible processes recorded in the modern era (Austin 2013:86[1981a]). After thirty year of immersion in Diyari, the missionaries recorded only three of the seven verbal inflections marking clausal dependency: apprehensional constructions marked with -yathi (§10.2.2), DS imperfective clauses (marking relative clauses), and DS perfective clauses (marking sequential clauses) marked with rnanhi and –ni respectively (§10.4.3).
Chapter 11: Conclusion

This history of ideas about the grammatical structures of Australian Aboriginal languages has identified three schools of descriptive practice that developed in Australia prior to the involvement of academic institutions. One of these was instigated by L.E. Threlkeld (1834) in the earliest attempt to comprehensively describe the grammatical structure of an Australian Aboriginal language.

While Threlkeld’s grammar is one of the more detailed and intelligently compiled works considered in this thesis, to characterise it as “the most accomplished linguistic investigation of any of the 250 Aboriginal languages of Australia undertaken prior to the twentieth century” (Carey 2004:253) devalues other remarkable early descriptions of other Australian morphosyntax. The inaugural and detailed grammars of Ramindjeri (Meyer 1843), Arrernte (Kempe 1891), and Pitta-Pitta (Roth 1897) each gave outstandingly nuanced descriptions of morphosyntactic idiosyncrasies in those languages, which Threlkeld had not encountered in Awabakal, or at least not perceived. Meyer (1843) conveyed pronominal kin suffixes, bound pronouns, and the antipassive construction with descriptive clarity, and Roth (1897) described the different marking of syntactic cases in future and non-future tenses. Other early grammars of Australian languages, that are shorter than Threlkeld’s work, but which were written after substantially less exposure to the language than the eight years it took Threlkeld to produce his major grammar (1834), also evince considerable insight. Livingstone’s (1892) grammar of Minjangbal is remarkable in describing a system of grammatical gender, which no other early grammarian appears to have encountered. Symmons’ (1841) grammar of Nyungar, which presented pronouns referring to dyadic kin relations, appears to have recorded an, as yet unreclaimed, system of optional ergativity that interacts with tense. This work has received nowhere near the recognition it deserves. While Threlkeld’s work certainly had its own strengths – his account of the sensitivity of case marking to animacy through the presentation of classes of nominal declension is better than that given in many later grammars – his work is better judged as among the best early grammars, rather than ‘the most accomplished’.

Nor can Threlkeld’s grammar be seen to have been “essential in establishing a framework” (Carey 2004:269) for the later description of Australian languages. Early Australian grammarians were guided by Threlkeld’s choice of orthography more than they were by any aspect of his representation of morphology and syntax. Some grammarians (Günther 1840:338; Teichelmann & Schürmann 1840:v; Ridley 1856b:290) acknowledged complying with the ‘system of letters’, which Threlkeld had imported from missionary descriptions of Polynesian languages, not because Australian and Polynesian languages were considered to be
phonologically similar, but because they were geographically proximate (Threlkeld 1834:vi). Only Günther (1838) mentioned implementing a feature of Threlkeld’s grammatical framework. That he did so when deliberating about abandoning Threlkeld’s descriptive method in favour of his own innovation, i.e., providing labels to case forms rather assigning numbers to ‘ablative’ cases, is characteristic of the tendency observable throughout much of the corpus to invent new descriptive methods, rather than to follow existing practices.

Threlkeld’s inaugural account of Australian ergativity (1834) occurs reasonably early within European linguistic encounter with the twenty-five percent of the world’s languages exhibiting ergative structures. It will remain a point of conjecture as to whether later grammarians would adequately have described ergative forms and function had they not been enlightened by Threlkeld’s well-circulated description. But subsequent pre-contemporary grammarians developed techniques for explaining ergative function that Threlkeld had not employed, and much of the array of terminological innovations used to name ergative case forms in Australian languages had not been used by Threlkeld.

Threlkeld’s influence on the later description of Australian morphology and syntax is largely confined to grammars of languages spoken in New South Wales. His method of clarifying ergative function, by the posing of questions that the ergative and nominative forms would be given in answer to (§3.2.6.1), was followed by W.Günther (1838) when describing Wiradjuri, by W.Ridley when describing Gamilaraay, but only in his earliest publication (1856b), and by H.Livingstone when describing Minjanbal (1892[1876-1886]). This trait is not found in grammars of languages spoken outside New South Wales. Threlkeld’s enlarged case paradigms, which provided positions for case forms marking function that are not carried by morphological case systems in SAE languages, were also appropriated by Günther and by Ridley in description of languages spoken in New South Wales, as was Threlkeld’s technique of placing ergative case forms at the top of the paradigm alongside nominative forms. Threlkeld’s initial description of an inclusive/exclusive distinction only on dual first person pronouns (§4.5.1), which he may have forced into the language by analogy with J.Davies’ grammar of Tahitian (1851[1823]), may also have influenced Günther (1838;184) and Ridley (1875[1866;1855a]), who both similarly described the distinction only on dual first person pronouns.

This mistaken importation of structures presented in one language into the description of another language is observable elsewhere in the corpus. Based on the nineteenth century understanding that Australian languages were phonologically and grammatically similar, and that linguistic diversity was more a matter of lexicon (see Moorhouse 1846: v-vi; Fraser 1892),
missionary-grammarians tended to underestimate how grammatically different Australian languages might be. Flierl (1880) incorrectly described tripartite marking of 1pl pronouns in Wangkanguru (§8.5.2.2) by analogy with the system in Diyari. Moorhouse’s description of undifferentiated marking on non-singular nominals in Ngayawang (1846) (§7.2.3) appears to have extrapolated data from Teichelmann & Schürmann’s Kaurna grammar (1840), as does Meyer’s attempt to show personal pronouns acting to relativise clauses in Ramindjeri (§10.4.2).

The second school of early grammatical practice that developed in the pre-academic era of Australian linguistic description was instigated by Lutheran missionaries describing languages spoken near Adelaide in the early 1840s, particularly Teichelmann & Schürmann’s (1840) grammar of Kaurna, the second published grammar of an Australian language. Different aspects of Teichelmann & Schürmann’s descriptive template, which had not been inspired by Threlkeld (1834), influenced a large body of South Australian grammatical description.

This South Australian School of grammatical description (1840-1938), of which the Adelaide School (Simpson 1992:410) (1840-1858) is the earliest component, is the most strongly attested of the three identified schools. It is defined by a greater number of shared descriptive practices, which are found in a larger body of work, and it endured for a longer period. Descriptive practices innovated by the Lutheran Dresden-trained missionary-grammarians: Teichelmann & Schürmann (1840), Meyer (1843) and Schürmann (1844a), were employed in later grammars of South Australian languages, including Diyari and Arrernte spoken at the inland Lutheran missions. The descriptive features that demarcate this body of work include: the implementation of a conservative Latinate paradigm (§5.3.1), the naming of the ergative case and placement of ergative forms in case paradigms (§7.1.65.5.2), the method of clarifying ergative function within a discussion of the verb (§7.1.6), the division of ‘postpositions’ into two functionally motivated categories (§5.3.2) and the inclusion of paradigms of ‘possessive pronouns’ to account for double case marking (§5.3.3).

Yet the descriptive practices engaged by the Adelaide School grammarians are remarkably heterogeneous. Schürmann’s abandonment of ‘substantive’ case paradigms in his grammar of Barngarla (1844a), which alters the presentation given in the previous grammar of Kaurna he had co-authored with Teichelmann (1840), displays a reasoned descriptive response to his developed understanding of Australian case systems. Aspects of Meyer’s grammar of Ngarrindjeri (1843) – his use of hyphens to mark meaningful sub-word units, the provision of interlinear-style glosses, and the presentation of an enlarged pronominal case paradigm including forms carrying functions not marked morphologically in SAE languages – suggest a direct influence from Threlkeld (1834) that is not evident in other grammars of the Adelaide
School. Meyer’s case paradigms generated their own trajectory of influence that was independent of his Dresden-trained colleagues. Taplin’s 1870 presentation of case (1872:85) in the closely related language Ngarrindjeri, which was reproduced by Hagenauer and Bulmer in Brough Smyth (1878), had been influenced by Meyer. These paradigms show the earliest use of the term ‘ergative’, although not to describe the ergative case (Appendix 2 §1.3).

Two descriptive practices instigated by Teichelmann & Schürmann, the division of prepositions into two classes (§5.3.2), and the declensions of possessive pronouns (§5.3.3), continued to be used in descriptions of Arrernte a century later, by T.G.H.Strehlow(1944[1938]). This thesis has shown that T.G.H.Strehlow’s presentation of Arrernte structure sits within a long history of Lutheran grammatical description.

In introducing this work as “the first complete phonetic and grammatical study of an Australian language”, Elkin (1944:1) did Strehlow’s predecessors a disservice. His characterisation of Strehlow’s Lutheran forebears as “hard-working devoted missionaries”, who made “[o]nly a few incomplete grammatical studies and lists of words” is less than fair. In failing to acknowledge that his analysis was informed by the missionaries’ hard-won grundwerk, Strehlow was himself complicit in perpetuating the belief that his work was intellectually autonomous. His statement (1944:55): “The present Grammar has been written independently of the work of earlier writers. The earlier grammars of the language were not available to me at the time of writing this Grammar in Central Australia”, can only be seen as a blatant lie.

The third and final school of early Australian grammatical description was instigated by a medical practitioner W.E.Roth (Appendix 1§1.3), in an insightful and well-exemplified grammar of Pitta-Pitta (1897), spoken in southwest Queensland. The features of Roth’s template, which were subsequently utilised in later grammars of Guugu-Yimidhirr (Poland & Schwarz 1900; Roth 1901) and of Nggerrrikwidhi (Hey 1903), and which define the Queensland School of description that Roth singlehandedly spawned, relate to the description of nouns and pronouns in peripheral cases. That such a descriptively innovative work was written relatively late in the pre-academic era of grammatical description in Australia, with little or no recourse to previous analyses, reveals much about the development of linguistic ideas in the country.

Australian languages were described without the benefit of coordinated academic effort, or the leadership of any home-grown or imported luminaries. The beginnings of institutionalised linguistics in Australia, which commenced within the discipline of anthropology at the University of Sydney in 1926, and with the formation of the University of Adelaide language committee in 1930-1931, occurred at least half a century after the founding of parallel
institutions in North America (Campbell 1997:35-37;57). Missionary-grammarians were often unaware of works written in other remote areas of the country. Once stationed in Australia, missionary-grammarians often worked in intellectual isolation from fellow grammarians who were posted across far-flung regions of the country.

The three schools of descriptive practice identified in this thesis, a New South Wales School, a South Australian School and a Queensland School, are each delineated by the constitutionally independent Australian colonies in which the described languages were spoken. Australian federation occurred in 1901, and the Northern Territory, where Arrernte is spoken, was not separated from South Australia until 1911. This regional pattern of the development of ideas about the best way to describe Australian Aboriginal languages is in part also due to the fact that missionary-grammarians operated within different Christian denominations, which were ethnically and linguistically distinct, and which had headquarters in the different colonial capitals.

The *ad hoc* nature of the development of linguistics in Australia before the 1930 meant that pioneering descriptive responses to newly encountered structures by missionary-grammarians in Australia were not reliably integrated into a central body of emerging thought. Although improvements to analyses of Diyari and Arrernte occurred at the Bethesda and Hermannsburg missions, where successive generations of missionaries described the same language, this study has found that little overall improvement in the analyses of PN languages occurred in the pre-academic era of description. C.Strehlow’s case paradigm (1908) is a better representation of the Arrernte case system than is his son’s, T.G.H.Strehlow (1944[1938]), whose conservative Latinate paradigm resembles earlier South Australian Lutheran descriptions. Similarly T.G.H.Strehlow’s account of apprehensional constructions in Arrernte (§10.2.3) captures the finite nature of the subordinated verb less well than did Teichelmann & Schürmann’s (§10.2.1) analysis of the structure in Kaurna made a century earlier.

In this way, nineteenth and early twentieth century linguistics in Australia differs significantly from American Indian linguistics, which is described as being generally “up to date with and [having] benefitted directly from contemporary linguistic thinking” (Campbell 1997:28). With the exception of C.Strehlow, the corpus grammarians worked without sustained connection with European linguistic intelligentsia. While synchronic grammatical descriptions of PN languages produced in Australia before 1930 (Figure 1) informed grammatical material produced outside the country (Figure 2), the study of the early descriptions of PN ergativity shows that a movement of ideas between Europe and Australia was largely unidirectional. Grammatical material produced in Europe presenting a new conception of the marking of
syntactic cases (Müller 1882; Planert 1907a;1908) failed to fuel subsequent linguistic theory or methodology in Australia. Similarly, the presentation of both consonants and vowels based on articulatory parameters, which was employed in the pre-academic era of the description of Australian languages only by German philologists, appear not to have been read by grammarians in Australia, and if they were, not understood or assimilated into Australian practice.

When observing the relative influence that individual grammars came to have on later works in the corpus, and establishing the existence of ‘traditions’ of descriptive practice it is important to recognise that grammarians who came to be particularly influential did not do so because their work was perceived to be more descriptively concise, or insightful. In the absence of any emerging centralised body in which the study of Australian linguistic structure could be fostered, some grammars simply had a greater potential trajectory of influence than others.

Symmons’ description of Nyungar (1841), the third published grammar of an Australian language, published in the Swan River Colony (Perth), over two and a half thousand kilometres west of Adelaide, and accessible at the time only by ship, appears to have been read by no later corpus grammarian. The greater impact of Teichelmann and Schürmann’s (1840) analysis than of Threlkeld’s (1834), or Günther’s (1838;1840) had less to do with the relative merit of their analysis than it did with the circumstances optimising the South Australian Lutheran missionaries’ influence. While Threlkeld’s case paradigms, which are atypically large, and which placed ergative case forms in second position next to the nominative, clearly influenced Günther, any ongoing influence emanating from the Wellington Valley Mission was stifled by the fact that Günther’s MSS remained unpublished until 1892. The Wiradjuri grammars were not written within a continuing tradition of intra-denominational mission activity that might facilitate the dissemination of linguistic material, as were the Lutherans’ descriptions of South Australian languages (Chapters 5, 6, 7, 9 & 10).

While the strength of the South Australian Lutheran school of description might be called a ‘tradition’ of Lutheran practice, it should also to be kept in mind that the features shared by this body of work do not result from the type of training the Lutherans received, or from anything particular about their ‘Germanness’. Their descriptive homogeneity does not ensue from a shared intellectual heritage, in the same way that European philologists’ presentation of vowel triangles and tables of consonant do. The one possible exception is the Lutherans’ description of possessive pronouns. German possessive pronouns agree with the case and gender of the noun they qualify. The forms are irregular, and are tabulated in grammars of German (see for example Bauer 1871:40). It is, however, unlikely that this shared understanding
would independently have motivated the paradigms in different corpus grammars, and Teichelmann & Schürmann’s presentation can be assumed to have motivated the recurrence of the feature.

Descriptive breakthroughs made during the first era of Australian grammatical description, including the description of ergativity, the unmarked inalienably possessed NP, pronominal sensitivity to kinship, inclusive and exclusive pronominal distinctions, the juxtaposition of dependent clauses, and four case analysis of split syntactic case systems, have been largely unnoticed by modern Australian grammarians, who have tended to describe the same grammatical categories without acknowledgment that the inaugural description occurred in the pre-academic era. The oversight is symptomatic of a discontinuity in the tradition describing Aboriginal languages, which cast aside the pre-academic works as unworthy of serious consideration.

The ways in which the early grammars of Australian languages informed and inspired European linguistic theory remains under-investigated. Meyer’s description of ergativity in Ngarrindjeri (1843), which is atypical of the corpus in equating the ergative argument with the function of the Latin ablative that marks the agent of a passive construction, was an original catalyst for passive interpretations of ergative structures (H.C. von der Gabelentz 1861). The ways in which the corpus grammarians’ pre-theoretical syntagmatic analyses of agglutinative morphology, representation of word-internal units, and accounts of ergativity, which were read by European philologists, who were eager for more frustratingly rare Australian data, deserves further investigation.

The grammars examined in this thesis are important primary documents of colonial history in Australia, and deserve closer interdisciplinary attention. That the early grammatical records of Australian Aboriginal languages have received little scholarly attention outside the discipline of linguistics might be explained by a more general scholarly aversion to anything grammatical. Impressionistically, and perhaps due to Australians’ tendency to monolingualism, undergraduate-level linguistic principles are perceived to be too technical to inform historical investigations of the colonial Australian frontier. In the absence of such study, it would be simplistic to assume a correlation between the degree of linguistic training and the quality of a grammar produced by missionary-grammarians.

The popular assumption that a rigorously trained grammarian who had studied a greater number of classical languages would make better analyses of Australian linguistic structures than grammarians with lesser training is indeed not verified by this investigation. A causal link is firstly difficult to draw, because what is known about the type of training provided at different
mission institutions varies. Nevertheless, this study suggests that the relative rigor of the linguistic training received by missionary-grammarians who described Australian languages had little, if any, bearing on the quality of grammatical description they produced. Highly-trained grammarians did not make better descriptions of Australian languages than did grammarians with only ubiquitous school-boy Latin.

For example, the detail given in Threlkeld’s inaugural PN grammar (1834) is in no way accounted for by what is known about his formal training. Threlkeld’s on-the-job training in Polynesia, where he gained experience describing foreign, non-SAE languages probably primed him better for his linguistic tasks in Australia than any formal training he had received.

W. Ridley’s grammars of Gamilaraay (1875[1866;1856a]; 1855b;1856b), and of Turrubul (1866) (Appendix 1§1.1), are among the least detailed descriptions considered in this thesis. Yet Ridley was educated at Kings College, University of London (B.A., 1842) and was later Professor of Greek, Latin and Hebrew at the Australian College. The sparsity of Ridley’s descriptions might be excused given the short time he engaged with the language. But consider the first grammar of Diyari (1868) written by W.Koch, who may have been bright, but had not completed a Gymnasium secondary education in Germany. This remarkable work was written by a man who died less than two years after first hearing the language.

Despite the better training received by Neuendettelsau missionaries in comparison to the HMI-trained missionaries, the grammars of Diyari (Flierl 1880, Reuther 1894;1899) and grammars of Arrernte (C.Strehlow 1931a[c.1907]; 1908; 1910) written by the Neuendettelsau men are not of a noticeably different quality than earlier grammars of the same languages by HMI-trained missionaries. C.Strehlow’s grammars of Arrernte are all less detailed than Kempe’s first grammar. That Strehlow replicated entire passages from Kempe’s work shows that he was to a substantial degree satisfied with the HMI missionaries’ analysis. Even the most rigorously trained classical grammarian remained descriptively and theoretically ill equipped to describe PN languages. The strength of individual descriptions has less to do with training, than with the inherent intelligence and aptitude of the author, and with the length of time, and the type of exposure he had with the language.

The study of the circumstances surrounding the production of the early grammatical documents considered in this thesis shows that missionaries documented Australian Aboriginal languages for a variety of reasons, in addition to their primary motivation to convert people to Christianity. The missionaries’ earliest linguistic investigations of Australian languages were as much intellectual and political endeavours as they were evangelistic.
Threlkeld for example, continued to document the language spoken at Lake Macquarie, after the closure of the Ebenezer mission in 1841, and at a time when he perceived (1850:3) that the languages was extinct. Similarly, Teichelmann completed his later Kaurna analyses (1857;1858) when he perceived that the language was no longer spoken. In correspondence to Grey, Teichelmann (quoted in Bleek 1858:40) wrote:

Sir, — According to your wish, I have copied into English, my collection of words and grammatical remarks on the language of the Aborigines who once inhabited the district round about Adelaide; for they have disappeared to a very few … Also, I do not entirely approve of the orthography of the native language, as we have spelt it, but it is now useless to alter anything in it after the Tribe has ceased to be

The very earliest grammatical description of Australian languages was ultimately made within a climate of salvage linguistics, where a record was being taken for posterity. In their engagement with the language, which outlived the last generation of fluent speakers, Threlkeld and Teichelmann are early precursors of the more theoretically and less theologically motivated recording of Australian languages that characterises the later Neuendettelsau missionaries who wrote linguistic and ethnographic descriptions of Arrernte and of Diyari between 1880 and 1920 (G.J.Reuther, C.Strehlow (1907-1920), O. Siebert (1910).

Howitt’s response (no date [c.1879]) to Vogelsang’s letter from 1878 (§8.4) specifies the motivation that might drive a missionary to describe and document an Aboriginal language:

As to the grammar ... I have been looking out for the best way to make use of it & fear that there would not be any chance of selling sufficient copies of your Dieri grammar to pay for bringing it out. … I think the best plan with your grammar would be to ask one of the learned societies either in Adelaide, Melbourne, London, Paris or Berlin to publish it … It is usual in such cases for the author to receive some 20 copies for himself and he of course becomes known to the scientific men all over the world [emphasis added]

There is also an undercurrent of anti-social Darwinism in many of the missionary sources. Missionary-grammarians sought to elevate the status of the ‘primitive’ languages by drawing attention to grammatical complexity. By showing that the Aboriginal language was capable of being construed using the same terminology and framework as Classical Greek and Latin, early missionary-grammarians in Australia effectively afforded the languages’ speakers credibility as intelligent and equal humans. Schürmann (1844: v) put forward a particularly crafty argument in a grammar of Barngarla, spoken in South Australia:

\[ it \text{ has been thought unlikely that so rude and ignorant a nation, as the natives of this continent are admitted to be, should possess a regular grammatical system.}^{127} \text{ This argument is however evidently untenable, for else it would follow on the other hand, that the most civilized nation or the most cultivated language must have the most artificial and complex grammar...The English language for instance, highly cultivated as it } \]

\[ ^{127} \text{ Here Schürmann refers the reader to the descriptive vocabulary of the colonial settler G. F. Moore (1798-1886), who had described grammatical structure of the Western Australian language Nyungar as 'simple and rudimentary and not very copious' (1842: 74). } \]
is in all its branches of literature, has the simplest grammar imaginable, so that one might infer with as much reason... that the more a language is cultivated, the more its grammar will be simplified.

The restitution of linguistic material from the early linguistic records examined in this thesis necessitates the generation of a range of linguistic materials with different purposes and written for different audiences. Language reclamation programmes made by descendant speakers of the recorded varieties may not, at least initially, depend on an exact knowledge of the intricacies of the case systems, where language is being used predominantly in naming, texting, or for “common conversation tropes such as enquiring about health, and commenting on the weather” (Blake, in press). That a reclaimed language will necessarily be a phonological and morphosyntactic variant of the original variety at which the corpus grammars were aimed is seen as inevitable, and perhaps desirable, within ‘revivalistic’ contexts if tangible outcomes are to be achieved. Philological scholars are nevertheless obliged to pursue the best possible reclamation of morphosyntactic and phonological structures from early linguistic records regardless of their immediate objectives.

The reclamation of material from antique grammars of Australian language is enhanced when individual analyses are considered in relation to the entire body of early documentation. The type of description that was generated when Pama-Nyungan grammatical structure was mapped onto the descriptive framework, developed to describe Standard Average European languages, is to a certain degree predictable. By defining the looking glass through which Australian morphosyntax were observed, this study has refined a method of extracting precious morphosyntactic data from the early recordings of Australian morphology and syntax.

REFERENCES


https://www.academia.edu/2457676/A_Reference_Grammar_of_Gamilaraay_northern_New_South_Wales


Baker, Brett. 2014. Word structure in Australian languages In Koch & Nordlinger, eds. 2014. 139-214


Black, John McConnell. 1920. Vocabularies of four South Australian languages, Adelaide, Narrunga, Kukata and Narrinyeri, with special reference to their speech sounds. Transactions of the Royal Society of South Australia 44. 76-93.


Blake, B. J. 2015. Nineteenth-century linguists in the south-east: Their cultural legacy. MS of article of the same name, forthcoming, held by the author.


Dirr, Adolf. 1912. Rutulskij Jazyk [The Rutul Language]. Sbornik Materialov dlya Opisaniya y Plemen Kavkaza (Tbilisi) 42. 1-204.


Eipper, Christopher. 1841. *Statement of the origin, condition and prospects of the German mission to Aborigines at Moreton Bay, conducted under the auspices of the Presbyterian Church in New South Wales*. Sydney: James Reading.


FitzHerbert, John Aloysius. c.1930. Unpublished untitled ms. Barr Smith Library Rare Books and Special Collections, University of Adelaide, FitzHerbert Papers 499.6F555.


Fraser, John, ed. 1892. An Australian language as spoken by the Awabakal, the people of Awaba, or Lake Macquarie (near Newcastle New South Wales): Being an account of their language, traditions and customs, by L.E. Threlkeld; rearranged, condensed and edited with an appendix by John Fraser. Sydney: Charles Potter Government Printer.

Fraser, 1892. Introduction. In Fraser, ed. 1892, xi-lxiv.


Gale, Mary-Anne. 2009. Ngarrindjeri dictionary, compiled by Mary-Anne Gale with the elders Eileen McHughes ... [et al.]. Adelaide: Raukkan Community Council on behalf of the Ngarrindjeri [Community].


Gason, S. 1892. The Diyeri dialect. In Fraser, ed. 1892. Part IV. 44-45


Gillen, Francis James. 1894 Notebooks on anthropology of the Aranda people and Aranda vocabulary, vol. 1. The University of Adelaide rare books and special collections MSS 09G47.


Günther, J. W. 1892. Grammar and vocabulary of the Wiradhari dialect in New South Wales. In Fraser, ed. 1892, Part IV. 56-120.


Hagenauer, Friedrich August. 1878. Language of the natives of the Pine Plain Tribe, North Wimmera, and generally understood in the Western District, the Loddon and Swan Hill. In Brough Smyth. 1878. 24-39.


Homann, E. 1892. The Diyeri dialect. In Fraser, ed. 1892, Part IV. 43-44.


Anthropological Archives. AA 669/2/1-5 [contains a copy of a lost ms grammar of Arrernte by C. Strehlow (c.1907) pp. 3, 5, 7, 11-86, and a copy of lost ms grammar of Arrernte (c.1923) by J.Riedel pp. 87-112, 6, 8, 10].


Leonhardi, M. von. 1908a. Letter to Carl Strehlow 08/03/1908 written in Germany. Strehlow Research Centre, Alice Springs. 1908-2-1. The NT Interpreter and Translator Service.

Leonhardi, M. von. 1908b. Letter to Carl Strehlow 29/08/1908 written in Germany. Strehlow Research Centre, Alice Springs. 1908-6-1. The NT Interpreter and Translator Service.


Livingstone, H. 1892. Grammar and vocabulary of the Minyung dialect. In Fraser, ed. 1892, Part IV. 3-27.


Moorhouse, M. 1846. A vocabulary and outline of the grammatical structure of the Murray River Language spoken by the natives of South Australia from Wellington on the Murray, as far as the Rufus. Adelaide: Andrew Murray.


Nind, Scott. 1831. Description of the natives of King George's Sound (Swan River Colony) and adjoining country. *Journal of the Royal Geographical Society of London* 1. 21-51


465


Schürmann, C. W. 1844a. A vocabulary of the Parnkalla language spoken by the natives inhabiting the western shores of Spencer Gulf. To which is prefixed a collection of grammatical rules hitherto ascertained by C.W. Schürmann [sic]. Adelaide: George Dahane.

Schürmann, C. W. 1844b. Letter to the Committee of the Evangelical Lutheran Mission Society in Dresden 19/08/1844., written from Port Lincoln. Original held at the Archiv der Franckeschen Stiftungen, Halle (Saale), Germany. Copy, transcription and translation at Lutheran Archives).

Schürmann, C. W. 1846. The Aboriginal tribes of Port Lincoln in South Australia, their mode of life, manners and customs. Adelaide: George Dahane.


Strehlow, T. G. H. 1944. Aranda phonetics and grammar. (= Oceania Monographs, 7.) Sydney: The University of Sydney.


Symmons, C. 1892. Grammar of a dialect in Western Australia. In Fraser, ed. 1892, Part IV. 48-56.

Taplin, George. 1867. Vocabulary and grammar of the languages of the Aborigines who inhabit the shores of the lakes and lower Murray. Unpublished ms. Barr Smith Library Rare Books and Special Collections, University of Adelaide. 499. 6 T17.


Taplin, G. 1874c. The Narrinyeri: An account of the tribes of South Australian Aborigines inhabiting the country around the Lakes Alexandrina, Albert, and Coorong, and the lower
part of the River Murray, their manners and customs, also, An account of the mission at Point Macleay. Adelaide: J. T. Shawyer.


Taplin, G. 1892. Grammar of the Narrinyeri and other dialects. In Fraser, ed. 1892, Part IV. 28-47.


Teichelmann, C. G. 1858a. Annotations made to copy of Teichelmann & Schürrmann 1840. ms held by South African Public Library. G.13.a.19(3) [Catalogued by Bleek 1858. No 56].

Teichelmann, C. G. 1858b. Of the verb. ms held by African Public Library. G.12.c.13(4) [Catalogued by Bleek 1858. No 57].

Teichelmann, C. G. & Clamor W. Schürmann. 1840. Outlines of a grammar, vocabulary, and phraseology, of the Aboriginal language of South Australia, spoken by the natives in and for some distance around Adelaide. Adelaide: C.G. Teichelmann and C.W. Schurmann.


Threlkeld, L. E. 1927. *Specimens of a dialect of the Aborigines of New South Wales: being the first attempt to form their speech into a written language.* Sydney: Monitor Office.


Threlkeld, L. E. 1850. *A key to the Aboriginal language being an analysis of the various modifications of the verb.* Sydney: Kemp and Fairfax.


Threlkeld, L. E. 1892. Grammar of the Awabakal dialect. In Fraser, ed. 1892, Part IV. 1-46.


Tindale, N. B. 1937b. Report on trip to Germany to obtain information regarding Reuther’s manuscript. Unpublished ms, South Australian Museum Anthropological Archives, Adelaide. AA 266/5/19/1.


Vogelsang, Hermann Heinrich. 1878. Letter to A. W. Howitt 2/10/1878 written from Bocaltenina [Boocaltaninna]. State Library of Victoria. MS 9356 Box 1052/3(b).


Appendix 1

Grammars of languages spoken in
northeast New South Wales and in Queensland,
written in the second half of the nineteenth century
# Table of Contents

1.1 W. Ridley’s grammars of Gamilaraay (1875[1866;1855a]; 1855b;1856b) and of Turrubul (1866) 479
   1.1.1 Gamilaraay primer 1856...............................................................483
   1.1.2 Ridley 1866 ...........................................................................483
   1.1.3 Ridley 1875 ...........................................................................486
   1.1.4 Ridley’s descriptions of case ..................................................486
   1.1.5 Concluding remarks ................................................................490

1.2 The Rev. Hugh Livingstone .....................................................................491
   1.2.1 Livingstone’s analysis of Minjangbal (1892) ..............................493

1.3 W.E. Roth ............................................................................................495
   1.3.1 Roth’s grammar of Pitta-Pitta (1897) ........................................496
   1.3.2 Poland & Schwarz’s grammar of Guugu-Yimidhirr (c.1900) ....499
   1.3.3 Hey’s grammar of Nggerrikwidhi (1903) .................................500
   1.3.4 Provenance of Poland & Schwarz’s (c.1900) and Roth’s (1901) Guugu-Yimidhirr analyses .503
   1.3.5 Ergativity ...............................................................................505

1.4 Ray & A. C. Haddon ...........................................................................512
   1.4.1 Ray & A. C. Haddon 1893 ..........................................................512
   1.4.2 S. Ray 1907 ............................................................................513
Table of Figures

| Figure 1: Ridley's descriptions of Gamilaraay and their date of publication | 482 |
| Figure 2: Names given to Gamilaraay case suffixes | 487 |
| Figure 3: Ridley’s earliest case paradigm, 1855b:74 | 488 |
| Figure 4: Ridley’s Turrubul case paradigm, 1866:61 | 488 |
| Figure 5: Ridley’s earliest account of ergativity, 1856b:292 | 489 |
| Figure 6: Ridley’s later case paradigm, 1855a:6 | 490 |
| Figure 7: Later publications of Ridley’s MS case paradigm, 1866:5; 1875:6 | 490 |
| Figure 8: F. Müller's rearrangement of Threlkeld's Awabakal case paradigm, 1882:7 | 494 |
| Figure 9: Table of contents in Roth’s grammar of Pitta-Pitta (1897:vi) | 497 |
| Figure 10: Roth’s labelling of the peripheral case forms of Pitta-Pitta pronouns (1897:4) | 499 |
| Figure 11: Roth 1897:4 | 499 |
| Figure 12: Comparison of forms of first person pronouns in languages spoken on the west of the Cape York Peninsula in the vicinity of Mapoon mission | 503 |
| Figure 13: Poland & Schwarz’s presentation of case forms of pronouns in Guugu-Yimidhirr (c.1900:no pag.) | 505 |
| Figure 14: Roth's presentation of case forms of pronouns in Guugu-Yimidhirr (1901:18) | 505 |
| Figure 15: The different marking of the syntactic cases on Pitta-Pitta nouns according to verb tense (Blake 1979b:193) | 506 |
| Figure 16: Roth's description of ergative marking on nouns in Pitta-Pitta. 1897:7 | 506 |
| Figure 17: Roth's description of nominative and ergative pronouns in future and non-future tenses in Pitta-Pitta, 1897:10 | 507 |
| Figure 18: Roth’s presentation of ergative morphology in Pitta-Pitta as a ‘preposition of purpose, reason, means – type f’, 1897: 15-16 | 508 |
| Figure 19: The absence of description of ergative morphology on nouns in Roth’s grammar of Guugu-Yimidhirr, 1901:16 | 509 |
| Figure 20: The absence of description of ergative morphology on pronouns in Roth’s grammar of Guugu-Yimidhirr, 1901:30 | 509 |
| Figure 21: S.H. Ray’s descriptions of PN languages | 512 |
Introduction

This appendix introduces the grammarians who wrote grammars of languages spoken in New South Wales and Queensland during the second half of the nineteenth century and early twentieth century. Sections referred to as (M.§…) are in the main body of the thesis. Much of the analysis of these languages is discussed in the main body of the thesis. Just as the description of ergativity and the presentation of suffixes marking peripheral cases were found to be diagnostic of the South Australian sub-school of description (M.Chapters 5-9), these features also demarcate Queensland as a descriptive school. The treatment of these features is discussed here.

This discussion commences with an investigation of the grammars of PN languages spoken in New South Wales that were made after Threlkeld’s description of Awabakal (M.Chapter 3) and Günther’s description of Wiradjuri (M.Chapter 4). These are the grammars of Gamilaraay, and other languages from northern New South Wales and southern coastal Queensland written by W.Ridley (§1.1), and of Minjangbal, spoken on coastal northern New South Wales, by H.Livingstone (§1.2). It then examines the school of grammatical description spawned by W.E.Roth in description of some languages spoken in Queensland (§1.3), before giving an overview of the grammars by S.Ray and A.H.Haddon (§1.4), which were written and published in Great Britain.

11.1 W. Ridley’s grammars of Gamilaraay (1875[1866;1855a]; 1855b;1856b) and of Turrubul (1866)

After the closure of Wellington Valley mission in 1842, the grammatical structure of languages spoken in New South Wales received little further attention until Rev W.Ridley (1819-1878) began describing Gamilaraay in 1852. Ridley learnt Gamilaraay while working as a missionary travelling throughout New England, west of the Dividing Range in the north central region of New South Wales.

Educated at Kings College, University of London (B.A., 1842), Ridley developed an interest in missionary work after commencing studies in Law. Having been rejected by the London Missionary Society “because he had once held Plymouth Brethren beliefs” (Gunson 2016b), Ridley was recruited to Australia by the influential Presbyterian clergyman Dr J.D.Lang (1799-1878) and was subsequently appointed Professor of Greek, Latin and Hebrew at the Australian College (Austin 2008:40), a short-lived institution established by Lang. After ordination by the Presbyterian synod, Ridley ministered at Balmain in Sydney, and then in 1851
at Dungog, close to Newcastle, where friendship with an Aboriginal man named ‘Harry of Bungulgully’ rekindled his interest in missionary work (Gunson 2016b).128

Of all the grammarians considered in this thesis, Rev. William Ridley is the most strongly connected to the European intelligentsia. His earliest published grammatical analyses of Gamilaraay were written as letters to influential British academics and were subsequently read to learned societies and published in their journals. The only other corpus grammarian known to hold a relationship with an epicentre of European philological similar to Ridley’s connections is Carl Strehlow (M.§.9.2.2).

Ridley fulfilled his evangelistic, ethnographic and linguistic passions while engaged as an itinerant minister in New England (1850-1852), and later (1853-1854) when conducting exploratory surveys in areas of New South Wales of his choice (Harris 1994:229-230). He travelled throughout the Liverpool Plains and the Darling Downs investigating Aboriginal languages and customs, especially Gamilaraay.

Ridley, who was never funded to establish a mission, commented that the “fragmentary character of this contribution to the Philology of Australia” was due to “the shortness of the time spent in the research” (1866:v), and described (ibid.,vi) his knowledge of some of the languages included in the publication as “limited”. The sparseness of Ridley’s analyses is partly due to the shorter time he spent immersed in the language compared to many other grammarians considered in this thesis, who lived among Aboriginal people at missions for years and sometimes decades.

Ridley’s early linguistic material was produced during a period of diminishing descriptive activity and waning interest in Aboriginal Australians. Ridley’s materials (1855a;1855b;1856), along with Teichelmann’s MSS (1857;1858) (M.§5.2.1) are the only Australian grammatical works produced during the 1850s. Ridley’s lavish publication from 1866 is the only grammar published in Australia in the decades between Moorhouse (1846) (M.§.7.2) and Taplin (1874). The only other works produced in the 1860s are MS grammars of languages spoken in South

128 In his earliest grammar (1855b:76) Ridley stated: “The permissive voice of buma is bumanbilla, which I learned from a black fellow, who, at my request, was explaining his idea of friendship.

Kamil Yarri ngumunda bumanabilla.
Harry will not allow-any-one-to-beat me.”

Gamil Yarri nganunda buma-na-bi-li
NEG Harry-[ERG] 1sgLOC hit-VD?- LET (see Giacon 2014:355, 363 for account of permissive voice glossed ‘LET’)

The ‘Yarri’ to whom Ridley refers is presumab ly his friend ‘Harry of Bungulgully’ who is said to have initially re-inspired his calling for missionary work (Gunson 2016b).
Australia: Taplin’s grammar of Ngarrindjeri (1867) (Appendix 2§1.1), and Koch’s grammar of Diyari (1868) (M.§8.4). The linguistic inactivity that characterises the decades between 1850 and 1870 stands in contrast to the preceding and later decades.

Yet Ridley published extensively, in both Australia and in Britain, on the languages, manners and customs of the Gamilaraay and other Aboriginal groups from north-central New South Wales and the region around Brisbane (1855b; 1856b; 1866; 1875). Ridley’s grammars (1855a; 1855b, 1866; 1875), along with Taplin’s grammars (1867; 1872; 1878), mark the earliest ‘survey-era of linguistics’ in Australia (McGregor 2008a), in which attempts were made to systematically survey Australian languages (Taplin 1879a; Brough Smyth 1878; Curr 1886).

Missionary-grammarians in direct contact with Aboriginal people in the later decades of the nineteenth century held knowledge about Aboriginal languages and culture that was of increasing interest to Australian and international scholars. The ethnographic enquiries made by missionaries Ridley and Taplin contributed to international academic scholarship about Australian ‘primitive’ people.

Ridley’s and Taplin’s materials were disseminated broadly, and both men were regarded as experts on anthropological and linguistic matters by European intelligentsia. The Oxford linguist Friedrich Max Müller (1823-1900) approached Ridley directly for information about Australian languages (Gardner & McConvell 2015:109). Bleek (1871:96) took Ridley’s Gamilaraay marriage ‘castes’ as evidence that Australian languages were degenerate members of his ‘sex-denoting’ class of languages. Ridley’s work was read closely by F.Müller, who specifically referred to Ridley in his earliest linguistic work (1867:8). In 1872, L.Fison (1832-1907) circulated L.H.Morgan’s (1818-1881) expanded philological lists of kinship terms in questionnaires in the Australian press. The information supplied to Morgan by Ridley, as well as by Taplin, was utilised within the rapidly evolving discipline of anthropology (Gardner & McConvell 2015:105-108).

Like Taplin, Ridley republished the same material in multiple locations. Figure 230 summarises the dates of production and publication of Ridley’s linguistic materials. He made two different analyses of Gamilaraay morphosyntactic structure, the first 1855b, and the second 1855a, later published in 1866 and 1875. Austin (1993:10) refers to grammatical notes given in the back of a copy of Gurre Kamilaroi. These have not been cited in this current study.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year produced:</th>
<th>Year published:</th>
<th>Referred to as:</th>
<th>Work</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1853</td>
<td>1856</td>
<td>1856b</td>
<td>“Kamilaroi Tribe of Australians and Their Dialect”: Letter to T. Hodgkin in <em>Journal of the Ethnological Society of London</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Ridley’s earliest *produced* description of Gamilaraay society and language (1856b) was written in 1853 as a letter to Dr T. Hodgkin (1788-1866), member of the Royal College of Physicians, curator of the anatomical Museum at Guy’s hospital in London (Martin 2004) and founding member of the Ethnological Society of London. Hodgkin was an early British proponent of the notion that language was a racial trait and that philological data provided information on the history of mankind. This work does not contain a grammar, but it does contain Ridley’s earliest account of ergativity (§11.1.4.1).

Ridley’s earliest *published* Gamilaraay description (1855b) was written in 1854 as a letter to Professor T.H. Key (1799-1875) of University College London, who was a founding member of the Society for Philological Enquiries — a precursor to the Philological Society of London, of which he later was president. The letter was read to the society and then published in the *Transactions of the Philological Society*. While not a complete grammar, this work does provide case paradigms. Four of the twelve pages of this work discuss linguistic structure and are followed by an extended vocabulary. Note that this and Ridley’s later vocabularies, which follow his grammars, are arranged alphabetically by English entry. In this, Ridley’s work differs from most other vocabularies appended to corpus grammars, which arrange items in the Aboriginal language alphabetically, although Taplin had also given words in alphabetical order by English translation.

In 1855 Ridley produced a more substantial MS grammar (1855a), later published with some modifications in 1866 (pp.3-16) and again in 1875 with some additional remarks in the introduction and in the description of the phonology and spelling system.

Although Ridley’s grammatical analysis of Gamilaraay is most commonly referred to as 1875 (Austin 2008, Giacon 2014) his analysis of Gamilaraay was finalised by 1855, during his early intense period of missionary engagement with Aboriginal people, and was not developed further over the coming decades. His knowledge of Australian languages did, however, broaden...
in the course of his enquiries. This most substantial of Ridley’s grammars is referred to here as (1875[1855a]), although note that the MS grammar (1855a) labels cases slightly differently from the published works.

Note that although Ridley uses ‘ng’ to represent the velar nasals in the earliest publication (1855b, 1856b), and engma in the 1866 and 1875 publications — represented by an inverted ‘G’ —, his early MS (1855a) shows a handwritten engma. Thus, the absence of the symbol in the early publications resulted from type-setting limitations, rather than from an alteration in the orthography of choice. The only other earlier Australian grammar to employ the symbol is Hale (1846). There is no indication that Ridley was familiar with his work.

Ridley’s works and R.H.Mathews’ grammar (1903b) are the most valuable of the older sources. The lack of example clauses in these analytically sparse descriptions causes difficulty for the reconstruction of classical Gamilaraay structure (Giacon 2014:5), although Mathews (1903b) provides a greater number of illustrative clauses than does Ridley.

### 11.1.1 Gamilaraay primer 1856

In 1856, Ridley published an extensively illustrated primer titled, *Gurre Kamilaroi or ‘Kamilaroi Sayings’* (1856b). Portions of the primer were republished in Ridley (1866:31-33), and Fraser later republished the entire primer as “Sentences in the Kamalarai Dialect” (1892:App F:127-131).

This work, the second of its kind in Australia — following Threlkeld 1836 — was designed to teach school children to read Christian texts in their own language.

### 11.1.2 Ridley 1866

Ridley’s 1866 publication *Kamilaroi, Dippil and Turrubul languages spoken by Australian Aborigines* is the only work by Ridley devoted almost exclusively to language. In addition to the inclusion of his Gamilaraay MS finalised over a decade earlier, Ridley included lexical material for neighbouring Maric languages and Dippil (Waka-Kabic), and a brief grammar of Turrubul (Durubalic) (pp.61-64).

By 1866, Ridley’s comparative assessment of Australian languages was more developed than in his earlier publications. He observed: “The pronouns of the first and second person are nearly the same all over Australia” (1866:43) and drew upon the South Australian data of Grey and Teichelmann, referred to as ‘Taihleman’. He also drew a parallel between the religious belief of the Turrubul and the Ngarrindjeri from ‘Point Macleay’ (sic) in South Australia (1866:65). Taplin had not at this time published any material from the South Australian mission.
Ridley is likely to have been informed about Taplin’s material by L. Fison, with whom both Taplin and Ridley corresponded (Elkin 1975:4-7; 9-12). The work contains two appendices. Appendix A ‘Family names, classifications, and marriage and law’ (1866:35-38), established Ridley’s reputation as an authority on Aboriginal social organisation and marriage. It was published six years before his first meeting with Fison. Appendix B ‘Specimens of Languages Bordering on Kamilaroi’ (pp.39-44), provided a four language comparative vocabulary of some forty lexical items, mainly body parts, fauna and pronouns.129

For each of the languages given substantial treatment in this publication — Gamilaraay, Dippil and Turrubul — Ridley acknowledged the linguistic assistance of a colonist who “during many years’ residence among that people, had learned to converse with them in their own tongue” (1866:v). For Gamilaraay, he thanked Rev. C. Greenway (1818-1905), who leased land on the Barwon River from 1848. Greenway’s analysis of Gamilaraay (1878, 1910-1912), some of which was published posthumously, has been characterised by Austin (2008:41) as an unacknowledged reproduction of Ridley’s work. Giacon (2014:5), however, believes the provenance is less certain. The situation remains unclear.

Ridley thanked Thomas Petrie (1831-1910) for assistance with the Turrubul material. Thomas was the son of Andrew Petrie (1798-1872) a Scottish mechanic, who like Ridley had been brought to Australia by Lang (Hall 1974). Ridley visited Andrew Petrie in Moreton Bay in 1855. Thomas learnt Turrubul in Brisbane as a child mixing freely with the Aboriginal children (Gunson 2016a), and subsequently contributed to the early linguistic record in Australia.

Thomas Petrie’s daughter, when writing her father’s reminiscences (Petrie & Petrie 1904:140) recalls Ridley’s method of learning Turrubul:

In the early days the Rev. W. Ridley came to Brisbane to learn what he could about the Queensland aborigines, and he sought out my father [Thomas Petrie], who was quite a lad at the time, to get information from him. He seemed very clever, and as fast as the boy [Thomas Petrie] could speak the language he [Ridley] was able to write it down. He took a part of the Bible and read out verse after verse, and the lad followed in the black’s tongue. Afterwards reading out the aboriginal version for his young companion’s approval, it was almost as though a blackfellow spoke.

129 The languages are named ‘Kingki’ and ‘Paiamba’, both Maric languages spoken on the Darling Downs. There is additional lexical material for Bigambul, the northern most Central New South Wales language and for a language named ‘Kogai’, now referred to as Mandandanji or Gunggari, another Maric language spoken on the Cogoon and Maranoa rivers in a more arid and linguistically under-sampled region (Bowern 2012:825) west of the Darling Downs towards the neighbouring Karnic languages. In this section Ridley shows that “the languages of neighbouring tribes differ very much, and are yet connected” (p.42) and notes the great similarity of pronouns (p.43) and that “bular or budela appears for “two” almost all over the country” (p.44).
Ridley’s Turrubul grammar is substantially shorter than the Gamilaraay grammar. Ridley (1866:63) stressed the complexity of verb morphology: “The voices, active, reciprocal, causative, permissive, &c., are numerous; and the tenses are adapted to express various slight modifications of past and future tenses”. The extent to which Ridley’s analysis of Turrubul is based on material gathered from Aboriginal people or was made through Ridley’s comparison of Petrie’s translation of the Bible with his own Gamilaraay translations is not clear. Ridley (1866:vi) stated: “Before and after receiving this help [from the colonists], the author communicated with the Aborigines in the districts where these three languages are spoken; and verified and extended, by his own observations, the information thus supplied”. The description of Turrubul concludes with a short ten-entry section headed ‘Dialogue’, and a section headed ‘Paraphrases’ containing translations of Genesis chapters 1-3 and Luke 7-8.

While working as an itinerant missionary, Ridley formed an association with J.G. Hausmann (1811-1901), and the pair sought to reopen the Zion Hill mission at Moreton Bay — present day Brisbane — as an Anglican institution (Harris 1990:233-234). Hausmann, who had been trained by Gossner in Berlin, had been brought to Australia by Lang in order to establish Zion Hill (Nundah, ‘German Mission’) in 1837. While the plan to reopen the Moreton Bay mission did not eventuate, it is possible that Ridley’s grammar of Turrubul (1866), spoken in the vicinity of Brisbane, was partly informed by the earlier acquisition of the language made by the Gossner-trained missionaries. In 1841, Hausmann’s colleague C. Eipper (1831-1894) (1841) published a Turrubul word list (1841:11) of less than one hundred words. Eipper’s pronominal forms, ata ‘I’, inta ‘thou’, ariba ‘belonging to me’, and enuba ‘belonging to thee’, accord with those recorded by Ridley (1866:62). Note here that missionary Eipper was assisted in learning Turrubul by J.C.S. Handt (Ganter 2016a) who had trained at Basel, and worked at Wellington Valley mission (1832-1836) before Günther’s arrival (M.§4.1).

For Dippil Ridley thanks a blacksmith named James Davies [Davis] (1808-1889). In 1828, three years after arriving in New South Wales as a seventeen year-old convict, Davis was sent to Moreton Bay goal, from where he soon escaped. Sustained by Aboriginal people from the region for thirteen years, Davis lived beyond the frontier, learning Aboriginal languages and tribal law before being found by Andrew Petrie in 1842. Ridley was evidently tenacious in collecting linguistic data, securing a session with Davis, who, after successfully re-integrating into colonial society, otherwise refused to discuss his experiences in the bush (Petrie & Petrie 1904:140-141). As with Turrubul, Ridley’s initial field method of collecting data from Davis was to read verses of the Bible, which it is said Davis could not understand. Subsequently, Ridley collected some Dippil names of animals “and things like that” (ibid.,141). Ridley’s
Dippil investigations may have further been hampered by his inability to locate Aboriginal speakers of the language. Petrie (1904:141) recalls:

“On Mr. Ridley’s return from his trip he told Father that nearly all the blacks he came across understood what he (Father) [T. Petrie] had told him, but on the contrary, he met only two who understood the words from Davis. This was because he had gone too far inland”

That Ridley’s Dippil material (1866:47-57) does not contain a grammar or a translation of religious text is telling of the limitations of his fieldwork.

11.1.3 Ridley 1875

Ridley’s 1875 republication of the Gamilaraay grammar is given alongside additional non-grammatical material. Written within the era of survey linguistics, and in the same year that Taplin circulated his questionnaire in order to collect linguistic data from a range of languages (M.§2.2.1), the 1875 work includes a ‘comparative table in twenty languages’ (1875:119-134). Ridley was by this stage acquainted with the contents of the MS grammars of Wiradjuri (M.§4.1). In 1871, Ridley, who was about to travel into Gamilaraay country for a period of ‘a few weeks’ (Ridley 1875:v), was visited by Fison. Fison requested that Ridley further investigate marriage systems during his travels, the official purpose of which was to “make philological investigations requested by the Colonial Secretary of New South Wales on behalf of Professor Max Mueller of Oxford” (Langham 1981:30). The 1875 vocabulary follows the same format as the earlier vocabularies but contains additional entries. The type of lexical material added to the 1875 work is telling of the fields of enquiry Ridley pursued during his 1871 expedition. Notable is the greatly expanded section headed “Man: his distinctive and relative names” (1866:17; 1875:18). Ridley expands the number of entries given in this section in 1875 by almost 50%, now including terms for ‘man’ and ‘boy’ at different stages of growth and initiation, and distinct terms for older and younger brother and sister.

11.1.4 Ridley’s descriptions of case

Ridley presents three slightly different Gamilaraay case paradigms and one of Turrubul. Figure 231 shows the forms that Ridley included in his paradigms and their current analysis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form of suffix shown by Ridley</th>
<th>Case label assigned to form by Ridley 1855b</th>
<th>Translated as:</th>
<th>Case label assigned to form by Ridley 1855a, 1866, 1875</th>
<th>Austin’s analysis (1993)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ø</td>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>“a X”</td>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>absolute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-du</td>
<td>nominative 2</td>
<td>“an X” (agent)</td>
<td>nominative 2</td>
<td>ergative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ŋu</td>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>“of (or belonging to) X”</td>
<td>possessive</td>
<td>**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Form of suffix shown by Ridley</td>
<td>Case label assigned to form by Ridley 1855b</td>
<td>Translated as:</td>
<td>Case label assigned to form by Ridley 1855a, 1866, 1875</td>
<td>Austin’s analysis (1993)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ø</td>
<td>accusative &amp; vocative*</td>
<td>“a X”</td>
<td>objective (1866; 1875)</td>
<td>absolutive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-go</td>
<td>motion to</td>
<td>“to an X”</td>
<td>listed under ‘accusative’ but unnamed</td>
<td>dative/allative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-di</td>
<td>ablatived</td>
<td>“from a X”</td>
<td></td>
<td>ablative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-da</td>
<td>listed under ‘ablative’ but unnamed</td>
<td>“in a X”</td>
<td></td>
<td>locative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-kunda</td>
<td></td>
<td>“with a X”</td>
<td></td>
<td>personal declension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ŋunda†</td>
<td></td>
<td>(stopping)</td>
<td></td>
<td>locative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-kale</td>
<td>with a X</td>
<td>(going)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Ridley writes “like 1st Nom”
** Austin (1993:64), who describes the possessive function as marked with –gu, remarks that Ridley recorded the function as marked with –ngu.
†The suffix –ŋunda is only given in the 1855 MS (1855a).

Ridley followed the practices of previous grammarians in New South Wales. His paradigms are similar to those given in Günther’s Wiradjuri grammars (1838;1840) (M.§4.4.2) and Threlkeld’s Awabakal grammar (1834) (M.§3.2.2). Ridley presented enlarged paradigms in order to include forms marking functions not associated with SAE case systems. He presents eight-case paradigms.

Unlike most other early PN grammarians, Ridley did not present the word class ‘pre/post-positions’. The absence is characteristic of the sparseness of his analysis generally.

His earliest published Gamilaraay case paradigm of nouns (1855b:74) (Figure 232) and his Turrubul case paradigm (1866:61) (Figure 233) maintain the format used by Günther (M. Figure 53) and by Threlkeld (M. Figure 29) in presenting multiple forms under the heading ‘ablative’, although Ridley does not assign numbers or letters to the additional ablative cases as his predecessors had done. These large paradigms are definitive of the New South Wales descriptive school.

In the MS grammar (1855a) and later publications (1866;1875) he follows Threlkeld (§M.3.2.4) in choosing a noun meaning ‘eagle’ to illustrate case marking.
Despite the publication of Ridley’s analyses (1866;1875), his inclusion of suffixes marking functions not carried by the case systems of SAE languages and the abandonment of the word-class ‘pre/post-positions’ had no discernible influence on grammars of Diyari (Koch 1868; Schoknecht 1947 [1871]; Flierl 1880; Reuther 1899) or of Arrernte (Kempe 1891; C. Strehlow c.1907; T.G.H. Strehlow 1944 [1938]) written by Lutheran missionaries in Central Australia in the decades after his works were published. However, there is some evidence that his analysis may have influenced Livingstone’s (1892[c.1876-1886a;c.1876-1886b]) grammar of Minjangbal (§1.2), and Roth’s (1897) grammar of Pitta-Pitta, and subsequently later grammars of languages spoken in Queensland (§1.3).

11.1.4.1 Ergativity

Ridley’s earliest account of ergative function and ‘the difference between the two nominative cases’ given in his earliest-written publication occurs in a section headed ‘phrases’ without an accompanying case paradigm (1856b:292) (Figure 234). His explanation that the nominative case was given in answer to the question “what’s that?” follows Threlkeld (1834:13) and had
similarly been employed by Günther (M. §4.4.3). Ridley’s later explanation of the ergative case as “the agent of the act described in the following verb” (1855a) (Figure 235) is, however, further developed than Threlkeld or Günther’s elucidations.

In each of Ridley’s paradigms he followed Threlkeld and Günther in placing the ergative case in second position after the nominative at the top of the paradigm. He names the case the ‘2nd nominative’ following one of Threlkeld’s naming practices.

Ridley placed the term ‘agent’ in brackets after the form for clarification (Figure 235), as had the earliest grammarian in South Australia.

11.1.4.2 Ridley’s later case paradigms

The nominal case paradigms that Ridley presented in the MS (1855a) (Figure 235) are slightly different to those republished in 1866 and 1875 (Figure 236). The paradigms in all works labelled only the three syntactic cases and the possessive. The earlier MS (1855a) gave unnamed peripheral case forms under the term ‘accusative’. The paradigms in published works (1866;1875) listed multiple ‘objective’ forms, which were translated with English prepositional phrases. This presentation differed from Threlkeld’s and that given by all previous Australian grammarians. Ridley’s conception of multiple ‘objective’ cases presents a unique and innovative paradigm. It is possible that this presentation influenced Roth (§1.3).

The earlier MS paradigms (1855a) also gave two additional case forms not shown in the publications. One form is marked with the –ngunda reclaimed as the personal locative (Giacon 2014:36-37), and the other is suffixed with –kale which appears not to have been reclaimed.
11.1.5 Concluding remarks

With exceptions of some of Mathews’ grammars of PN languages, Ridley’s analyses of Gamilaraay are less detailed and show less grammatical understanding and insights than other grammars of languages spoken in New South Wales. In comparison with earlier grammars of PN languages, Ridley’s works contain little analytical comment supplementing the paradigms, and provide few example clauses. Ridley’s most frequently cited work (1875) is only twelve pages long. Ridley’s account of case allomorphy is inferior to that given by Threlkeld in Awabakal (1834) (M.§3.2.4) and by Günther in Wiradjuri (1838;1840) (M.§4.4.1). Ridley’s
descriptions of bound pronouns (M.§7.4), and of case allomorphy (M.§4.4.1) are inferior to that later given by Mathews (1903b), although Mathews may have regularised his material. Ray (1925:2) evaluated Ridley’s work as unsatisfactory.

The format of Ridley’s earliest case paradigms and his explanation of ergativity show influence from Threlkeld’s grammar. Threlkeld (1834), Günther (1838;1840) and Ridley’s works convey PN case systems differently from grammars of languages spoken outside New South Wales at the time.

Despite the renown of Ridley’s ethnographic investigations, and despite the publication of his material, his grammatical analyses had limited influence on later grammatical of Australian languages. There is no suggestion that grammarians of Diyari or of Arrernte at either of the two South Australian missions (M.§8.1) were aware of Ridley’s publications.

His presentation of peripheral case forms in his later published paradigms (1866; 1875) (Figure 236) may, however, have influenced Roth (1897), who adopted a schema showing multiple case forms labelled ‘objective’ in his description of Pitta-Pitta case (1897:4) (§1.3).

11.2 The Rev. Hugh Livingstone

Livingstone’s grammar of ‘Minyung’, now known as Minjangbal, a middle Clarence dialect of Bandjalang (Crowley 1978:142), spoken on the north-eastern coast of New South Wales, is the only major work in Fraser’s compilation of grammatical material of PN languages (1892) that was specially written for that publication. While other works included in Fraser — Günther’s Wiradjuri grammar and Homann’s Diyari pronominal paradigm — had previously only been available in MS, they were not specifically produced for that volume.

Little is known about the Rev Hugh Livingstone, or about the circumstances in which he collected his material, other than that he was a Presbyterian minister in Lismore, around where Minjangbal was spoken, between 1876 and 1886, and later in Western Victoria, from where he wrote that material for Fraser.

Museum Victoria holds the MSS of his grammatical analysis of ‘Minyung’ (1876-1866) and vocabularies (no date) in the Spencer and Gillen collection.130 It is not known how these materials came into Spencer’s possession. The MSS (1876-1886) have not previously been identified as containing the grammatical analysis that was published in Fraser (1892). The MS vocabulary (no date) contains at least three times the material as that which was published in

130 Thanks to Margaret Sharpe for bringing this to my attention.
Fraser (1892). It appears the MS vocabulary was not viewed by Smythe (1949), Cunningham (1969), Geytenbeek & Geytenbeek (1971), or Crowley (1978).

The grammatical material (1876-1886a;1876-1886b) is poorly organised. Originally written partly on the reverse pages of a long essay on Futurism, all pages have now lost their original order. The grammar is spread throughout two files, which are given different record numbers by Museum Victoria. The documents include more than a single attempt to write a complete grammar, and one (1876-1886a) is introduced as a fourth revision. Further, the lucidity of material varies so greatly as to suggest that Livingstone was in different states of mind when compiling it!

Nevertheless, the documents clearly contain the material that was edited and published by Fraser. Like Livingstone’s MS vocabulary (no date) the MS grammars (1876-1886a;1876-1886b) contain additional examples that were not included in Fraser (1892). Of ‘gender’, for example, Livingstone (1876-1886a) wrote: “The distinction between the masculine and the feminine is denoted in Minyung, as in English, either by the use of a different word or by the use of the feminine termination, -gun”. Livingstone in Fraser (1892:6) stated: “Gender / There are two ways by which the feminine is distinguished from the masculine — either by a different word, or by adding the termination –gūn”. While the MS then listed ten pairs of gendered terms, only five were included by Fraser. The section headed ‘Table of relationships in MINYUG’ (Livingstone 1892:21), is clearly taken from a longer section in the MS (1876-1886b), which shows Livingstone’s method of eliciting his genealogical material, recording the conversation between Livingstone and his informants. For example: “What do you call your mother?”, “Waidyong”, “What do you call your mother’s sister?” “Waidyong, all the same”. The MS also gives a table of marriage classes, which was not included in Fraser, and other anthropological material, including “the marking of men”.

The document containing the vocabulary (no date) must have been written after 1912, because the discussion refers to R.R.Marett’s publication Anthropology (1912).

Substantial portions of Livingstone’s analysis in Fraser (1892) are also not contained in the Museum Victoria MSS. Missing are the important sections describing case: ‘Suffixes to nouns’ (1892:9-11) and the description of adjectival agreement with noun classes (1892:4-5). The nature of Fraser’s edit to the material is therefore difficult to ascertain. The extent to which the material in Fraser replicates Livingstone’s original analysis can, however, be deduced by comparing these documents with the way in which Fraser is known to have standardised Günther’s description of case in Wiradjuri (M.§4.4.2), and Taplin’s Ngarrindjeri material (Appendix 2§1.1.5 Figure11). Fraser’s presentation of Livingstone’s material is starkly
dissimilar in format to Fraser’s edited publications of these other languages. It therefore seems likely that the unconventional description of Minjangbal case, given by Fraser, is Livingstone’s original analysis.

11.2.1 Livingstone’s analysis of Minjangbal (1892)

Livingstone’s analysis was informed by his existing knowledge of Australian Aboriginal languages. In an introductory passage (1892:3) Livingstone justifies his abandonment of the traditional descriptive framework on the basis of the agglutinative nature of Australian languages:

   It is well known that the Australian dialects are agglutinative, everything in the nature of inflection being obtained by suffixes. To this, Minyuği is no exception; so that if I give an account of its suffixes, that is nearly equivalent to giving an exposition of its grammar. It will therefore, be convenient to take, first, such suffixes as are used with the noun and its equivalents, and, afterwards, those that may be regarded as verbal suffixes. The words that take what may be called the noun-suffixes are (1) Nouns, (2) Adjectives, and (3) Pronouns.

The first of the ‘suffixes to nouns’ listed by Livingstone is the ergative inflection, of which he states (1892:9) is “usually said to be the sign of the agent-nominative case but it also denotes an instrumental case”. Here Livingstone distinguishes clearly between two case functions marked by the same case forms.

His comment that the ergative case was ‘usually’ termed ‘agent-nominative’ is odd, since the term had previously only been used in discussions of case by Threlkeld, and by Meyer (1843:38). The term ‘agent’ had only been used in description of case by members of the Adelaide school and by Ridley. The terms ‘agent’ or ‘agent nominative’ had not been used as a case label in any grammar written in Australia. The term ‘nominative agent’ had, however, been employed by Fr. Müller (1882:7, 20) (Figure 237) in his ninety-four-page discussion and collation of existing PN grammatical material written in German. Müller replaced the original case labels in the source paradigms and employed the term ‘nominative agent’, but only when describing Awabakal and Wiradjuri spoken in New South Wales. The term ‘agent’ (agens) had previously been used in Oihenart’s seventeenth century descriptions of Basque as well as in an 1820 description of Hindi (see Lindner 2013:198). Livingstone’s choice of terminology suggests that his broad knowledge of Australian languages was informed by F.Müller’s most comprehensive treatment of the topic.
By the turn of the century the term ‘nominative agent’ had gained some currency in Australian grammars of languages spoken in New South Wales and Victoria. The term was employed by Mathews (1903b).

When describing the marking of cases on nouns, Livingstone in Fraser (1892:9-11) initially listed suffixes and explained their function. This method of describing case had first been employed by Meyer (1843) (M.§6.2.1).

Fraser (1892,PartIV:14) then presented a conventionally organised paradigm, at the end of the discussion of nominal morphology. It is probable that this section had not originally been included by Livingstone. Fraser uses the case terminology he adopted from Threlkeld (1834) (M. Figure 29) and used when editing Taplin’s Ngarrindjeri grammar (M. Figure 31). He gives for example, a case termed ‘dative 1’ (dative) but does not present numbered ablative cases.

11.2.1.1 Grammatical gender

Livingstone’s grammar evidences an intelligent arrangement of the morpho-syntactic structure. Minjangbal is among a handful of Pama-Nyungan languages that exhibit systems of noun classes in which agreement is marked on a nominal modifier (Dixon 2002:450-453). Livingstone is alone among early PN grammarians in encountering a language that had noun classes. Livingstone’s ‘classification’ of Minjangbal nouns and adjectives (1892:4-5) tabulates the agreement of adjectives with four classes of noun. Current analysis of Minjangbal noun classes (Crowley 1978:43-45) is based entirely, and somewhat tentatively, on Livingstone (1892), which is the only source for this Bandjalan variety.

Minjangbal is also among the small group of about a dozen Pama-Nyungan languages that make a two-way gender distinction in third person pronouns (Dixon 2002:461).
Despite describing a system of grammatical gender on nouns, and a gender distinction in third person pronouns, Livingstone did not present either of these systems as ‘gender’. This is curious, given that the four noun classes are, as Livingstone describes them, semantically determined largely by the masculine/feminine, animate/inanimate oppositions underlying Indo-European gender systems (Kurzová 1993:61). The term ‘gender’ is used within traditional grammar to describe both the property of nouns with which other word classes show agreement, as well as lexical variation for biological gender. (e.g. Gildersleeve 1895:10-11; Ramshorn 1824:19-32). Livingstone reserved the term ‘gender’ for a discussion of lexical gender and the naming of male and female pairs:

“There are two ways the feminine is distinguished from the masculine- either by a different word or by adding the termination –gun ...” (1892 p.6).

This was the common application of the term ‘gender’ in many early grammars of PN languages. Consequently the category ‘gender’ is maintained in a body of early Pama-Nyungan grammars of languages with no system of gender. This group of grammars, which interestingly do not include the works of German speaking missionaries (Teichelmann and Schürmann, 1840; Meyer, 1843; Schürmann, 1844a; Kempe, 1891; Günther, 1892; C.Strehlow, 1908, n.d.), give lexical pairs which refer to different genders of the same type: husband/wife, daughter/son, male kangaroo/female kangaroo etc. (Threlkeld, 1834, p.10; Livingstone, 1892, p.6; Roth, 1897, p.15; Mathews, 1907, p.324). T.G.H.Strehlow also gives substantial discussion of lexical gender under the heading ‘Absence of Gender’ (1944, p.59), explaining that the language ‘has to add’ adjectival modifiers denoting male and female to the names of species. He does this despite recognising that “The Aranda nouns know no distinctions of gender” (Strehlow, 1944 p.59). R.H. Mathews, similarly fills the prescribed category with a description of adjectival modifiers. The fact that “exponents of nominal Gender were recognisable members of another part of speech was irrelevant” (Koch 2008:192).

11.3 W.E.Roth

Following the publication of Ridley’s very brief sketch of Turrubul (1866), the following two grammars of languages spoken in Queensland were published by W.E.Roth (1861-1933). Roth’s first grammar was of Pitta-Pitta (1897) (§1.3.1), a Karnic language spoken in the south-west of Queensland. Roth collected the material while appointed as a medical officer at the Cloncurry and Boulia hospitals (1894-1897), a position that he (1897:v) described as having “afforded unrivalled opportunities for making enquiry into the language”. Material for Roth’s second grammar of Guugu-Yimidhirr (1901) (§1.3.2), spoken on the east coast of Cape York Peninsula at the Lutheran Cape Bedford (Hopevale) mission, was collected after Roth was
appointed as the first Protector of Aborigines for the Northern District of Queensland. Roth then revised and edited a grammar of Nggerrikwidhi (1903) (§1.3.5), spoken at Mapoon mission on the western coast of Cape York Peninsula, written by the Moravian missionary N.Hey (1862–1951). At the time of Roth’s appointment as the Protector of Aborigines for the Northern District, Hey was appointed ‘Superintendent to the Blacks’ by the Queensland government, which provided the two men professional contact.

One of seven sons who were educated in France, Germany, and at the University College School in London, four of whom became doctors and three of whom pursued ethnology (Reynolds 2008), Roth, a fellow of the Royal College of Surgeons, practiced both professions among Queensland Aboriginal people.

This body of work is of a different descriptive style and format to other early grammars of PN languages examined in this thesis, and together forms a discrete school of description. The grammatical component of Hey’s (1903) Nggerrikwidhi publication (twelve pages) is far less detailed than Roth’s previous grammars of Pitta-Pitta (thirty pages) and of Guugu-Yimidhirr (seventeen pages). Without a contemporary description of the language Hey described (§11.3.3.1), it is difficult to assess the grammar (M.§2.1).

The inclusion in Roth’s Guugu-Yimidhirr grammar (1901:32-35) of a section headed ‘composition’ is analogous to F. Müller’s Sprachprobieren (1882), and Planert’s Texte (1907a;1908) (M.§8.5.3). These arrangements sit within a descriptive tradition known as the ‘Boasian trilogy’, which is most recognised in the work of Sapir and Boas (Darnell 1999:8-9), yet it is clearly a feature of nineteenth-century Australian description, particularly that made within a German tradition, to which Roth’s work might be seen to also belong. While Threlkeld’s ‘Illustrations’ (1834:105-131), Günther’s (1838:249) ‘sentences or phrases’ and Teichelmann and Schürmann’s (1840) ‘phraseology’ are also part of a tripartite arrangement, the illustrative sections given in these earlier grammars contain much shorter samples of text.

11.3.1 Roth’s grammar of Pitta-Pitta (1897)

Roth’s thirty-page grammar of Pitta-Pitta appeared as the first chapter of a much larger ethnographic work: Ethnological Studies among North-West Central Queensland Aborigines (1897), which had immediate impact within Australian anthropological circles and was reviewed at length and appreciatively by Spencer (Mulvaney 2008:110-112).

The grammar is exceptionally rich in exemplification. Roth supplied up to ten clauses as illustration of a single grammatical point followed by their translations into English, which were given without interlinear translation. It is among the most grammatically insightful, detailed
and better-informed early PN grammars. Roth’s grammatical analysis of Pitta-Pitta has been assessed positively (Blake & Breen 1971:2-3):

[Roth’s] analysis of the morphology is good … and only on a few points can the present authors dispute his conclusions. However, a number of grammatical forms which Roth did not find can now be described. On the other hand, some of Roth’s statements cannot be confirmed because of the lack of knowledge of present day informants.

Mulvaney (2008:114) suggests Roth’s investigations may have been “unpremeditated before he realised his unprecedented observational opportunities as an itinerant outback doctor”. Roth is known to have read Howitt & Fison (1880) after the 1897 publication of Pitta-Pitta (Mulvaney 2008:114). Scrutiny of Roth’s Pitta-Pitta grammar (1897) similarly suggests that he was largely unaware of all previous descriptions of Australian languages. The unique style of his grammatical description suggests that his grammar was written ‘cold’ and was uninfluenced by earlier analyses. Roth makes no mention of previous publications. The work evinces distinctive attempts to convey the structure of the language that set it apart stylistically from earlier works in the corpus.

For example, the ordering of word-classes is unconventional (Figure 238). The corpus grammars are usually arranged according to approximately ten parts of speech and their subheadings, which are given in roughly the same order (M.Figure 10). Roth’s presentation by contrast, jumps from discussions concerning ‘pronouns’ to ‘auxiliary verbs’ to ‘articles’ to ‘possessive pronouns’ etc.

![Figure 238: Table of contents in Roth’s grammar of Pitta-Pitta, 1897:vi](image)

The logic informing the arrangement is underscored by the function of the described grammatical categories, rather than their form. Under the heading ‘auxiliary verbs’, given in the midst of discussions about nominal morphology, Roth in fact introduced the comitative
suffix –maru (‘concomitant’ Blake 1979:199), which attaches to nouns but is translated into English using the auxiliary verb ‘to have’.

Like other corpus grammarians, Roth presented case morphology marking case functions that are not marked by the morphological case system of SAE languages, under word-class heading ‘preposition’. Roth’s sub-categorisation of types of prepositions into four categories differs from other early PN grammarians, and is a feature of the Queensland School. The categories are: ‘motion’; ‘rest’; ‘purpose, reason and means’ and ‘time’

Like some previous PN grammarians (Meyer 1843; Schürmann 1844a; Livingstone 1892), he opted not to provide case paradigms for nouns, but listed nouns in ‘nominative’, ‘possessive’ and ‘objective’ cases. This and his discussion of pronominal case forms as either ‘nominative’, ‘direct object’ or ‘indirect object’, were used in later grammars of languages spoken in Queensland, and establish a distinctive sub-school of early PN description.

Roth’s presentation of pronominal case resemble Ridley’s paradigms of case on nouns (1866:5; 1875:6) (Figure 7) marking an important, if tenuous, link between the description of Gamilaraay spoken in New South Wales and the description of Queensland languages. Both Ridley and Roth present multiple forms as cases termed ‘objective’ or ‘indirect object’ in order to account for cases outside the Latin inventory in the same way Ridley had presented Gamilaraay nouns.

Roth’s presentation of pronominal case in Pitta-Pitta was descriptively unique. Roth further sub-categorised his ‘objective—indirect object’ pronouns into four classes, to which he assigned letters: ‘a’, marked ‘motion towards’, ‘b’ marked ‘rest with’, ‘c’ marked ‘from whom something is obtained, and ‘d’ marked ‘for whose benefit, use or advantage, something is done” (Figure 239). Roth observed that the suffixes that attach to the pronominal stem to mark pronouns in different cases (Blake & Breen 1971:76) were formally similar to the ‘prepositions’ that marked the same function on nouns. He wrote: “traces of … preposition inflexions can be recognised in the … series of personal pronouns objective”.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subtypes of Roth’s ‘pronouns objective — indirect object’</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Current label of form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(Blake &amp; Breen 1971:82-83; Blake 1979b:195)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a) ‘motion towards’</td>
<td>-inu</td>
<td>allative</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Subtypes of Roth’s ‘pronouns objective — indirect object’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Current label of form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-ina</td>
<td>locative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-inja *</td>
<td>ablative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-nga *</td>
<td>dative, benefactive</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Roth showed type ‘c’ and type ‘d’ as further inflected with either –nha (non-future) or -ku (future) marking a tense distinction (see Blake & Breen 1971:90;98).

Each of Roth’s six pronominal case forms was shown in each person and number. Figure 240 shows declension for type ‘a’, allative case, and type ‘b’, locative case. The only other corpus grammar to provide a pronominal paradigm of a pronoun marking a case function that is not marked morphologically in SAE languages was Teichelmann & Schürmann (1840:8). They do so for pronouns in the comitative case (M.§5.4.4, Figure 100). In this regard, Roth’s description of Pitta-Pitta is the most comprehensive in the corpus.

### 11.3.2 Poland & Schwarz’s grammar of Guugu-Yimidhirr (c.1900)

The Cape Bedford mission (Elim/ Hope Valley/ Hopevale) was established by J.Flierl in 1886. Flierl was recruited by the Neuendettelsau Mission Society to establish a mission in New Guinea while he was working at the Bethesda mission in South Australia (M.§8.5.1). Flierl’s
passage to New Guinea was delayed for a year and while he was waylaid at Cooktown, he established a mission among speakers of Guugu-Yimidhirr, and many other languages. The mission was administered by the Evangelical Lutheran Immanuel Synod from South Australia and later missionaries were recruited from Neuendettelsau. Stability of mission staff was achieved by the arrival of Neuendettelsau graduates W.G.F.Poland (1866-1955) and G.H.Schwarz (1868-1959) in 1887 and 1888 respectively. Schwarz, who departed in 1944 is still remembered as ‘Muni’ ‘black’, the Guugu-Yimidhirr translation of his surname.

Upon Flierl’s departure to New Guinea, he was replaced by the lay missionary C.A.Meyer\textsuperscript{131} who also travelled from Bethesda to Cape Bedford in 1886 with Johannes Pingilina, a Diyari evangelist who had been introduced to Christianity during Homann’s time at the Bethesda mission. Pingilina assisted the Neuendettelsau missionaries in Queensland in learning Guugu-Yimidhirr, and Guugu-Yalanji spoken at the Bloomfield mission. The important linguistic contribution made by the Diyari evangelist Johannes Pingilina was noted by Roth who stated that that the use of Guugu-Yimidhirr in the school was achieved with his assistance (Roth 1901:8).

When introducing his published grammar of Guugu-Yimidhirr, Roth (1901:preface) acknowledged Neuendettelsau-trained missionaries Poland and Schwarz, as having assisted him with the grammar:

\begin{quote}
I purposely wish to give publicity to the assistance which has been invariably rendered [to] me by the Revs. G. H. Schwarz and W. Poland…Especially without the former’s help I should never have discovered the various compounds derived from their simpler roots, nor the meanings of many inflections assumed by words, nor the why and wherefore of many a point which at first seemed inexplicable to me.
\end{quote}

Although he named Schwarz as his main informant, it is likely that Poland was responsible for a substantial part of the analysis. The earliest known grammatical MS of Guugu-Yimidhirr, was included in a letter written by Poland to Neuendettelsau close to two years after his arrival (Haviland & Haviland 1980:133).\textsuperscript{132} The MS grammar is held at the Neuendettelsau archives and has unfortunately not been sourced for this study.

\textbf{11.3.3 Hey’s grammar of Nggerrikwidhi (1903)}

The Victorian-based Presbyterian Foreign Mission Committee of Australia (henceforth PFMC) established the mission in far north Queensland in 1891. Originally called Batavia River

\textsuperscript{131} Note that this is not H.A.E. Meyer (1813-1862) (M.Chapter 6).

\textsuperscript{132} The letter is dated 16/08/1889 (Haviland & Haviland 1980:133).
Mission, but later Mapoon (1892), the mission was operated as a joint concern by the PFMC and the Moravian mission board in Saxony.

In response to a request from the Victorian mission board to Herrnhut, the Moravian seminary in Saxony, Hey was selected on account of building skills and knowledge of stock and agriculture (Hey, quoted in Edwards 2007:378). Hey left school at the age of thirteen, the year after his father’s death, after which he worked on the family farm. Upon his mother’s death, he applied unsuccessfully to the Basel Mission Society for which he was deemed too old (Ganter 2016c). At the age of twenty-six he applied to Moravian mission college at Niesky, where he received two years training before being called to Australia in 1891. (Ganter 2016c) writes:

As a Moravian, Hey is a somewhat unusual figure, because he did not come from a Moravian community, but rather asked for admission to the Unity of Brethren when he was already past his youth. Without the benefit of a fine Moravian school education, he was thrust into a position of responsibility when the leader of the mission died after a short period at Mapoon.

The second missionary sent Australia to establish the first Moravian mission in Queensland was Rev. J.G.Ward. Hey and Ward arrived at Cullen Point in 1891 “accompanied by four carpenters … a police officer and two native troopers” (Edwards 2007:234). They began their mission work in an environment of hostility from surrounding Europeans and suspicion from Aboriginal populations. The mission was established after the first wave of frontier violence had disrupted populations. Particular to the frontier history of the Cape York Peninsula is the exploitation of Aboriginal labour in the bêche–de-mer industry. The Aboriginal populations among whom the Moravians established themselves at Mapoon had experienced a high degree of social disruption prior to their interaction with missionaries. This situation contrasts most starkly with the Hermannsburg missionaries’ arrival on the Finke River (M.§9.1), where first European contact was with the missionaries.

Initially the missionaries perceived a great variety of different languages spoken by diminishingly small bands of people around the mission. In 1892, soon after the mission was established, Ward (quoted in Edwards 2007:267) wrote: “when you know the tribe is small and dying out, and that their dialect differs widely from that of their neighbouring tribes”

Nevertheless Ward argued that “it is essential to acquire some of the idiomatic phrases and words in order to present the essential truth of the gospel” (ibid.,267). The missionaries made progress with the languages. Three years after the mission’s establishment Ward “had translated the Christmas story into the local dialect [that he] insisted on sharing in Christmas services” (Edwards 2007:242) shortly before his death. After Ward’s death in 1895 the mission was temporarily abandoned while Hey regained strength, before becoming mission superintendent.
until his retirement in 1919. Hey is known to have been preaching in the vernacular by 1896 and to have translated hymns, though no record of these translations appears to have survived. It is unfortunate that Hey recalls nothing about the local languages, or about his interaction with Roth in his autobiography, printed in translation in Edwards (2007:367-383).

11.3.3.1 Difficulty in assessing Hey’s description of Nggerrikwidhi

In the introduction to his work, N.Hey (1903:2) qualified the comprehensiveness of his grammar:

“Although I have studied Nggerikudi for the last ten years, I must confess that there are still many points of the language which are quite inexplicable to me … I am only justified in publishing the Grammar on the grounds that the aboriginals are fast disappearing, and that the continent is still a terra incognita to the philologist”.

Although Hey referred to the name of the language as Nggerikudi, *Nggerri-kwidhi*, probably sandbank-ASSOC (Breen 2008:137), is now said to refer to the people who spoke a language called Yopo-timi, possibly *Yupu-thimri*, 1sgNOM-COM (ibid.,137; Crowley 1981:149). Within months of establishing Mapoon mission, Ward wrote that the language spoken by people at the mission differed “wildly from their neighbouring tribes” (quoted in Edwards 2007:267). It is not known whether the linguistic variety that was first encountered at the mission in 1891 was that recorded by Hey in 1903.

There are two short modern grammars of languages from the region written in the modern descriptive era: Hale’s grammar of Linngithigh (1966) and Crowley’s grammar of Mpakwithi (1981). Available comparative data suggests that Hey’s Nggerrikwidhi should be viewed as a different language from both Mpakwithi and Linngithigh. Figure 241, for example, shows that each of the described varieties from the region has a distinctive set of free-form first person nominative/ergative pronouns.
11.3.4 Provenance of Poland & Schwarz’s (c.1900) and Roth’s (1901) Guugu-Yimidhirr analyses

The extent to which Roth’s 1901 Guugu-Yimidhirr publication was based on an existing analysis of the language made by missionaries at Cape Bedford mission (Poland & Schwarz c.1900) or his own previous published grammar of Pitta-Pitta (1897) has not been well-understood. Breen (2008:136) writes:

It is not clear how much of the work is actually Roth’s. Probably the fieldwork was done by the missionaries … Roth likely turned their unpublished efforts … into a grammar, which followed the pattern of his earlier grammar of Pitta-Pitta.

What has not previously been recognised about the intellectual reciprocity between Roth and the Lutheran missionaries is that Poland and Schwarz’s Guugu-Yimidhirr grammar (c.1900) shows a strong influence from the structure of Roth’s Pitta-Pitta grammar. While the missionaries may have provided the content, Roth provided the framework in which they described the language. Comparison of missionaries’ documentation of Guugu-Yimidhirr (c.1900) with Roth’s grammar of Pitta-Pitta (1897) also shows that Roth’s influence extended as far as the nature of clauses given as illustration. Compare for example, examples 201 and 202:
201. **Kana-lo nopo-na nungkarea; kooyungo-ngooro**
“The man takes care of his wife; (he is) a good fellow”
(Roth 1897:24) Pitta-Pitta

202. **bama diral nangu(go) na-(mal)-ma : nulu bodan**
“The man who looks after his wife is a good fellow”
(Poland & Schwarz c.1900 no pag.) Guugu-Yimidhirr

The clause was also replicated in Roth’s Guugu-Yimidhirr publication:

203. **bama diral nangu-gobantchen-chil: nulu bodan**
“The man who nurses his own wife is a good fellow”
(Roth 1901:18) Guugu-Yimidhirr

and in Hey’s description of Nggerrrikwidhi:

204. **ma endranana-nu nguno-ma yi sea : ma tanko**
man woman-to his-very-own food gives : man good
“The man who gives food to his own wife is good man”
(Hey 1903:13) Nggerrrikwidhi

Hey described his grammar as having been “drawn up … section by section on the lines followed by Dr Roth” (1903:1). It seems likely that upon Roth’s request, Schwarz similarly ‘drew-up’ a grammar of Guugu-Yimidhirr using the missionaries’ existing grammatical understanding acquired over the previous twelve years, but using the template of the Pitta-Pitta publication (1897).

Poland & Schwarz’s Guugu-Yimidhirr MS grammar follows Roth’s descriptive template, employing his unconventional ordering of word-class headings (c.1900:no pag.), and his sub-categorisation of prepositions into the four classes, ‘motion’, ‘rest’, ‘purpose, reason and means’ and ‘time’ (Figure 238).

Poland & Schwarz’s presentation of peripheral case forms of Guugu-Yimidhirr pronouns in the MS grammar held at AIATSIS (Figure 242) replicates the presentation innovated by Roth in his 1897 grammar of Pitta-Pitta employing the same lettering system (Figure 239). Roth subsequently repeated the missionaries’ presentation in his published Guugu-Yimidhirr grammar (1901) (Figure 243). The pronominal case forms given left to right in the early sources mark cases termed by Haviland (1979:66) abessive, adessive, purposive and dative.
While Hey commenced his presentation of pronominal case forms as Roth had done in both Pitta-Pitta (1897) and Guugu-Yimidhirr (1901) he was unable to give multiple ‘indirect object’ forms, that is, locative, allative and purposive. Rather, under the heading ‘objective, indirect object’ Hey wrote: “there are other forms of the above pronouns, meaning: “for me,” “with me,” “from me”’ etc.” (1903:13).

11.3.5 Ergativity

This section examines the description of ergativity in Pitta-Pitta (Roth 1897), Guugu-Yimidhirr (Schwarz & Poland 1900; Roth 1901) and Nggerrikwidhi (Hey 1903). The discussion accounts for the fact that although the template Roth established in his initial grammar of Pitta-Pitta (1897) was employed throughout this later body of works, ergative morphology was not described in these latter grammars. Consequently, S.Ray’s comparative sketch grammar of the Guugu-Yimidhirr and Nggerrikwidhi (1907:267-270) (§11.4.2), based on Roth (1901) and Hey (1903), also fails to describe ergative morphology.

11.3.5.1 Description of ergativity in Pitta-Pitta

In learning Pitta-Pitta, Roth was presented with a peculiar morphological complexity that is not known to have existed in any other PN languages. Nouns and pronouns show tripartite marking in the non-future, but have accusative alignment (AS/O) in the future (Figure 244).
Roth made an exceptionally astute analysis of this unusual sensitivity of ergative morphology to verb tense in Pitta-Pitta on nouns (Figure 245) and on pronouns (Figure 246) (see Blake & Breen 1971:84-90).

Under the discussion of nominative case, he stated (1897:7):

If the subject governs a transitive verb in present or past time, it takes the suffix –lō … with an intransitive verb, under similar conditions, no addition is made … In the future time, with both transitive and intransitive verbs, the subject take the suffix –ng-ō.

205. Machoomba-lo wapa-lo pooriti-na pokara-na tichea
“the kangaroo’s pup is eating all the grass”

matyumpa-lu warrpa-lu ?-nha pukarra-nha thatyi-ya
kangaroo-ERG young-ERG ?all-ACC grass-ACC eat-PRES

See also example 1

Of nominative and ergative pronouns, Roth (1897:2;10) stated: “Like other personal pronouns, these are inflected according as they refer to present and past or future time”, and he carefully tabulated the forms (Figure 244).
18. Verbal Pronouns.

The particular pronouns used with the verbs to distinguish the required number and person may be spoken of as verbal pronouns: there are three series of them—

(a) With intransitive verbs, in present and past time, they are identical with the personal pronouns nominative for the corresponding tenses (sect. 5);

(b) With transitive verbs, in present and past time, these verbal pronouns take on a special inflection, identical with the -ŋi, already referred to in sect. 11 (which indicates a subject governing a transitive verb);

(c) With transitive and intransitive verbs, in the future, the pronouns are identical with the personal pronouns nominative used in the corresponding tense (sect. 5).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1st</td>
<td>nûn-jâ octâ, octaka</td>
<td>nûnt-o̲ tîchea, tîcheka</td>
<td>nûn-yô octâ, tîche</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>noo-tâ</td>
<td>nûn-o̲</td>
<td>noo-o̲</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>noo-kâ</td>
<td>nûn-o̲</td>
<td>noo-loo-kâ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1st</td>
<td>noo-o̲</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1st</td>
<td>nûn-kâ</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1st</td>
<td>nûn-pâ</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 246: Roth's presentation of nominative and ergative pronouns in future and non-future tenses in Pitta-Pitta, 1897:10

Like other grammarians (M.§3.2.3), Roth accounted for ergative morphology twice, once in a discussion of case, and a second time under the heading ‘prepositions’. Roth (1897:16) accounted for the function of the ergative suffix on nouns in Pitta-Pitta in the discussion of the prepositional sub-class: ‘Prepositions of purpose, reason and means’.

Nominals translated with the English prepositions ‘with’, ‘by’ and ‘through’ were presented as a type ‘f’ of this prepositional class, headed: “With, by, through, the physical agency of” (Figure 247).
Figure 247: Roth’s presentation of ergative morphology in Pitta-Pitta as a ‘preposition’, 1897:15-16

Type ‘f’ showed the non-future ergative suffix –lu and the future ergative suffix –ngu. Each of the examples Roth supplied shows both an ergative NP and an instrumental NP, which show syncretism (Blake 1979:193). For example:

206.  wungata\(^{133}\) -ngo kanari-ko moorra-ngo pite

“The woman will hit the girl with the stick”

(Roth 1897:16, Pitta-Pitta)

\(^{133}\) The form *wungata* ‘woman’ is not recorded by Blake (1979).
11.3.5.2 Description of ergativity in Guugu-Yimidhirr

In contrast to Roth’s insightful description of ergative marking in Pitta-Pitta, his grammar of Guugu-Yimidhirr (1901) did not record ergative marking of nouns either in a discussion of case (Figure 248), or as a sub-class of preposition (Figure 249). Since Guugu-Yimidhirr pronouns are accusatively aligned (AS/O), the forms of ergative pronouns were described simply as ‘nominative’ (p.17). Similarly Poland & Schwarz’s grammar of Guugu-Yimidhirr (1900) did not describe ergative function.

Figure 248: The absence of description of ergative morphology on nouns in Roth, 1901:16 (Guugu-Yimidhirr)

Figure 249: The absence of description of ergative morphology on pronouns in Roth, 1901:30 (Guugu-Yimidhirr)

Under the prepositional sub-type labelled ‘prepositions of purpose, reason and means’ and translated with the English prepositions ‘with’, ‘by’ and ‘through’, where Roth had accounted for the form of Pitta-Pitta nouns in ergative and instrumental functions (Figure 246), Roth’s grammar of Guugu-Yimidhirr gave type ‘vi’: “with, by though, agency of.” Ergative and instrumental cases show syncretism in Guugu-Yimidhirr (Haviland 1979:47). Of the nine
suffixes Roth gave as marking this functional range, he (1901:30) stated: “Various suffixes are used to denote this, but the why or wherefore of their use I have not been able to discover.”

Allowing for Roth’s orthographic under-differentiation of consonant phonemes, and the fact that he did not analyse processes of morphophonemic alteration to the vowel length of the preceding stem — indicated by Haviland (1979:48) as a colon or a dollar sign preceding the suffix —, Roth’s list (Figure 249) accounted for each of the seven main ergative/instrumental allomorphs given by Haviland (p.47): -ngun, nda, -nh, -$inh, -$il, -$il, and -.; except for the last, which shows just lengthening of the stem-final vowel, and which Roth would probably have perceived as an unmarked stem.

Yet all the examples Roth provided of NPs marked with any of these ergative/instrumental allomorphs are in instrumental function. That none of the examples show ergative/instrumental marking on the agent of a transitive clause is explained by the fact that Roth described the variety, which had been established at the mission, in which nouns in ergative case remained unmarked (M.§2.5.1). In all example sentences supplied in the early Guugu-Yimidhirr grammars (see M. examples 12 & 13), a noun acting in the role of agent is always followed by a 3rd person pronoun, which shows accusative alignment (AS/O). Pronominal-final NPs is not a feature of the variety described by Haviland (1979). The following example given by Roth (1901:30) to exemplify this subclass of preposition similarly shows a pronominal-final ergative NP. The plural ergative NP ngaanndhu -ngay ‘woman’ receives no ergative morphology, but is followed by a 3pERG pronoun. However, the NP dyuugaar ‘sand’ in instrumental function is marked with the ergative/instrumental allomorph -$inh, which shortens the second syllable of a disyllabic stem.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>207. Ngando-ngai</th>
<th>dana</th>
<th>ngundar$</th>
<th>dogar-en</th>
<th>baitcharen</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the-woman</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>the-plums</td>
<td>with-sand</td>
<td>covered</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*(Roth 1901:30, Guugu-Yimidhirr)*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ngaanndhu -ngay</th>
<th>dhana</th>
<th>dyuugaar-$inh</th>
<th>baydyra-rrin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>woman-PL</td>
<td>3pERG</td>
<td>plum-[ACC]</td>
<td>sand-INST</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The oddity that Roth recorded morphology that marked the ergative/instrumental functional range in Guugu-Yimidhirr, but did not describe ergativity, and only exemplified instrumental

---

134 The form ngundar appears not to have been recorded by Haviland (1979), who does however (p176) give wunha, which is translated as “wild ‘nanda’ fruit”.

510
function, is explained by the fact that the variety he recorded was not fluent native speaker usage, but was a variety used by the missionaries.

Guugu-Yimidhirr presented Poland, Schwarz and Roth with a range of ergative allomorphy larger than that encountered by other missionary-grammarians and which made accounting for ergative forms more difficult. The language also exhibits what Haviland (1979:154) terms ‘ergative hopping’. Transitive complement clauses optionally cause ergative marking on the S argument of an intransitive verb (Haviland 1979:154-156). So that in a construction translated as: “the boy doesn’t want to chop the tree down” (ibid.,154), the NP ‘the boy’ can be marked as either nominative or ergative. This factor would have thwarted the early missionary-grammarians’ ability to understand ergative function. Motivated by complexities in Guugu-Yimidhirr that other early corpus-grammarians appear not to have encountered, the missionaries invented a strategy of placing the correct case form of the pronoun in NP final position because it avoided the need to mark the noun as ergative.

11.3.5.3 Description of ergativity in Nggerrikwidhi

Hey’s 1903 grammar of Nggerrikwidhi, revised and edited by Roth and written using Roth’s descriptive template, does not describe ergative morphology in the discussion of nominal case. Under the prepositional subheading: ‘purpose, reason, means’ type ‘vi’, where ergative/instrumental morphology was described in Roth’s previous grammars (1897;1901), Hey (1903:21) stated: “with, by, through , is in most cases translated with the suffix –be”. Like in Roth’s Guugu-Yimidhirr grammar (1901) (Figure 249), the suffix –be is only shown attached to nominals in instrumental function. The NPs in ergative function are unmarked, but, unlike the Guugu-Yimidhirr ergative NPs, they do not occur with pronouns.

The three clauses given by Hey (1903:21) to illustrate this prepositional sub-class, i.e., instrumental morphology, are Nggerrikwidhi translations of the almost identical English translations of Guugu-Yimidhirr clauses that were given to illustrate the same point in Roth’s grammar (1901) (Figure 249). Compare the following example with example 203.

208. Lante yi agoi-be aentchina
Girl food sand-with cover up

(Hey 1903:21)

The other two clauses: “man dog stick-with strikes”, “woman cold-through the effects of sick”, similarly show how closely Hey’s Nggerrikwidhi (1903) grammar mirrors Roth’s (1901) Guugu-Yimidhirr grammar. Hey’s 1903 description of Nggerrikwidhi gives no information about the marking of the agent of a transitive verb.
11.4 Ray & A. C. Haddon

S. Ray (1858-1939) had no formal linguistic training beyond the standard preparation for his profession as an elementary school teacher in east London. He developed an interest in Oceanic languages and through correspondence with missionaries amassed “as comprehensive a language data base as possible on one of the last groups of languages left to be investigated” (Shnukal 1998:183). He published two grammars (1893;1907) of Kalaw Lagaw Ya, a Pama-Nyungan language spoken in the western Torres Strait, and sometimes referred to as ‘Western Torres Straits’ (henceforth WTS). He also published short grammars of three PN languages spoken in the far north of Queensland (1907) (Figure 250).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Language</th>
<th>Informed by</th>
<th>Length</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1893</td>
<td>WTS</td>
<td>Existing wordlists including those collected by Haddon, (1888-9),</td>
<td>46 pages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>MacGillivray’s vocabulary of Gudang (1852), and the Gospel of St Mark</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(Scott 1879)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1907</td>
<td>WTS</td>
<td>Ray’s own data collected in 1898 and possibly also missionary translations</td>
<td>42 pages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1907</td>
<td>Guugu-Yimidhirr and Ngerrikwidhi</td>
<td>Roth 1901; Hey 1903</td>
<td>4 pages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1907</td>
<td>Yadhaykenu</td>
<td>Thursday Island Police Officer named Oikantu, (Jimmy Matauri) and family</td>
<td>4 pages</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 250: Ray’s grammars of PN languages

11.4.1 Ray & A. C. Haddon 1893

Ray’s first grammatical description of WTS was published in 1893 before ever visiting the Torres Straits. This grammar and associated linguistic material from the region was made in conjunction with A. C. Haddon (1855-1940), who was then a biologist at the University of Cambridge and later became an anthropologist. Haddon had sought Ray’s assistance in preparing for publication the vocabularies he had himself collected when visiting the Torres Straits to study the area’s marine biology in 1888-9.

Like most other PN grammatical material produced outside Australia, the primary purpose of the vocabularies, phonological comparisons and grammatical analyses appearing in the large 1893 publication were classificatory. The work attempts to make internal classification of Torres Straits languages and to establish their relatedness to the languages spoken on the Papuan mainland to the north and the Australian mainland to the south. An east-west linguistic divide in the Torres Strait had been observed prior to Ray’s engagement in the field, notably by the
English philologist, R.G.Latham (1812-1888). Informed by data gathered on the 1846-1850 *Voyage of the Rattlesnake*, Latham (1852) described the Eastern Torres Strait language, Miriam, as a Papuan dialect and, through grammatical, phonological and lexical comparison with Gudang and numerous other Australian languages from a wide variety of sources argued that Kala Lagaw Ya (Kowrarega, Kaiwaligau Ya), a dialect of WTS, was related to the languages of mainland Australia. Ray’s (1907:509) investigations agreed with Latham’s findings, as does current thought (Alpher, O’Grady & Bowern 2008). The relatedness of WTS to the Paman languages spoken on Queensland’s Cape York Peninsula has, however, proved controversial (Dixon 1980:234; Dixon, 2002:608, 681; Hunter et al 2011).

Ray stressed the inadequacy of the material upon which his earliest grammar of WTS was based (1893:119 & 279). The work was informed by Haddon’s vocabularies and those of others, most notably MacGillivray’s vocabulary of the non-WTS language Gudang (1852), as well as what Ray describes as: “the only text available for the elucidation of the Saibai grammatical forms” (Ray, 1893:119), a missionary’s translation of the Gospel of St Mark.

Ray’s linguistic work is generally held in high esteem. His linguistic expertise was utilised by other members of the interdisciplinary expedition, notably by W. H. R. Rivers, the expedition’s psychologist, who recorded local genealogies and developed a method that came to underpin social anthropology. Ray is known to have been a tireless and meticulous recorder who worked his informants hard (Shnukal, 1998:190). Shnukal (1998:181) stated that Ray made “sound grammatical description of the languages and the most comprehensive vocabulary lists published thus far … the linguistic researcher can be assured that Ray’s observations are reliable”

11.4.2 S. Ray 1907

Ray and Haddon’s 1893 linguistic publication appeared as Haddon was garnering support for a return expedition to the area. Haddon envisaged an expedition that was to simultaneously establish his career as an anthropologist and secure the status of anthropology as an academic discipline within universities in the twentieth century.

After the success of the 1893 publication, Ray, the self-taught linguist, was chosen as the multi-disciplinary expedition’s linguist. His linguistic findings were published as Vol.I, Pt. III of the expedition Reports (1907), of which he was largely the sole author. In the quest to establish the linguistic relatedness, and the origins of the people speaking the region’s diverse languages, the 1907 publication cast a wide grammatical net. Divided into four sections, this work not only examined Torres Strait and Papuan languages – sections I and III respectively –
but also devoted section II to the study of “languages of the Cape York Peninsula, North Queensland” and section IV to “The linguistic position of the languages of Torres Straits, Australia and British New Guinea”

In addition to numerous vocabularies and the presentation of missionaries’ translations of liturgical texts with inserted interlinear gloss, Section I provides grammatical sketches of WTS and Meriam. Ray (1907:5) describes the 1907 forty-two-page description as “superseding all that was formerly written on the structure … of the language”. The 1907 work is more extensive than the earlier 1893 WTS grammar and contains additional description of derivational processes, revised case terminology, lexical examples of dialect variation, and example clauses taken from his own data rather than from missionaries’ translations.

Section II presents the languages of Cape York Peninsula. It is the shortest section of the work. While a relationship between WTS and languages spoken at the northern extremity of the peninsula had been established in 1893, this work sets out to: “determine how far the particular languages in contact with those of the Straits represent those of Queensland more generally” (1907:264)

Ray notes the meagre quantity and insufficient quality of lexical resources available, stating that grammatical material only became available in the years after the expedition but prior to the publication of its reports. He refers to Roth’s grammar of Guugu-Yimidhirr (1901) spoken relatively far south on the Peninsula, without acknowledging the contribution of the Lutheran missionaries, and to N.Hey’s description of Nggerrikwidhi (1903), spoken slightly south-west of the Peninsula’s northern extreme. Informed by these two sources, Ray presented a four page ‘abbreviated’ grammar of both languages which Ray described as having “practically an identity of structure” (1907:267). The missionaries’ orthography was altered in order to conform to other material presented in the Reports.

Following this grammar is a very short grammatical sketch of another Cape York language, Yadhaykenu, which was “obtained from a Yayaikana native, named Oikantu, generally known at Thursday Island as Jimmy Matauri, a member of the native police force. He spoke English fairly well, and had to some extent forgotten his native language” (Ray, 1907:271). Ray notes a resemblance between this material and MacGillivray’s vocabulary of Gudang (1852). Yadhaykenu is currently described as a dialect of Uradhi, a language closely related to its northern Paman neighbour, Gudang, both once spoken at the very tip of the Peninsula.

Shnukal (1998:181) writes that: “although Ray is known to few contemporary scholars outside the field of linguistics, within this field his reputation is secure.” Ray’s work within the
field of linguistics is, however, also generally under-recognised. His entry titled “Australian languages” in the Australian Encyclopaedia (1925:2-15) is the earliest of the overviews of Australian grammatical structure written on the cusp of the second descriptive era, and is a comprehensive summary of what had been discovered in the pre-contemporary era. McGregor’s “overview [of] existing histories of research on Australian Aboriginal languages” (2008a:2) makes no mention of Ray’s entry, published over a decade before Capell (1937) and Elkin (1937).
Appendix 2

Grammars of languages spoken in southeast Australia, written in the second half of the nineteenth century
# Table of Contents

1.1 Taplin’s grammars of Ngarrindjeri .......................................................... 519
   1.1.1 Grammatical analyses ........................................................................... 520
   1.1.2 Taplin the philologist ........................................................................... 521
   1.1.3 Influence from Meyer (1843) and the Dresdeners ................................. 522
   1.1.4 Ergativity .............................................................................................. 526
   1.1.5 Case paradigms ..................................................................................... 527
1.2 R. Brough Smyth 1878 ............................................................................. 531
1.3 Historiography of the term ‘ergative’ ....................................................... 533
   1.3.1 The case function termed ‘ergative’ ..................................................... 535
   1.3.2 Concluding remark .............................................................................. 537
Table of Figures

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Figure</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Taplin’s paradigm of bound pronouns, 1872:86</td>
<td>523</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Taplin’s discussion of derivational morphology on the verb, 1878:19</td>
<td>524</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Taplin’s paradigm of kinship terms, 1878:10</td>
<td>524</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Taplin’s later listing of case suffixes, 1878:8</td>
<td>525</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Meyer's Ngarrindjeri case paradigm, 1843:24</td>
<td>527</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Taplin's earliest Ngarrindjeri case paradigm, 1867:no pag.</td>
<td>528</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Taplin's later case paradigm, 1975[1870]:123;1872:85;1879:123</td>
<td>528</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Hagenauer’s case paradigm, 1878:43 (Wergaya)</td>
<td>529</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Bulmer’s case paradigm, 1878:31 (Ganai)</td>
<td>529</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Table showing names assigned to case forms of singular nouns in grammars of Ngarrindjeri</td>
<td>530</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Fraser’s Ngarrindjeri case paradigm, 1892:30 (from Taplin)</td>
<td>530</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Fraser’s key to the functions of his case labels, 1892:15</td>
<td>531</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Introduction

This appendix first discusses the grammars of Ngarrindjeri, spoken near the mouth of the Murray River in South Australia that were written by the Congregationalist missionary G. Taplin (1867; 1872 [1870]; 1874; 1878). Sections referred to as (M.§…) are in the main body of the thesis. The discussion considers the influence of the Adelaide School (M. Chapters 5, 6, 7) on Taplin’s analysis, especially the grammar of the closely related language Ramindjeri described by Meyer (1843) (M. Chapter 6). Section 11.6 introduces the grammatical material presented in Brough Smyth (1878) produced by missionaries working in Victoria, who reproduced Taplin’s 1872 case paradigm. Section 11.7 investigates the historiography of the term ‘ergative’.

11.5 Taplin’s grammars of Ngarrindjeri

Close to the time of the Lutheran missionaries’ earliest encounters with Diyari (M. Chapter 8), and when W. Ridley was publishing about central New South Wales languages (Appendix 1 § 1.1), G. Taplin (1831-1879) was compiling his first MS grammar of Ngarrindjeri (1867).

With a private school education and intent on working as a missionary, the Congregationalist Taplin arrived in Adelaide in 1849. He commenced work as a gardener for Rev. T. Q. Stow (1801-1862), founder of the Congregationalist Church in South Australia, from whom he received some training for ministry. In 1854 Taplin opened a school at Port Elliot in the Congregationalist chapel. Here, he worked among the Ngarrindjeri people, who were divided into numerous regional groups (Yallop 1975: 2-3) speaking related linguistic varieties, one of which had been previously described by Meyer (1843) (M. Chapter 6). Meyer had ceased missionary work and closed a nearby school at Encounter Bay eleven years before Taplin opened the school at Port Elliot.

In 1859, Taplin was appointed as ‘missionary agent’ by the Aborigines’ Friends’ Association, an organization founded the previous year. He established a mission on the eastern shores of Lake Alexandrina at Point McLeay (sometimes ‘Point Macleay’, Raukkan), a site removed from other centres of European industry and which Taplin himself had recommended. The Congregationalist mission was a success in comparison with previous South Australian missionary endeavours. It endured until 1916 when control was assumed by the state. Fifteen
years after the mission’s establishment, Taplin wrote: “The Narrinyeri possess (for Aborigines) a remarkable vitality, and I do not fear their speedy extinction as a nation” (1874b:7).135

Ngarrindjeri is the only language from the Southern districts of South Australia to have survived colonial pressure long enough for missionaries to make substantial translations (see Simpson et al 2008:122-123). Within five years Taplin had published extracts from the scriptures (1864), which were the first scriptures published in an Australian Aboriginal language. In 1874 his Native Book of Worship was printed at the Southern Argus Printing Office in Strathalbyn.136

11.5.1 Grammatical analyses

Taplin made successive grammatical descriptions of Ngarrindjeri, producing four distinct representations of the language (1867;1872[1870];1874;1878). Like Ridley he published similar, but non-identical, analyses in different locations. His earliest grammar was produced as a MS nearly a decade after the mission opened (1867). The next analysis was first published in 1872, appended to Taplin’s Comparative Table of Australian Languages (below). This published grammatical material is almost identical to an earlier MS ‘philological notes’ (1870), which was attached to some comparative Australian vocabulary. Both were reprinted by Grimwade (1975:132-144). The 1872 publication omits discussion of some word-classes given in the 1867 MS, including adverbs, adjectives or prepositions. An even shorter version of this analysis, which omits an extended description of the verb, was republished 1874 (1874c) and 1879 (1879b). Taplin’s final representation of the language was first published in 1878 and posthumously in 1880, with identical page numbers. At seventeen pages this is Taplin’s most comprehensive work.

Taplin’s last analysis has previously received detailed examination by Yallop (1975), who “attempt[s] to widen our present understanding of the language” (ibid.,8) by supplementing historical information collated from the speech of James Kartinyeri, described as “probably the last speaker of Narinjari” (ibid.,1). Yallop’s understanding of the language would have further been widened had he also utilised Meyer’s description.

135 Taplin’s remark was presumably made in response to a comment made by Bleek (1874:6), published in the same report:

I thought it my duty to put aside for the time the, to me, very important work of a Comparative Grammar of the South African Languages, and to try to rescue, while it was still possible, something of the language and literature of this dying-out nation.

136 Coincidentally, the Southern Argus building, ‘Argus House’ is currently owned by the present author and is where this dissertation was largely researched and written.
Taplin sought to improve his understanding of the structure of the language until his death. In his last work he wrote: “I know that I am always discovering something in the language which I did not know before” (1880:6[1878]). Taplin’s successive grammars show that he was constantly reconsidering the best way to present grammatical structures. He produced three different case paradigms (1867;1872;1878). The alterations Taplin made in his successive grammars stand in contrast to other analyses made at the time. The analysis of Diyari made by missionaries at Bethesda mission, and Ridley’s grammars of Gamilaraay, show little alteration over decades of reproduction.

11.5.2 Taplin the philologist

In addition to publishing broadly on Ngarrindjeri language and culture while engaged in the demands of running a mission, Taplin was also responsible for collating and publishing comparative information about Aboriginal people in the South Australian colony. Aware that the linguistic material he was able to record as a missionary was of value to those tracing the history of human development, he compiled a comparative vocabulary of twenty Australian languages prior to the publication of any of his own work (1870, reprinted in Grimwade 1975). In 1870 Taplin sought to have his material published and wrote to the Governor of South Australia, J.Fergusson (1832-1907) (quoted in Grimwade 1975:118):

It has for some time been my conviction that some of the most difficult questions in Ethnology can only be answered when a very extended study of Aboriginal languages has been accomplished by scientific comparative Philologists in Europe.

Fergusson considered Taplin’s comparative vocabulary with attached ‘philological notes’ — i.e., with an attached MS grammar of Ngarrindjeri — as “worth transmission to England” (ibid.,119), resulting in Taplin’s earliest philological publication (1872). It is clear that Taplin was researching comparative philology in the 1860s, referring to the belief of the German philologist Max Müller that “the savage languages are of as much importance as those of more civilised races” (1870 quoted in Grimwade 1975:117). With the exception of Ridley (Appendix1§1.1), who may be seen as Taplin’s counterpart in New South Wales, Taplin’s philological research was commenced at a time when little other enquiry into Australian Aboriginal languages was being undertaken elsewhere in the country.

Taplin (1872:84) described his comparative table of Australian languages as having been “constructed so as to correspond as nearly as possible with the comparative table of Polynesian and Melanesian dialects found in Dr George Turner’s work”. In 1861 the London Missionary Society missionary Turner (1818-1891) had published a comparative vocabulary of Polynesian languages at the back of an authoritative work: Nineteen years in Polynesia (1861:opposite
The words Taplin sought from respondents in his 1874 circular (below) were also taken from Turner (1861), with some modification.

When in 1874 the then South Australian Governor, Sir A. Musgrave (1828-1888) received a request from W. Bleek for information concerning the manners, customs and folklore of the natives of the colony, Musgrave (quoted in Bleek 1874:6) recommended Taplin as “one of the best informed men in the Colony on all subjects respecting the natives”. Musgrave forwarded Bleek’s initial letter to Taplin, whose letter of response was published with notes added by Bleek in the 1874 “Report of the sub-protector of Aborigines [South Australia]”. It followed an article by Bleek titled: “On enquiries into Australian Aboriginal Folklore”.

Prompted by the interest from this internationally acclaimed scholar, Taplin drew up a questionnaire, which was circulated throughout the colony to those in contact with Aboriginal people: missionaries, police troopers and pastoralists. The 1875 report of the Sub protector stated:

In the previous report from this Department, reference was made to a communication from Dr. Bleek of Cape Town … suggesting the desirability of steps being taken to collect aboriginal folk-lore and information of an ethnographic nature … With this view … a series of questions on these subjects were proposed by Mr Taplin, adopted, and embodied in a circular, about 100 copies of which were distributed early last year … affording a prospect that eventually valuable contributions will be … arranged in a collected form, and published.

Taplin’s questionnaire was circulated close to the time that Ridley published his largest and final investigation of Gamilaraay (1875) and close to the time that Brough Smyth was compiling data for inclusion in volume II of *The Aborigines of Victoria: Language* (1878). Taplin’s survey collated the translations of English words taken from Turner (1861) and answers to a list of questions seeking specific information about Aboriginal cultural practices and language (See M.§2.3.1) The results were published as *The folklore, manners, customs, and languages of the South Australian Aborigines* (1879a) that appeared after Woods (1879) in which Taplin also published (Taplin 1879b) (see Taplin 1879a:109).

11.5.3 Influence from Meyer (1843) and the Dresdeners

Comparison of Meyer’s 1843 grammar of Ramindjeri with Taplin’s grammars of Ngarrindjeri show unequivocal influence of the former on the latter, not least in the paradigms of bound pronouns (M.Figure 142; M.Figure 143). However, note that in Taplin’s initial paradigm (M.Figure 143) and in his later 1872 grammar (Figure 251), he showed 3dl pronoun as accusatively aligned. In his last grammar (1878:11) he amended the record and showed the 3dl pronouns were differentiated in each syntactic case, which agreed with Meyer’s initial record (1843). While this discrepancy may reflect an original difference in the alignment of the
syntactic cases in different linguistic varieties, it may also result from an error on Taplin’s part. The earliest grammar of Diyari (Koch 1868) failed to tabulate the idiosyncratic sensitivity to number in the syntactic alignment of nouns in that language (M.§8.6.6).

![Figure 251: Taplin’s paradigm of bound pronouns, 1872:86](image)

In his final comment on Ngarrindjeri structure (1878:6), Taplin appears eager to marginalise the importance of Meyer’s influence on his work, describing the earlier missionary’s work as “a brave attempt to master the grammar of this language in 1843, and with some success, but yet his attempt presents a great number of ludicrous mistakes to one better acquainted with it.” Dixon (2002b:7) has assessed the relative merit of the two grammars very differently:

Meyer’s grammar is full of wonderful insights; for example, he clearly recognises an antipassive …Meyer’s work was followed by Taplin (1879), an Anglican missionary of considerably lesser intelligence. Taplin criticised Meyer’s work but that did not hinder him from plagiarizing large portions of it (those bits he could understand; he ignored other bits).

Unlike Meyer, Taplin did not analyse or exemplify the anti-passive construction, presumably the section Dixon perceived that Taplin ignored. Note, however, that Taplin (1878:19) did discuss derivational morphology on the verb. He recognised the difference between a verbal root and one inflected with the detransitivising morpheme –el (Figure 252), but did not demonstrate the alteration to the arguments of the verb:
A major improvement to Taplin’s final analysis (1878) is the inclusion of the description of a set of kinship terms that are “used in conjunction with the propositus term to refer to people in the third person” (Gaby & Singer 2014:304-305) (Figure 253). In this, Taplin was probably guided by Morgan, via Fison, who made contact with Taplin in 1872 (Gardner & McConvell 2015:125). Question eleven of the survey of Australian Aboriginal people that Taplin circulated in 1874 (M.§2.3.1) asked: “What is the system of kinship in the tribe? Give names for following relationships” (1879a:6). An attached note further stipulated: “It is also desirable to discover whether there is not a slight variation of the word according as it is borne or attributed to the speaker; for instance, a variation for my father, your father, his father, &c”. Taplin had listed some of these terms in his 1867 MS grammar (no pag.).

But even this addition to Taplin’s later publication (Figure 253) had previously been more extensively described by Meyer (1843:11;34-36) (M.§6.2.3).

Taplin’s grammars did not substantially add to Meyer’s 1843 analysis of the closely related variety Ramindjeri, other than suggesting some dialectal difference. None of Taplin’s grammars
are as long or as intricately detailed as Meyer’s work, nor do they include the grammatically and culturally rich exemplification given by Meyer.

In tracing Taplin’s developing ideas about the best way to convey the Ngarrindjeri case system, it is noteworthy that his final grammar (1878) has more in common with the Dresdeners’ works than do his earlier grammars. Taplin’s descriptions of case, given in each of his different Ngarrindjeri grammars (1867, 1872, 1878) were differently influenced by aspects of the earlier grammars of South Australian languages.

One significant alteration to the presentation of case that Taplin made to his last grammar (1878:8) is the inclusion of an informal listing of the functions of case suffixes, without assigning them case-labels (Figure 254). In this he followed Meyer (1843) and Schürmann (1844a).

![Figure 254: Taplin’s later listing of case suffixes, 1878:8](image)

While Taplin’s earlier conventional paradigmatic presentation may have appeared more concise and pleasingly familiar to the general reader, the choice to present traditional paradigms lost the descriptive flexibility of Meyer’s prose-like presentation, which was able to illustrate different functions of the same suffix through exemplification on different nominal types. Given that the marking of Ngarrindjeri case functions appears to have been asymmetrical on different nominal types, the rigidity of Taplin’s earlier framework struggled to encapsulate the system. Taplin’s later presentation (Figure 254) while gaining some additional power to assign variant function to a single suffix still lacked the multiplicity of example clauses that is characteristic of the richness of Meyer’s grammar. Of this new presentation of case (Figure 254), Taplin (1878:8) wrote:

It is really difficult to say how many cases the nouns have, all prepositions are joined as affixes to the nouns to which they relate, but only some of them change their form, according as the noun is in the singular, dual or plural number. The following list of prepositional affixes and prepositions, shewing where they change in the dual and plural, and where they do not.
In the above passage, Taplin suggests the classically conservative definition of case in which a true case suffix must also be a portmanteau morpheme conveying other categories. The marking of number appears to be modified by the marking of case in Ngarrindjeri (Horgen 2004:94;101). Whether Australian case systems constituted classes of declension had previously been considered by Schürmann (1844a:4), and by Moorhouse (1846:5).

The passage also introduces another schema of the Adelaide School, but one that had been instigated by Teichelmann & Schürmann and had not been employed by Meyer. Taplin’s ‘prepositional affixes’ and ‘prepositions’ are Teichelmann & Schürmann’s ‘postfixa’ and ‘postpositions’ (M.§5.3.2).

The explanation of ergativity that Taplin gave in his last grammar also shows an influence from the Dresdeners that is not apparent in his earlier works.

### 11.5.4 Ergativity

Taplin used the term ‘causative’ to name the ergative marking on all types of nouns in some works (1867;1878) but only on pronouns in others (1870;1872;1879). Although Threlkeld had discussed the ‘agent causative of an action’ (1834), the term ‘causative’ was seldom used in early PN description. The use of the term ‘causative’ to name the ergative case appears not to have occurred outside Australia. Mathews later used the term in grammars of Wiradjuri (1904) and Arrernte (1907) as did J.M.Black (1920) to name the ergative case on pronouns in vocabularies of South Australian languages. Both were probably influenced by Taplin, who innovated a range of case terminology.

In his two earliest grammatical analyses, Taplin provided no clear description of ergative function. He did not convey that he understood that subject nominals might be differently marked according to argument predication of intransitive and transitive verbs. He clarified the function of overtly marked nominals in ergative case only by translating them as “by X” in paradigms and in interlinear and free translations. That Taplin may not have clearly understood ergativity, at least initially, is suggested by the fact that he assigned different case labels to nouns and pronouns that are morphologically marked for ergative case. The only other corpus grammarian to assign different labels to ergative nouns and ergative pronouns was Moorhouse (1846). Taplin labelled ergative nouns ‘ablative’, but ergative pronouns ‘causative’. One of the linguistic questions which Taplin included in a survey which he circulated in 1874, however, indicates that by this stage he clearly understood how ergative function was likely to be morphologically marked:
“What is the form of the declension of nouns? In the case of a word for “man,” how do they say … “by a man” (as an agent), “by a man” (situated near a man) [emphasis added]” (1879a:6).

Taplin explained the difference between the nominative and ergative case for the first time in his last analysis of the language (1878:14-19) under the heading ‘the verb’. Here he employed a descriptive strategy innovated by Teichelmann & Schürmann (1840), refined by Schürmann (1844a) (M.§7.1.6) followed by Moorhouse (1846), but not employed by Meyer. Taplin presented phrases showing the case forms of pronouns in different moods and tenses for intransitive verbs and then transitive verbs. He (p.18) wrote: “The transitive verbs are distinguished from the intransitive by the former using the causative case of the pronoun; whereas the latter uses the simple nominative. This will be seen in the following conjugation of the verb”.

11.5.5 Case paradigms

From Taplin’s earliest analysis, his naming of the ergative case and his placement of ergative forms in the case paradigms was influenced by the ‘Adelaide School’. Like Teichelmann & Schürmann (1840) and Meyer (1843) Taplin sometimes labelled the ergative case ‘ablative’ and placed ergative case forms in the traditional paradigmatic position of the Latin ablative. Like Meyer (1843), Taplin presented an extended seven case paradigm, excluding the vocative (Figure 256, Figure 257).

Taplin thought hard about the labelling of cases, reconsidering his options over time and inventing his own terminology to label cases not included in the classical case paradigm (Figure 260). In relation to his re-presentation of Moorhouse’s Ngayawang case paradigm for instance, Taplin (1879a:32) wrote: “It has often lately suggested itself to me that, in the cases where we put ablative to these forms of words, the word locative would more exactly express the shade of meaning of the inflection”. Taplin never engaged the case label ‘locative’ in his grammars of Ngarrindjeri but the statement indicates Taplin’s continuing search for better ways to present PN case systems.

```
SINGULAR.
Nom. Ngape, I
Acc. Ngah, me
Abl. Ngate, by me
Gen. Ngan-nauwe, of me
Dat. Ngaiangk, to me
From Ngan-nyir, from thee
For Naan-anme, for me.
```

*Figure 255: Meyer’s Ngarrindjeri case paradigm, 1843:24*
In Taplin’s earliest case paradigm (1867) (Figure 256), he initially followed Meyer and named the ergative case ‘ablative’ but then, reconsidered the choice and crossed out ‘ablative’ and inserted instead ‘causative’. The term ‘ablative’ was thus reserved for a slot further down the paradigm, to label a peripheral case form translated as ‘with X’ and marked with the suffix -anyir. In this earliest case paradigm Taplin coined the term ‘exative’ to name the case marked by a suffix –anmant. The form had been included in Meyer’s informal paradigm of nouns (M.Figure 106) where it was translated as ‘from, out of X’.

In 1870, Taplin rearranged his paradigm (Figure 257) and returned to his original inclination to follow Meyer in naming the ergative case ‘ablative’. In need of a new label to name the case form suffixed with -anyir Taplin invented the term ‘ergative’. The case is still translated as ‘with X’ but is now shown as additionally marked by the suffix -ald(e).

Identical paradigms were subsequently reproduced by Hagenauer in a grammar of Wergaya, spoken in Western Victoria (1878:43) (Figure 258) and by Bulmer in a grammar of Ganai spoken in Eastern Victoria (1878:31) (Figure 259), both of which were published in Brough Smyth. In both grammars the nominals labelled ‘ergative’ stand in peripheral case function and are translated as ‘with X’. The same paradigm of Ngarrindjeri was also later republished in German by Eylmann (1908:92).
As Blake (2015) observes the material Bulmer supplied in Brough Smyth (1878) does “not inspire any confidence in his ability to have mastered the language”. This paradigm of nouns appears to show case marked by prepositions, a situation that does not accord with PN languages, or with Mathews’ (1902) record of languages from the region.
Figure 260 shows the different names assigned to case forms of singular nouns in grammars of Ngarrindjeri.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Meyer 1843 1SG PRONOUNS</th>
<th>Taplin 1867</th>
<th>Taplin 1870, 1872, 1879</th>
<th>Taplin 1878, 1880</th>
<th>Taplin in Fraser 1892</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ngāpe</td>
<td>Nom NOM</td>
<td>Korni Nom</td>
<td>Korni Nom</td>
<td>Korni Nom</td>
<td>Korn-i Nom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ABS</td>
<td>ABS</td>
<td>ABS</td>
<td>Porl-y Nom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Nom 1 ABS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ngān</td>
<td>Acc ACC</td>
<td>Kornald Gen</td>
<td>Kornald Gen</td>
<td>Portald Gen</td>
<td>Korn-ald Gen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Porl-ald Gen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ngāte</td>
<td>Abl ERG</td>
<td>Kornank Dat</td>
<td>Kornank Dat</td>
<td>Porlangk Dat</td>
<td>Korn-agk Dat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Porl-agk Dat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dat 2 DAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ngān-auwe</td>
<td>Gen Acc</td>
<td>Korni Acc</td>
<td>Korni Acc</td>
<td>Porlil Caus</td>
<td>Korn Porl-y Acc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ERG</td>
<td>Porl-l Acc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ngaŋangk</td>
<td>Dat ††</td>
<td>Kornil Caus</td>
<td>Kornil Abl</td>
<td>Porlenend Abl</td>
<td>Korn-il Por-il Abl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ERG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Abl 1 ERG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ngaŋ-anyir</td>
<td>From **</td>
<td>Kornamnnt Exative</td>
<td>Kornamnnt Exative</td>
<td></td>
<td>Korn-annmnt Porl-inend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ABL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Porl-inend ABn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nan-āmbe</td>
<td>For †</td>
<td>Kornanyir Abl</td>
<td>Kornanyir Ergative Abl</td>
<td></td>
<td>Korn-anyir Abl 6 ABL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* crossed out ‘ablative’
** -anyir is reclaimed in this thesis as ‘associative’. The form is shown by Horgen as both ablative and locative.
† This form is shown as allative by Horgen, Meyer (1843:24) suggests its function on pronouns is dative.
†† This form is shown by Horgen as dative on pronouns and locative elsewhere. Meyer (1843:24) suggests its function on pronouns is allative.

Figure 260: Table showing names assigned to case forms of singular nouns in grammars of Ngarrindjeri

Forms are given in their original order. Cases in upper case designate the label assigned in the reclamation by Horgen (2004:95-96).

Taplin’s 1872 paradigm was reproduced in Fraser (1892), which also takes content from Taplin 1878, giving a paradigm not only for korni ‘man’, but also for porle ‘child’, which only appeared in the 1878 grammar. Fraser (1892:30-32) abandoned the case terminologies developed by Taplin and renamed the cases using the system he developed based on Threlkeld’s method of supplying numbered ‘ablative’ and ‘dative’ cases (M.§3.2.2) (Figure 261)

Figure 261: Fraser’s Ngarrindjeri case paradigm, 1892:30 (from Taplin)

Note that Fraser showed the velar nasal as ‘q’

The asterisk that Fraser placed next to the ‘nominative 1’ form refers to a passage (Figure 262) in which Fraser (p.15) gave an explanation of the case functions to which he assigned case
labels. Note, however, that the ergative case form korn-il is still labelled ‘ablative’ (ablative 1) by Fraser, who appears not to have recognised that this was the ‘nominative active’, ergative case form.

R. Brough Smyth (1830-1889), a civil servant and mining engineer, was appointed honorary secretary to the Board for the Protection of Aborigines in Victoria in 1860. He collated materials about Victorian languages that he published in Volume II of a two-volume work: Language of The Aborigines of Victoria (1878). The work, which is described by O’Grady et al (1966:5) as “quantitively impressive but qualitatively appalling”, is among a handful of such materials, including Taplin 1879 and Curr 1886, produced within the first ‘survey-era of linguistics’ in Australia (O’Grady et al 1966:5; McGregor 2008a). While Curr’s The Australian Race spread the broadest net and is the most renowned of these survey works, Curr did not specifically elicit grammatical material from his informants as Taplin had done, and as Brough Smyth appears also to have done.

Of the twenty-three informants whose work is included in Brough Smyth, only a small portion described morphosyntactic structure. Grammatical description was made of Woiwurrung (pp.118-120), spoken in the Yarra River drainage close to Melbourne, by W.Thomas, of Wergaya, spoken at the Ebenezer Mission (Lake Hindmarsh) in Western Victoria, by the Moravian missionaries A. Hartmann, F.W. Spieseke and F. A. Hagenauer (1878:50-52, 56-58 & 39-43 respectively), and of Ganai, spoken at Lake Tyers mission in Gippsland, by J. Bulmer (ibid..24-31). None of these descriptions constitute a complete grammatical sketch. The grammatical materials contributed by Hagenauer (1829–1909) and Bulmer (1833-1913) are nevertheless considered here because they include case paradigms that
are significant to the history of the development of the term ‘ergative’ (§11.7). Bulmer’s, Spieseke’s and Hagenauer’s analyses have been assessed by Blake (2016).

Hagenauer commenced missionary training at the Moravian institution Herrnhut in 1851. He arrived in Melbourne in 1858 with F.W. Spieseke (1820-1877) who was making his second journey to Australia, having returned to Germany in 1851, after the closure of the Moravian Lake Boga mission in western Victoria in 1851. At Lake Boga, Spieseke is known to have worked closely with an Aboriginal named Bonaparte, who was later killed by police (Jensz 2010:85). Hagenauer and Spieseke established Ebenezer mission also in western Victoria. Here Spieseke collaborated with the Wotjobaluk man, Nathaniel Pepper, who was the first Moravian convert at Ebenezer and who preached in Wergaya and in English at the mission and in the bush (ibid.,136-137)

In 1862, Hagenauer moved to Gippsland at the request of the Presbyterian Church in order to establish a new mission at Lake Wellington, which he named Ramahyuck. Although Hagenauer’s material was written from east Gippsland, the language he contributes to Brough Smyth is Wergaya spoken by Aboriginal men relocated from Ebenezer to Lake Wellington Mission (1862-1908). It is described as spoken by the “Pine Plains tribe” (Hagenauer 1876 vol. II.:39). Although the Aboriginal informants are not named, it is possible that one was Nathaniel Pepper, baptised by Spieseke and who joined the Hagenauers at Ramakyuck (Jensz 2010)

Bulmer arrived in Melbourne in 1853 and after working in the Victorian goldfields, where he witnessed the mistreatment of Aboriginal people (Harris 1994:166), he established Yelta (1854-1866), a Church of England mission near the junction of the Murray and Darling rivers. In 1862 Bulmer was sent by the Church Mission Society to establish a mission on the south-eastern Victorian coast, Lake Tyers (Shaw 194?:5-7).

In addition to his grammatical material in Brough Smyth, Bulmer provided a word list and some phrases in ‘Murray’, Marrawarra, a dialect of Baagandji spoken at Yelta (pp.33-37). Some of this material is presented alongside ‘Gippsland’ Ganai spoken at Lake Tyers for comparison.

The presentation of Bulmer’s Ganai material suggests that it was structured in response to a questionnaire (1878:24-26). Content is given in answer to the questions: “In what way is the article expressed…?”, “Is there such a thing as gender …?”’, “How is the plural formed?” etc. It is likely that Brough Smyth circulated a questionnaire, as both Taplin and Curr did in the same era. The original has, however, not been located.138

---

That Bulmer’s and Hagenauser’s paradigms (1876) are identical, and reproduce Taplin’s paradigm showing the earliest use of the term ‘ergative’, published in 1872 and 1874, suggests that this lost questionnaire included a template paradigm taken from Taplin.

11.7 Historiography of the term ‘ergative’

The historiography of the term ‘ergative’ has altered considerably over the last decades. Seely (1977:191) follows Regamey (1954:363) in assuming that the first usage of the term ‘ergative’ was made by the German linguist and ethnographer Adolf Dir (1867–1951), who in 1912 described the marking of the agent of transitive clauses in Caucasian languages. Dixon (1994:3) similarly suggests that Dirr’s 1912 usage was the earliest. Manaster-Ramer (1994:211) shows that usages of the term ‘ergative’ antedate Dirr’s usage and marks the first usage of the term at Ray & Haddon’s (1893, 1897) grammatical descriptions of languages of the Torres Straits — the Papuan languages Miriam (Meryam Mir) and Daudai (Kawai) and the PN language Saibai (WTS). Note that these works were published at the time when Ray had been engaged by Haddon, who was then a Cambridge biologist, and before Ray had visited the area.

As Manaster-Ramer (1994:212) points out, Ray & Haddon did not apply the term to the syntactic case to which it currently refers but rather they use the term to describe a peripheral case function. The functions of the Western Torres Straits (henceforth WTS) case, initially called ‘ergative’ by Ray (1897:130-8), but which he later named ‘locative of motion’ (1907:19), are translated using the prepositions ‘with, by alongside’ and using the verb ‘to have’. The case is said to “express the doing of a thing by means of, or at the same time with, another … but the exact meaning seems difficult to define” (ibid.,138). The described case suffix -ay, marks the comitative case (Alpher, O’Grady & Bowern 2008:19), which is common to the large case inventories of PN languages (Dixon 1976:9). Manaster-Ramer (1994:213) proposes that the source etymology informing Ray’s coinage of the case label ‘ergative’ to name this case was taken from “the Latin preposition ergā, rendered in English as ‘right against, next to’.”

The next known usage of ‘ergative’ is made shortly after Ray’s usage, by Schmidt (1902:88) in a description of the Papuan languages Kai and Miriam (Meryam Mir) and of the PN language Saibai (WTS). Schmidt’s source for Meryam Mir and for WTS is Ray (Manaster-Ramer 1994:211). In this work Schmidt engages the term ‘Casus ergativus’ to name the syntactic case marking the agent of a transitive verb designated by the term today. He does so, however, faltering, choosing also the terms ‘ablative’ and ‘transitive nominative’ to name the case in other languages in the same essay. Schmidt’s first tentative usage of the term ‘ergative’
to name the ergative case in languages including the PN language Saibai (WTS) (1902) marks the genesis of the term ‘ergative’ with modern reference.

Manaster-Ramer has suggested that Ray’s usage of the term ‘ergative’ to describe a syntactic case occurred through a misinterpretation by Schmidt of Ray’s 1893 usage. Remembering the term, but forgetting its original reference, Schmidt is said to have reused the term ‘ergative’ utilising an etymology that, instead of being based in Latin, is based on the Greek root *erg-* ‘work’ (verbal), thus applying the term to the subject of a transitive verb (Manaster-Ramer 1994:213). Without an alternative explanation as to how the term ‘ergative’ evolved to have such different reference within such a short space of time when describing ergative languages spoken in the same region, Manaster-Ramer’s supposition is viable. It is, however, also possible that Schmidt re-etymologised the term ‘ergative’ deliberately rather than accidentally.

The next usage of the term ‘ergative’ to name the ergative case in an Australian language occurs in Planert’s Arrernte grammar (1907) followed by C. Strehlow’s grammar of the same language (1908) and Planert’s grammar of Diyari (1908) (M.§8.5.3). Planert’s (1907) work also marks the earliest usage in the world of ‘ergative’ in opposition to the ‘absolutive’ with modern reference.

As an associate of F. von Luschan (1854-1924) then the Director of the Africa and Oceania Department at the Königliches Museum für Völkerkunde, Planert’s grammars were written close to the intellectual origin of Schmidt’s coinage of the term with contemporary reference (Schmidt 1902) and shortly after it. During the following half century the use of ‘ergative’ to describe the ergative case in PN languages is maintained in European publications by Schmidt (1919b), Gatti (1930) and by Holmer (1963).

Note that Gatti, who names the case ‘nominativo agente’ in case paradigms but describes the forms as ‘ergativo’, does not refer to the work of Planert (1908). Gatti’s well-referenced discussion of Australian languages and particular investigation of Diyari probably inherits the use of the term from Alfredo Trombetti (1866–1929), professor of linguistics at the University of Bologna, who had first used the term in 1903 (Manaster-Ramer 1994:211).

It is Nils Holmer, who reintroduced ‘ergative’ into the Australian literature, at first tentatively (1963; 1966), but later (1971:7) firmly: “Other names for this typically Aboriginal case are agentive […] agent case, active and operative”. It is Dixon (1972:59-60) who established the term as the accepted descriptor of the case in which stands the agent of a transitive verb, at least for classes of nominals for which this function is formally differentiated
from the marking of the subject of an intransitive verb. He recalled having first heard the term ‘ergative’ from Michael Halliday after returning from field work in Queensland to University College, London in 1964 (Dixon 1983:127).

In an article titled: “Ergative Historiography Revisited” (2014), Lindner’s thorough investigation of the historical records of PN grammatical description showed that usages of ‘ergative’ as a descriptor of case antedate Ray’s 1893 description. The term ‘ergative’ as a descriptor of peripheral case originates in Taplin’s first published grammar of the South Australian language Ngarrindjeri (1872) and in MS (1870) (Lindner 2014:188-189). It is probable that Ray, who is known to have collated large collections of linguistic data prior to collaborating with Haddon (Shnukal 1998:183), borrowed the terminology from Taplin (1872;1874;1879) or from Brough Smyth (1878).

Contrary to Lindner (2014:189), however, the forms that Taplin labelled ‘ergative’ (Figure 257) were not given as the case called ‘For’ by Meyer ( Figure 255). Nor can the preposition ‘for’ be said to “correspond closely with Meyer’s English glosses” (ibid.,190). The only suggestion that the suffix labelled ‘ergative’ may have had some dative/benefactive function is the syncretism of nouns in dual number for cases labelled ‘ergative’ and ‘dative’ (Taplin 1872:85-86). But no clauses exemplifying benefactive function of the suffixes labelled ‘ergative’ exist in the sources.

11.7.1 The case function termed ‘ergative’

A number of factors confound an analysis of the function of the case forms termed ‘ergative’ in the early Ngarrindjeri sources, not least of which may be now non-traceable differences in the dialects recorded in the source material. Taplin assigned the label ‘ergative’ to singular nouns marked with the suffixes -anyir and -alde and placed the case, which is translated as ‘with X’, last in the paradigm (Figure 257). Meyer had named forms marked with the suffix -anyir ‘From’, and translated them as ‘from X’ and placed them second to last in the paradigm ( Figure 255). The suffix -alde, which was given by Taplin as both an ‘ergative’ and a ‘genitive’ case inflection, did not appear in Meyer’s pronominal paradigms, although Meyer did describe the suffix –alde as marking ‘genitive’ and ‘dative’ cases on nouns (1843:11). Comparison of the two sources is difficult because Meyer gave full case paradigms only for pronouns and Taplin did so only for nouns. Case function is marked differently on nouns and pronouns in this language.

While Taplin appears certain about the function of the suffix -alde — consistently labelling it ‘genitive’ in successive grammars — he remained uncertain about the functions of the suffix
-anyir, which was ultimately excluded from his final case paradigm (1880:9). He gave no clauses exemplifying the function of nominals marked with this suffix. Meyer stated that the suffix -anyir has different functions on nouns and on pronouns (1843:13) and gave clauses exemplifying each. On nouns, the suffix and its variant -inyeri (McDonald 2002:128) was shown marking a range of functions that are labelled ‘associative’ in modern PN grammars. The associative range of functions is a sub-category of functions commonly carried by the PN comitative case, but which are distinctly marked in some languages (Dixon 2002:140-141). Meyer glosses the suffix as “belonging or appertaining to” (1843:18). The case labelled ‘associative’ in Arrernte has been described as “associate[ing] a person, animal, or thing with the place where they live or are habitually found” (Wilkins 1989:202). Taplin’s placement of the genitive suffix -alde next to the associative suffix -anyir in some paradigms may be accounted for by the similarity in meaning between the possessive function of the genitive case and the sense of ‘intrinsically belonging to’ conveyed by the associative case. It is the suffix – anyir, which Taplin names ‘ergative’.140

Meyer’s translation of associative case forms that are termed ‘ergative’ by Taplin using the preposition ‘from’ (1843:12) might be explained by the fact that nominals in associative case tend to originate from the location of the stem to which the suffix -anyir attaches. Suffixes that mark the associative case in PN languages tend to also have productive derivational application, as illustrated in the early Ngarrindjeri sources: “Kurle, head; Kurliñyeri, what belongs to the head; a hat or cap” (Meyer 1843:19). On other nominal types, including pronouns, the suffix -anyir marks the ablative case (Meyer 1843:13, 23; Taplin 1879:125). The spatial function of the ablative case further explains Meyer’s gloss ‘from’. The causal function of the ablative might explain an alternative gloss — ‘on account of’ — also given by Meyer (ibid.,23).

Taplin’s glossing of the forms labelled ‘ergative’, marked with –anyir and –alde as ‘with X’ is not substantiated by the data. The anomaly is perhaps accounted for by supposing that the suffix -anyir marked a wider range of comitative functions on at least some nominal types in the variety described by Taplin.

139 Dixon uses the term ‘comitative’ for the ‘having’ suffix, which other Australianists call ‘proprietive’, reserving the term ‘comitative’ for the sense ‘being going with’ See Wilkins (1989:192-205:210-213) for a discussion of the morphological delineation of this functional range, the associative and the possessive in Mparntwe Arrernte.

140 The inclusion of –alde at this position in Taplin’s case paradigms may also result from a difference in the formal delineation of the associative and genitive functions in the two linguistic varieties described in the sources (see Taplin 1880:9).
11.7.2 Concluding remark

The peripheral function of the case termed ‘ergative’ by Taplin confirms that Taplin’s coinage of the term was unlikely to be based in the Greek root *erg-* “work”. It is probable that Taplin coined the terms *erg-ative* (1870) and *ex-ative* (1867) based in the Latin prepositions *ergā* and *ex* respectively.

But the breadth of semantic space covered by the possible English translations of the Latin preposition *ergā* renders any further evidence sought of a perceived correspondence between the meaning of the poorly defined functions of the PN case suffixes first termed ‘ergative’ and the Latin preposition circumstantial.

Manaster Ramer (2004:213) gave the meaning of the Latin preposition *ergā* as “right against, next to” when supposing the label ‘ergative’ was innovated to describe the WTS comitative case. Lindner (2014:190) selects “on account of, for” when supposing the term was innovated to describe a Ngarrindjeri case with some benefactive function (ibid., 189-190).